

# Invasive alien flora and fauna

## in South Africa

### Expertise and bibliography

Charles F. Musil

Ian A.W. Macdonald



Ernst Mayr Library  
Museum of Comparative Zoology  
Harvard University



# **Invasive alien flora and fauna in South Africa: expertise and bibliography**

by

**Charles F. Musil & Ian A.W. Macdonald**



**Pretoria  
2007**

MCZ  
LIBRARY  
DEC 14 201



HARVARD  
UNIVERSITY

## **SANBI Biodiversity Series**

The South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) was established on 1 September 2004 through the signing into force of the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEMBA) No. 10 of 2004 by President Thabo Mbeki. The Act expands the mandate of the former National Botanical Institute to include responsibilities relating to the full diversity of South Africa's fauna and flora, and builds on the internationally respected programmes in conservation, research, education and visitor services developed by the National Botanical Institute and its predecessors over the past century.

The vision of SANBI is to be the leading institution in biodiversity science in Africa, facilitating conservation, sustainable use of living resources, and human wellbeing.

SANBI's mission is to promote the sustainable use, conservation, appreciation and enjoyment of the exceptionally rich biodiversity of South Africa, for the benefit of all people.

*SANBI Biodiversity Series* publishes occasional reports on projects, technologies, workshops, symposia and other activities initiated by or executed in partnership with SANBI.

Technical editor: Gerrit Germishuizen and Emsie du Plessis

Design & layout: Daleen Maree

Cover design: Sandra Turck

The authors:

C.F. Musil—Senior Specialist Scientist, Global Change & Biodiversity Program, South African National Biodiversity Institute, Private Bag X7, Claremont, 7735 ([musil@sanbi.org](mailto:musil@sanbi.org))

I.A.W. Macdonald—Extraordinary Professor, Sustainability Institute, School of Public Management and Planning, Stellenbosch University ([macdonfam@kingsley.co.za](mailto:macdonfam@kingsley.co.za))

### **How to cite this publication**

MUSIL, C.F. & MACDONALD, I.A.W. 2007. Invasive alien flora and fauna in South Africa: expertise and bibliography. *SANBI Biodiversity Series* 6. South African National Biodiversity Institute, Pretoria.

ISBN: 978-1-919976-35-8

© Published by: South African National Biodiversity Institute.

Obtainable from: SANBI Bookshop, Private Bag X101, Pretoria, 0001 South Africa.

Tel.: +27 12 843-5000. E-mail: [bookshop@sanbi.org](mailto:bookshop@sanbi.org). Website: [www.sanbi.org](http://www.sanbi.org).

Printed by Afriscot Litho (Pty) Ltd t/a Afriscot Printers, Unit 7, Block A, Scientia Technopark, Meiring Naudé Road, Brummeria, Pretoria, 0001 South Africa.



# contents

<b>Foreword</b>	<b>vii</b>
<b>Acknowledgements</b>	<b>viii</b>
<b>1. Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2. Definitions and geographical coverage</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>3. Procedures applied in expertise audit</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>4. Procedures applied in literature audit</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>5. Analysis of expertise register</b>	<b>3</b>
5.1 Selection criteria	3
5.2 Gender, credentials and training institutions	3
5.3 Institutional and geographical deployment	4
5.4 Categories of speciality	6
5.4.1 <i>Region, ecosystem and biome</i>	6
5.4.2 <i>Management, control and research</i>	8
5.4.3 <i>Life form and taxonomic groups</i>	9
<b>6. Analysis of bibliography</b>	<b>11</b>
6.1 Scale and rate of publications	11
6.2 Categories of articles	12
6.2.1 <i>Management, control and research</i>	12
6.2.2 <i>Ecosystem, biome and habitat</i>	13
6.2.3 <i>Life form and taxonomic groups</i>	14
<b>7. Register of expertise</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>8. Bibliography</b>	<b>43</b>
8.1 Alien Aquatic Plants	43
8.1.1 <i>A-Aquatic Plants—Ecology</i>	43
8.1.2 <i>A-Aquatic Plants—Identification</i>	43
8.1.3 <i>A-Aquatic Plants—Impact</i>	44
8.1.4 <i>A-Aquatic Plants—Introduction</i>	44
8.1.5 <i>A-Aquatic Plants—Invasion</i>	44
8.1.6 <i>A-Aquatic Plants—Management</i>	45
8.2 Alien Herbaceous Plants	51
8.2.1 <i>A-Herbaceous Plants—Ecology</i>	51
8.2.2 <i>A-Herbaceous Plants—Identification</i>	51
8.2.3 <i>A-Herbaceous Plants—Impact</i>	52
8.2.4 <i>A-Herbaceous Plants—Introduction</i>	52

8.2.5	<i>A-Herbaceous Plants—Invasion</i>	52
8.2.6	<i>A-Herbaceous Plants—Management</i>	52
<b>8.3</b>	<b>Alien Succulent Plants</b>	<b>54</b>
8.3.1	<i>A-Succulent Plants—Ecology</i>	54
8.3.2	<i>A-Succulent Plants—Identification</i>	54
8.3.3	<i>A-Succulent Plants—Impact</i>	55
8.3.4	<i>A-Succulent Plants—Introduction</i>	55
8.3.5	<i>A-Succulent Plants—Invasion</i>	55
8.3.6	<i>A-Succulent Plants—Management</i>	55
<b>8.4</b>	<b>Alien Woody Plants</b>	<b>62</b>
8.4.1	<i>A-Woody Plants—Ecology</i>	62
8.4.2	<i>A-Woody Plants—Identification</i>	66
8.4.3	<i>A-Woody Plants—Impact</i>	69
8.4.4	<i>A-Woody Plants—Introduction</i>	73
8.4.5	<i>A-Woody Plants—Invasion</i>	73
8.4.6	<i>A-Woody Plants—Management</i>	77
<b>8.5</b>	<b>Alien Plants—Nonspecific Life Form</b>	<b>97</b>
8.5.1	<i>A-Plants—NSLF—Ecology</i>	97
8.5.2	<i>A-Plants—NSLF—Identification</i>	98
8.5.3	<i>A-Plants—NSLF—Impact</i>	99
8.5.4	<i>A-Plants—NSLF—Introduction</i>	100
8.5.5	<i>A-Plants—NSLF—Invasion</i>	100
8.5.6	<i>A-Plants—NSLF—Management</i>	104
<b>8.6</b>	<b>Alien Plant Pathogens</b>	<b>111</b>
8.6.1	<i>A-Plant Pathogens—Ecology</i>	111
8.6.2	<i>A-Plant Pathogens—Identification</i>	111
8.6.3	<i>A-Plant Pathogens—Impact</i>	111
8.6.4	<i>A-Plant Pathogens—Introduction</i>	112
8.6.5	<i>A-Plant Pathogens—Invasion</i>	112
8.6.6	<i>A-Plant Pathogens—Management</i>	112
<b>8.7</b>	<b>Alien Biota—Nonspecific Life Form</b>	<b>113</b>
8.7.1	<i>A-Biota—NSLF—Ecology</i>	113
8.7.2	<i>A-Biota—NSLF—Identification</i>	113
8.7.3	<i>A-Biota—NSLF—Impact</i>	113
8.7.4	<i>A-Biota—NSLF—Introduction</i>	114
8.7.5	<i>A-Biota—NSLF—Invasion</i>	114
8.7.6	<i>A-Biota—NSLF—Management</i>	115

<b>8.8 Alien Invertebrates</b>	<b>118</b>
8.8.1 A-Invertebrates—Ecology	118
8.8.2 A-Invertebrates—Identification	119
8.8.3 A-Invertebrates—Impact	120
8.8.4 A-Invertebrates—Introduction	121
8.8.5 A-Invertebrates—Prevalence	122
8.8.6 A-Invertebrates—Management	123
<b>8.9 Alien Fish</b>	<b>125</b>
8.9.1 A-Fish—Ecology	125
8.9.2 A-Fish—Identification	126
8.9.3 A-Fish—Impact	127
8.9.4 A-Fish—Introduction	128
8.9.5 A-Fish—Invasion	129
8.9.6 A-Fish—Management	130
<b>8.10 Alien Birds</b>	<b>146</b>
8.10.1 A-Birds—Ecology	146
8.10.2 A-Birds—Identification	147
8.10.3 A-Birds—Impact	148
8.10.4 A-Birds—Introduction	149
8.10.5 A-Birds—Invasion	150
8.10.6 A-Birds—Management	151
<b>8.11 Alien Amphibians—Reptiles—Mammals</b>	<b>165</b>
8.11.1 A-Amphibians—Reptiles—Mammals—Ecology	165
8.11.2 A-Amphibians—Reptiles—Mammals—Identification	166
8.11.3 A-Amphibians—Reptiles—Mammals—Impact	167
8.11.4 A-Amphibians—Reptiles—Mammals—Introduction	168
8.11.5 A-Amphibians—Reptiles—Mammals—Invasion	169
8.11.6 A-Amphibians—Reptiles—Mammals—Management	170
<b>8.12 Alien animals—Nonspecific Life Form</b>	<b>167</b>
8.12.1 A-Animals—NSLF—Ecology	167
8.12.2 A-Animals—NSLF—Identification	168
8.12.3 A-Animals—NSLF—Impact	169
8.12.4 A-Animals—NSLF—Introduction	170
8.12.5 A-Animals—NSLF—Invasion	171
8.12.6 A-Animals—NSLF—Management	172
<b>9. References cited</b>	<b>169</b>

## List of tables

Table 1.—Institutional deployment of experts during audit	5
Table 2.—Geographical deployment of experts during audit	6
Table 3.—Numbers of experts who cite proficiency in different ecosystems, biomes and habitats relevant to alien invasive organisms	7
Table 4.—Numbers of experts who cite capability in different management, control and research topics and themes on alien invasive organisms	8
Table 5.—Numbers of experts who cite competency in different life forms of alien invasive organisms	10
Table 6.—Numbers of experts who cite knowledge of different genera of alien invasive organisms	10
Table 7.—Numbers of articles in bibliography referring to various categories of utilisation and management of alien invasive organisms	13
Table 8.—Numbers of articles in bibliography referring to various biomes and habitats of aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems infested by alien invasive organisms	14
Table 9.—Numbers of articles in bibliography referring to various components of natural and transformed ecosystems, native flora and fauna and interspecific interactions impacted on by invasive alien organisms	14
Table 10.—Numbers of articles in the bibliography referring to different life forms of invasive alien organisms	15
Table 11.—Number of articles in bibliography referring to most frequently cited genera in different life forms of alien invasive organisms	16

## List of figures

Figure 1.—Numbers of qualified experts on alien invasive organisms produced every 5 years since 1960	3
Figure 2.—Numbers of publications on alien invasive organisms appearing annually since 1858	11
Figure 3.—Fifteen most common general topics referred to in the bibliography	12

## Appendices

Appendix 1.—Example of questionnaire soliciting IAS expert personal details and opinions	170
Appendix 2.—Keywords to life forms, administrative and research topics applied in the bibliography with the number of articles relating to each presented in parenthesis	172
Appendix 3.—Keywords to taxonomic groups applied in the bibliography with numbers of related articles relating to each presented in parenthesis	174

# foreword

**T**he Global Strategy on Invasive Alien Species prepared by the Global Invasive Species Programme highlighted ten elements that need to be addressed in our efforts to reduce the global impact of invasive species. Building of both research and management capacity are two of these elements. This inventory is an excellent baseline from which to begin addressing the development of capacity in both these areas within South Africa.

South Africa is regarded as an African if not a world leader in the management of established invasive species. Programmes such as *Working for Water* have won numerous accolades for its approach to dealing with the threat of invasive woody plants and job creation. Currently, bio-control in South Africa is well resourced and produces excellent work and numerous scientific publications. Needless to say many of the experts and much of the scientific literature in South Africa is focused on these two areas.

The inventory highlights the lack of expertise in the following:

- Prevention of the introduction of new invasive species.
- Specific genera of invasive species e.g. *Populus* and *Prosopis* species.
- Invasive species in particular biomes e.g. arid biomes.

This inventory will have served its overarching purpose if academic institutions, particularly those with specific interest in invasive species research and management, are able to motivate financial support to fill the gaps in our knowledge and train skilled people to address these. The problem of a shrinking scientific community is not specific to South Africa yet the wealth of knowledge must not be lost as a result of lack of foresight in research planning.

South Africa leads Programme Area 3 of the New Partnership for African Development environmental initiative. This focuses on invasive species in Africa. The inventory of expertise and bibliography is being expanded to southern Africa under the Regional Biodiversity Support Programme. It should be expanded to cover the whole continent so that it provides a resource for research and management within Africa.

As this inventory was funded by the Regional Biodiversity Support Programme it does not address the threat of invasive species to agriculture. If we are to convince politicians in Africa of the need to spend more on research, prevention of introduction and management of invasive species then I believe we need to show the threat they pose to food security. Maybe this calls for a whole inventory of its own.

This inventory will be useful to both researchers and managers alike. The bibliography of over 3 000 publications is an excellent resource. The list of experts will need to be maintained and regularly updated to have an ongoing use and this should be the responsibility of an organisation such as the South African National Biodiversity Institute.

Denis Rangi  
SA expertise IAS

# acknowledgements

**F**unding for this inventory was provided by the Southern Africa Biodiversity Support Program (RBSAP), a Global Environment Facility (GEF) funded initiative implemented in ten Southern Africa Development Community (SADC) member states, and administered by the South African National Biodiversity Institute. The following persons kindly contributed their personal bibliographies:

N. Allsopp	M.D. Anderson	T.A. Anderson	P.J. Ashton
E.H.W. Baard	C.R. Bromilow	M.J. Byrne	J.A. Cambray
S.L. Chown	C.J. Cilliers	R.J.M. Crawford	F.C. de Moor
I.J. de Moor	W.R.J. Dean	J.B.R. Findlay	W.B. Foden
L.C. Foxcroft	C.L. Griffiths	N.M. Hanekom	G.B. Harding
L. Henderson	P.M. Holmes	F.A. Impson	B. Jansen van Vuuren
H. Klein	T. Kraijj	D.C. le Maitre	W.D. Lotter
G. Malan	C. Marais	S.J. Milton	E.J. Moll
V.C. Moran	C.F. Musil	K.J. Musil	A. Pauw
M.D. Picker	G.R. Preston	D.M. Richardson	H.G. Robertson
M.P. Robertson	M. Rouget	I.A. Russell	L.W. Strathie
L.G. Underhill	M. Wanneberg	A.B.R. Will	N. Witkowski
A.R. Wood	C. Zachariades		

Ingrid Nänni is thanked for assistance with digitising of earlier published bibliographies, Mr Les Powrie for transformation of electronic databases into formats suitable for analytical and publication purposes, and Kathrine Musil for meticulously checking the bibliography.

# 1. Introduction

There is general recognition that serious ecological, economic and social consequences result from the invasion of natural ecosystems by foreign biological organisms (Perrings *et al.* 2000; McNeely *et al.* 2001), these often designated as alien invasive species (AIS). Conservative estimates indicate that the global costs of alien invasive species impacts on natural ecosystems exceed the total economic output of the entire African continent (Pimentel 2002), with such impacts predicted to intensify in the near future due to global climate change (Mooney & Hobbs 2000). To minimise these impacts, it is necessary to integrate the best available scientific management policies, strategies and methodologies (Preston *et al.* 2000; Wittenberg & Cock 2001).

Two recent reviews (Macdonald 2004a, b) have indicated that South Africa, which has for several decades been at the forefront of scientific endeavour involving alien invasive species impacts, is at serious risk of losing its scientific capacity in this unique and important field of ecosystem management. The reasons are a recent reduction in the numbers of newly trained experts, many of whom do not have access to the considerable knowledge bank that has accumulated in this field over the last 150 years, the retained knowledge mostly apportioned among existing experts, many of whom have retired or are close to retirement.

This inventory arose as an outcome of an earlier national survey sponsored by the Southern Africa Biodiversity Support Programme (RBSAP) aimed at determining user needs for databases, guidelines and other resources in the field of alien invasive species management and research (Macdonald 2004b). This survey concluded that one of the most useful steps that could be taken to address the declining capacity problem would be to create a network of experts to share accumulated knowledge with the aim of building intellectual and technical capacity to serve the future developmental needs of South Africa. Another suggested solution was to create a consolidated bibliography relevant to the management of alien invasive species impacts in South Africa. This inventory is an initial endeavour to meet these two recommendations.

## 2. Definitions and geographical coverage

In this inventory, the term 'alien' designates foreign biological organisms that are not indigenous to South Africa and its islands with the idiom 'invasive' referring to self-sustaining populations of alien biological organisms that have spread unaided from sites of initial introduction into natural ecosystems without active human assistance. A recent synthesis of the South African Plant Invader Atlas (SAPIA) database identified 117 major invaders, 80% of which are listed by regulations under the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Nel *et al.* 2004). However, in this inventory information on 'weeds' or 'pests' of transformed ecosystems, e.g. agricultural and silvicultural, was excluded though the distinction between these and acknowledged alien invasive species was sometimes ambiguous. A typical example was introduced pathogens of foreign timber trees, which are themselves alien invasive species. Also excluded from the inventory were indigenous organisms that have invaded areas outside their natural distribution ranges in response to environmental or habitat changes whether natural or induced by human activities, as well as those classified as alien invasive species in other regions of the world. However, 'translocated' indigenous organisms which have moved into areas outside their natural distribution ranges as direct or indirect consequences of human activities, e.g. introduction of wild animals for game ranching/hunting and spread of self-sustaining fish populations into new river basins due to hydrological developments, were included in the inventory.

The area incorporated in this inventory included the Republic of South Africa, its continental and subantarctic islands, i.e. the Prince Edward Islands comprising Marion Island and Prince Edward Island. Literature referring to Lesotho and Swaziland was also included in the inventory only where considered highly relevant to the alien invasive species situation in South Africa.

### 3. Procedures applied in expertise audit

The basic method applied in petitioning alien invasive species experts for their inclusion in a national register was to e-mail them a questionnaire (Appendix 1) requesting its completion and referral to other known experts not included on an appended mailing list. A supplementary questionnaire was also incorporated during the first six months of the expertise audit eliciting opinions of recipients as to requisite conditions for inclusion in a national alien invasive species expertise register. The questionnaire survey was initiated in late April 2005 and was finally compiled in March 2006.

The original mailing list was assembled from a national list of alien invasive species experts presented in Zimmermann (2003), the RBSAP survey of user needs and guidelines for databases (Macdonald 2003b), a list developed by the task group that drafted the alien invasive species section of the National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (Macdonald *et al.* 2004) and lists employed by task and reference groups that formulated regulations for alien invasive species sections of the new National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act (G. Preston pers. comm.). The compiled list comprised 386 persons implicated in issues involving alien invasive organisms. E-mail addresses of 358 of these persons were sourced of which 355 were successfully transmitted questionnaires. Regular reminders were transmitted to recipients of questionnaires until a response was received, either as a completed questionnaire or as a directive for their exclusion from the register of South African alien invasive species experts. Also, an open invitation for inclusion in a national alien invasive species expertise register was posted on the website of the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) in the latter half of 2005. As a consequence of all these actions, 203 responses were eventually received (57.2% success) which included 163 completed questionnaires and 40 directives from persons for their exclusion from the register as they did not consider themselves as experts on alien invasive organisms.

### 4. Procedures applied in literature audit

Literature on alien invasive fauna and flora pertinent to South Africa, which comprised a wide range of articles, i.e. scientific and popular manuscripts, books and book chapters, magazine and newspaper articles, pamphlets, congress, symposia and workshop proceedings, dissertations, academic and governmental and nongovernmental institutional and departmental reports etc., were obtained from a variety of sources.

Older hard copy sources of literature included earlier published bibliographies relating to alien invasive species in southern Africa, namely Zimmermann (2003) for all alien flora and fauna, Moran & Moran (1982) for alien invasive vascular plants, Bruton & Merron (1985) for alien invasive aquatic animals, Awad (2003) for alien invasive marine organisms and Brooke (1986) for alien invasive birds. Other hard-copy sources included summary papers published in the national synthesis volume on the Ecology of Biological Invasions (Macdonald *et al.* 1986), which comprised South Africa's contribution to the SCOPE Programme, and a comprehensive bibliography of scientific articles published by staff of the Plant Protection Research Institute over the period 1984 to 2005 provided by Dr H.G. Zimmermann. These bibliographies were digitised with an aid of a flatbed document scanner and edited.

More recent electronic sources of literature included digitised records obtained from the Harry Molteno and Mary Gunn Libraries of SANBI, the Working For Water Programme (WFW) and the Global Invasive Species Programme, the University of the Western Cape, the Weeds Research Division of the Plant Protection Institute, the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) and the IZIKO Museum



in Cape Town. Also obtained in electronic format were the personal bibliographies provided by 50 respondents in the expertise audit. Where subject and taxonomic keywords were not included with the literature references obtained from the various hard-copy and electronic sources, a standardised set, based on information reflected in the titles, were appended in upper case to each reference. Lists of all keywords applied in the bibliography classified under various administrative and research topics, life form and taxonomic groups are presented in Appendices 2 and 3.

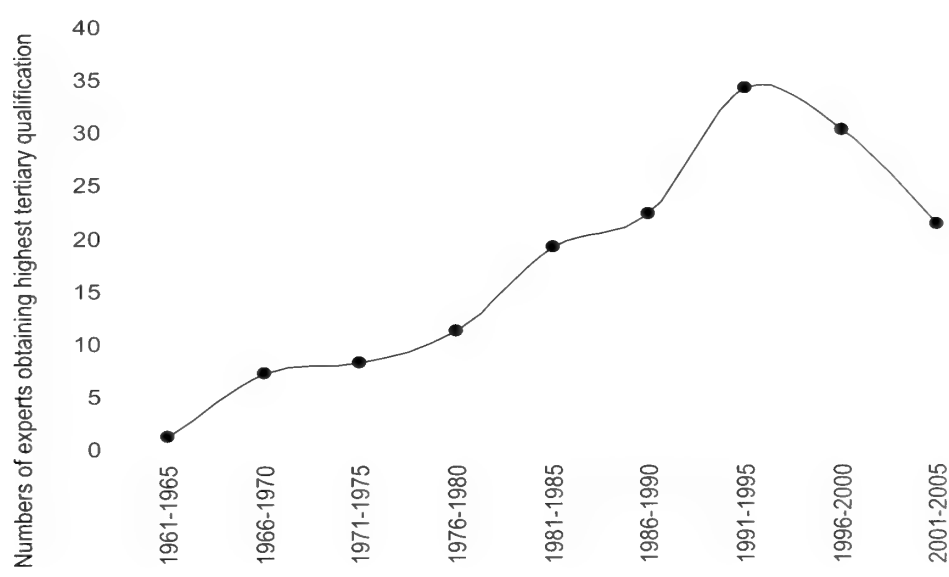
## 5. Analysis of expertise register

### 5.1 Selection criteria

Most (70%) of the respondents in the expertise audit were of the opinion that neither rank, position, public standing, status among scientific peers, experience, publication record or academic qualifications should be conditional for admission to the national register. Therefore, inclusion of respondents in the register was based solely on current or past involvement in some socio-economic, management or research role on alien invasive organisms in South Africa. Details of 163 persons included in the register are presented in Section 7.

### 5.2 Gender, credentials and training institutions

There was clear gender preference towards trained males in the register both in the general Mr and Mrs/Ms categories where a 3:1 bias in favour of males (65 ‘Mr’ compared with 19 ‘Mrs’ or ‘Ms’) was evident, and also in the distinguished Prof. and Dr categories where a slightly larger 4:1 bias in favour of males (63 male compared with 16 female Professors and Doctors) was also apparent.



**FIGURE 1.**—Numbers of qualified experts on alien invasive organisms produced every 5 years since 1960.

Of the 164 listed experts, 48% possessed a Ph.D. or D.Sc., 24% an M.Sc., 7% a B.Sc. (Hons), 9% a B.Sc and 9% a diplomas/technical certificate in nature conservation, forestry or environmental sciences. The remaining 3% possessed a legal (LL.B. and LL.M.) or educational (HED) qualification. The rate at which the highest tertiary-level qualifications were conferred on experts in the register over the last 45 years is illustrated in Figure 1, the numbers of skilled experts produced reaching a peak between 1991 and 1995 with a subsequent decline apparent since 2000. Some 81% of the degrees and 9% of the diplomas/technical certificates conferred on experts originated from South African tertiary academic institutions, with only 10% originating from foreign (British, American,

Swedish and Zimbabwean) tertiary academic institutions. Among the South African degrees, 28% were conferred by the University of Cape Town, 12% by Rhodes University, 9% by Stellenbosch University, 8% by the University of KwaZulu-Natal, 7% by the Tshwane University of Technology (formerly Pretoria Technikon), 5% by the University of the Witwatersrand, 4% by the University of the Free State, 4% also by the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (formerly the University of Port Elizabeth), with the remaining 4% conferred by other South African universities. Among the South African diplomas/technical certificates, the vast majority (7%) were conferred by the Port Elizabeth Technikon (including the affiliated Saasveld School of Forestry), with the remaining 2% by other South African technikons.

### 5.3 Institutional and geographical deployment

Statistics on the institutional and geographical deployment of experts during the audit are presented in Tables 1 and 2.

Universities (Table 1) employed the largest number of experts (25%) followed by national parastatals (19%), governmental departments (15%) and provincial and municipal sectors (14%). The smallest number of experts were employed in museums and private corporations (4–5%). Among the universities (Table 1), the University of Cape Town employed the greatest number of experts, followed by Stellenbosch University. Noteworthy, is that increased capacity is likely to develop at Stellenbosch University in the near future with the recent establishment of the 'Centre of Excellence in Invasion Biology (CIB)' funded by the National Research Foundation and the Department of Science and Technology. Among the parastatals (Table 1), the Agricultural Research Council (ARC) employed the greatest number of experts, followed by SANBI, with the leading institutions in the governmental and provincial sectors employing experts being the Working for Water Programme (WFW), the South African National Parks (SANPARKS) and the Western Cape Nature Conservation Board (WCNCB). However, many of the experts employed in these institutions are also actively engaged in other sectors of environmental management and research and are consequently not involved with alien invasive organisms on a full-time basis.

There was a conspicuous geographical deployment bias of experts (Table 2) to the Western Cape (55%) and Gauteng (20%) Provinces, with smaller numbers of experts stationed in the KwaZulu-Natal (11%) and Eastern Cape (6%) and only a minute fraction (3% collectively) stationed in the Free-State and Northern Cape. This geographical deployment bias reflected mainly Tshwane and Cape Town metropolitan centres of operation of the leading institutions employing experts on alien invasive organisms, and not ideally the geographical distributions of these organisms in South Africa. Alien plants, for example, exhibit high species densities predominantly along the southern and eastern coastal regions of South Africa, the eastern escarpment of KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga, and around the eastern Free State and Gauteng Provinces (Nel *et al.* 2004). Encouraging also (Table 1) was the growing number of private consulting agencies and independent consultants (12% of experts) trading in environmental impact assessments related to alien invasive organisms. This undoubtedly in response to immensely increased amounts of funding available from national and international donor agencies with the establishment of the new democratic dispensation in South Africa in 1994.

**TABLE 1.**—Institutional deployment of experts during audit

<b>Sector [Numbers employing experts]</b>	<b>Institution {Number of experts employed}</b>	<b>Total numbers of experts employed (% of total)</b>
National Parastatals [4]	ARC {16}, SANBI {10} CSIR {4}, ESKOM {1}	31 (19)
Governmental Departments and Conservation Agencies [5]	WFW {10}, SANPARKS {7} DEAT {4}, DWAF {3}	24 (15)
Provincial & Municipal Departments and Conservation Agencies [6]	WCNCB {10}, GDACE {2} Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife {3} FSDTEEF {3} City of Cape Town {3} Mpumalanga Parks Board {1}	22 (14)
Museums [3]	Albany {4}, Iziko {1} McGregor {1}	6 (4)
Universities [9]	UCT {16}, SUN {8}, Tshwane {5} WITS {3}, UWC {2}, UKZN {2}, UNISA {1}, Limpopo {1} Rhodes {1}, Wales {1}	40 (25)
Private Corporations [6]	SAPPI {2} Volcano AgroScience {2} Two Oceans Aquarium {1} Plant Health Products {1} Dow AgroSciences {1} Biological Control Products {1}	8 (5)
Non-Governmental Agencies [9]	GISP {3}, BOTSOC {2} SAFI and Birdlife SA {2} Grootbos Foundation {1} Western Cape Reptile Inst. {1} Conservation Strategy & Law {1} Institute Conservation Natural History Soutpansberg {1} Others {2}	13 (8)
Private Consulting Agencies [8]	-	8 (5)
Independent Consultants [11]	-	11 (7)

ARC—Agricultural Research Council; SANBI—South African National Biodiversity Institute; CSIR—Council for Scientific and Industrial Research; ESKOM—Electricity Supply Commission; WFW—Working for Water; SANPARKS—South African National Parks; DWAF—Department Water Affairs and Forestry; DEAT—Department Environmental Affairs and Tourism; GDACE—Gauteng Department Agriculture Conservation & Environment; WCNCB—Western Cape Nature Conservation Board; FSDTEEF—Free-State Department Tourism Environment and Economic Affairs; UCT—University Cape Town; SUN—Stellenbosch University; WITS—University of the Witwatersrand Johannesburg; UWC—University of the Western Cape; UKZN—University of KwaZulu-Natal; UNISA—University of South Africa; SAPPI—South African Pulp and Paper Industries; GISP—Global Invasive Species Program; BOTSOC—Botanical Society of South Africa

TABLE 2.—Geographical deployment of experts during audit

Province	Region	Postal codes	No. of experts (% of total)
Gauteng			32 (20)
	Tshwane (Pretoria)	0001–0184	21
	Johannesburg	1709–2193	11
Limpopo		0727–0920	4 (2)
Mpumalanga		1200–1380	4 (2)
KwaZulu-Natal		3202–3935	18 (11)
Eastern Cape		5214–6140	9 (6)
Western Cape			89 (55)
	Southern Cape	6525–6930	10
	SW Country Areas	7141–7280	4
	Cape Town Metropole	7441–8012	75
Northern Cape	Kimberley	8300	2 (1)
Free State	Bloemfontein	9300	3 (2)
[United Kingdom]			1

5.4 Categories of speciality

Ten experts cited global and 77 cited the Republic of South Africa as their geographical areas of speciality, with 41 of them listing the Western Cape, 14 KwaZulu-Natal and 10 the Eastern Cape.

Most experts (74%) specified terrestrial ecosystems as their prime area of proficiency, with 18% designating aquatic ecosystems, 4% listing both terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems and the residual 5% of experts not denoting any specific area of speciality (Table 3). In the terrestrial ecosystems, 28% (57) of experts specified the Fynbos Biome as their area of speciality (Table 3), with 21% (43) stipulating the Savanna Biome, 16% (32) the Grassland Biome and 13% (26) the Forest Biome as their areas of proficiency, the last biome disproportionately well represented considering that it covers less than 1% of the country's surface area. Less than 11% (22) collectively of the experts designated the arid Nama-Karoo, Succulent Karoo and Desert Biomes as their areas of speciality (Table 3). In the aquatic ecosystems, 70% (26) of the experts specified freshwater environments as their area of proficiency, with 24% (9) denoting marine environments and 5% (2) listing estuarine environments as their areas of competency (Table 3).

**TABLE 3.**—Numbers of experts who cite proficiency in different ecosystems, biomes and habitats relevant to alien invasive organisms

<b>Ecosystems &amp; Biomes</b>	<b>No. of experts</b>	<b>Habitat</b>	<b>No. of experts (% of total)</b>
Marine	9	Coral reef	1
		Subtidal	1
		Intertidal	1
		General marine	6
Estuarine	2		
Freshwater	26	Wetlands	2
		General freshwater	24
<b>AQUATIC</b>			<b>37 (14)</b>
Antarctic	1		
Island	3		
Coastal	2		
Catchments	11	Agricultural area	1
		Sylvicultural area	2
		Urban area	1
		Riparian zone	7
Fynbos	57		
Savanna	43	General Savanna	40
		Arid Savanna	2
		Bushveld	1
Grassland	32		
Forest	26	General forest	23
		Afromontane	3
Thicket	6		
Karoo	7		
Succulent Karoo	7		
Nama-Karoo	4		
Desert	4		
<b>TERRESTRIAL</b>			<b>203 (77)</b>
Aquatic & Terrestrial			11 (4)
Unspecified			13 (5)

4.2 Management, control and research

There was a distinct predominance in speciality cited by experts towards the topic of management (Table 4).

TABLE 4.—Numbers of experts who cite capability in different management, control and research topics and themes on alien invasive organisms

Topics	Numbers of experts	Themes	Numbers of experts
Management	80	Operational	20
		Biocontrol	20
		Techniques	14
		Conservation	10
		Eradication	6
		Restoration	6
		Integrated control	4
Planning	43		
Strategy	31		
Ecology	31		
		General	12
		Distribution	10
		Population biology	5
		Fire	4
Taxonomy, Biosystematics	18		
Impact assessment	12		
Research	9		
Education	8		
Legislation	7		
Risk assessment	7		
Mapping, Remote-sensing	7		
Survey	6		
Evaluation	6		
Training & capacity-building	6		
Policy	5		
Monitoring	5		
Social aspects	4		

OTHER CATEGORIES LISTED LESS THAN FOUR TIMES: Abundance—2, Advice—2, Advocacy, Assessment—2, Bioclimatic-potential, Biodiversity (marine), Biogeography—3, Biology, Biosecurity, Biotechnology (genetic engineering & GMOs)—2, [Bird—4], Budget—3, Chemical—2, Community, Compliance, Concept, Conservancy, Database, Dispersal, Ecophysiology, Ecosystem effects, Ecosystem function, Editing, Emerging weeds—2, Endemism, Evolution, Fisheries, Frequency, Fundraising, Game ranching, Genetics—2, Global-change—2, Habitats invaded, History, Hunting, Hydrology—2, Identification—2, Introduction (non-indigenous game), Invasiveness, Local government, Marketing, Mechanical, Modeling—3, Mutualism, Mycorrhizas, Nesting, Networking, Non-specific—2, Non-timber, Park development, PCR, Photography, Physiology—2, Piscicide application, Plant pathology—2, Plant products, Pollution, Priority—2, Proposal writing, Rate of spread, References, Regeneration, Reproductive biology, Resource economics—3, Review, Roosting, Seed biology & dynamics—2, Soil conservation, Spread, Statistics, Timber, Volunteer, Workstudy—2

Eighty experts specified current and/or past involvement in the management of alien invasive organisms, followed by 43 involved in planning and 31 in strategy. Experts with proficiency in operational and biocontrol themes formed the two largest groups, each comprising 20 experts within the management topic. The smallest group, comprising only four experts, listed 'Integrated Control' as their speciality theme, the preferred approach recognised internationally towards management of alien invasive organisms (Wittenberg & Cock, 2001). Concerning was the relatively small numbers of experts (Table 4) who specified specialities in research (7), risk assessment (7) and monitoring (5) on whose results proper decisions on management of existing and emerging alien invasive populations are based. Similarly, only six experts listed training and capacity building as a speciality, a vital component in the advancement of future expertise to serve the developmental and sustainable environmental needs of the South African populace. However, the most concerning aspect in the speciality topics and themes listed by experts was the ostensible absence of anyone listing prevention as their field of competency, though one expert did list biosecurity (Table 4). This extraordinary absence of prevention mirrors the situation in South Africa as a whole, where an enormous amount of effort and expenditure is directed towards controlling well-established populations of alien invasive organisms compared with an almost complete dearth of effort in the much more cost-effective approach of controlling emerging alien invasive organisms and preventing foreign biological organisms from entering the country (Macdonald 2004a).

There were more than twice as many experts (Table 5) citing adeptness in alien flora (127 experts) than alien fauna (54 experts).

Among the alien flora, most experts (68) specified a speciality in woody plants, with their principal genera of speciality (Table 6) being *Acacia* (32 experts), *Pinus* (20 experts) and *Hakea* (14 experts). Strangely, only five experts listed competency in the genus *Prosopis*, and only one in the genus *Populus*, despite the fact that mesquite (*Prosopis glandulosa* var. *torreyana/velutina*) and white and grey poplars (*Populus alba/canescens*) together with black wattle (*Acacia mearnsii*) have been classified as the most widespread and abundant alien invasive plants in South Africa (Nel *et al.* 2004). Similarly, only five experts identified themselves as specialists in the genus *Eichhornia*, even though water hyacinth (*E. crassipes*) is the most widespread and abundant alien invasive aquatic plant in South Africa (Nel *et al.* 2004).

Among the alien fauna, specialists in birds (14 experts), fish (11 experts) and insects (10 experts) were more or less equally divided (Table 5). However, very few experts denoted proficiency in any specific alien bird genus (Table 6), the main genera of speciality listed being *Anus* (2 experts), *Acridotheres* (1 expert) and *Sturnus* (1 expert). Many of the experts included alien invasive birds as a component of a more general avian expertise in South Africa. Among the alien fishes, the prime genera of speciality listed by experts were *Micropterus* (4 experts), *Cyprinus* (2 experts) and *Oncorhynchus* (2 experts). That only two experts specified alien invasive micro-organisms as their speciality (Table 5) possibly reflects the reality that persons specialising in plant pathology, animal and human health do not view themselves as working with the phenomenon of alien invasion, even though many of these organisms are introduced aliens.

TABLE 5.—Numbers of experts who cite competency in different life forms of alien invasive organisms

Alien Fauna			Alien Flora		
Life form		Nos of experts	Life form		Nos of experts
Microbes	Infecting Fish	0	Aquatic	Phytoplankton	0
	Infecting Mammals	0			
	Infecting Plants	2		Macrophytes	8
Invertebrates	Cnidaria	1	Terrestrial	Herbaceous plants	15
	Insects	10		Woody plants	68
	Crustaceans	0		Succulent plants	4
	Molluscs	1		All plants	32
	Amphipods	1			
	Ascidians	0			
Vertebrates	Fish	11			
	Amphibians	2			
	Reptiles	4			
	Birds	14			
	Mammals	8			
Totals		54	Totals		127

TABLE 6.—Numbers of experts who cite knowledge of different genera of alien invasive organisms

Genera	Life Form	Number of experts
<i>Acacia</i>	Woody plant	32
<i>Pinus</i>	Woody plant	20
<i>Hakea</i>	Woody plant	14
<i>Opuntia</i>	Succulent plant	8
<i>Eucalyptus</i>	Woody plant	7
<i>Chromolaena</i>	Woody plant	6
<i>Lantana</i>	Woody plant	6
<i>Eichhornia</i>	Aquatic macrophyte	5
<i>Prosopis</i>	Woody plant	5
<i>Rubus</i>	Woody plant	5
<i>Clarias</i>	Fish (translocated)	4
<i>Micropterus</i>	Fish	4
<i>Cyprinus</i>	Fish	3
<i>Oncorhynchus</i>	Fish	3
<i>Parthenium</i>	Herbaceous plant	3
<i>Schinus</i>	Woody plant	3
<i>Solanum</i>	Woody plant	3

CITED TWICE: *Anas*, *Azolla*, *Campuloclinium*, *Corvus*, *Felis*, *Lepomis*, *Myriophyllum*, *Oreochromis*, *Pistia*, *Salmo*, *Salvinia*, *Sus*, *Tilapia*.

CITED ONCE: *Acridotheres*, *Ageratina*, *Agrobacterium*, *Argemone*, *Arundo*, *Atriplex*, *Barbus*, *Bryophyllum*, *Caesalpinia*, *Cardiospermum*, *Cereus*, *Cortaderia*, *Harrisia*, *Jacaranda*, *Leptospermum*, *Leucaena*, *Linepithema*, *Melia*, *Metrosideros*, *Mus*, *Myoporum*, *Mytilus*, *Nerium*, *Nicotiana*, *Oryctolagus*, *Pennisetum*, *Pereskia*, *Populus*, *Rattus*, *Sesbania*, *Setaria*, *Sturnus*, *Tamarix*.



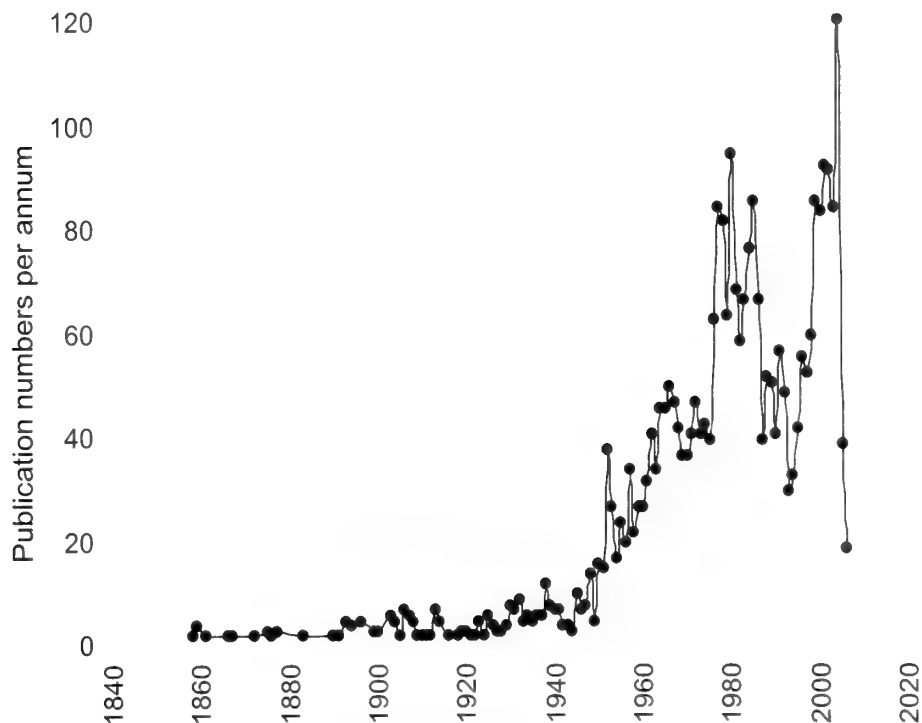
## 6. Analysis of bibliography

### 6.1 Scale and rate of publications

A total of 3 054 articles on South African alien invasive flora and fauna were sourced, the earliest records dating back to 1858. The bibliography constitutes a provisional rather than a comprehensive final listing as many of the articles included come from secondary sources. A thorough search of national and international archives may broaden the scope of this bibliography.

To facilitate article retrieval, especially in hard copies of this bibliography, the articles were clustered on the basis of their assigned keywords into 12 life form groups, and within each life form group into six functional categories comprising the most commonly referred to topics in the bibliography. The 12 designated life form groups comprised 'alien aquatic plants', 'alien herbaceous plants (including grasses)', 'alien succulent plants', 'alien woody plants', 'alien plants of nonspecific life form', 'alien plant pathogens', 'alien biota of nonspecific life form', 'alien invertebrates', 'alien fishes', 'alien birds', 'alien amphibians–reptiles–mammals' and 'alien animals of nonspecific life form'. The six selected functional categories included 'ecology', 'identification', 'impact', 'introduction', 'invasion' and 'management', the last category including aspects of control, utilisation, conservation, restoration and legislation. Article allocation to functional categories was based on their predominant theme. Their appended keywords indicate reference to other functional categories.

The rate at which publications on alien invasive plants have appeared annually since 1858 is illustrated in Figure 2.



**FIGURE 2.**—Numbers of publications on alien invasive organisms appearing annually since 1858.

The significant trends include:

- An exponential increase in the numbers of publications appearing annually from 1945 to 1980.
- A decline in the numbers of publications appearing annually between 1980 and 1995 due to the termination of the National Scientific Programme of the Foundation for Research and

- Development (FRD) of the CSIR which provided substantial funding for research on alien invasive organisms.
- A resurgence in the numbers of publications appearing annually after 1995 due to a huge injection of funds by the national Working for Water Programme into the management, public awareness, research and biocontrol of alien invasive organisms.
  - A disturbing sharp decline in the numbers of publications appearing annually after 2005 due partly to attrition of senior staff and mentoring capacity within national parastatals and governmental institutions.

6.2 Categories of articles

The fifteen most common general topics referred to in the bibliography are presented in Figure 3.

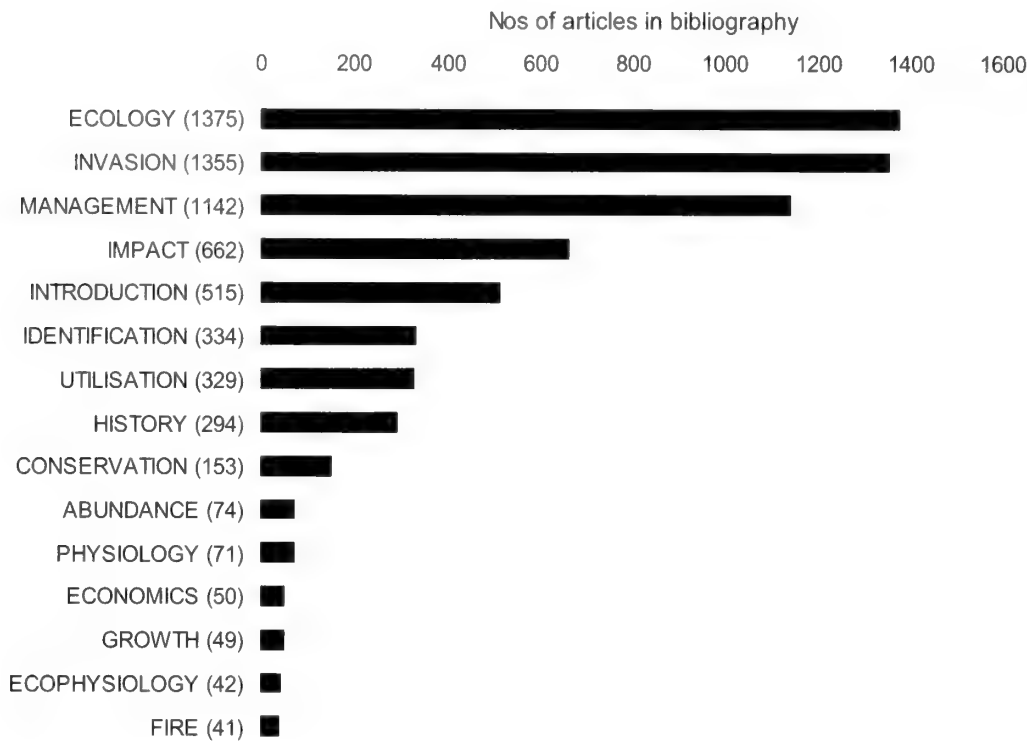


FIGURE 3.—Fifteen most common general topics referred to in the bibliography.

The greatest number of articles dealt with topics of ecology (1 375 articles) closely followed by invasion (1 355 articles) and management (1 142 articles). Within the ‘invasion’ topic the subsidiary keyword ‘spread’, which described any article covering the geographical and/or spatial distributions of alien invasive organisms was most frequently applied (1 080 articles). Within the ‘management’ topic (Table 7), the subsidiary keyword ‘biocontrol’ was most frequently applied (514 articles) followed by ‘chemical control’ (60 articles), ‘evaluation’ (52 articles) and ‘integrated control’ (48 articles). Clearly, the biocontrol community have excelled in documenting their invaluable contribution to the long-term management of alien invasive organisms in South Africa (e.g. Olckers & Hill 1999). Also, there were vastly more articles that dealt with ecological (1 279 articles) than economic topics (50 articles) about alien invasions (Figure 3). The paucity of information on the economic impacts of alien invasions has been identified as a key reason why the importance of such phenomena has not, until only recently, been recognised (Perrings *et al.* 2000; Pimmentel 2002).

Many articles which dealt with topics of impact (662 articles), introduction (515 articles) and utilisation (329 articles) had interrelated themes in that they alluded to both the introduction of alien organisms for purposes of utilisation (Table 7), e.g. the introduction of fish, molluscs and crustacea

for purposes of angling (154 articles) and aquaculture (108 articles), and their impact on the natural populations. There were also moderate numbers of articles (Figure 2) dealing with the topic of 'fire' (41 articles), a reflection of the role of fire in promoting the invasion of South African mediterranean-climate ecosystems by alien woody plants (Taylor 1977; Pieterse & Cairns 1988; Richardson 1988), the subsequent effects of the alien woody plant infestations on fire regimes (Versveld & Van Wilgen 1986; Di Tomaso *et al.* 2004) and the fire-related management of these alien woody plant infestations (Kruger 1977; Holmes 2001). Noteworthy, were the relatively few publications (Table 7) dealing with crucial elements of risk assessment (32 articles), prevention (22 articles), early warning (4 articles) and quarantine procedures (4 articles).

**TABLE 7.**—Numbers of articles in bibliography referring to various categories of utilisation and management of alien invasive organisms

Utilisation	Nos of articles	Management	Nos of articles
Aquaculture	114	Biocontrol	516
Angling	108	Chemical control	60
Sylviculture	28	Evaluation	53
Horticulture	19	Integrated control	48
Grazing	18	Restoration	47
Fuelwood	9	Conflict of interests	39
Aquaria	4	Plant pathogen	39
Soil stabilisation	3	Legislation	36
Medicinal	2	Risk assessment	32
Agroforestry	2	Prevention	22
		Early warning	4
		Quarantine	4
Other	22	Other	242
Total	329	Total	1142

## 6.2.2 Ecosystem, biome and habitat

Among aquatic ecosystems (Table 8), the greatest numbers of articles dealt with alien invasive organisms in riverine habitats (144 articles) followed by artificial impoundments (94 articles), fish ponds (44 articles) and marine habitats (44 articles).

Among terrestrial ecosystems, the greatest number of articles dealt with alien invasive organisms in the Fynbos Biome (285 articles), followed by the Savanna Biome (89 articles) and Forest Biome (57 articles). Even though articles on alien invasive organisms in terrestrial ecosystems were substantially greater in number than those in aquatic ecosystems (Table 8), there were proportionately smaller numbers of articles dealing with the utilisation of alien invasive organisms in terrestrial than aquatic environments (Table 7). Sylviculture, horticulture, fuel-wood, grazing, soil stabilisation, and agroforestry collectively accounted for 79 articles dealing with utilisation of alien invasive organisms (predominantly plants) in terrestrial ecosystems—this in comparison with angling, aquaculture and aquaria which collectively accounted for 226 articles referring to utilisation of alien invasive organisms (mainly fish) in aquatic environments (Table 7). Sub-Antarctic ecosystems were also relatively well represented in the bibliography, with 34 articles dealing with alien invasive organisms in this environment as were urban habitats with 40 articles referring to alien invasive organisms in this transformed ecosystem (Table 8).

Of the 635 articles that dealt with impacts of alien invasive organisms on various components of natural and transformed ecosystems, native flora and fauna and interspecific interactions (Table 9), those that featured most prominently in the bibliography dealt with impacts on plants (86 articles),

followed by birds (79 articles), fish (76 articles), biodiversity (54 articles) and hydrology (31 articles). Impacts on relations between parasites and host organisms (mainly introduced fish parasites impacting native fishes) were the most frequently reported interspecific interaction (22 articles).

TABLE 8.—Numbers of articles in bibliography referring to various biomes and habitats of aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems infested by alien invasive organisms

Aquatic Ecosystem				Terrestrial Ecosystem			
		Biome/Habitat	Nos of articles			Biome/Habitat	Nos of articles
Freshwater	Natural	River	144	Natural	Fynbos	285	
		Pan	25		Savanna	89	
		Riparian	16		Forest	57	
		Wetland	3		Karoo	42	
	Artificial	Impoundment	94		Nama-Karoo	4	
		Fishpond	44		Succulent Karoo	1	
		Canal	5		Grassland	30	
Estuarine	Natural	Estuary	20	Insular	Coastal Island	11	
					Subantarctic Island	34	
Marine	Natural	Marine	44	Transformed	Urban	40	
		Intertidal	5		Sylvicultural	8	
			Agricultural		3		
			Pasture		1		
			Rangeland		1		
			Roadside		1		

TABLE 9.—Numbers of articles in bibliography referring to various components of natural and transformed ecosystems, native flora and fauna and interspecific interactions impacted on by invasive alien organisms

Ecosystem type			Native Fauna		Native Flora		Interspecific Interactions	
Component		Nos of articles	Component	Nos of articles	Component	Nos of articles	Category	Nos of articles
Natural	Biodiversity	54	Mollusc	1	Plant	89	Parasitism	22
			Fish	76	Litter	5	Hybridization	13
			Amphibian	5			Myrmemochory	11
	Hydrology	31	Bird	79			Predation	11
							Disease	7
					Nesting	31	Mutualism	7
					Roosting	3	Pollination	7
Degradation	10		Gleaning	5			Allelopathy	3
Erosion	9						Toxicity	2
Transformed	Agriculture	6	Mammal	6			Pathogen	2
	Apiculture	3				Rodent	3	
	Grazing	4		Ungulate	1			

Plant form and taxonomic groups

Among the alien flora (Table 10), the greatest number of articles dealt with woody plants (766 articles) of which the genera *Acacia* (232 articles), *Hakea* (114 articles) *Pinus* (89 articles) and *Solanum* (88 articles) were most frequently mentioned (Table 11). Noteworthy were the relatively few articles (Appendix 3) dealing with two of the most widespread and abundant alien woody plant genera in South Africa (Nel *et al.* 2004), namely *Prosopis* (35 articles) and *Populus* (6 articles only).

Succulent plants (Table 10) comprised the second most cited alien floral life form (208 articles), with the genus *Opuntia* (Table 11) most frequently mentioned (228 articles), the earliest entries dating back to 1858 (McGibbon 1858). The invasion of South Africa's semi-arid rangelands by several species of *Opuntia* has been supplemented by numerous other alien invasive members of the cactus family in recent decades. That South Africa should be prone to invasion by alien succulents is not surprising considering that the country's ecosystems, which comprise 34% of all the world's succulent plant species, seem particularly suited to plants of this life form. Clearly, increased capacity needs to be developed with respect to understanding and managing alien invasive succulents in South Africa's arid ecosystems, especially as only 11% of the audited

TABLE 10.—Numbers of articles in the bibliography referring to different life forms of alien invasive organisms

Alien Fauna			Alien Flora		
Life form		Nos of articles	Life form		Nos of articles
Microbes	Infecting Plants	29	Aquatic	Phytoplankton	4
	Infecting Fish	20		Macrophytes	169
	Infecting Mammals	1	Terrestrial		
Invertebrates	Cnidaria	2		Herbaceous plants	57
	Insects	88		Succulent plants	206
	Crustaceans	29		Woody plants	765
	Moluscs	38			
	Ascidians	1			
Vertebrates	Fish	509			
	Amphibians	13			
	Reptiles	7			
	Birds	696			
	Mammals	35			

experts collectively designated the arid Nama-Karoo, Succulent Karoo and Desert Biomes as their areas of speciality (Table 3), with even a fewer 2.5% (4 out of 163 experts) indicating a speciality in alien succulent plants (Table 5). The third most cited alien floral life form in the bibliography (Table 10) was the aquatic macrophytes (170 articles), with the genus *Eichhornia* (Table 11) most frequently mentioned (90 articles), followed by the genera *Azolla* (30 articles), *Myriophyllum* (28 articles) and *Salvinia* (26 articles). Here again, in view of the small numbers of experts (8 out of 163) specifying a speciality in aquatic macrophytes and the enormous threat posed by alien water plants to recreational and economic water use in both natural and artificial freshwater bodies in South Africa, there is also a need for the development of increased capacity in this field.

Among the alien fauna (Table 10), the greatest number of articles dealt with birds (696 articles) of which the genera *Passer* (335 articles), *Sturnus* (209 articles), *Acridotheres* (175 articles) and *Fringilla* (67 articles) were most commonly referred to (Table 11). The copious literature on this life form is in part due to the numerous short notes published by especially amateur ornithologists recording the spread of various alien bird species, such as the house sparrow *Passer domesticus* (Winterbottom 1972) and European starling *Sturnus vulgaris* throughout South Africa, a process actively encouraged by South Africa's few professional ornithologists. Similar participation by the angling fraternity in documenting in angling magazines and other popular articles the spread of alien fishes into river systems and impoundments has also resulted in abundant articles dealing with this life form (509 articles). Indeed, the most frequently referred to alien fish genus (Table 11) was *Salmo* (249 articles), followed by the genera *Micropterus* (157 articles), *Cyprinus* (156 articles) and *Lepomis* (88 articles). The genus *Salmo* including two widespread and highly prized angling fish species in South Africa, namely the rainbow trout *S. gairdneri* and brown trout *S. trutta*.

TABLE 11.—Number of articles in bibliography referring to most frequently cited genera in different life forms of alien invasive organisms

Alien fauna		Genera	Alien flora		Genera
Microbes	Infecting plants	<i>Phytophthora</i> (5), <i>Armillaria</i> (2), <i>Amylostereum</i> (1), <i>Sphaeropsis</i> (1)	Aquatic	Phytoplankton	<i>Cladophora</i> (2), <i>Gymnodinium</i> (1)
	Infecting fish	<i>Argulus</i> (6), <i>Bothriocephalus</i> (5), <i>Lernaea</i> (4), <i>Myxosoma</i> (4)		Macrophytes	<i>Eichhornia</i> (90), <i>Azolla</i> (30), <i>Myriophyllum</i> (28), <i>Salvinia</i> (25)
	Infecting mammals	-			
Invertebrates	Cnidaria	<i>Craspedacusta</i> (2)	Terrestrial	Herbaceous plants	<i>Cirsium</i> (9), <i>Xanthium</i> (8) <i>Ageratina</i> (5), <i>Amaranthus</i> (3) <i>Stipa</i> (30), <i>Agrostis</i> (3), <i>Cortaderia</i> (1), <i>Pennisetum</i> (1)
	Insects	<i>Linepithema</i> (25), <i>Plutella</i> (3), <i>Cardiocondyla</i> (2), <i>Paratrechina</i> (2)		Succulent plants	<i>Opuntia</i> (228), <i>Pereskia</i> (7), <i>Harrisia</i> (6), <i>Cereus</i> (3)
	Crustaceans	<i>Daphnia</i> (11), <i>Cherax</i> (8), <i>Macrobrachium</i> (5), <i>Procambarus</i> (5),		Woody plants	<i>Acacia</i> (232), <i>Hakea</i> (114), <i>Pinus</i> (89), <i>Solanum</i> (88), <i>Lantana</i> (76), <i>Chromolaena</i> (69), <i>Sesbania</i> (50), <i>Paraserianthes</i> (37), <i>Prosopis</i> (35), <i>Eucalyptus</i> (33), <i>Leptospermum</i> (30), <i>Rubus</i> (29)
	Molluscs	<i>Lymnaea</i> (20), <i>Mytilus</i> (9), <i>Physa</i> (9), <i>Helisoma</i> (6), <i>Pila</i> (2), <i>Thais</i> (2),			
	Ascidians	-			
Vertebrates	Fish	<i>Salmo</i> (249), <i>Micropterus</i> (157), <i>Cyprinus</i> (156), <i>Lepomis</i> (88), <i>Tinca</i> (43)			
	Amphibians	<i>Cryptobranchus</i> (2)			
	Reptiles	<i>Chrysemys</i> (2), <i>Ramphotyphlops</i> (2)			
	Birds	<i>Passer</i> (335), <i>Sturnus</i> (209), <i>Acridotheres</i> (175), <i>Fringilla</i> (67), <i>Cygnus</i> (40), <i>Columba</i> (33), <i>Anas</i> (29), <i>Corvus</i> (27) <i>Psittacula</i> (25)			
	Mammals	<i>Mus</i> (12), <i>Hemitragus</i> (5), <i>Rattus</i> (7), <i>Felis</i> (6), <i>Sciurus</i> (3)			

## 7. Register of expertise

### Allardice, R. Mr (Rory)

Higher Dipl. Nature Conservation, Saasveld School of Forestry (Port Elizabeth Technikon), 1992

Affiliation: n/a

Post title: n/a

Address: PO Box 904, Bredasdorp, 7280

Tel: 028 425 2000

Cell: 082 929 9904

E-mail: rory@buchu-bushcamp.com

Area of expertise: Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos

Fields: Management; Education (lecturer), Evaluation; Assessment

Groups: Woody plant

Main genera: *Acacia*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

### Allsopp, N. Dr (Nicky)

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1992

Affiliation: Agricultural Research Council

Post title: Senior Researcher

Address: ARC-Range and Forage Institute, University of the Western Cape, Private Bag X17, Bellville, 7535

Tel: 021 959 3373

Fax: 021 959 1376

E-mail: nallsopp@uwc.ac.za

Area of expertise: Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos

Fields: Ecophysiology (nutrients; mycorrhizas)

Groups: Woody plant

Main genera: *Hakea*, *Acacia*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

### Anderson, M.D. Mr (Mark)

M.Sc., University of Pretoria (University of KwaZulu-Natal, currently), 1994

Affiliation: Department of Tourism, Environment and Conservation, Northern Cape

Post title: Specialist Nature Conservation Scientist (ornithologist)

Address: Scientific Services, Department of Tourism, Environment and Tourism, Northern Cape, Private Bag X6102, Kimberley, 8300

Tel: 053 807 4813

Fax: 053 831 3530

Cell: 082 788 0961

E-mail: manderson@half.ncape.gov.za

Area of expertise: Northern Cape

Biomes/habitats: Nama-Karoo; Savanna

Fields: Bird; Mutualism (birds and alien plants)

Groups: Bird

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: No

### Anderson, T.A. Mrs (Tania)

M.Sc., University of the Free State, 2005

Affiliation: KMG Herbarium, McGregor Museum

Post title: Principal Museum Scientist

Address: Botany Department, McGregor Museum, PO Box 316, Kimberley, 8300

Tel: 053 839 2713

Fax: 053 842 1433

E-mail: kmgbot@museumsnc.co.za, spothil@yahoo.co.uk

Area of expertise: Northern Cape; Kalahari

Biomes/habitats: Savanna

Fields: Ecology; Taxonomy

Groups: Woody plant

Main genera: *Prosopis*, *Nicotiana*, *Schinus*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

### Armstrong, A.J. Dr (Adrian)

Ph.D., Stellenbosch University, 1996

Affiliation: Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife

Post title: Nature Conservation Scientist

Address: Biodiversity Division, Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife, PO Box 13053, Cascades, Pietermaritzburg, 3202

Tel: 033 845 1433

Fax: 033 845 1226

E-mail: aarmstrong@kznwildlife.com

Area of expertise: KwaZulu-Natal

Biomes/habitats: Savanna; Grassland; Forest

Fields: Risk assessment

Groups: Reptile; Butterfly

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: No

### Arnolds, J.L. Ms (Judith)

M.Sc., North-West University, 2007

Affiliation: South African National Biodiversity Institute

Post title: Chief Agricultural Development Technician

Address: Research and Scientific Services, South African National Biodiversity Institute, Private Bag X7, Claremont, 7735

Tel: 021 799 8800

Cell: 083 513 4838

E-mail: arnolds@sanbi.org

Area of expertise: Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos

Fields: Ecology; Physiology

Groups: Grasses

Main Genera: *Lolium*

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: No

### Ashton, P.J. Dr (Pete)

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 1983

Affiliation: Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

Post title: Divisional Fellow and Principal Scientist

Address: CSIR-Environmentek, Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, PO Box 395, Pretoria, 0001

Tel: 012 841 3293  
 Fax: 012 841 2689  
 E-mail: pashton@csir.co.za  
 Area of expertise: Southern Africa  
 Biomes/habitats: Aquatic ecosystems  
 Fields: Integrated control; Strategic; Planning  
 Groups: Aquatic plant (floating)  
 Main genera: *Azolla*, *Eichhornia*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Attwood, C.G. Dr (Colin)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 2003  
 Affiliation: Marine and Coastal Management,  
 Department of Environmental Affairs and  
 Tourism  
 Post title: Senior Specialist Scientist  
 Address: Marine and Coastal Management,  
 Department of Environmental Affairs and  
 Tourism, Private Bag X2, Cape Town, 8012  
 Tel: 021 402 3190  
 Fax: 021 421 7406  
 E-mail: cattwood@deat.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Marine  
 Fields: Nonspecific  
 Groups: All (marine)  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Awad, A.A. Mr (Adnan)**

M.Sc., University of Cape Town, 2000  
 Affiliation: Global Invasive Species Programme  
 Post title: Marine Program/Consultant  
 Address: GISP, Kirstenbosch, South African  
 National Biodiversity Institute, Private Bag X7,  
 Claremont, 7735  
 Tel: 021 799 8815  
 Fax: 021 797 1561  
 Cell: 082 785 9678  
 E-mail: awad@sanbi.org  
 Area of expertise: Africa (esp. southern and  
 eastern), global  
 Biomes/habitats: Marine  
 Fields: Management; Survey; Risk assessment;  
 Strategic; Policy  
 Groups: All (marine)  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Baard, E. Dr (Ernst)**

Ph.D., Stellenbosch University, 1990  
 Affiliation: Scientific Services, CapeNature  
 Post title: Manager  
 Address: Scientific Services, CapeNature, Private  
 Bag 5014, Stellenbosch, 7599  
 Tel: 021 866 8001  
 Fax: 021 866 1523  
 Cell: 082 414 0424  
 E-mail: baarde@cncjnk.wcape.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA; Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Succulent Karoo; Nama-  
 Karoo; Freshwater  
 Fields: Identification; Risk assessment  
 Groups: Reptile; Amphibian  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Barnard, P.E. Dr (Phoebe)**

Ph.D., Uppsala University, Sweden, 1994  
 Affiliation: South African National Biodiversity  
 Institute and Global Invasive Species  
 Programme  
 Post title: Senior Specialist Scientist  
 Address: Global Change Research Group, South  
 African National Biodiversity Institute, Private  
 Bag X7, Claremont, 7735  
 Tel: 021 799 8722  
 Fax: 021 797 6903  
 E-mail: barnard@sanbi.org  
 Area of expertise: Namibia; Global  
 Biomes/habitats: Desert; Ephemeral river courses;  
 Arid savanna; Fynbos  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Evolution; Global  
 change  
 Groups: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Bester, J. Mr (Johan)**

M.Sc., University of Wolverhampton, 1999  
 Affiliation: Department of Water Affairs and Forestry  
 Post title: Deputy Director: Forestry Policy and  
 Strategy  
 Address: Department of Water Affairs and Forestry,  
 Private Bag X93, Pretoria, 0001  
 Tel: 012 336 8171  
 Fax: 012 336 6663  
 E-mail: besterj@dwaf.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: Mpumalanga; Limpopo Province;  
 Gauteng; Free State  
 Biomes/habitats: Savanna; Grassland  
 Fields: Risk assessment; Regeneration; Utilisation;  
 Social (community participation)  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Private Consulting: No

**Bester, M.N. Prof. (Marthán)**

D.Sc., University of Pretoria, 1977  
 Affiliation: Mammal Research Institute  
 Post title: Acting Director  
 Address: Zoology and Entomology Department,  
 University of Pretoria, c/o Lynnwood and  
 University Roads, Pretoria, 0002  
 Tel: 012 420 2067  
 Fax: 012 420 2534  
 E-mail: mnbester@zoology.up.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: Subantarctic  
 Biomes/habitats: Islands (Continental and Oceanic)  
 Fields: Management; Eradication  
 Groups: Mammal  
 Main genera: *Felis*, *Mus*, *Rattus*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes



**Bezuidenhout, L. Mrs (Liezl)**

B.Tech. Conservation, Cape Technikon, 2001

Affiliation: Working for Water Programme

Post title: Area Manager

Address: Working for Water Regional Office  
Bellville, Department of Water Affairs and  
Forestry, PO Box X16, Sanlamhof, Bellville,  
7535

Tel: 021 950 7100

Fax: 021 950 7118

Cell: 082 908 4729

E-mail: bezuidl@dwaf.gov.za

Area of expertise: Western Cape; Southern Cape;  
Eastern Cape

Biomes/habitats: Afromontane Forest; Fynbos

Fields: Strategic; Planning; Management;  
Technique; ResearchGroups: Woody plant; Herbaceous plant (esp. forest  
IAS)

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

**Bezuidenhout, R. Mr (Ryno)**

University of South Africa

Affiliation: Western Cape Reptile Institute

Post title: Researcher

Address: Western Cape Region, Western Cape  
Reptile Institute, 32 Kantbos Street, Kuils  
River, Cape Town, 8000

Tel: 021 787 1618

Fax: 021 787 1622

Cell: 084 789 7000

E-mail: bezuidl@dwaf.gov.za

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Forest; Karoo; Desert

Fields: Ecology; Research

Groups: Reptile (esp. snake)

Main genera: *Bitis*, *Naja*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

**Bromilow, C.R. Mr (Clive)**

B.Sc.(Hons), Liverpool Polytechnic (UK), 1973

Affiliation: Biological Control Products

Post title: n/a

Address: Biological Control Products, PO Box  
15132, Westmead, 3610

Tel: 031 700 4625

Fax: 031 700 1338

Cell: 082 417 6886

E-mail: clive@biocontrol.co.za

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: All

Fields: Distribution; Photography; Management

Groups: Plant

Private Consulting: Yes

**Byrne, M.J. Prof. (Marcus)**

Ph.D., University of the Witwatersrand, 1998

Affiliation: University of the Witwatersrand

Post title: Associate Professor

Address: Animal Plant and Environmental Sciences  
Department, University of the Witwatersrand,  
Private Bag 3, Wits, 2050

Tel: 011 717 6491

Fax: 011 403 1429

E-mail: marcus@gecko.biol.wits.ac.za

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Freshwater; Terrestrial

Fields: Biocontrol; Evaluation (post-release)

Groups: n/a

Main genera: *Eichhornia*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

**Cambray, J.A. Dr (Jim)**

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 1992

Affiliation: Makana Biodiversity Centre, Albany  
Museum

Post title: Senior Specialist Scientist

Address: Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries  
Science, PO Box 94, Grahamstown, 6140

Tel: 046 622 2312

Fax: 046 622 2398

E-mail: J.Cambray@ru.ac.za

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Freshwater

Fields: Survey; Planning; Eradication; Education  
(awareness)

Groups: Fish

Main genera: *Clarias*, *Micropterus*, *Oncorhynchus*,  
*Tilapia*, *Salmo*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

**Chown, S.L. Prof. (Steven)**

Ph.D., University of Pretoria, 1989

Affiliation: Centre for Invasion Biology, Stellenbosch  
University

Post title: Director

Address: Centre for Invasion Biology, Stellenbosch  
University, Private Bag X1, Matieland, 7602

Tel: 021 808 2385

Fax: 021 808 2995

Cell: 082 788 1410

E-mail: slchown@sun.ac.za

Area of expertise: RSA; Subantarctic; Antarctic

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Savanna; Subantarctic;  
AntarcticFields: Ecology (macro-, community); Ecosystem  
function

Groups: Insect; Mammal; Plant

Main genera: n/a

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

**Cilliers, C.J. Dr (Carina)**

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 1983

Affiliation: Weeds Unit, Plant Protection Research  
Institute, Agricultural Research Council

Post title: Specialist Researcher, RETIRED

Address: PO Box 1136, Wapadrand, Pretoria, 0050  
 Tel: 012 807 3594  
 Cell: 072 227 5675  
 E-mail: cillierscarina@telkomsa.net  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Savanna; Freshwater  
 Fields: Management (technique); Planning; Operational; Evaluation  
 Groups: Woody plant; Aquatic plant  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Clark, B.M. Dr (Barry)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1997  
 Affiliation: University of Cape Town  
 Post title: Research Associate  
 Address: Anchor Environmental Consultants CC,  
 PO Box 34035, Rhodes Gift, 7707  
 Tel: 021 685 3400  
 Fax: 021 685 3401  
 Cell: 082 373 0521  
 E-mail: bclark@botzoo.uct.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Marine; Freshwater  
 Fields: Risk assessment; Planning; Management; Impact assessment  
 Groups: All (marine); Fish (freshwater)  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Cobbing, B.L. Mr (Ben)**

B.Sc., Rhodes University, 2003  
 Affiliation: Conservation Support Services  
 Post title: GIS Project Manager  
 Address: Conservation Support Services, PO Box  
 504, Grahamstown, 6140  
 Tel: 046 622 4526  
 Fax: 046 622 4526  
 Cell: 082 445 1049  
 E-mail: bcobbing@cssgis.co.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats:  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Mapping; Distribution  
 Groups: Plant  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Coetzee, A. Mr (Andre)**

Higher Dipl. Forestry Conservation, Saasveld  
 School of Forestry (Port Elizabeth Technikon),  
 1993  
 Affiliation: Mpumalanga Parks Board  
 Post title: Acting Chief Executive Officer  
 Address: Conservation, Mpumalanga Parks Board,  
 Private Bag X11338, Nelspruit, 1200  
 Tel: 013 759 5308  
 Fax: 013 759 5346  
 Cell: 083 626 6305  
 E-mail: andre.coetzee@pboard1.agric.za

Area of expertise: Mpumalanga  
 Biomes/habitats: Grassland  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Management; Fisheries  
 Groups: n/a  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Colahan, B.D. Mr (Brian)**

M.Sc., University of Natal, 1984  
 Affiliation: Scientific Support, Environmental Affairs  
 Directorate, Free State Department of Tourism,  
 Environment and Economic Affairs  
 Post title: Principal Nature Conservation Scientist  
 (Ornithology)  
 Address: Environmental Affairs Directorate, Free  
 State Tourism, Environment and Economic  
 Affairs, Private Bag X20801, Bloemfontein,  
 9300  
 Tel: 051 400 4787  
 Fax: 051 400 4811  
 E-mail: colahan@dteea.fs.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: Free State  
 Biomes/habitats: Grassland; Karoo; Arid savanna;  
 Afromontane Forest; Freshwater  
 Fields: Ecology; Conservation management  
 Groups: Bird  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Crawford, R.J.M. Prof. (Robert)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1979  
 Affiliation: Marine and Coastal Management,  
 Department of Environment and Tourism  
 Post title: Chief Specialist Scientist  
 Address: Department of Environmental Affairs and  
 Tourism, Marine and Coastal Management,  
 Private Bag X2, Rogge Bay, 8012  
 Tel: 021 402 3140  
 Fax: 021 421 7406  
 E-mail: crawford@deat.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Marine  
 Fields: Population dynamics  
 Groups: Bird (marine)  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Pinus*, *Eucalyptus*, *Myoporum*,  
*Felis*, *Oryctolagus*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Culross, B.R. Mr (Brian)**

B.Sc., Aberdeen University, Scotland, 1966  
 Affiliation: n/a  
 Post title: n/a  
 Address: 23 Lange Avenue, Quellerina, Florida,  
 1709  
 Cell: 083 649 6164  
 E-mail: brian.culross@isat.co.za  
 Area of expertise: Gauteng; KwaZulu-Natal  
 Biomes/habitats: Savanna  
 Fields: Identification (field)  
 Groups: Herbaceous plant; Woody plant

Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Daitz, L.D. Mr (David)**

MBA, University of Cape Town, 1983  
 Affiliation: CapeNature  
 Post title: Chief Executive Officer  
 Address: CapeNature, Private Bag X29,  
 Rondebosch, 7701  
 Tel: 021 659 3400  
 Fax: 021 659 3415  
 Cell: 083 412 1570  
 E-mail: ddaitz@pgwc.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Grassland  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Operational  
 Groups: Woody plant; Plant (plantation)  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Pinus*, *Hakea*, *Rubus*, *Setaria*,  
*Solanum*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Damm, G.R. Mr (Gerhard)**

Affiliation: n/a  
 Post title: n/a  
 Address: PO Box 411, Rivonia, 2128  
 Tel: 011 883 2299  
 Fax: 011 784 2074  
 E-mail: gerhard@muskwa.co.za  
 Area of expertise: n/a  
 Biomes/habitats: n/a  
 Fields: Introduction (non-indigenous game)  
 Groups: Mammal (large)  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Day, J. Prof. (Jenny)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1978  
 Affiliation: Freshwater Research Unit, University of  
 Cape Town  
 Post title: Director  
 Address: Zoology Department, University of Cape  
 Town, Private Bag, Rondebosch, 7701  
 Tel: 021 650 3604  
 Fax: 021 650 3301  
 E-mail: jday@botzoo.uct.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Freshwater  
 Fields: n/a  
 Groups: All (freshwater)  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: No

**De Moor, F.C. Dr (Ferdy)**

Ph.D., University of the Witwatersrand, 1983  
 Affiliation: Albany Museum, Makana Biodiversity  
 Centre, Department of Freshwater  
 Invertebrates

Post title: Senior Specialist Researcher  
 Address: Freshwater Invertebrates, Albany  
 Museum, Somerset Street, Grahamstown,  
 6139  
 Tel: 046 622 2312  
 Fax: 046 622 2398  
 E-mail: f.demoor@ru.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Freshwater  
 Fields: Distribution; Biosystematics  
 Groups: Invertebrate (freshwater )  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**De Moor, I.J. Ms (Irene)**

M.Sc., Rhodes University, 1993  
 Affiliation: Southern African Institute of Aquatic  
 Biodiversity  
 Post title: Associate Research Officer  
 Address: Freshwater Invertebrates, Albany  
 Museum, Somerset Street, Grahamstown,  
 6139  
 Tel: 046 622 2312  
 Fax: 046 622 2398  
 E-mail: i.demoor@ru.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: Africa  
 Biomes/habitats: Freshwater  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Advisor; Management  
 (protocols); Editor  
 Groups: Invertebrate (freshwater ); Fish  
 (freshwater); Mollusc  
 Main genera: *Cherax*, *Procambarus*, *Salmo*,  
*Micropterus*  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Dean, W.R.J. Dr (Richard)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1995  
 Affiliation: Percy FitzPatrick Institute, University of  
 Cape Town  
 Post title: Chief Research Officer  
 Address: PO Box 47, Prince Albert, 6930  
 Tel: 023 541 1828  
 Fax: 023 541 1828  
 E-mail: lycium@mweb.co.za  
 Area of expertise: Southern Africa  
 Biomes/habitats: Karoo; Savanna  
 Fields: Distribution; Ecology  
 Groups: Bird  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: No

**den Dulk, H.P. Mr (Harmen)**

Nat Dipl, Technikon Pretoria, 1971  
 Affiliation: Soil Conservation, Gauteng Department  
 of Agriculture, Conservation and Environment  
 Post title: Control Technician  
 Address: Natural Resource Management, Gauteng  
 Department of Agriculture, Conservation and  
 Environment, PO Box 8769, Johannesburg,  
 2000  
 Tel: 011 355 1266

Fax: 011 355 1000  
 Cell: 082 759 7099  
 E-mail: harmen.denDulk@gauteng.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: Gauteng  
 Biomes/habitats: Savanna; Riparian zone  
 Fields: Soil-conservation; Management (plant);  
 Eradication  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Erasmus, W.Z. Mr (Zane)**

Higher Dipl. Nature Conservation, Saasveld School  
 of Forestry (Port Elizabeth Technikon), 1989  
 Affiliation: CapeNature  
 Post title: Programme Manager: Fire  
 Address: 15 Madison Square, Edgemead, 7441  
 Tel: 021 558 4168  
 Fax: 086 672 6562  
 Cell: 082 414 6344  
 E-mail: wze@netactive.co.za  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Fire; Management  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Hakea*, *Pinus*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Esler, K.J. Prof. (Karen)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1993  
 Affiliation: Department of Conservation Ecology,  
 University of Stellenbosch  
 Post title: Associate Professor  
 Address: Department of Conservation Ecology,  
 Stellenbosch University, Private Bag X1,  
 Matieland, 7602  
 Tel: 021 808 4005  
 Fax: 021 808 3304  
 E-mail: kje@sun.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: South Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Karoo  
 Fields: Seed-biology; Ecology (general)  
 Groups: Woody plant; Grass  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Argemone*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Euston-Brown, D.I.W. Mr (Douglas)**

M.Sc., University of Cape Town, 1995  
 Affiliation: n/a  
 Post title: Private Consultant  
 Address: PO Box 44066, Scarborough, 7975  
 Tel: 021 780 1214  
 Fax: 021 780 1214  
 Cell: 082 897 8866  
 E-mail: dougeb@netactive.co.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Forest; Thicket; Savanna  
 Fields: Mapping (vegetation); Survey (botanical);  
 Research

Groups: n/a  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Findlay, J.B.R. Dr (Jim)**

D.Sc., University of Pretoria, 1975  
 Affiliation: Commercial Weed Control  
 Post title: Consultant  
 Address: Agricultural Resource Consultants, PO  
 Box 3474, Parklands, 2121  
 Tel: 011 486 2254  
 Fax: 011 486 2274  
 E-mail: agrecon@pixie.co.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial; Freshwater  
 Fields: Management; Technique (chemical  
 development); Planning; Restoration  
 Groups: Woody plant; Aquatic plant  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Foden, W.B. Ms (Wendy)**

M.Sc., University of Cape Town, 2001  
 Affiliation: South African National Biodiversity  
 Institute  
 Post title: Programme Manager  
 Address: Biodiversity, Policy and Planning, South  
 African National Biodiversity Institute, Private  
 Bag X101, Pretoria, 0001  
 Tel: 012 843 5288  
 Fax: 012 843 5219  
 Cell: 084 442 9141  
 E-mail: foden@sanbi.org  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Ecology (fire and regeneration)  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: No

**Foxcroft, L.C. Mr (Llewellyn)**

M.Tech. Nature Conservation, Tshwane University  
 of Technology (Pretoria Technikon), 2003  
 Affiliation: Savanna Ecosystem Research Unit,  
 South African National Parks  
 Post title: Programme Manager: Invasion Ecology  
 and River Research  
 Address: Savanna Ecosystem Research Unit, South  
 African National Parks, Private Bag X402,  
 Skukuza, 1350  
 Tel: 013 735 4125  
 Fax: 013 735 4055  
 Cell: 082 908 2676  
 E-mail: llewellynf@sanparks.org  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Savanna  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Management;  
 Monitoring  
 Groups: Woody plant (shrub)  
 Main genera: *Opuntia*

Institutional Consulting: No  
Private Consulting: Yes

**Freitag-Ronaldson, S. Dr (Stefanie)**

Ph.D., University of Pretoria, 1996  
Affiliation: South African National Parks  
Post title: Programme Integrator: Human Impacts and Species Research  
Address: Scientific Services, South African National Parks, PO Box 830, Hoedspruit, 1380  
Tel: 015 793 0402  
Fax: 015 793 0402  
Cell: 082 908 2678  
E-mail: stefanief@sanparks.org  
Area of expertise: Kruger National Park  
Biomes/habitats: Savanna  
Fields: Strategic; Planning; Impact assessment (conservation)  
Groups: Woody plant (esp.); Fish; Invertebrate  
Institutional Consulting: Yes  
Private Consulting: No

**Geach, B.G.S. Ms (Bev)**

M.Sc., University of Port Elizabeth, 1997  
Affiliation: n/a  
Post title: Project Manager  
Address: DEAT—but only to June 2005  
Tel: 012 310 3919 (only valid to end June 2005)  
Fax: 012 320 7026  
Cell: 082 787 8252  
E-mail: bgeach@deat.gov.za (to June 2005) or stadfam@iafrica.com  
Area of expertise: RSA  
Biomes/habitats: Nonspecific  
Fields: Policy, Strategic; Planning; Management  
Groups: n/a  
Institutional Consulting: No  
Private Consulting: Yes

**Geldenhuys, C.J. Prof. (Coert)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1989  
Affiliation: Forestwood CC  
Post title: Owner and sole member  
Address: Forestwood CC, PO Box 228, La Montagne, 0184  
Tel: 012 803 3277  
Fax: 012 803 3277  
Cell: 082 776 1593  
E-mail: cgelden@mweb.co.za  
Area of expertise: RSA; Southern Africa  
Biomes/habitats: Forest  
Fields: Utilisation (sustainable use, timber, nontimber); Restoration; Ecology  
Groups: Woody plant (esp. forest)  
Institutional Consulting: Yes  
Private Consulting: Yes

**Gets, H. Mrs (Hettie)**

HED, B.A., University of South Africa, 1999  
Affiliation: Conservation Education Programme, WWF South Africa

Post title: Manager

Address: Conservation, WWF South Africa, Private Bag X2, Stellenbosch, 7613  
Tel: 021 888 2834  
Fax: 021 888 2888  
Cell: 082 891 0831  
E-mail: hgets@wwf.org.za  
Area of expertise: RSA  
Biomes/habitats: Nonspecific  
Fields: Education (environmental); Capacity building; Training (course development), Networking; Teaching resource development  
Groups: n/a  
Main genera: n/a  
Institutional Consulting: Yes  
Private Consulting: No

**Gibbs, D.J. Mr (Dalton Gibbs)**

B.Tech. Nature Conservation, CAPUT, 1999  
Affiliation: City of Cape Town, Nature Conservation  
Post title: Nature Conservator  
Address: Nature Conservation, City of Cape Town, Fishermans Walk, Zeekoevlei, Cape Town, 7941  
Tel: 021 706 2404  
Fax: 021 705 2509  
E-mail: rondevlei@sybaweb.co.za  
Area of expertise: RSA  
Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Freshwater; Urban  
Fields: Planning; Management; Operational  
Groups: Bird; Fish; Plant (high altitude rope access)  
Main genera: *Anas*, *Corvus*, *Cyprinus*, *Clarias*  
Institutional Consulting: No  
Private Consulting: Yes

**Goodall, J.M. Mr (Jeremy)**

M.Sc., University of Natal, 2000  
Affiliation: Weeds Unit, Plant Protection Research Institute, Agricultural Research Council  
Post title: Researcher  
Address: Weeds Laboratory, ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, PO Box 532, Hilton, 3245  
Tel: 033 355 9416  
Fax: 033 355 9423  
E-mail: goodallj@arc.agric.za  
Area of expertise: RSA  
Biomes/habitats: Grassland; Savanna  
Fields: Integrated control (herbicides, mechanical, fire, utilisation); Management; Ecology; Training  
Groups: Herbaceous plant; Woody plant (esp. Asteraceae)  
Main genera: *Campuloclinium*, *Chromolaena*, *Parthenium* (at present)  
Institutional Consulting: Yes  
Private Consulting: n/a

**Gordon, A.J. Mr (Tony)**

M.Sc., Rhodes University, 1993  
Affiliation: Weeds Unit, Plant Protection Research Institute, Agricultural Research Council  
Post title: Senior Researcher

Address: Weeds Unit, ARC-Plant Protection  
Research Institute, Private Bag X5017,  
Stellenbosch, 7599

Tel: 021 887 4690

Fax: 021 883 3285

Cell: 082 829 8598

E-mail: gordont@arc.agric.za

Area of expertise: Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos

Fields: Biocontrol (plants)

Groups: Woody plant

Main genera: *Acacia*, *Hakea*, *Leptospermum*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

#### **Griffiths, C.L. Prof. (Charles)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1974

Affiliation: Marine Biology Research Institute,  
Zoology Department, University of Cape Town

Post title: Director

Address: Zoology Department, University of Cape  
Town, Rondebosch, Cape Town, 7700

Tel: 021-6503610

Fax: 021-6503301

E-mail: clgriff@pop.uct.ac.za

Area of expertise: Southern Africa

Biomes/habitats: Marine

Fields: Biodiversity (marine); Taxonomy; Ecology  
(coastal)

Groups: Invertebrate (Amphipoda)

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

#### **Hahn, N. Mr (Norbert)**

M.Sc., University of Natal, 2003

Affiliation: Institute for the Conservation and Natural  
History of the Soutpansberg, Herbarium  
Soutpansbergensis

Post title: Director

Address: Institute for the Conservation and Natural  
History of the Soutpansberg, Herbarium  
Soutpansbergensis, PO Box 1734, Makhado,  
0920

Tel: 015 517 7176

E-mail: nhahn@soutpansberg.com

Area of expertise: Limpopo Province; Mpumalanga;  
Maputaland,

Biomes/habitats: Forest; Savanna

Fields: Taxonomy; Endemism; Biogeography

Groups: Woody plant; Succulent

Private Consulting: Yes

#### **Hanekom, N.M. Dr (Nick)**

Ph.D., University of Port Elizabeth (NMMU), 1980

Affiliation: South African National Parks

Post title: Researcher

Address: Conservation Services, South African  
National Parks, PO Box 176, Sedgfield, 6573

Tel: 044 343 1302

Fax: 044 343 2331

E-mail: nickh@sanparks.co.za

Area of expertise: Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: Marine

Fields: Monitoring

Groups: Marine rock mussels

Main genera: *Mytilus*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

#### **Harding, G.B. Dr (Graham)**

Ph.D., University of Port Elizabeth, 1988

Affiliation: Invader Plant Specialists CC

Post title: Owner/Consultant

Address: Invader Plant Specialists CC, PO Box  
3879, Durbanville, 7551

Tel: 021 976 6127

Fax: 021 976 6127

Cell: 082 412 7411

E-mail: hartding@pixie.co.za

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: All (incl. Arid; Freshwater)

Fields: Management; Research; Technique  
(chemical development); Training

Groups: Woody plant; Aquatic plant

Main genera: n/a

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

#### **Harebottle, D.M. Mr (Doug)**

M.Sc., University of KwaZulu-Natal, 1994

Affiliation: University of Cape Town

Post title: Scientific Officer

Address: Avian Demography Unit, University  
of Cape Town, Private Bag (no number),  
Rondebosch, 7701

Tel: 021 650 2330

Fax: 021 650 3434

Cell: 082 736 3087

E-mail: doug@adu.uct.ac.za

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Freshwater

Fields: Monitoring (population)

Groups: Bird

Main genera: *Anas*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

#### **Henderson, L. Ms (Lesley)**

B.Sc.(Hons), University of the Witwatersrand, 1979

Affiliation: Weeds Unit, Plant Protection Research  
Institute, Agricultural Research Council

Post title: Senior Researcher

Address: South African National Biodiversity  
Institute, Private Bag X101, Pretoria, 0001

Tel: 012 843 5035

Fax: 012 804 3211

E-mail: henderson@sanbi.org

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Grassland; Savanna; Fynbos;  
Forest; Succulent Karoo; Nama-Karoo

Fields: Distribution; Abundance; Habitats invaded;  
Emerging weeds; Legislation; Restricted spp.

Groups: Plant (all IAS)

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

**Hill, M.P. Prof. (Martin)**

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 1994  
 Affiliation: Department of Zoology and Entomology,  
 Rhodes University  
 Post title: Associate Professor and Head of  
 Entomology  
 Address: Department of Zoology and Entomology,  
 Rhodes University, PO Box 94, Grahamstown,  
 6140  
 Tel: 046 603 8712  
 Fax: 046 622 8959  
 Cell: 073 177 0041  
 E-mail: m.p.hill@ru.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Freshwater  
 Fields: Biocontrol (aquatic plants)  
 Groups: Aquatic plant  
 Main genera: *Eichhornia*, *Azolla*, *Salvinia*, *Pistia*,  
*Myriophyllum*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Hoffman, M.T. Prof. (Timm)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1989  
 Affiliation: Leslie Hill Institute for Plant Conservation,  
 Botany Department  
 Post title: Director  
 Address: Botany Department, Leslie Hill Institute  
 for Plant Conservation, Botany Department,  
 Private Bag, Rondebosch, Cape Town, 7701  
 Tel: 021 650 2440  
 Fax: 021 650 4046  
 E-mail: thoffman@botzoo.uct.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: Northern Cape; Namaqualand  
 Biomes/habitats: Succulent Karoo  
 Fields: Distribution; Ecology  
 Groups: n/a  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: No

**Hoffmann, J.H. Prof. (John)**

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 1983  
 Affiliation: University of Cape Town  
 Post title: Chief Research Officer  
 Address: Zoology Department, University of Cape  
 Town, Private Bag, Rondebosch, 7700  
 Tel: 021 650 3400  
 Fax: 021 650 3301  
 E-mail: hoff@botzoo.uct.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial  
 Fields: Biocontrol (plants)  
 Groups: Plant (Angiosperm); Insect  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Opuntia*, *Sesbania*, *Pinus*,  
*Prosopis*, *Hakea*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Holmes, P.M. Dr (Patricia or Pat)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1989  
 Affiliation: n/a

Post title: Ecological consultant  
 Address: 23 Dreyersdal Road, Cape Town, 7845  
 Tel: 021 712 7816  
 Fax: 021 712 7816  
 E-mail: prebelo@mweb.co.za  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Riparian zone  
 Fields: Ecology; Seed bank dynamics; Impact  
 assessment (clearing); Restoration  
 Groups: Woody plant; Grass; Herbaceous plant  
 (annual)  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Pinus*, *Hakea*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Hughes, R. Mr (Rael)**

Nat. Dipl., Port Elizabeth Technikon–Saasveld, 1991  
 Affiliation: Working for Water Programme  
 Post title: Implementation Co-ordinator  
 Address: Aquatic Weed and Biocontrol Unit,  
 Working for Water, Private Bag X4390, Cape  
 Town, 8000  
 Tel: 021 441 2709  
 Fax: 021 441 2781  
 Cell: 082 857 3663  
 E-mail: hughesr@dwaf.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Freshwater  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Management; Technique  
 Groups: All (aquatic, especially aquatic plant)  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Hughes (née Mgidi), T.N. Mrs (Theresa)**

B.Sc. (Hons), University of Cape Town, 1999  
 Affiliation: Terrestrial Ecosystem Management,  
 Environmentek, Council for Scientific and  
 Industrial Research  
 Post title: Research scientist  
 Address: Division of Water, Environment and  
 Forestry Technology, Council for Scientific  
 and Industrial Research, PO Box 320,  
 Stellenbosch, 7599  
 Tel: 021 888 2608  
 Fax: 021 888 2684  
 E-mail: tmgidi@csir.co.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial; Riparian zone  
 Fields: Ecology; Management; Distribution (current  
 and potential); Population dynamics; Impact  
 assessment (biocontrol)  
 Groups: Plant (terrestrial, especially major and  
 emerging IAP)  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Hakea*, *Prosopis*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Impson, N.D. Mr (Dean)**

M.Sc., Rhodes University, 1988  
 Affiliation: Scientific Services, CapeNature  
 Post title: Principal Nature Conservation Scientist  
 Address: Scientific Services, CapeNature, Private  
 Bag X5014, Stellenbosch, 7600

Tel: 021 866 8019  
 Fax: 021 866 1523  
 Cell: 082 414 0020  
 E-mail: [impsond@cncjnk.wcape.gov.za](mailto:impsond@cncjnk.wcape.gov.za)  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Freshwater  
 Fields: Monitoring; Research; Impact; Piscicide  
 Application; Pollution; Education (awareness)  
 Groups: Fish (freshwater)  
 Main genera: *Micropterus*, *Cyprinus*, *Clarias*,  
*Tilapia*, *Oncorhynchus*, *Lepomis*, *Oreochromis*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Impson, F.A. Mrs (Fiona)**

B.Sc.(Hons), Rhodes University, 1987  
 Affiliation: University of Cape Town  
 Post title: Research officer  
 Address: Weeds Division, Plant Protection  
 Research Institute, Private Bag X5017,  
 Stellenbosch, 7599  
 Tel: 021 887 4690  
 Fax: 021 883 3285  
 Cell: 082 622 0691  
 E-mail: [impsonf@arc.agric.za](mailto:impsonf@arc.agric.za)  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape (mainly)  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Biocontrol (plants)  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Main genera: *Acacia*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Ivey, P.J. Mr (Philip)**

M.Sc., Birmingham University, 1993  
 Affiliation: Global Invasive Species Programme  
 Post title: Programme Co-ordinator  
 Address: Global Invasive Species Programme,  
 South African National Biodiversity Institute,  
 Private Bag X7, Claremont, 7735  
 Tel: 021 799 8837  
 Fax: 021 797 1561  
 E-mail: [ivey@sanbi.org](mailto:ivey@sanbi.org)  
 Area of expertise: Global  
 Biomes/habitats: Nonspecific  
 Fields: Nonspecific  
 Groups: n/a  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: No

**Jackelman, J. Mr (James)**

M.Sc., University of Cape Town, 1996  
 Affiliation: Wild Coast Project (DEAT/DEAET)  
 Post title: Project Manager  
 Address: Wild Coast Conservation and Sustainable  
 Development Project, PO Box 19829, Tecoma,  
 5214  
 Tel: 043 721 1216  
 Fax: 043 721 1217  
 E-mail: [wildcoast@sa.wild.org](mailto:wildcoast@sa.wild.org)

Area of expertise: Eastern Cape; Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Forest; Grassland  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Budget; Operational;  
 Management; Technique (mechanical,  
 chemical)  
 Groups: Woody plant; Herbaceous plant  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Jackson, L.F. Dr (Lynn)**

Ph.D., University of South Carolina, 1983  
 Affiliation: Global Invasive Species Programme  
 Post title: Director  
 Address: Global Invasive Species Programme, c/o  
 South African National Biodiversity Institute,  
 Private Bag X7, Claremont, Cape Town, 7735  
 Tel: 021 799 8838  
 Fax: 021 797 1561  
 Cell: 083 -4067666  
 E-mail: [jackson@sanbi.org](mailto:jackson@sanbi.org)  
 Area of expertise: Global  
 Biomes/habitats: Marine  
 Fields: Legislation; Policy; Planning; Training  
 Groups: n/a  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Jansen van Vuuren, B. Dr (Bettine)**

Ph.D., University of Pretoria, 2000  
 Affiliation: Centre for Invasion Biology, Stellenbosch  
 University  
 Post title: Researcher  
 Address: Botany and Zoology Department,  
 Stellenbosch University, Private Bag X1,  
 Stellenbosch, 7602  
 Tel: 021 808 4862  
 Fax: 021 808 2405  
 E-mail: [bjvv@sun.ac.za](mailto:bjvv@sun.ac.za)  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Nonspecific  
 Fields: Genetics (conservation)  
 Groups: n/a  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Jewitt, G. Prof (Graham)**

Ph.D., Stellenbosch University, 1998  
 Affiliation: School of Bioresources Engineering and  
 Environmental Hydrology  
 Post title: Associate Professor  
 Address: School of Bioresources Engineering  
 and Environmental Hydrology, University of  
 KwaZulu-Natal, Private Bag X01, Scottsville,  
 3209  
 Tel: 033 260 5468  
 Fax: 033 260 5818  
 E-mail: [jewittg@ukzn.ac.za](mailto:jewittg@ukzn.ac.za)  
 Area of expertise: RSA



Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial; Wetland; Riparian zone  
 Fields: Hydrology  
 Groups: n/a  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Jordaan, F. Mr (Ferdie)**

B.Agric., University of the Orange Free State, 1979  
 Affiliation: n/a  
 Post title: Product Manager  
 Address: Volcano Agrosience, PO Box 74738,  
 Lynnwood Ridge, 0040  
 Tel: 012 348 6042  
 Fax: 012 348 6041  
 Cell: 083 636 7368  
 E-mail: fjv@lantic.net  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Savanna  
 Fields: Management; Technique (chemical)  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Main genera: *Acacia*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Kirkwood, D. Dr (Don)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 2003  
 Affiliation: CapeNature  
 Post title: Regional Ecologist  
 Address: Scientific Services, CapeNature, 16 17th  
 Ave, Voëlklip, Hermanus, 7200  
 Tel: 028 314 0173  
 Fax: 028 314 1814  
 Cell: 082 333 1661  
 E-mail: dkirkwood@cncjnk.wcape.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Management;  
 Technique; Impact assessment (management),  
 Population-biology (plant)  
 Groups: Woody plant; Grass  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Klein, H. Mrs (Hildegard)**

B.Sc.(Hons), University of Pretoria, 1988  
 Affiliation: Weeds Unit, Plant Protection Research  
 Institute, Agricultural Research Council  
 Post title: Senior Research Technician  
 Address: Plant Protection Research Institute,  
 Agricultural Research Council, Private Bag  
 X134, Queenswood, Pretoria, 0121  
 Tel: 012 356 9841  
 Fax: 012 329 3278  
 Cell: 082 550 6014  
 E-mail: kleinh@arc.agric.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial  
 Fields: Biocontrol; Legislation  
 Groups: Woody plant; Succulent  
 Main genera: *Opuntia*, *Cereus*, *Harrisia*, *Pereskia*,  
*Lantana*, *Eucalyptus*

Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Kluge, R.L. Dr (Rob)**

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 1982  
 Affiliation: n/a  
 Post title: Consultant  
 Address: 40 Golden Pond, 8 Somerset Place,  
 Hilton, 3245  
 Tel: 033 343 3475  
 Fax: 033 343 1103  
 Cell: 072 922 5523  
 E-mail: rlk@futurenet.co.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Savanna  
 Fields: Biocontrol  
 Groups: Insect; Plant  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Knott, H.B. Mr (Howard)**

Diploma, T.C.U. Texas USA, 1984  
 Affiliation: n/a  
 Post title: n/a  
 Address: Greater Kuduland Safaris, PO Box 1385,  
 Makhado, 0920  
 Tel: 015 539 0720  
 Fax: 015 539 0808  
 E-mail: howard@greaterkuduland.co.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA; Limpopo Province  
 Biomes/habitats: Bushveld  
 Fields: Game ranching; Conservancy  
 Groups: n/a  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Kotzé, J.D. Mr (Ian)**

M.Sc., Stellenbosch University, 2000  
 Affiliation: Geoinformatics, ISCW, Agricultural  
 Research Council  
 Post title: Remote Sensing Researcher  
 Address: ISCW, Agricultural Research Council,  
 Private Bag X5017, Stellenbosch, 7599  
 Tel: 021 887 4690  
 Fax: 021 887 5096  
 E-mail: kotzei@arc.agric.za  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Survey; Strategic; Planning; Operational;  
 management; Remote sensing; Work study;  
 Budget; GIS; Biocontrol  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Pinus*, *Hakea*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Kraaij, T. Mrs (Tineke)**

M.Sc., Stellenbosch University, 2003  
 Affiliation: Scientific Services, South African  
 National Parks  
 Post title: Terrestrial Ecologist

Address: Scientific Services, Rondevlei Office,  
South African National Parks, PO Box 176,  
Sedgefield, 6573

Tel: 044 343 1302

Fax: 044 343 2331

E-mail: tinekek@sanparks.org

Area of expertise: Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos

Fields: Physiology, Restoration

Groups: Woody plant

Main genera: *Acacia*, *Pinus*

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: No

#### **Langley, C.H. Mr (Howard)**

Cert. Field Ecology, University of Rhodesia (now  
Zimbabwe), 1976

Affiliation: South African National Parks

Post title: Regional Manager (Western Cape)

Address: 8 Belvedere Avenue, Clovelly, 7945

Tel: 021 701 8692 (until 30 Nov 2005)

Cell: 083 630 4574

E-mail: langleyh@wam.co.za

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos

Fields: Park planning; Park development;  
Conservation management; Invasive plant  
management planning

Groups: Woody plant

Main genera: *Acacia*, *Pinus*

Private Consulting: Yes

#### **Le Maitre, D.C. Dr (David)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1999

Affiliation: Council for Scientific and Industrial  
Research

Post title: Principal Researcher

Address: Environmentek, Council for Scientific  
and Industrial Research, PO Box 320,  
Stellenbosch, 7599

Tel: 021 888 2407

Fax: 021 888 2684

E-mail: dlmaitre@csir.co.za

Area of expertise: RSA (especially Western Cape)

Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial (especially Fynbos)

Fields: Impact (hydrology); Ecology; Rate of spread;  
Bioclimatic potential; Population dynamics  
(biocontrol)

Groups: Woody plant

Main genera: *Acacia*, *Pinus*, *Hakea*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

#### **Little, G.S. Mr (Grant)**

BSc, University of Natal, 1990

Affiliation: Sappi-Technical

Post title: Environmental and Quality Systems  
Manager

Address: Sappi, PO Box 31560, Braamfontein, 2017

Tel: 011 407 8309

Fax: 011 339 6869

Cell: 083 661 7458

E-mail: grant.little@sappi.com

Area of expertise: KwaZulu-Natal; Mpumalanga

Biomes/habitats: Non specific

Fields: Management (systems)

Groups: Plant

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: No

#### **Lotter, W.D. Mr (Wayne)**

M.Tech. Nature Conservation, Tshwane University  
of Technology, 2004

Affiliation: KwaZulu Natal Wildlife

Post title: Invasive alien species coordinator

Address: Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife, P.O. Box 13053  
Cascades, 3202

Tel: 033 845 1872

Fax: 033 845 1879

Cell: 079 498 7086

E-mail: lotterW@kznwildlife.com

Area of expertise: RSA (excl. Western Cape);  
Tanzania

Biomes/habitats: Savanna; Forest; Grassland

Fields: Strategic; Planning; Integrated control

Groups: All (especially plant)

Main genera: n/a

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

#### **Macdonald, I.A.W. Prof (Ian)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1991

Affiliation: n/a

Post title: International Environmental Consultant

Address: PO Box 35, Winterton, 3340

Cell: 082 53 49588

E-mail: macdonfam@kingsley.co.za

Area of expertise: Southern Africa; Global

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Savanna; Forest

Fields: Strategic; Planning; Review; Survey

Groups: Plant (especially woody plant); Bird

Main genera: *Acacia*, *Chromolaena*, *Melia*, *Pinus*,  
*Acridotheres*, *Corvus*, *Sturnus*

Private Consulting: Yes

#### **Malan, G. Prof. (Gerard)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1995

Affiliation: Tshwane University of Technology

Post title: Associate Professor

Address: Department of Nature Conservation,  
Tshwane University of Technology, Private Bag  
X680, Pretoria, 0001

Tel: 012 318 5184

Fax: 012 318 5566

Cell: n/a

E-mail: malang@tut.ac.za

Area of expertise: KwaZulu-Natal; Eastern Cape;  
Northern Cape; Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: Forest; Grassland

Fields: Bird; Nesting; Roosting; Hunting

Groups: Woody plant (especially nest trees of  
raptors)

Main genera: *Pinus*, *Eucalyptus*, *Populus*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

**Manuel, J.J. Mr (Jeff)**

B.Sc.(Hons), University of the Western Cape, 2003

Affiliation: n/a

Post title: n/a

Address: Biodiversity and Conservation Biology  
Department, University of the Western Cape,  
Private Bag X17, Bellville, 7535

Tel: 021 959 3919

Cell: 084 514 5922

E-mail: jmanuel@uwc.ac.za

Area of expertise: Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: Freshwater

Fields: Ecology

Groups: Plant (especially reed)

Main genera: *Arundo*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

**Marais, C. Dr (Christo)**

Ph.D., Stellenbosch University, 1998

Affiliation: Working for Water Programme/  
CapeNature

Post title: Executive Manager: Strategic  
Partnerships

Address: Strategic Partnerships Branch, Working for  
Water, Private Bag X4390, Cape Town, 8000

Tel: 021 441 2727

Fax: 021 441 2781

Cell: 082 551 8316

E-mail: chris@dwaf.gov.za

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial (especially Fynbos)

Fields: Resource economics

Groups: Woody plant

Main genera: n/a

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: No

**Martin, A.P. Dr (Paul)**

Ph.D., University of Port Elizabeth (now Nelson  
Mandela Metropolitan), 1991

Affiliation: South African Local Government  
Association (SALGA)

Post title: Representative: Biodiversity/alien species

Address: Environmental Services, Nelson Mandela  
Metropolitan Municipality, PO Box 11, Port  
Elizabeth, 6000

Tel: 041 505 4578

Fax: 041 505 4491

Cell: 083 463 5609

E-mail: pmartin@mandelametro.gov.za

Area of expertise: Nelson Mandela Metro

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Thicket

Fields: Bird; Local Government; Strategic; Planning;  
Management

Groups: Bird

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

**McDonald, D.J. Dr (Dave)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1995

Affiliation: Botanical Society of South Africa

Post title: Director: Botanical and Communication  
Programmes

Address: Head Office, Botanical Society of South  
Africa, Private Bag X10, Claremont, 7735

Tel: 021 797 2090

Fax: 021 797 2376

E-mail: davemcd@mweb.co.za

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Grassland; Savanna

Fields: Ecology (vegetation)

Groups: Plant

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

**McQueen, C. Ms (Carol)**

B.Sc.(Hons), University of Cape Town, 1994

Affiliation: Working for Water Programme

Post title: Unit Manager: Monitoring and Evaluation

Address: Working for Water, Department of Water  
Affairs and Forestry, Private Bag X4390, Cape  
Town, 8000

Tel: 021 441 2735

E-mail: mcqueen@dwaf.gov.za

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Nonspecific

Fields: Management; Operational

Groups: n/a

Main genera: n/a

**Midgley, G.F. Dr (Guy)**

Ph.D., University of Natal, 1996

Affiliation: South African National Biodiversity  
Institute

Post title: Chief Specialist Scientist

Address: GCRG, South African National Biodiversity  
Institute, Private Bag X7, Claremont, Cape  
Town, 7735

Tel: 021 799 8707

Fax: 021 797 6903

Cell: 082 569 2810

E-mail: midgley@sanbi.org

Area of expertise: Eastern Cape; Northern Cape;  
Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Succulent Karoo

Fields: Concept; Invasiveness; Impact

Groups: Plant

Main genera: n/a

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: No

**Milton, S.J. Prof. (Sue)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1992

Affiliation: Conservation Ecology Department,  
University of Stellenbosch

Post title: Professor

Address: Conservation Ecology Department,  
Stellenbosch University, Private Bag X01,  
Matieland, 7602

Tel: 023 541 1556  
 Fax: 023 541 1828  
 Cell: 082 770 0296  
 E-mail: sukaroo@mweb.co.za  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape; Northern Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Nama-Karoo; Succulent Karoo  
 Fields: Distribution; Dispersal  
 Groups: Plant  
 Main genera: *Atriplex*, *Schinus*, *Opuntia*, *Nerium*,  
*Tamarix*, *Pennisetum*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Minter, L.R. Prof. (Les)**

Ph.D., University of the Witwatersrand, 1999  
 Affiliation: University of Limpopo  
 Post title: Associate Professor  
 Address: Department of Medical Sciences,  
 University of Limpopo, Private Bag X1106,  
 Sovenga, 727  
 Tel: 015 268 2275  
 Fax: 015 268 2275  
 Cell: 082 921 4405  
 E-mail: minter@ul.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial  
 Fields: Taxonomy; Reproductive biology  
 Groups: Amphibian (Anura–frog)  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Moll, E.J. Dr (Eugene)**

Ph.D., University of Natal, 1972  
 Affiliation: Retired  
 Post title: n/a  
 Address: 18 Derbyshire Cres, Kirstenhof, 7945  
 Cell: 072 240 1891  
 E-mail: aemoll@xsinet.co.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial  
 Fields: Identification; Ecology  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Pinus*, *Hakea*  
 Institutional Consulting: n/a  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Moran, V.C. Prof. (Cliff)**

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 1967  
 Affiliation: University of Cape Town  
 Post title: Senior Researcher  
 Address: Zoology Department, University of Cape  
 Town, Private Bag , Rondebosch, 7701  
 Tel: 028 313 0567  
 Fax: 028 313 0566  
 Cell: 082 740 7321  
 E-mail: vcmoran@iafrica.com  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Biocontrol (plants)

Groups: Insect  
 Main genera: *Acacia*  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Morgan, W.L. Mr (Lloyd)**

B.Sc., Stellenbosch University, 1969  
 Affiliation: Commercial Chemical Company  
 Post title: Market Development Manager  
 Address: Dow Agrosociences, PO Box 355, Paarl,  
 7620  
 Tel: 021 872 1751  
 Cell: 082 653 3942  
 E-mail: lmorgan@dow.com  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Savanna  
 Fields: Research; Marketing; Advice  
 Groups: Woody plant; Herbaceous plant (broad-  
 leaved); Grass  
 Main genera: *Acacia*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Morris, M.J. Dr (Mike)**

Ph.D., Stellenbosch University, 1982  
 Affiliation: Plant Health Products (Pty) Ltd  
 (Biological control company)  
 Post title: Managing Director  
 Address: Plant Health Products (Pty) Ltd, PO Box  
 207, Nottingham Road, 3280  
 Tel: 033 266 6130  
 Fax: 033 266 6130  
 E-mail: php@wandata.com  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Savanna  
 Fields: Biocontrol (plants using pathogens)  
 Groups: Woody plant; Herbaceous plant  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Ageratina*, *Eichhornia*,  
*Chromolaena*, *Lantana*  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Musil, C.F. Dr (Charles)**

Ph.D., University of Natal, 1983  
 Affiliation: South African National Biodiversity  
 Institute  
 Post title: Senior Specialist Scientist  
 Address: Research and Scientific Services, South  
 African National Biodiversity Institute, Private  
 Bag X7, Claremont, 7735  
 Tel: 021 799 8710  
 Fax: 021 797 6903  
 Cell: 083 384 9202  
 E-mail: Musil@sanbi.org  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Estuary; Freshwater  
 Fields: Taxonomy; Ecology; Physiology;  
 Management; Utilisation  
 Groups: Woody plant; Aquatic plant; Wetland plant  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Eichhornia*, *Salvinia*, *Pistia*,  
*Myriophyllum*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes

**Musil (née Duggan), K.J. Mrs (Kathy)**

B.Sc.(Hons), University of Natal, 1978  
 Affiliation: Tokai Library  
 Post title: Librarian  
 Address: 31 Highlands Ave, Tokai, Cape Town, 7945  
 Tel: 021 715 8550  
 Fax: 021 715 5931  
 E-mail: musil\_home@absamail.co.za  
 Area of expertise: Gauteng; Mpumalanga; North-West  
 Biomes/habitats: Savanna; Forest; Grassland; Riparian zone  
 Fields: Distribution; Frequency; Abundance; Taxonomy  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Olckers, T. Dr (Terry)**

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 1989  
 Affiliation: University of KwaZulu-Natal  
 Post title: Senior Lecturer  
 Address: School of Biological and Conservation Sciences, University of KwaZulu-Natal, PO Box X01, Scottsville, 3209  
 Tel: 033 260 5139  
 Fax: 033 260 5105  
 E-mail: olckerst@ukzn.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: KwaZulu-Natal; Eastern Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Savanna  
 Fields: Biocontrol  
 Groups: Plant (especially woody plant)  
 Main genera: *Solanum*, *Parthenium*, *Leucaena*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Palmer, N.G. Mr (Guy)**

Higher Dipl., Saasveld School of Forestry (Port Elizabeth Technikon), 1992  
 Affiliation: Scientific Services, CapeNature  
 Post title: Specialist Technician  
 Address: Scientific Services, CapeNature, Private Bag X5014, Stellenbosch, 7599  
 Tel: 021 866 8009  
 Fax: 021 866 1523  
 Cell: 082 415 1884  
 E-mail: palmerg@cncjnk.wcape.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Eradication; Ecology  
 Groups: Mammal; Bird; Woody plant  
 Main genera: *Sus*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Parker-Allie, F. Ms (Fatima)**

M.Sc., University of Cape Town, 2002  
 Affiliation: South African National Biodiversity Institute

Post title: Senior Scientist  
 Address: Invasive aliens unit, South African National Biodiversity Institute, Private Bag X7, Cape Town, 7735  
 Tel: 021 799 8809  
 Fax: 021 797 6903  
 E-mail: Parker@sanbi.org  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Management; Technique; Restoration  
 Groups: Woody plant; Grass; Ant  
 Main genera: *Acacia*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Paterson, A.R. Mr (Sandy)**

LL.M., University of Cape Town, 2003  
 Affiliation: Institute of Marine and Environmental Law  
 Post title: Lecturer  
 Address: PO Box 44008, Scarborough, 7975  
 Tel: 021 650 5644  
 Fax: 021 650 5607  
 E-mail: paterson@law.uct.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: Global; RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Nonspecific  
 Fields: Legislation  
 Groups: n/a  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Pauw, A. Dr (Anton)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 2004  
 Affiliation: Botany and Zoology Department, Stellenbosch University  
 Post title: Lecturer  
 Address: Botany and Zoology Department, Stellenbosch University, Private Bag 1X, Stellenbosch, 7602  
 Tel: 021 808 3063  
 Fax: 021 808 2405  
 E-mail: apauw@sun.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: South Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Ecology (pollination, fire)  
 Groups: n/a  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Paxton, B.R. Mr (Bruce)**

B.Sc.(Hons), University of Cape Town, 2001  
 Affiliation: Freshwater Research Unit, University of Cape Town  
 Post title: Research Officer  
 Address: Zoology Department, University of Cape Town, Cape Town, 7701  
 Tel: 021 650 4634  
 Fax: 021 650 3301  
 Cell: 083 301 8594

E-mail: bpaxton@botzoo.uct.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Freshwater  
 Fields: Ecology  
 Groups: Fish  
 Main genera: *Labeobarbus*, *Barbus*, *Micropterus*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Peter, M.V. Mr (Michael)**

Higher Dipl. –Forestry, Saasveld School of Forestry  
 (Port Elizabeth Technikon), 1996  
 Affiliation: Department of Water Affairs and Forestry  
 Post title: Director: Forestry Technical and  
 Information Services  
 Address: Department of Water Affairs and Forestry,  
 Private Bag X93, Pretoria, 0001  
 Tel: 012 336 8782  
 Fax: 012 336 8847  
 Cell: 082 808 0425  
 E-mail: peterm@dwaf.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: Southern Cape; KwaZulu-Natal  
 Biomes/habitats: Forest; Fynbos; Grassland;  
 Riparian zone  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Management;  
 Operational  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Pinus*, *Solanum*, *Lantana*,  
*Caesalpinia*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Phelan, A.J. Mrs (Jan)**

B.Sc. and UED, University of KwaZulu-Natal and  
 Stellenbosch University, 1969 & 1970  
 Affiliation: n/a  
 Post title: n/a  
 Address: PO Box 25, Howick, 3290  
 Tel: 033 330 2948  
 Fax: 033 330 2948  
 Cell: 082 876 0003  
 E-mail: mwplanit@mweb.co.za  
 Area of expertise: Northern Cape; KwaZulu-Natal  
 Biomes/habitats: Savanna; Grassland  
 Fields: Planning; Operational; Monitoring  
 Groups: Woody plant; Succulent  
 Main genera: *Opuntia*, *Prosopis*  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Phelps, T. Dr (Tony)**

Ph.D., University of Southampton, 1978  
 Affiliation: University of Wales, (Evolutionary Biology  
 Team) at Bangor, UK./English Nature/Cape  
 Nature/SANParks  
 Post title: Researcher  
 Address: Western Cape Reptile Institute, In  
 collaboration with Cape Nature, 32 Kantbos  
 Street, Kuils River, Cape Town, 8000  
 Cell: 082 908 4729  
 E-mail: viperidaewatch@ukonline.co.uk

Area of expertise: RSA; Africa; Europe; America;  
 Global  
 Biomes/habitats: Heathland; Fynbos; Savanna;  
 Coastal; Karoo; Forest; Desert  
 Fields: Ecology (Squamate)  
 Groups: Reptile (Squamate)  
 Main genera: *Bitis*, *Naja*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Picker, M.D. Dr (Mike)**

Ph.D., University of the Witwatersrand, 1982  
 Affiliation: University of Cape Town  
 Post title: Senior lecturer  
 Address: Zoology Department, University of Cape  
 Town, Private Bag, Cape Town, 7701  
 Tel: 021 650 3630  
 Fax: 021 650 3630  
 E-mail: mpicker@botzoo.uct.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Ecology; Taxonomy  
 Groups: Animal (especially amphibian and  
 invertebrate)  
 Main genera: *Linepithema*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Poulter, A.G. Mr (Tony)**

B.Tech. Conservation, Port Elizabeth Technikon,  
 1988  
 Affiliation: Invasive Alien Species Programme  
 (KZN–Working for Water)  
 Post title: Director Manager  
 Address: KZN Department of Agriculture and  
 Environment: Invasive Alien Species  
 Programme, PO Box 1290, Hilton, 3245  
 Tel: 033 355 9354  
 Fax: 033 355 9577  
 Cell: 082 573 9870  
 E-mail: poultert@dae.kzntl.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: Mpumalanga; KwaZulu-Natal  
 Biomes/habitats: Savanna; Grassland; Afromontane  
 Forest  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Management;  
 Operational  
 Groups: Plant  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Powrie, L.W. Mr (Les)**

M.Sc., University of Cape Town, 1986  
 Affiliation: South African National Biodiversity  
 Institute and Global Invasive Species  
 Programme  
 Post title: Chief Information Technology Adviser  
 Address: Kirstenbosch Research Centre, South  
 African National Biodiversity Institute, Private  
 Bag X7, Claremont, 7735  
 Tel: 021 799 8703

Fax: 021 797 6903  
 Cell: 084 707 6297  
 E-mail: powrie@sanbi.org  
 Area of expertise: Southern Africa  
 Biomes/habitats: n/a  
 Fields: GIS, Database  
 Groups: Plant  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: No

**Preston, G.R. Dr (Guy)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1989  
 Affiliation: Working for Water Programme  
 Post title: National Programme Leader  
 Address: Working for Water Programme, Private Bag X4390, Cape Town, 8000  
 Tel: 021 441 2700  
 Fax: 021 441 2768  
 Cell: 083 325 8700  
 E-mail: gpreston@mweb.co.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: All  
 Fields: Policy; Legislation; Management, Operational; Research; Social (mainstreaming); Fund-raising; Advocacy  
 Groups: All (especially woody plant)  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Prinsloo, G. Dr (Gerhard)**

Ph.D., University of Pretoria, 1982  
 Affiliation: Biosystematics Division, PPRI, ARC  
 Post title: Division Manager  
 Address: Biosystematics Division, ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Private Bag X134, Queenswood, Pretoria, 0121  
 Tel: 012 304 5966  
 Fax: 012 35 6998  
 Cell: 082 411 9549  
 E-mail: prinsloo@arc.agric.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Nonspecific  
 Fields: Taxonomy; Biogeography (zoogeography); Assessment (biodiversity)  
 Groups: Hymenoptera (parasitic)  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Privett, S.D.J. Mr (Sean)**

M.Sc., University of Cape Town, 1998  
 Affiliation: Grootbos Foundation  
 Post title: Director  
 Address: Grootbos Foundation, Grootbos Nature Reserve, PO Box 148, Gansbaai, 7220  
 Tel: 028 384 8044  
 Fax: 028 384 8100  
 Cell: 082 411 1008  
 E-mail: sean@grootbos.co.za  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape (especially Overberg)

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Conservation management; Utilisation (sustainable use)  
 Groups: Plant (vascular)  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Prochazka, K. Dr (Kim)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1995  
 Affiliation: International Ocean Institute, Southern Africa  
 Post title: Director  
 Address: Biodiversity and Conservation Biology Department, University of the Western Cape, Private Bag X17, Bellville, 7535  
 Tel: 021 959 3088  
 Fax: 021 959 1213  
 E-mail: kprochazka@uwc.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA; Western Cape; Namibia  
 Biomes/habitats: Marine (especially Intertidal, Subtidal)  
 Fields: Ecology (especially community); Population biology  
 Groups: Fish; Invertebrate (benthic)  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Rebelo, A.G. Dr (Tony)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1992  
 Affiliation: Protea Atlas Project  
 Post title: Senior Researcher  
 Address: Protea Atlas Project, South African National Biodiversity Institute, Private Bag X7, Kirstenbosch, 7735  
 Tel: 021 799 8727  
 Fax: 021 797 6903  
 E-mail: rebelo@sanbi.org  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape; Eastern Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Ecology; Distribution  
 Groups: Woody plant (Proteaceae)  
 Main genera: *Hakea*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Richardson, D.M. Prof. (Dave)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1989  
 Affiliation: Centre for Invasion Biology, Stellenbosch University  
 Post title: Deputy Director  
 Address: CIB, Department of Botany & Zoology, Stellenbosch University, Private Bag X1, Matieland, 7602  
 Tel: 021 808 3711  
 Fax: 021 808 2995  
 Cell: 082 902 9024  
 E-mail: rich@sun.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Ecology; Research; Education (lecturer); Editor

Groups: Woody plant (especially *Pinus*, *Hakea*, *Acacia*)

Main genera: *Pinus*, *Hakea*, *Opuntia*, *Schinus*, *Metrosideros*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

**Robertson, H.G. Dr (Hamish)**

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 1985

Affiliation: Iziko Museums of Cape Town

Post title: Director Natural History Collections

Address: Natural History Collections Division, Iziko Museums of Cape Town, PO Box 61, Cape Town, 8000

Tel: 021 481 3849

Fax: 021 481 3993

E-mail: hrobertson@iziko.org.za

Area of expertise: Southern Africa

Biomes/habitats: All

Fields: Taxonomy

Groups: Ant (Formicidae)

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

**Robertson, M.P. Dr (Mark)**

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 2003

Affiliation: University of Pretoria

Post title: Lecturer

Address: Zoology and Entomology Department, University of Pretoria, Lynwood Road, Pretoria, 0001

Tel: 012 420 4396

Fax: 012 420 3210

Cell: 084 718 5484

E-mail: mrobertson@zoology.up.ac.za

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Nonspecific

Fields: Modelling (distribution); Risk assessment; Impact assessment (biodiversity); Survey

Groups: Plant

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

**Roets, W. Mr (Wietsche)**

M.Sc., University of the North, 1997

Affiliation: CapeNature

Post title: Aquatic Scientist

Address: CapeNature, Scientific Services, Private Bag X6546, George, 6530

Tel: 044 802 5328

Fax: 044 802 5313

Cell: 082 414 0064

E-mail: wroets@pgwc.gov.za

Area of expertise: Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: Savanna; Freshwater

Fields: Ecology (Freshwater and terrestrial); Hydrology (Groundwater surface water interface)

Groups: Aquatic plant; Aquatic animal

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

**Rosmarin, J.R. Mr (John)**

B.Sc., University of the Witwatersrand, 1968

Affiliation: n/a

Post title: n/a

Address: Postnet Suite 266, Private Bag 2600, Houghton, Johannesburg, 2193

Tel: 011 646 6727

Fax: 011 646 6727

Cell: 083 251 0007

E-mail: odinp@global.co.za

Area of expertise: RSA; Soutpansberg

Biomes/habitats: Montane

Fields: Social (community-based natural resource management)

Groups: Woody plant

Main genera: *Eucalyptus*

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: No

**Rouget, M. Dr (Mathieu)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 2002

Affiliation: South African National Biodiversity Institute

Post title: Conservation planning/GIS Manager

Address: Kirstenbosch Research Centre, South African National Biodiversity Institute, Private Bag X7, Claremont, 7735

Tel: 021 799 8749

Fax: 021 797 6903

E-mail: rouget@sanbi.org

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos

Fields: Modelling; Spread; Distribution

Groups: n/a

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: Yes

**Rushworth, I.A. Mr (Ian)**

M.Sc., University of Cape Town, 1997

Affiliation: Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife

Post title: Ecological Advice Co-ordinator uKhahlamba

Address: uKhahlamba Region, Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife, PO Box 13053, Pietermaritzburg, 3202

Tel: 033 239 1511

Fax: 033 239 1515

Cell: 082 940 1462

E-mail: ianr@kznwildlife.com

Area of expertise: KwaZulu-Natal

Biomes/habitats: Grassland

Fields: Strategic; Planning; Operational; Mapping; Conservation

Groups: Plant (especially *Rubus*)

Main genera: *Rubus*

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: Yes

**Russell, I.A. Dr (Ian)**

Ph.D., University of the Witwatersrand, 1997

Affiliation: South African National Parks



Post title: Scientist

Address: Conservation Services, South African National Parks, PO Box 176, Sedgfield, 6573

Tel: 044 343 1302

Fax: 044 343 2331

E-mail: [ianr@sanparks.org](mailto:ianr@sanparks.org)

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Freshwater

Fields: Distribution; Impact (community level)

Groups: Fish

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: No

#### **Rutherford, M.C. Dr (Michael)**

Ph.D., Stellenbosch University, 1975

Affiliation: South African National Biodiversity Institute

Post title: Chief Specialist Scientist

Address: Kirstenbosch Research Centre, South African National Biodiversity Institute, Private Bag X7, Claremont, 7735

Tel: 021 799 8702

Fax: 021 797 6903

Cell: 082 575 7175

E-mail: [rutherford@sanbi.org](mailto:rutherford@sanbi.org)

Area of expertise: Southern Africa

Biomes/habitats: Savanna, Desert, Fynbos, Grassland, Karoo

Fields: Ecology

Groups: Plant

Main genera: n/a

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: No

#### **Samways, M.J. Prof. (Michael)**

Ph.D., London, 1975

Affiliation: Centre for Agricultural Biodiversity, and Centre for Invasion Biology, University of Stellenbosch

Post title: Chair

Address: Entomology Department, Stellenbosch University, Private Bag X1, Matieland, 7602

Tel: 021 808 3728

Fax: 021 808 4708

Cell: 082 579 9978

E-mail: [samways@sun.ac.za](mailto:samways@sun.ac.za)

Area of expertise: RSA; Seychelles; Comoros Islands

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Grassland; Coastal; Coral Reef

Fields: Conservation

Groups: Insect (dragonfly, butterfly, grasshopper, other); Coral

Main genera: *Acacia*, *Pinus*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

#### **Sandwith, M.M. Ms (Margaret)**

M.Sc. Environment and Development, University of KwaZulu-Natal, 2002

Affiliation: Percy FitzPatrick Institute, University of Cape Town

Post title: Librarian

Address: Niven Library, Percy FitzPatrick Institute of African Ornithology, University of Cape Town, Rondebosch, 7700

Tel: 021 650 3305

Fax: 021 650 3295

E-mail: [Fitzlib@botzoo.uct.ac.za](mailto:Fitzlib@botzoo.uct.ac.za)

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: All

Fields: References

Groups: n/a

Main genera: n/a

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: No

#### **Sandwith, T. Mr (Trevor)**

M.Sc., University of Cape Town, 1993

Affiliation: South African National Biodiversity Institute

Post title: Co-ordinator: Cape Action for People and the Environment

Address: C.A.P.E., South African National Biodiversity Institute, Private Bag X7, Claremont, 7735

Tel: 021 799 8790

Fax: 021 797 3475

Cell: 082 321 2747

E-mail: [trevor@capeaction.org.za](mailto:trevor@capeaction.org.za)

Area of expertise: KwaZulu-Natal; Eastern Cape; Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: Savanna; Forest; Grassland; Fynbos

Fields: Conservation management, Strategic; Planning

Groups: Woody plant

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

#### **Schutte-Vlok, A. Dr (AnneLise)**

Ph.D., University of Johannesburg (previously RAU), 1995

Affiliation: CapeNature

Post title: Regional Ecologist: Gouritz Region

Address: Scientific Services, CapeNature, Private Bag 658, Oudtshoorn, 6620

Tel: 044 203 6316

Fax: 044 272 8110

E-mail: [scapeimu@mweb.co.za](mailto:scapeimu@mweb.co.za)

Area of expertise: Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Succulent Karoo; Thicket

Fields: Taxonomy; Ecology

Groups: Woody plant

Main genera: *Acacia*, *Pinus*, *Hakea*, *Opuntia*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

#### **Scotcher, J.S.B. Dr (John)**

Ph.D., University of the Witwatersrand, 1983

Affiliation: n/a

Post title: n/a

Address: ForestLore Consulting, PO Box 20109, Howick, 3290

Tel 033 330 2330  
 Fax 033 330 7255  
 Cell 083 626 8990  
 E-mail: jscotcher@forestore.co.za  
 Area of expertise: KwaZulu-Natal  
 Biomes/habitats: Grassland; Forest  
 Fields: Education (guidelines); Technique  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Pinus*, *Eucalyptus*, *Solanum*,  
*Rubus*  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Sharp, D. Mrs (Debbie)**

M.Sc., University of Port Elizabeth, 2000  
 Affiliation: Working for Water Programme  
 Post title: Biocontrol and Aquatic weeds Officer and  
 now Regional Implementation Manager  
 Address: Implementation Unit, DWAF: Working for  
 Water Programme, Private Bag X24, Howick,  
 3290  
 Tel: 033 330 2051  
 Fax: 033 330 4041  
 Cell: 082 462 1584  
 E-mail: MuirD@arc.agric.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Freshwater; Grassland  
 Fields: Biocontrol (plant, aquatic plant, emerging  
 weed); Strategic; Planning; Operational  
 Groups: Plant  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Silberbauer, E.S. Mr (Edward)**

Diploma in Agriculture, Elsenberg Agricultural  
 College, 1961  
 Affiliation: Botanical Society of South Africa, Betty's  
 Bay Hack Group  
 Post title: Convenor  
 Address: PO Box 384, Betty's Bay, 7141  
 Tel: 028 272 9096  
 E-mail: mem@yebo.co.za  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Eradication; Management; Technique;  
 Volunteer  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Hakea*, *Pinus*, *Eucalyptus*,  
*Metrosideros*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Simelane, D.O. Mr (David)**

M.Sc., University of Arkansas, 1996  
 Affiliation: Weeds Unit, Plant Protection Research  
 Institute, Agricultural Research Council  
 Post title: Project Manager/ Researcher  
 Address: ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute,  
 Private Bag X134, Queenswood, Pretoria,  
 0121  
 Tel: 012 356 9849  
 Fax: 012 329 3278  
 Cell: 083 684 3450

E-mail: Simelaned@arc.agric.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial  
 Fields: Biocontrol (weed)  
 Groups: Woody plant; Insect (Coleoptera,  
 Lepidoptera, Heteroptera, Diptera)  
 Main genera: *Lantana*, *Cardiospermum*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes

**Skelton, P.H. Prof. (Paul)**

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 1980  
 Affiliation: Southern African Institute of Aquatic  
 Biodiversity  
 Post title: Managing Director  
 Address: Southern African Institute of Aquatic  
 Biodiversity, Private Bag 1015, Grahamstown,  
 6140  
 Tel: 046 603 5800  
 Fax: 046 622 2403  
 E-mail: p.skelton@ru.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: Southern Africa  
 Biomes/habitats: Freshwater  
 Fields: Taxonomy; Systematics; Conservation;  
 Biogeography; History  
 Groups: Fish (freshwater)  
 Main genera: *Micropterus*, *Oncorhynchus*, *Salmo*,  
*Lepomis*, *Cyprinus*, *Clarias*, *Oreochromis*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Stein, R.T. Prof. (Robyn)**

LL.M., London School of Economics and Political  
 Science, 1992  
 Affiliation: Department of Environmental, Energy  
 and Water Law  
 Post title: Visiting Professor  
 Address: Mandela Institute, School of Law,  
 University of the Witwatersrand, PO Box  
 783347, Sandton, 2146  
 Tel: 011 269 7937  
 Fax: 011 269 7850  
 Cell: 082 904 1765  
 E-mail: rstein@edwardnathan.com  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Nonspecific  
 Fields: Legislation (local and international)  
 Groups: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Stevens, R.A. Mr (Russell)**

M.A., University of Cape Town, 1994  
 Affiliation: EGS  
 Post title: Head of Education  
 Address: Environmental Education Centre, Two  
 Oceans Aquarium, PO Box 50603, Waterfront,  
 8002  
 Tel: 021 418 3823  
 Fax: 021 428 5291  
 Cell: 082 336 6361  
 E-mail: rstevens@aquarium.co.za  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: Marine; Freshwater; Catchments  
 Fields: Environmental Education  
 Groups: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Steyn, F.J. Mr (Francis)**

MSA (Masters in Sustainable Agriculture), University of the Free State, 2001

Affiliation: Biodiversity conservation

Post title: LandCare Manager Western Cape

Address: Agriculture: Western Cape, Agriculture: Western Cape, Private Bag X1, Elsenburg, 7607

Tel: 021 808 5090

Fax: 021 808 5092

Cell: 082 907 2813

E-mail: franciss@elsenburg.com

Area of expertise: Western Cape

Biomes/habitats: All

Fields: Social (community-based natural-resource management)

Groups: n/a

Institutional Consulting: Yes

**Stirton, C.H. Prof. (Charlie)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1989

Affiliation: n/a

Post title: n/a

Address: 4 Nelson Villas, Bath, BA1 2BD United Kingdom

Tel: 0944 1225 42 5966

E-mail: cstirton@tiscali.co.uk

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Savanna; Grassland

Fields: Taxonomy (plants and cultivated plants)

Groups: Plant (Leguminosae, Verbenaceae, Rosaceae)

Main genera: *Rubus*, *Lantana*

Private Consulting: Yes

**Strathie, L.W. Ms (Lorraine)**

M.Sc., University of Cape Town, 1995

Affiliation: Weeds Unit, Plant Protection Research Institute, Agricultural Research Council

Post title: Researcher

Address: Weeds Division, Plant Protection Research Institute, Private Bag X6006, Hilton, 3245

Tel: 033 355 9421 or 355 9413

Fax: 033 355 9423

Cell: 083 331 8706

E-mail: StrathieL@arc.agric.za

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Forest; Savanna; Fynbos

Fields: Biocontrol; Management; Operational; Research; Evaluation (pre- and post-release)

Groups: Woody plant; Herbaceous plant

Main genera: *Chromolaena*, *Parthenium*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

**Swart, C.W. Mr (Charles)**

Nat. Dipl. Forestry, Port Elizabeth Technikon, 1989

Affiliation: CT Enviro-Consultants

Post title: Consultant

Address: CT Enviro-Consultants, PO Box 502, Mtubatuba, 3935

Tel: 035 550 1844

Fax: 086 671 5529

Cell: 083 231 3387

E-mail: ctenviro@iafrica.com

Area of expertise: Eastern Cape; KwaZulu-Natal; RSA

Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial

Fields: Strategic; Planning; Budget; Training; Evaluation; Work study

Groups: All (especially woody plant)

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

**Taylor, S.J. Dr (Sue)**

Ph.D., University of Natal, 1995

Affiliation: Gauteng Department of Agriculture, Conservation and Environment (GDACE)

Post title: Deputy Director

Address: Technological Services, Directorate of Nature Conservation, Gauteng Department of Agriculture, Conservation and Environment, PO Box 8769, Johannesburg, 2000

Tel: 011 355 1356

Fax: 011 355 1056

Cell: 083 373 7714

E-mail: sue.taylor@gauteng.gov.za

Area of expertise: Gauteng

Biomes/habitats: Agricultural area; Grassland

Fields: Biotechnology (genetic engineering, GMO issues); Global change; Plant pathology; PCR; Strategic; Planning; Management; Operational

Groups: Plant pathogen (microorganism, bacteria); GMO

Main genera: *Agrobacterium*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

**Thomson, P.J. Mr (Peter)**

B.Sc.(Hons), University College of Rhodesia (London), 1970

Affiliation: Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife

Post title: Manager Biodiversity Conservation Planning

Address: Biodiversity Conservation Planning, Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife, PO Box 13053, Cascades, Pietermaritzburg, 3202

Tel: 033 845 1430

Fax: 033 845 1226

E-mail: petetom@kznwildlife.com

Area of expertise: KwaZulu-Natal

Biomes/habitats: All

Fields: Strategic; Planning; Management; Operational; Technique

Groups: Fish (freshwater); Mammal; Plant

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: Yes

**Turpie, J.K. Dr (Jane)**

Ph D., University of Cape Town, 1994  
 Affiliation: Anchor Environmental Consultants,  
 University of Cape Town  
 Post title: Director (Anchor), Senior Lecturer (UCT)  
 Address: Anchor Environmental Consultants,  
 University of Cape Town, PO Box 34035,  
 Rhodes Gift, 7707  
 Tel: 021 650 3302  
 Fax: 021 685 4300  
 Cell: 082 459 5960  
 E-mail: jturpie@botzoo.uct.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: Southern Africa; Eastern Africa  
 Biomes/habitats: Estuary; Wetland; Fynbos; Thicket;  
 Grassland; Karoo  
 Fields: Resource economics; Conservation  
 planning; Modelling (ecological economic)  
 Groups: n/a  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: No (UCT)  
 Private Consulting: Yes (Anchor)

**Underhill, L.G. Prof. (Les)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1973  
 Affiliation: Avian Demography Unit, University of  
 Cape Town  
 Post title: Professor of Avian Demography  
 Address: Avian Demography Unit, Department of  
 Statistical Sciences, University of Cape Town,  
 Rondebosch, 7701  
 Tel: 021 650 3227  
 Fax: 021 650 3434  
 Cell: 072 062 1140  
 E-mail: lgu@adu.uct.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: Southern Africa; Global  
 Biomes/habitats: Marine  
 Fields: Statistics  
 Groups: Bird  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Urban, A.J. Dr (Alan)**

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 1977  
 Affiliation: Weeds Unit, Plant Protection Research  
 Institute, Agricultural Research Council  
 Post title: Senior Researcher (Entomology)  
 Address: Weeds Unit, ARC-Plant Protection  
 Research Institute, Private Bag X134,  
 Queenswood, (Pretoria/Tshwane), 0121  
 Tel: 012 356 9843  
 Fax: 012 329 3278  
 Cell: 072 213 2176  
 E-mail: urbana@arc.agric.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Savanna  
 Fields: Biocontrol  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Main genera: *Lantana*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Van Dam, D. Mr (Dix)**

Nat. Dipl. Forestry, Saasveld School of Forestry  
 (Port Elizabeth Technikon), 1982  
 Affiliation: Weed Control Specialists-SILVIX CC  
 Post title: Member  
 Address: Weed Control Specialist, SILVIX CC, PO  
 Box 646, Sabie, 1260  
 Tel: 013 764 2279  
 Fax: 013 764 2998  
 Cell: 082 804 7942  
 E-mail: dix@hlatini.co.za  
 Area of expertise: Mpumalanga; Northern Province  
 Biomes/habitats: Sylvicultural-area; Forest;  
 Grassland  
 Fields: Management; Operational  
 Groups: Plant (declared invader and weed species)  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Van der Walt, S.T. Mr (Stephan)**

B.Sc.(Hons), University of the Free State, 1998  
 Affiliation: Free State Department of Tourism,  
 Environment and Economic Affairs  
 Post title: Senior Researcher  
 Address: Free State Department of Tourism,  
 Environment and Economic Affairs, Private  
 Bag X20801, Bloemfontein, 9300  
 Tel: 051 400 4791  
 E-mail: vdwalts@dteea.fs.gov.co.za  
 Area of expertise: Free State  
 Biomes/habitats: Freshwater  
 Fields: n/a  
 Groups: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Van Rensburg, E. Dr (Eugene)**

Ph.D., Rand Afrikaans University, 1990  
 Affiliation: Eskom  
 Post title: Chief Consultant Weed Science: ESKOM  
 Address: Eskom: Vegetation Management (South  
 Africa), Eskom: Eskom Enterprises: Critical  
 Services; Vegetation Management, PO Box  
 351, Rivonia, 2128  
 Tel: 011 801 3315  
 Fax: 011 801 3316/18  
 Cell: 082 451 1994  
 E-mail: eugene.vrensburg@eskom.co.za  
 Area of expertise: South Africa  
 Biomes/habitats: All  
 Fields: Management; Operational  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Van Wilgen, B.W. Dr (Brian)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1985  
 Affiliation: Council for Scientific and Industrial  
 Research  
 Post title: Fellow  
 Address: Division of Water, Environment and

Forestry Technology, Council for Scientific  
and Industrial Research, PO Box 320,  
Stellenbosch, 7599

Tel: 021 888 2400

Fax: 021 888 2693

Cell: 082 454 9726

E-mail: [bwilgen@csir.co.za](mailto:bwilgen@csir.co.za)

Area of expertise: RSA; Australia

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Savanna; Grassland;  
Forest; Freshwater

Fields: Fire; Biocontrol; Resource economics;  
Impact assessment; Priority

Groups: Plant

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

#### **Van Wyk, A.E. Prof. (Braam)**

D.Sc., University of Pretoria, 1986

Affiliation: University of Pretoria

Post title: Professor and Curator of the Herbarium

Address: Department of Botany, University of  
Pretoria, Pretoria, 0002

Tel: 012 420 2545

Fax: 012 420 2057

E-mail: [braam.vanwyk@up.ac.za](mailto:braam.vanwyk@up.ac.za)

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Grassland, Savanna

Fields: Taxonomy

Groups: Woody plant

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: Yes

#### **Van Wyk, G. Prof. (Gerrit)**

Ph.D., North Carolina State University, 1975

Affiliation: Department of Forest and Wood Science,  
Stellenbosch University

Post title: Professor

Address: Forest and Wood Science Department,  
Stellenbosch University, Private Bag X1,  
Matieland, 7602

Tel: 021 808 3293

Fax: 021 808 3603

Cell: 084 806 6468

E-mail: [gvwyk@sun.ac.za](mailto:gvwyk@sun.ac.za)

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Sylvicultural area; Forest;  
Grassland

Fields: Management; Operational

Groups: Woody plant

Main genera: *Acacia*, *Pinus*, *Eucalyptus*

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: No

#### **Venter, S.M. Mrs (Sarah)**

M.Sc., University of the Free State, 2001

Affiliation: SAFI and Birdlife SA

Post title: n/a

Address: PO Box 203, Makhado, 0920

Tel: 015 517 7040

Fax: 015 517 7034

Cell: 082 374 9534

E-mail: [windwaai@mweb.co.za](mailto:windwaai@mweb.co.za)

Area of expertise: Limpopo Province

Biomes/habitats: Forest

Fields: Policy; Planning; Bird

Groups: Bird

Private Consulting: Yes

#### **Venter, J.H. Mr (Jan-Hendrik)**

BSc, University of South Africa, 1996

Affiliation: Pest Risk Analysis Division, Directorate  
Plant Health, DoA

Post title: Senior Plant and Quality Control Officer

Address: Directorate Plant Health, Department of  
Agriculture, Private Bag 14, Pretoria, 0001

Tel: 012 319 6384

Fax: 012 319 6101

Cell: 072 348 8431

E-mail: [janhendrikv@nda.agric.za](mailto:janhendrikv@nda.agric.za)

Area of expertise: Global

Biomes/habitats: All

Fields: Risk assessment (plant; plant products)

Groups: Insect (phytophagous); Mite  
(phytophagous)

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

#### **Vernon, C.J. Mr (Carl)**

B.Sc.(Hons), University of Pretoria, 1969

Affiliation: retired

Post title: n/a

Address: PO Box 19592, Tecoma, 5243

Tel: 043 748 2066

E-mail: [gvernon@qwest.co.za](mailto:gvernon@qwest.co.za)

Area of expertise: Eastern Cape

Biomes/habitats: Forest; Savanna; Grassland

Fields: Ecology

Groups: Woody plant

Private Consulting: Yes

#### **Vlok, J.H.J. Mr (Jan)**

M.Sc., University of Natal, 1995

Affiliation: Regalis Environmental Services CC

Post title: Sole shareholder

Address: Regalis Environmental Services, PO Box  
1512, Oudtshoorn, 6620

Tel: 044 279 1987

Fax: 044 279 2185

E-mail: [janvlok@mweb.co.za](mailto:janvlok@mweb.co.za)

Area of expertise: Western Cape; Eastern Cape

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Thicket; Succulent Karoo.

Fields: Conservation management; Strategic;  
Planning;

Groups: Grass (annual); Woody plant

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: Yes

#### **Voges, K. Mr (Kasey)**

Nat. Dipl. Forestry, Saasveld School of Forestry  
(Port Elizabeth Technikon), 1983

Affiliation: Working for Water Programme

Post title: National Technical Advisor  
 Address: PO Box 56, Sedgefield, 6573  
 Tel: 044 356 2825  
 Fax: 044 356 2825  
 Cell: 082 786 3071  
 E-mail: pappea@telkomsa.net  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Management;  
 Technique; Evaluation  
 Groups: Plant  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Vrahimis, S. Mr (Savvas)**

M.Sc., University of the Free State, 1990  
 Affiliation: Scientific Services, Free State  
 Department of Tourism, Environment and  
 Economic Affairs  
 Post title: Assistant Director, Terrestrial Systems,  
 Scientific Services  
 Address: Tourism, Environment and Economic  
 Affairs, Free State Tourism, Environment  
 and Economic Affairs, Private Bag X20801,  
 Bloemfontein, 9300  
 Tel: 051 400 4779  
 Fax: 051 400 4811  
 Cell: 084 432 2623  
 E-mail: vrahimis@dteea.fs.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: Free State  
 Biomes/habitats: Grassland, Savanna  
 Fields: Conservation management  
 Groups: Mammal  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Waddilove, D. Mr (David)**

LL.B., Stellenbosch University, 1989  
 Affiliation: n/a  
 Post title: n/a  
 Address: Conservation Strategy and Law, Aberdeen  
 Road 14, Newlands, 7700  
 Tel: 021 689 8690  
 Cell: 084 567 4152  
 E-mail: earthworks@icon.co.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial; Aquatic  
 Fields: Legal; Compliance; Strategic; Planning  
 Groups: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Wagiet, R. Dr (Razeena)**

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 1996  
 Affiliation: South African National Parks  
 Post title: Executive Director, People and  
 Conservation  
 Address: People and Conservation, South African  
 National Parks, PO Box 787, Pretoria, 0001  
 Tel: 012 426 5209  
 Fax: 012 426 5509

Cell: 082 770 7079  
 E-mail: razeenaw@sanparks.org  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Nonspecific  
 Fields: Education (including awareness); Taxonomy  
 Groups: Nonspecific  
 Main genera: n/a  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Wanless, R.M. Mr (Ross)**

M.Sc., University of Cape Town, 2002  
 Affiliation: Percy FitzPatrick Institute, University of  
 Cape Town  
 Post title: Doctoral student  
 Address: Zoology Department, University of Cape  
 Town, Private Bag X3, Rondebosch, 7701  
 Tel: 021 650 3306  
 Fax: 021 650 3295  
 E-mail: rwanless@botzoo.uct.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: Islands (global)  
 Biomes/habitats: Islands; Terrestrial (especially  
 insular systems)  
 Fields: Taxonomy; Eradication; Biosecurity;  
 Restoration; Project management;  
 Prioritisation; Remote sensing; Planning;  
 Proposal writing  
 Groups: Mammal; Bird  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Wannenburgh, A.M. Mr (Andrew)**

B.Sc., Stellenbosch University, 1992  
 Affiliation: Working for Water Programme, National  
 Office  
 Post title: Planning Manager  
 Address: Working for Water Programme,  
 Department of Water Affairs and Forestry,  
 Private Bag X4390, Cape Town, 8000  
 Tel: 021 4412738  
 Fax: 021 441 2781  
 E-mail: wannena@dwaf.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Nonspecific  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Management  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Wessels, N.G.J. Mr (Nigel)**

M.Sc., Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University,  
 1997  
 Affiliation: CapeNature  
 Post title: Conservation Manager  
 Address: Western Cape, Outeniqua Business Unit,  
 Gouritz Cluster, CapeNature, Private Bag  
 6517, George, 6530  
 Tel: 044 870 8323  
 Fax: 044 870 7138  
 Cell: 082 772 8085  
 E-mail: outenr@mweb.co.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Management  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Main genera: *Pinus*, *Acacia*, *Hakea*, *Eucalyptus*,  
*Cortaderia*, *Rubus*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Willems, T.J.A. Mr (Tyl)**

B.Eng., Stellenbosch University, 1996  
 Affiliation: ECSA, SAICE, SAIAE  
 Post title: Chief Engineer  
 Address: Western Cape Region, Department of  
 Water Affairs and Forestry, Private Bag X16,  
 Sanlamhof, Bellville, 7532  
 Tel: 021 950 7100  
 Fax: 021 950 7277  
 Cell: 082 807 3540  
 E-mail: WillemT@dwaf.gov.za  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape; RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Strategic; Planning; Management  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: No

**Wingfield, M.J. Prof. (Mike)**

Ph.D., University of Minnesota, USA, 1983  
 Affiliation: FABI, University of Pretoria  
 Post title: Director, FABI, Director NRF/ DST Centre  
 of Excellence  
 Address: FABI, University of Pretoria, Pretoria, 0002  
 Tel: 012 420 3938  
 Fax: 012 420 3960  
 E-mail: mike.wingfield@fabi.up.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: Southern Africa  
 Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial  
 Fields: Taxonomy; Genetics (population)  
 Groups: Woody plant; Fungus (on trees)  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Wise, A.J. Mr (Anthony)**

Nat. Dipl. Forestry, Saasveld School of Forestry  
 (Port Elizabeth Technikon), 1989  
 Affiliation: Volcano AgroScience  
 Post title: Technical Advisor  
 Address: 29 Kiewiet Street, Great Brak River, 6525  
 Tel: 044 620 2336  
 Fax: 044 620 2336  
 Cell: 082 801 2490  
 E-mail: wises@telkomsa.net  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: All  
 Fields: Planning; Management; Operational;  
 Chemical  
 Groups: Woody plant; Herbaceous plant  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: Yes

**Witkowski, E.T.F. Prof. (Ed)**

Ph.D., University of Cape Town, 1988  
 Affiliation: University of the Witwatersrand  
 Post title: Professor  
 Address: APES, University of the Witwatersrand,  
 PO Wits, Johannesburg, 2050  
 Tel: 011 717 6428  
 Fax: 011 403 1429  
 E-mail: ed@biology.biol.wits.ac.za  
 Area of expertise: Mpumalanga; Western Cape,  
 KwaZulu-Natal  
 Biomes/habitats: Savanna; Grassland; Fynbos  
 Fields: Ecology; Ecosystem effects (nutrient  
 cycling); Biology; Impacts (community level)  
 Groups: Woody plant  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Chromolaena*,  
*Campuloclinium*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes

**Witt, A.B.R. Mr (Arne)**

Ph.D. (in submission)  
 M.Sc. (x2), University of Cape Town and  
 Stellenbosch University, 1994 and 1993  
 Affiliation: Weeds Unit, Plant Protection Research  
 Institute, Agricultural Research Council  
 Post title: Division Manager  
 Address: Weeds Division, ARC-Plant Protection  
 Research Institute, Private Bag X134,  
 Queenswood, 0121  
 Tel: 012 356 9839  
 Fax: 012 356 9852  
 Cell: 083 287 1032  
 E-mail: WittA@arc.agric.za  
 Area of expertise: RSA  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos; Savanna  
 Fields: Biocontrol; Impact assessment  
 Groups: Plant  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Bryophyllum*, *Jacaranda*,  
*Prosopis*  
 Institutional Consulting: Yes  
 Private Consulting: No

**Wolfaardt, A.C. Mr (Anton)**

B.Sc.(Hons.), Stellenbosch University, 1999  
 Affiliation: CapeNature  
 Post title: Regional Ecologist  
 Address: Scientific Services, CapeNature, Private  
 Bag X5014, Stellenbosch, 7599  
 Tel: 021 866 8000  
 Fax: 021 866 1523  
 Cell: 082 445 4091  
 E-mail: anton@donline.co.za  
 Area of expertise: Western Cape  
 Biomes/habitats: Fynbos  
 Fields: Planning; Operational; Management  
 Groups: Woody plant; Mammal  
 Main genera: *Acacia*, *Pinus*, *Sus*  
 Institutional Consulting: No  
 Private Consulting: No

**Wood, A.R. Dr (Alan)**

Ph D., Stellenbosch University, 2004

Affiliation: Weed Pathology Unit, Plant Protection  
Research Institute, Agricultural Research  
Council

Post title: Senior Researcher

Address: ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute,  
Private Bag X5017, Stellenbosch, 7599

Tel: 021 887 4690

Fax: 021 887 5096

E-mail: WoodA@arc.agric.za

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Terrestrial

Fields: Plant Pathology; Biocontrol (fungi)

Groups: Plant (all declared invader species)

Institutional Consulting: Yes

**Zachariades, C. Dr (Costas)**

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 1995

Affiliation: Weeds Unit, Plant Protection Research  
Institute, Agricultural Research Council

Post title: Senior Researcher

Address: Weeds Research Laboratory, ARC-Plant  
Protection Research Institute, Private Bag  
X6006, Hilton, 3245

Tel: 033 355 9418

Fax: 033 355 9423

Cell: 083 315 2100

E-mail: ZachariadesC@arc.agric.za

Area of expertise: RSA

Biomes/habitats: Forest; Thicket; Savanna;  
Grassland

Fields: Biocontrol

Groups: Woody plant

Main genera: *Chromolaena*

Institutional Consulting: Yes

Private Consulting: No

**Zimmermann, H.G. Dr (Helmuth)**

Ph.D., Rhodes University, 1983

Affiliation: Helmuth Zimmermann and Associates  
(Consultancy)

Post title: Managing Director

Address: PO Box 974, Faerie Glen, Pretoria, 0043

Tel: 012 348 5132

Fax: 012 348 5132

Cell: 082 770 0251

E-mail: helmuthzim@netactive.co.za

Area of expertise: Africa; RSA

Biomes/habitats: All

Fields: Integrated control; Biocontrol

Groups: Plant (especially Cactaceae)

Main genera: *Opuntia*

Institutional Consulting: No

Private Consulting: Yes



## 8. Bibliography

### 8.1 Alien Aquatic Plants (170)

- ASHTON, P.J. 1974. The effect of some environmental factors on the growth of *Azolla filiculoides* Lam. In E.M. van Zinderen Bakker Sr (ed.), *The Orange River—Progress Report*, pp. 123–138. Institute for Environmental Sciences, Bloemfontein. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, AZOLLA
- ASHTON, P.J. 1977. Factors affecting the growth and development of *Azolla filiculoides* Lam. In D.P. Annecke (ed.), *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa*, pp. 249–268. Balkema, Cape Town. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, AZOLLA
- ASHTON, P.J. 1982. The autecology of *Azolla filiculoides* Lamarck with special reference to its occurrence in the Hendrik Verwoerd Dam catchment area, 245 pp. Ph.D. thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, AZOLLA
- ASHTON, P.J., APPLETON, C.C. & JACKSON, P.B.N. 1986. Ecological impacts and economic consequences of invasive alien organisms in southern African aquatic ecosystems. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and control of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 247–257. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, IMPACT
- ASHTON, P.J. & WALMSLEY, R.D. 1976. The aquatic fern *Azolla* and its *Anabaena* symbiont. *Endeavour* 35: 39–43. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, AZOLLA
- BREEN, C.M., ROGERS, K.H. & ASHTON, P.J. 1988. Vegetation processes in swamps and flooded plains. In J.J. Symoens (ed.), *Vegetation of inland waters*, pp. 223–247. Junk, Dordrecht. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT
- FLACH, T.P. 1977. *Studies on the autecology of Myriophyllum aquaticum in the South-Western Cape Province*. Unpublished M.Sc. thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- HOY, L. & TAYLOR, M. 2005. Wicked water weeds [effect of invasive water weeds on the environment]. *South African Gardening* Feb 2005: 41. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTES, ECOLOGY, IMPACT
- MUSIL, C.F. 1972. *Ecological studies on the aquatic macrophytes of the Pongolo River flood plain pans*. M.Sc. thesis, University of Natal, Pietermaritzburg. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, PAN, ECOLOGY
- MUSIL, C.F., BORNMAN, C.H. & GRUNOW, J.O. 1976. Some observed inter-relationships between the cover of aquatic vegetation and various physical properties of the water medium. *Journal of South African Botany* 42: 157–169. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, WATER-QUALITY
- MUSIL, C.F. & BREEN, C.M. 1977. The influence of site and position in the plant community on the nutrient distribution in, and content of *Eichhornia crassipes* (Mart.) Solms. *Hydrobiologia* 53: 67–72. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, NUTRIENT, EICHHORNIA
- MUSIL, C.F., GRUNOW, J.O. & BORNMAN, C.H. 1973. Classification and ordination of the aquatic macrophytes in the Pongolo River Pans. *Bothalia* 11: 181–190. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, PAN, ECOLOGY
- MUSIL, C.F. & WARD, C.J. 1984. A classification of the water plant communities of Natal, South Africa—a synopsis. *Garcia de Orta, Series Botany, Lisboa* 6: 151–162. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD
- TWYMAN, E.S. & ASHTON, P.J. 1972. An autecological investigation of the aquatic fern (*Azolla* sp.) in relation to the Hendrik Verwoerd Dam. *Transactions of the South African Institute of Civil Engineers* 14,2: 88, 89. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, AZOLLA
- ANONYMOUS 1970. Gevaarlike plante: Die waterhassint. *Die Landbouweekblad* 21.7.1970: 6. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, MANAGEMENT, EICHHORNIA
- ANONYMOUS 1980. Water hyacinth/waterhassint (*Eichhornia crassipes* (Mart.) Solms). *Farming in South Africa, Southern African plants* W.7/1980, 2 pp. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, EICHHORNIA
- ANONYMOUS 1980. Parrot's feather/waterduisendblaar (*Myriophyllum aquaticum* (Vell.) Verdc.). *Farming in South Africa, Southern African plants* W.9/1980, 2 pp. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- ANONYMOUS 1980. Kariba weed/Karibavaring (*Salvinia molesta* Mitchell). *Farming in South Africa, Southern African plants* W.8/1980, 2 pp. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, SALVINIA
- ANONYMOUS 1980. Water fern/rooi watervaring (*Azolla filiculoides* Lam.) *Farming in South Africa, Southern African plants* W.16/1980, 2 pp. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, AZOLLA
- DU TOIT, R. 1938. Water hyacinth. *Farming in South Africa* 13: 16, 17. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, MANAGEMENT, EICHHORNIA
- GERBER, A., CILLIERS, C.J., VAN GINKEL, C. & GLEN, R. 2004. *Easy identification of aquatic plants. A guide for the identification of water plants in and around South African impoundments*. Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, FIELD-GUIDE, MANAGEMENT
- HENDERSON, L. & CILLIERS, C. 1991. Water lettuce/waterslaai A.33/1991. *Farming in South Africa*. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, PISTIA

- HENDERSON, L. & CILLIERS, C.J. 2002. *Invasive aquatic plants: a guide to the identification of the most important and potentially dangerous invasive aquatic and wetland plants in South Africa*. Plant Protection Research Institute Handbook No. 16, 88 pp. Agricultural Research Council, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, FIELD-GUIDE, IDENTIFICATION, WETLAND, PRIORITY, EARLY-WARNING, BIOCONTROL, MANAGEMENT
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1970. Aquatic weeds in southern Africa. *Probe* (Science Students Council Journal Witwatersrand University), pp. 47–49, 53. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, AZOLLA, EICHHORNIA, MYRIOPHYLLUM, SALVINIA
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1977. Some water weeds of the Eastern Cape Province. *The Eastern Cape Naturalist* 60: 4–8. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, MANAGEMENT, EICHHORNIA
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1978. Parrot's feather. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 96–99. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1978. Kariba weed. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 132–135. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, SALVINIA
- LANSDELL, K.A. 1925. The water hyacinth, *Eichhornia speciosa* Kunth. *Journal of the Department of Agriculture of South Africa* 10: 24–28. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, EICHHORNIA
- MAUVE, A.A. 1964. A key to those South African aquatic plants. *Newsletter of the Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 1: 34–36. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, AZOLLA, EICHHORNIA, PISTIA, SALVINIA, MANAGEMENT
- MUSIL, C.F. 1973. *Water plants of Natal—a guide to the important species*. Wildlife Protection & Conservation Society of South Africa, Mossprint, Durban. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, FIELD-GUIDE, MANAGEMENT
- STENT, S.M. 1913. Water hyacinth (*Eichhornia crassipes*). *Department of Agriculture, Union of South Africa, Publication* 68: 1–14. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, EICHHORNIA
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1976. *Myriophyllum*, an increasing water weed menace for South Africa. *Proceedings of the South African Association for the Advancement of Science, Nelspruit, Volume 1*, pp. 93–100. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, INVASION, IMPACT, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, IMPACT, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1977. *Myriophyllum*, an increasing water weed menace for South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 73: 89, 90. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, INVASION, IMPACT, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, IMPACT, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1977. *Myriophyllum*, a powerful threat to our water supplies. *Environment RSA* 4: 3–5. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, INVASION, IMPACT, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, IMPACT, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- PICKWORTH, G. 1969. Water hyacinth in farm dams, a serious problem. *Farming in South Africa* 245,3: 13–15. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, EICHHORNIA
- MARANGONI, C., PIENAAR, R.N. & SYM, S.D. 2001. Possible introduction of alien phytoplankton via shipping ballast water: a South African perspective. *South African Journal of Botany* 67,3: 465–474. A-PLANT, MARINE, INTRODUCTION, BALLAST-WATER
- ANONYMOUS 1968–1969. *Annual report, Cape Provincial Administration Department of Nature Conservation* 25: 104, 105. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MYRIOPHYLLUM, INVASION
- ANONYMOUS 2003. *State of Rivers Report: Hartenbos and Klein Brak River systems. River Health Programme (2003)*. Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, A-WOODY PLANT, A-FISH, CATCHMENT, RIPARIAN, HABITAT INTEGRITY, INVASION
- ASHTON, P.J. 1973. *Azolla*. In E.M. van Zinderen Bakker Sr (ed.), *Research on the Hendrik Verwoerd Dam*, pp. 31–36. Institute for Environmental Sciences, Bloemfontein. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, AZOLLA
- ASHTON, P.J. 1989. Aquatic weeds. In *Lesotho Highlands Water Project Environmental Study. Report Prepared by Environmental Resources Limited, London, for the Lesotho Highlands Development Authority, Maseru, Lesotho*. WQIS, Division of Water Technology, CSIR, Pretoria, 19 pp. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, RISK-ASSESSMENT, INVASION
- ASHTON, P.J. 1991. *Potential Aquatic Plant Problems of the Joint Upper Limpopo Basin Project*. Confidential Report to the McDonald Shand Consortium, Pretoria. WQIS, Division of Water Technology, CSIR, Pretoria, 15 pp. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, RIVER, RISK-ASSESSMENT, INVASION
- ASHTON, P.J. 1992. Reedbed encroachment processes in relation to the rivers of the Kruger National Park. In C.A. Bruwer (ed.), *Flow requirements of Kruger National Park rivers*, pp. 137–141. Technical Report No. TR 149. Department of Water Affairs & Forestry, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, RIVER, INVASION
- ASHTON, P.J. 1994. *An evaluation of the potential aquatic weed problems associated with the Rooipoort Dam Option for augmented water supplies to Pietersburg*. Confidential report to Ninham Shand Inc., by Water Quality Information Systems, Division of Water Technology, CSIR, 28 pp. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IMPOUNDMENT, RISK-ASSESSMENT, INVASION
- ASHTON, P.J. & WALMSLEY, R.D. 1984. The taxonomy and distribution of *Azolla* species in southern Africa. *Botanical Journal of the Linnean Society* 89: 239–

247. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, TAXONOMY, SPREAD, AZOLLA, INVASION
- BYFORD-JONES, C. 1993. Kariba weed threatens northern Natal rivers. *Farmers Weekly* January 1993. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM96-0030) A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, INVASION
- CHUTTER, F.M. (ed.) 1993. *Lesotho Highlands Development Authority, Contract 83—Baseline water quality and aquatic communities study—Phase 1A*. Report to the Lesotho Highlands Development Authority, Maseru, Lesotho. WQIS, Division of Water Technology, CSIR, Pretoria, xxxv + 150 + 12 + 50 pp. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, INVASION, SPREAD
- DAY, J.A. (Convener), CAMBRAY, J.A., CRONJE, L.J.J., DE MOOR, F.C., DE WET, E.S., FOURIE, D.M., HEYL, C.W., KING, J.M., MORGAN, H.K., SEMMELINK, M.M., SNOOK, D.J. & THORNTON, D.J. 1988. Southern African inland water ecosystems. In I.A.W. Macdonald & R.J.M. Crawford (eds), *Long-term data series relating to southern Africa's renewable natural resources*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 157: 138–150. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, INVASION, SPREAD, DATA
- GERTENBACH, W.P.D. 1975. Kariba weed now in Kruger Park. *Custos* 14: 39–41. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, SALVINIA
- GILLESPIE, R.D., MEINESZ, A. & CRITCHLEY, A.T. 1997. Growth responses of *Caulerpa taxifolia* (Ulvophyceae, Chlorophyta) from the South African aquarist trade. A potential invasive of South African coastal waters. *South African Journal of Botany* 63,6: 480–483. A-PLANT, MARINE, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, INVASION-POTENTIAL, UTILISATION, AQUARIUM-TRADE
- HILL, M.P. 1999. The world's worst aquatic weed. *Pesticide Outlook* 10,2: 58–62. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, INVASIVENESS, INVASION
- HUGHES, A. 1959. When blue hyacinth invaded the Vaal. *Farmers Weekly* 14.10.1959: A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, EICHHORNIA
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1977. Some water weeds of the Eastern Cape Province—II. *Myriophyllum*. *The Eastern Cape Naturalist* 61: 14–17. A-AQUATIC, INVASION MACROPHYTE, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1977. Some water weeds of the Eastern Cape Province—III. *Salvinia*. *The Eastern Cape Naturalist* 62: 10–13. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, SALVINIA, INVASION
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1978. Some water weeds of the Eastern Cape Province—IV. *Azolla*. *The Eastern Cape Naturalist* 63: 16–18. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, AZOLLA
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1978. Can we come to terms with our water weeds? *Proceedings of the South African Association for the Advancement of Science, Biennial Congress. 'The Future and Its Challenges.'* Stellenbosch 1978, Volume 1, pp. 409–416. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, INVASION, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, IMPACT, AZOLLA, MYRIOPHYLLUM, SALVINIA
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1980. *Myriophyllum* in southern Africa. *Proceedings of the Third National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Pretoria, 1979*, pp. 141–149. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, INVASION, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, IMPACT, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- N.I.W.R. 1985. *The limnology of Hartbeespoort Dam*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 110, ix + 269 pp. Foundation for Research Development, CSIR, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, EICHHORNIA
- NORTJE, P. 1977. *Duisendblaar*, 199 pp. Tafelberg Pers, Cape Town. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MYRIOPHYLLUM, INVASION
- SCOTT, W.E., ASHTON, P.J., WALMSLEY, R.D. & SEAMAN, M.T. 1980. Hartbeespoort Dam: a case study of a hypertrophic, warm, monomictic impoundment. In J. Barica & L.R. Mur (eds), *Hypertrophic ecosystems. Developments in hydrobiology* 2: 317–322. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, NUTRIENT, EICHHORNIA
- TOERIEN, D.F. & WALMSLEY, R.D. 1978. The dissolved mineral composition of the water flowing into and out of the Hartbeespoort Dam. *Water SA* 4: 25–38. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IMPOUNDMENT, INVASION, IMPACT, NUTRIENT, WATER-QUALITY, EICHHORNIA
- VAN VUREN, K. 1972. Crassipes, jou waterpes! *Die Landbouweekblad* 26 September 1972: 53. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, INVASION, IMPACT, EICHHORNIA
- WILD, H. 1961. Harmful aquatic plants in Africa and Madagascar. Joint CCTA/CSA Project No. 14. *Kirkia* Supplement 2: 1–66. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, INVASION, IMPACT, AZOLLA, EICHHORNIA, MYRIOPHYLLUM, PISTIA, SALVINIA
- ASHTON, P.J. 1980. The production and potential uses of macrophytes grown in wastewater. In *Aquaculture in wastewater*, pp. 280–300. CSIR Publication S 236, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT
- ASHTON, P.J. & MITCHELL, D.S. 1989. Aquatic plants: patterns and modes of invasion, attributes of invading species and assessment of control programmes. In J.A. Drake *et al.* (eds), *SCOPE 37, Biological invasions—a global perspective*, pp. 111–154. Wiley & Sons, New York. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, INVASION, ECOLOGY, INVASIVENESS, MANAGEMENT, EICHHORNIA
- ASHTON, P.J., SCOTT, W.E. & STEYN, D.J. 1980. The chemical control of the water hyacinth *Eichhornia crassipes* (Mart.) Solms. *Progress in Water Technology* 12: 865–882. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IMPOUNDMENT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, EICHHORNIA
- ASHTON, P.J., SCOTT, W.E., STEYN, D.J. & WELLS, R.D. 1979. The chemical control programme against the water hyacinth *Eichhornia crassipes* (Mart.) Solms on Hartbeespoort Dam: historical and practical aspects. *South African Journal of Science* 75: 303–306. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IMPOUNDMENT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, EICHHORNIA
- BEGG, G.W. 1971. Preliminary tests using formalin as a possible means of chemically controlling *Salvinia auriculata* and other undesirable floating plants

- in freshwater impoundments. *Newsletter of the Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 17: 22–26. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, SALVINIA
- CAMPBELL, P.L. & NAUDÉ, D. 1999. Control programme for the management of water hyacinth. In M.P. Hill, M.H. Julien & T.D. Center (eds), *Proceedings of the first IOBC Global Working Group Meeting for the Biological and Integrated Control of Water Hyacinth. 16–19 November 1998. Harare, Zimbabwe*, pp. 135–141. Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, EICHHORNIA
- CENTER, T.D. & HILL, M.P. 1999. Host specificity of the pickerelweed borer, *Bellura densa* Walker (Lepidoptera: Noctuidae) a potentially damaging natural enemy of water hyacinth. In M.P. Hill, M.H. Julien & T.D. Center (eds), *Proceedings of the first IOBC Global Working Group Meeting for the Biological and Integrated Control of Water Hyacinth. 16–19 November 1998. Harare, Zimbabwe*, pp. 67. Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, BELLURA
- CENTER, T.D. & HILL, M.P. 2002. Field efficacy and predicted host range of the pickerelweed borer, *Bellura densa*, a potential biological control agent of water hyacinth. *BioControl* 47: 231–243. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, BELLURA
- CENTER, T.D., VAN, T.K. & HILL, M.P. 2001. Can competition experiments be used to evaluate the potential efficacy of new water hyacinth biological control agents? In M.H. Julien, M.P. Hill, T.D. Center & D. Jianqing (eds), *Biological and integrated control of water hyacinth, Eichhornia crassipes. Proceedings of the second meeting of the global working group for the biological and integrated control of water hyacinth. Beijing, China, 9–12 October 2000*. ACIAR Proceedings No. 102: 77–81. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, TECHNIQUE, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1987. Biologiese beheer van die watervaring *Salvinia molesta*. *Suid-Afrikaanse Tydskrif vir Wetenskap* 83: 392, 393. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SALVINIA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1987. Biological control of water lettuce. *Proceedings of the sixth Entomological Congress organised by the Entomological Society of Southern Africa. Stellenbosch July 1987*. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PISTIA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1988. First attempt at and early results on the biological control of *Pistia stratiotes* L. in South Africa. *Koedoe* 30: 35–40. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PISTIA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1988. *Vooruitsig vir die biologiese beheer van wateronkruid in Suid Afrika*. Onkruidkongres, Potchefstroom. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1989. Confirmation of host specificity of *Neohydronomus pulchellus* under simulated natural conditions. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 52: 109–118. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PISTIA, NEOHYDRONOMUS
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1989. Prospects for the biological control of water hyacinth, *Eichhornia crassipes* in South Africa. *Proceedings of the Seventh Entomological Congress organised by the Entomological Society of Southern Africa. Pietermaritzburg 10–13 July 1989*. p 24. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1990. Biological control of aquatic weeds in South Africa—an interim report. In E.S. Delfosse (ed.), *Proceedings of the Seventh International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, 6–11 March 1988, Rome, Italy. 1st Sper. Patol. Veg. (MAF)*, pp. 263–267. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1991. Biological control of water hyacinth, *Eichhornia crassipes* (Pontederiaceae), in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 207–217. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1991. Biological control of water fern, *Salvinia molesta* (Salviniaceae), in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 219–224. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SALVINIA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1991. Biological control of water lettuce, *Pistia stratiotes* (Araceae), in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 225–229. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PISTIA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1994. Weed control with insects—a matter of fitness. *BCPC Monograph No. 59: comparing glasshouse & field pesticide performance II*, pp. 297–306. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1997. Will yet another alien plant bite the dust? [*Myriophyllum aquaticum*]. *Proceedings of the joint Congress of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa (11th Congress) and the African Association of Insect Scientists (12th Congress), 30 June–4 July 1997, Stellenbosch, South Africa*. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1998. First attempt at the biological control of the weed *Myriophyllum aquaticum*, in South Africa. In A. Monteiro, T. Vasconcelos & L. Catarino (eds), *Management and ecology of aquatic plants. Proceedings of the 10th EWRS International Symposium on Aquatic Weeds, Lisbon 21–25 September 1998*, pp. 331–334. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1999. Biological control of parrot's feather, *Myriophyllum aquaticum* (Vell.) Verdc. (Haloragaceae), in South Africa. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology*. Memoir No. 1: 113–118. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1999. Biological control of *Pistia stratiotes* (water lettuce) on different water bodies. *Proceedings of the 12th Entomological Congress of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa, 12–15 July 1999, Potchefstroom, South Africa*, p. 20. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PISTIA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1999. *Lysathia* n. sp. (Coleoptera: Chrysomelidae) for the biological control of the aquatic weed, *Myriophyllum aquaticum* (Haloragaceae), in South Africa. *Hydrobiologia*

- 415: 271–276. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- CILLIERS, C.J. 2000. Biologiese beheer van waterslaai (Praatjie) Jaarkongres van die SA Akademie vir Wetenskap en Kuns (Afdeling Biologiese Wetenskappe), 14 September 2000, Roodepoort, South Africa. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PISTIA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 2001. Is integrated control of water hyacinth practical? *Proceedings of the Joint Congress of the Southern African Weeds Science Society South African Society for Crop Production 16–18 January 2001, Sanlam Conference Centre, University of Pretoria*, pp. 85, 86. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- CILLIERS, C. J. 2002. Water hyacinth sunk by biological control agents. *Plant Protection News* (Bulletin of the ARC—Plant Protection Research Institute) 60: 4–6. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 2003. *Salvinia weevil (Cyrtobagous salviniae)*. A natural enemy of salvinia (*Salvinia molesta*), a free-floating fern, in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 25. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SALVINIA
- CILLIERS, C.J., CAMPBELL, P.L., NAUDE, D. & NESER, S. 1996. An integrated water hyacinth control programme on the Vaal River, in a cool, high altitude area in South Africa. In R. Charudattan, T.D. Center & C. Kelly-Begazo (eds), *Strategies for water hyacinth control*. Report of a Panel of Experts Meeting 11–14 September, 1995, Fort Lauderdale, Florida, USA, pp. 87–103. Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations, Rome. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, RIVER, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- CILLIERS, C.J. & DEN BREEËN, A. 1999. How long does it take to control water hyacinth? In M.P. Hill, M.H. Julien & T.D. Center (eds), *Proceedings of the first IOBC Global Working Group Meeting for the Biological and Integrated Control of Water Hyacinth, 16–19 November 1998, Harare, Zimbabwe*, pp. 174–178. Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- CILLIERS, C.J. & HILL, M.P. 1996. Mortality of *Eichhornia crassipes* (water hyacinth) in winter, following summer stress of biological control agents. In V.C. Moran & J. Hoffman (eds.), *Proceedings of the IX International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds, 19–26 January 1996, Stellenbosch, South Africa*. University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- CILLIERS, C.J., HILL, M.P., OGWANG, J.A. & AJUNOU, O. 2003. Aquatic weeds in Africa and their control. In P. Neuenschwander, P. Borgemeister & J. Langewald (eds), *Biological control and IPM systems in Africa*, pp. 161–178. CAB International, London. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, BIOCONTROL
- CILLIERS, C.J. & MABULU, L.Y. 2003. *Lysathia (Lysathia n.sp.)*. A natural enemy of parrot's feather/waterduisendblaar (*Myriophyllum aquaticum*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on biological control agents available to aid alien plant control* 23. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- CILLIERS, C.J. & MABULU, L.Y. 2003. The water lettuce weevil (*Neohydronomus affinis*). A natural enemy of water lettuce/waterslaai in South Africa. *Dossiers on biological control agents available to aid alien plant control* 24. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PISTIA, NEOHYDRONOMUS
- CILLIERS, C.J., ZELLER, D. & STRYDOM, G. 1996. Short- and long-term control of water lettuce (*Pistia stratiotes*) on seasonal water bodies and on a river system in the Kruger National Park, South Africa. *Hydrobiologica* 340: 173–179. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, RIVER, PAN, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PISTIA
- COETZEE, J.A., BYRNE, M. & HILL, M.P. 2003. Failure of *Eccritotarsus catarinensis*, a biological control agent of water hyacinth, to persist on pickerelweed, a non-target host in South Africa, after forced establishment. *Biological Control* 28: 229–236. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, ECCRITOTARSUS, EVALUATION
- COETZEE, J.A., CENTER, T.D., BYRNE, M.J. & HILL, M.P. 2005. The impact of the biocontrol agent *Eccritotarsus catarinensis*, a sap-feeding mirid, on the competitive performance of water hyacinth. *Biological Control* 32: 90–96. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION, EICHHORNIA, ECCRITOTARSUS
- CUDA, J.P. CILLIERS, C.J. & CHARUDATTAN, R. 2006. Biological control of aquatic weeds: progress and perspectives 1990–2000. In A.M. Fox & K.J. Murphy (eds), *Aquatic weed management* (in press). A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION
- DEN BREEËN, A. 1999. Biological control of water hyacinth using plant pathogens: dual pathogenicity and insect interactions. In M.P. Hill, M.H. Julien & T.D. Center (eds), *Proceedings of the first IOBC Global Working Group Meeting for the Biological and Integrated Control of Water Hyacinth, 16–19 November 1998, Harare, Zimbabwe*, pp. 75–79. Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-SELECTION, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- EDWARDS, D. 1969. Some effects of siltation upon aquatic macrophyte vegetation in rivers. *Hydrobiologia* 34: 29–36. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, RIVER, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, EICHHORNIA
- EDWARDS, D. & MUSIL, C.F. 1975. *Eichhornia crassipes* in South Africa—a general review. *Journal Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 1: 23–27. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, INVASION, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, EICHHORNIA
- FINDLAY, J.B.R. & JONES, D. 1996. The integrated control of water hyacinth (*Eichhornia crassipes*) based on Roundup® herbicide treatments. In V.C. Moran & J.H. Hoffmann (eds), *Proceedings of the IX International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds*, pp. 435–440. University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, CHEMICAL, EICHHORNIA
- FOXCROFT, L.C., CILLIERS, C.J., MNGOMEZULU, V., MACFADYEN, S. & FREITAG-RONALDSON,



- S. 2006. The invasive alien plant, water lettuce, is under biological control in the Kruger National Park. *Veld & Flora* (submitted). A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PISTIA
- HILL, M.P. 1995. SCI and Wonderwater join forces in fight against Red Water Fern. *Informa* 9,4: 16. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, CO-OPERATION, AZOLLA
- HILL, M.P. 1996. A new natural enemy for water hyacinth in South Africa. *Plant Protection News* 43: 18, 19. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- HILL, M.P. 1996. New natural enemy on water hyacinth released. *Agricultural News* 38: 6. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- HILL, M.P. 1997. *Eccritotarsus catarinensis* on water hyacinth: an encouraging start. *Plant Protection News* 47: 10. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, ECCRITOTARSUS
- HILL, M.P. 1997. *The potential for the biological control of the floating aquatic fern Azolla filiculoides Lamarck (red water fern/rooiwatervaring) in South Africa*. WRC Report No. KV 100/97, 31 pp. Report to the Water Research Commission by the Plant Protection Research Institute, Agricultural Research Council. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AZOLLA
- HILL, M.P. 1998. Herbivorous insect fauna associated with *Azolla* species (Pteridophyta: Azollaceae) in southern Africa. *African Entomology* 6,2: 370–372. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AZOLLA
- HILL, M.P. 1998. Life history and laboratory host range of *Stenopelmus rufinus*, a natural enemy for *Azolla filiculoides* in South Africa. *Biocontrol* 43: 215–224. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AZOLLA, STENOPELMUS
- HILL, M.P. 1998. *Azolla filiculoides* the first step towards biological control. *Plant Protection News* 51: 1–3. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AZOLLA
- HILL, M.P. 1999. What level of host specificity can we expect and what are we prepared to accept from new natural enemies for water hyacinth? The case of *Eccritotarsus catarinensis* in South Africa. In M.P. Hill, M.H. Julien & T.D. Center (eds), *Proceedings of the first IOBC Global Working Group Meeting for the Biological and Integrated Control of Water Hyacinth. 16–19 November 1998. Harare, Zimbabwe*, pp. 62–66. Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-SELECTION, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, ECCRITOTARSUS
- HILL, M.P. 1999. Biological control of red water fern, *Azolla filiculoides* Lamarck (Pteridophyta: Azollaceae), in South Africa. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 119–124. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AZOLLA
- HILL, M.P. 2000. More agents for South Africa. *Water Hyacinth News* 1: 7. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- HILL, M.P. 2001. Water hyacinth with a jaundiced look. *Water Hyacinth News* 3: 4. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, EICHHORNIA
- HILL, M.P. 2003. The impact and control of alien aquatic vegetation in South African aquatic ecosystems. *African Journal of Aquatic Science* 28: 19–24. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- HILL, M.P., CENTER, T.D., STANLEY, J.N., CORDO, H.A., COETZEE, J. & BYRNE, M.J. 2000. The performance of the water hyacinth mirid, *Eccritotarsus catarinensis*, on water hyacinth and pickerelweed: a comparison of laboratory and field results. In N.R. Spencer (ed.), *Proceedings of the X International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds, 4–14 July 1999, Montana State University Bozeman, Montana, USA*, pp. 357–366. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, ECCRITOTARSUS
- HILL, M.P. & CILLIERS, C.J. 1998. *Azolla filiculoides*: Wonder plant or ecological disaster—the South Africa perspective. In A. Monteiro, T. Vasconcelos & L. Catarino (eds), *Proceedings of the 10th EWR Symposium on Aquatic Weeds, 1998, Lisbon, Portugal*, pp. 265–267. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, AZOLLA
- HILL, M.P. & CILLIERS, C.J. 1999. A review of the arthropod natural enemies, and factors that influence their efficacy, in the biological control of water hyacinth, *Eichhornia crassipes* (Mart.) Solms-Laubach (Pontederiaceae), in South Africa. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 103–112. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, EVALUATION, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- HILL, M.P. & CILLIERS, C.J. 1999. *Azolla filiculoides* Lamarck (Pteridophyta: Azollaceae), its status in South Africa and control. *Hydrobiologia* 415: 203–206. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AZOLLA
- HILL, M.P., CILLIERS, C.J. & NESER, S. 1999. Life history and laboratory host range of *Eccritotarsus catarinensis* (Carvalho) (Heteroptera: Miridae), a new natural enemy released on water hyacinth (*Eichhornia crassipes* (Mart.) Solms-Laub.) (Pontederiaceae) in South Africa. *Biological Control* 14: 127–133. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, ECCRITOTARSUS
- HILL, M.P. & JULIEN, M.H. 2004. The transfer of appropriate technology; key to the successful biological control of five aquatic weeds in Africa. In J.M. Cullen, D.T. Briese, D.J. Kriticos, W.M. Lonsdale, L. Morin & J.K. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of the XIth International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds*, pp. 370–374. CSIRO Entomology, Canberra, Australia. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CO-OPERATION, EICHHORNIA
- HILL, M.P. & OBERHOLZER, I.G. 2000. Host specificity of the grasshopper, *Cornops aquaticum*, a natural enemy of water hyacinth. In N.R. Spencer (ed.), *Proceedings of the X International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds, 4–14 July 1999, Montana State University Bozeman, Montana, USA*, pp. 349–356. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, CORNOPS

- HILL, M.P. & OBERHOLZER, I.G. 2002. Laboratory host range testing of the flea beetle, *Pseudolampsis guttata* (LeConte) (Coleoptera: Chrysomeliadae), a potential natural enemy for red water fern, *Azolla filiculoides* Lamarck (Pteridophyta: Azollaceae) in South Africa. *The Coleopterists Bulletin* 56, 1: 79–83. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AZOLLA, PSEUDOLAMPSIS
- HILL, M.P. & OBERHOLZER, I.G. 2004. The mirid *Eccritotarsus catarinensis* is an effective agent against water hyacinth in some areas of South Africa. In J.M. Cullen, D.T. Briebe, D.J. Kriticos, W.M. Lonsdale, L. Morin & J.K. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of the XIth International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds*, pp. 545–547. CSIRO Entomology, Canberra, Australia. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, ECCRITOTARSUS
- HILL, M.P. & OLCKERS, T. 2001. Biological control initiatives against water hyacinth in South Africa: constraining factors, success and new courses of action. In M.H. Julien, M.P. Hill, T.D. Center & D. Jianqing (eds), *Biological and integrated control of water hyacinth, Eichhornia crassipes. Proceedings of the second meeting of the global working group for the biological and integrated control of water hyacinth, Beijing, China, 9–12 October 2000*. ACIAR Proceedings No. 102: 33–38. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1979. *Investigation of the taxonomy and distribution of Myriophyllum species in South Africa*. Institute for Freshwater Studies, Rhodes University, Grahamstown, Special Report 79/2: 1–15. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, TAXONOMY, INVASION, SPREAD, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1979. Water weeds in southern Africa. *Aquatic Botany* 6, 4: 377–391. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, INVASION, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, AZOLLA, EICHHORNIA, MYRIOPHYLLUM, SALVINIA
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1979. Taxonomy and economics of water plants in Africa. *Proceedings of the Ninth Plenary Meeting of Association pour l'Etude Taxonomique de la Flore d'Afrique Tropicale, Las Palmas de Gran Canaria, 18–23 March 1978*, pp. 85–87. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, ECONOMICS, TAXONOMY, AZOLLA, EICHHORNIA, MYRIOPHYLLUM, PISTIA, SALVINIA
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. & ALLANSON, B.R. 1978. Eradication of water hyacinth. *South African Journal of Science* 74: 122. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- JONES, R.W. & CILLIERS, C.J. 1999. Integrated control of water hyacinth on the Nseleni/Mposa Rivers and Lake Nsezi in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. In M.P. Hill, M.H. Julien & T.D. Center (eds), *Proceedings of the first IOBC Global Working Group Meeting for the Biological and Integrated Control of Water Hyacinth. 16–19 November 1998. Harare, Zimbabwe*, pp. 160–167. Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- JULIEN, M.H., HARLEY, K.L.S., WRIGHT, A.D., CILLIERS, C.J., HILL, M.P., CENTER, T.D., CORDO, H. & CONFRANCESCO, A.F. 1996. International co-operation and linkages in the management of water hyacinth with emphasis on biological control. In V.C. Moran & J.H. Hoffmann (eds), *Proceedings of the IXth International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds, 19–26 January 1996, Stellenbosch, South Africa*, pp. 273–282. University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CO-OPERATION, EICHHORNIA
- JULIEN, M.H., HILL, M.P., CENTER, T.D. & JIANQING, D. (eds) 2001. Biological and integrated control of water hyacinth, *Eichhornia crassipes. Proceedings of the Second Meeting of the Global Working Group for the Biological and Integrated Control of Water Hyacinth, Beijing, China, 9–12 October 2000*. Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research, Canberra 2001. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- KLUGE, R.L. & ANNECKE, D.P. circa 1974. *Prospects for the ecological control of Eichhornia crassipes in South Africa*. Internal report. Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, NEOCHETINA
- LOTTER, W.D. 1997. *Management proposals for the alien aquatic biological invasions of the Kruger National Park*. Scientific Report 10/97. National Parks Board of South Africa, Skukuza. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC
- MACFAYDEN, S., CILLIERS, C.J. FOXCROFT, L.C. 2006. The biological control, seed viability and longevity of *Pistia stratiotes* (water lettuce) on Sunset Dam, Kruger National Park. *Biocontrol Science and Technology* (in press) A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, REGENERATION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PISTIA
- MCCONNACHIE, A. 2001. The frond feeding weevil (*Stenopelmus rufinus*). A natural enemy of red water fern (*Azolla filiculoides*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 3. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AZOLLA, STENOPELMUS
- MCCONNACHIE, A.J., DE WIT, M.P., HILL, M.P. & BYRNE, M.J. 2003. Economic evaluation of the successful biological control of *Azolla filiculoides* in South Africa. *Biological Control* 28: 25–32. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ECONOMICS, EVALUATION, AZOLLA
- MCCONNACHIE, A.J., HILL, M.P. & BYRNE, M.J. 2004. Field assessment of a frond-feeding weevil, a successful biological control agent of red waterfern, *Azolla filiculoides*, in southern Africa. *Biological Control* 29: 326–331. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION, AZOLLA, STENOPELMUS
- MCCONNACHIE, A.J., HILL, M.P., BYRNE, M.J. & DE WIT, M.P. 2004. The successful biological control of *Azolla filiculoides* in South Africa: an economic perspective. In J.M. Cullen, D.T. Briebe, D.J. Kriticos, W.M. Lonsdale, L. Morin & J.K. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of the XIth International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds*, pp. 576–583. CSIRO Entomology, Canberra, Australia. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ECONOMICS, EVALUATION, AZOLLA
- MORRIS, M.J. 1990. *Cercospora piaropi* recorded on the aquatic weed, *Eichhornia crassipes*, in South

- Africa. *Phytophylactica* 22: 255, 256. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, CERCOSPORA
- MUSIL, C.F. 1977. The application of growth kinetics for the control of *Eichhornia crassipes* and *Salvinia molesta* through nutrient removal. In *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa*, pp. 239–247. Balkema, Cape Town. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, MANAGEMENT, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, NUTRIENT, WATER-QUALITY, EICHHORNIA, SALVINIA
- MUSIL, C.F. 1982. *The use of growth kinetics in the development of a predictive model for the growth of Eichhornia crassipes (Mart.) Solms in the field*. Ph.D. thesis, University of Natal, Pietermaritzburg. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, NUTRIENT, WATER-QUALITY, MODELLING, EICHHORNIA, MANAGEMENT
- MUSIL, C.F. & BREEN, C.M. 1977. The application of growth kinetics to the control of *Eichhornia crassipes* (Mart.) Solms through nutrient removal by mechanical harvesting. *Hydrobiologia* 53: 165–171. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, MANAGEMENT, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, NUTRIENT, WATER-QUALITY, EICHHORNIA
- MUSIL, C.F. & BREEN, C.M. 1985. The development of a predictive model for the growth of *Eichhornia crassipes* in the field. I. Generating kinetic coefficients for the model in greenhouse culture. *Bothalia* 15: 689–704. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, MODELLING, EICHHORNIA, MANAGEMENT
- MUSIL, C.F. & BREEN, C.M. 1985. The development of a predictive model for the growth of *Eichhornia crassipes* in the field. II. Testing and refining the model under field conditions. *Bothalia* 15: 705–724. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, MODELLING, EICHHORNIA, MANAGEMENT
- MUSIL, C.F. & BREEN, C.M. 1985. The development of a predictive model for the growth of *Eichhornia crassipes* in the field. III. Testing a model for predicting growth rates from plant nutrient concentrations. *Bothalia* 15: 725–732. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, NUTRIENT, WATER-QUALITY, MODELLING, EICHHORNIA, MANAGEMENT
- MUSIL, C.F. & BREEN, C.M. 1985. The development of a predictive model for the growth of *Eichhornia crassipes* in the field. IV. Application of the model to the Vernon Hooper Dam—a eutrophied South African impoundment. *Bothalia* 15: 733–748. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, MODELLING, EICHHORNIA, MANAGEMENT
- NESER, S. 1996. Steps in implementing integrated management programs against water hyacinth. In R. Charudattan, T.D. Center & C. Kelly-Begazo (eds), *Strategies for water hyacinth control*. Report of a Panel of Experts Meeting 11–14 September, 1996, Fort Lauderdale, Florida, USA. Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations, Rome. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, BIOCONTROL, CHEMICAL, EICHHORNIA
- OBERHOLZER, H. 2001. The water hyacinth mirid (*Eccritotarsus catarinensis*). A natural enemy of water hyacinth (*Eichhornia crassipes*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 18. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, ECCRITOTARSUS
- OBERHOLZER, H. 2001. The water hyacinth mite (*Orthogalumna terebrantis*). A natural enemy of water hyacinth (*Eichhornia crassipes*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 19. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, ORTHOGALUMNA
- OBERHOLZER, H. 2001. The water hyacinth moth (*Niphograpta albiguttalis*). A natural enemy of water hyacinth (*Eichhornia crassipes*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 20. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, NIPHOGRAPTA
- OBERHOLZER, H. 2001. The water hyacinth weevils (*Neochetina eichhorniae* and *Neochetina bruchi*). A natural enemy of water hyacinth (*Eichhornia crassipes*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 21. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, NEOCHETINA
- OBERHOLZER, I.G. & HILL, M.P. 2001. How safe is the grasshopper *Cornops aquaticum* for release on water hyacinth in South Africa? In M.H. Julien, M.P. Hill, T.D. Center & D. Jianqing (eds), *Biological and integrated control of water hyacinth, Eichhornia crassipes. Proceedings of the second meeting of the global working group for the biological and integrated control of water hyacinth, Beijing, China, 9–12 October 2000*. *ACIAR Proceedings* 102: 82–88. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, CORNOPS
- OOSTHUIZEN, G.J. & WALTERS, M.M. 1961. Control water fern with diesoline. *Farming in South Africa* 37,2: 35–37. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, AZOLLA
- RUSSELL, I.A. 2003. Changes in the distribution of emergent aquatic plants in a brackish South African estuarine-lake system. *African Journal of Aquatic Science* 28,2: 103–118. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ESTUARY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD
- SCHAFER, F. 1977. Is water-hyacinth a curse or blessing? *Farmers Weekly* 2.3.1977: 19–23. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, IMPACT, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, EICHHORNIA
- SCHOONBEE, H.J., BRANDT, F. de W. & BEKKER, C.A.L. 1978. Induced spawning of the two phytophagous Chinese carp species *Ctenopharyngodon idella* (Val.) and *Hypophthalmichthys molitrix* (Val.) with reference to the possible use of the grass carp in the control of aquatic weeds. *Water SA* 4,2: 9–13. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, IMPACT, N-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, CTENOPHARYNGODON, HYPOPHTHALMICHTHYS
- SCOTT, W.E., ASHTON, P.J. & STEYN, D.J. (eds) 1979. *Chemical control of the water hyacinth on Hartbeespoort Dam*. Water Research Commission, Pretoria, vii + 84 pp. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE,



## IMPOUNDMENT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, EICHHORNIA

- SHILLINGAW, S.N. 1981. The war on water weeds. *African Wildlife* 35,3: 31–34. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, MYRIOPHYLLUM, SALVINIA
- STEYN, D.J., SCOTT, W.E. & ASHTON, P.J. 1980. Water hyacinth worries. *Fauna & Flora* 36: 10, 11. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, EICHHORNIA
- STEYN, D.J., SCOTT, W.E., ASHTON, P.J. & VIVIER, F.S. 1979. *Guide to the use of herbicides on aquatic plants*. Technical Report TR 95, iv + 29 pp. Department of Water Affairs, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, TECHNIQUE
- THOMAS, P.A. 1974. *Investigations into the biology of Paulinia acuminata (de Geer) (Orthoptera: Acrididae) with particular reference to Salvinia auriculata*. M.Phil. thesis, University of London, London, 212 pp. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SALVINIA, PAULINIA
- UECKERMANN, C. & HILL, M.P. 2001. *Impact of herbicides used in water hyacinth control on natural enemies released against the weed for biological control*. WRC Report No. 915/1/01, 81 pp. Water Research Commission, South Africa. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA
- VAN VUUREN, C. & HILL, M.P. 1998. War against red water fern. *Parks and Grounds* 102: 40, 41. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, AZOLLA
- WOOD, A.R. 1999. *The potential biological control agents of Cladophora glomerata that occur in irrigation schemes in South Africa*. Water Research Commission Report No. 669/1/99. A-PLANT, CANAL, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CLADOPHORA
- WOOD, A.R. 2003. *The potential of aquatic Pythium species for the biological control of Cladophora glomerata in irrigation schemes in South Africa*. Water Research Commission Report No. 918/1/03. A-PLANT, CANAL, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CLADOPHORA, PYTHIUM

## 8.2 Alien Herbaceous Plants (57)

### 8.2.1 A-Herbaceous Plant—Ecology (16)

- HARDING, G.B. 1982. *The autecology of Stipa trichotoma Nees (nassella tussock) on Rhodes Estate*. M.Sc. thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-GRASS, ECOLOGY, STIPA
- HARDING, G.B. 1983. Aspects of the autecology of *Stipa trichotoma* Nees (nassella tussock) on Rhodes Estate. *Proceedings of the 5th National Weed Conference of South Africa*. A-GRASS, ECOLOGY, STIPA
- JOUBERT, D.C. 1981. *Aspekte van die kiemingsfisiologie van nassella-polgras (Stipa trichotoma)*. Unpublished M.Sc. thesis, University of Port Elizabeth, Port Elizabeth. A-GRASS, ECOLOGY, GERMINATION, STIPA

JOUBERT, D.C. 1984. The seed bank under nassella tussock infestations at Boschberg. *South African Journal of Plant and Soil* 1: 1–3. A-GRASS, ECOLOGY, SEED-BANK, GERMINATION, STIPA

JOUBERT, D.C. & SMALL, J.G.C. 1982. Seed germination and dormancy of *Stipa trichotoma* (nassella tussock). Part 1. Effect of dehulling, constant temperatures, light, oxygen, activated charcoal and storage. *South African Journal of Botany* 1: 142–146. A-GRASS, ECOLOGY, SEED-BANK, GERMINATION, STIPA

REINHARDT, C.F., BELZ, R.G., HURLE, K., VAN DER LAAN M., & FOXCROFT, L.C. 2006. Production dynamics of the allelochemical parthenin in leaves of *Parthenium hysterophorus* L. *Journal of Plant Disease Protection* (in press) A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, ALLELOPATHY, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, PARTHENIUM, TOXICITY

REINHARDT, C.F., KRAUS, S., WALKER, F., FOXCROFT, L.C., ROBBERTSE, P. & HURLE, K. 2004. The allelochemical parthenin is sequestered at high level in capitate-sessile trichomes on the leaf surface of *Parthenium hysterophorus*. *Journal of Plant Disease Protection* 19: 253–261. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, ALLELOPATHY, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, PARTHENIUM, TOXICITY

WELLS, M.J. 1977. Progress with research on nassella tussock. *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Stellenbosch, 1977*, pp. 47–55. A-GRASS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, STIPA

### 8.2.2 A-Herbaceous Plants—Identification (11)

- ANONYMOUS 1972. Nuwe gevaar bedreig weiding. *Die Landbouweekblad* 25.7.1972: 20, 21. A-GRASS, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, STIPA
- ANONYMOUS 1972. Polgras kan S.A. miljoene kos. *Die Landbouweekblad* 25.7.1972: 224–226. A-GRASS, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, ECONOMICS, STIPA
- ANONYMOUS 1976. Nassella tussock weed: where next? *Forestry News* 24/76: 7. A-GRASS, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, ECONOMICS, STIPA
- DUCKITT, W. 1969. Nuttelose grassoort wek kommer. *Die Landbouweekblad* 11.11.1969: 155–159. A-GRASS, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, ECONOMICS, STIP
- HALL, A.V. 1976. Nassella tussock weed: where next? *Environment RSA* 3,9: 7. A-GRASS, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, ECONOMICS, STIPA
- HALL, A.V. & BULLEY, S.M. 1980. Nassella tussock in the S. W. Cape. *Proceedings of the Third National Weeds Conference of South Africa Pretoria, 1979*, pp. 33–38. A-GRASS, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, ECONOMICS, STIPA
- HENDERSON, L. 2002. Invasive alien plants in southern Africa. Part 5: Poaceae, the grasses. *SABONET News* 7,3 178–181. A-GRASS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, HISTORY, IDENTIFICATION
- HENDERSON, L., GOODALL, J.M. & KLEIN, H. 2004. *Pompom weed*. Gauteng Department of

Agriculture, Conservation, Environment and Land Affairs, Pretoria, 2 pp. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, HISTORY, ORIGIN, MORPHOLOGY, LEGISLATION, MANAGEMENT, CAMPULOCLINUM, IDENTIFICATION

KNOLL, C. 2004. Cat's claw creeper *Macfadyena unguis-cati* and black locust *Robinia pseudoacacia*: identifying invaders. *Urban Green File* 9,5: 10, 11. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, MACFADYENA, ROBINIA

KNOLL, C. 2005. Pampas grasses and Bailey's wattle [*Cortaderia selloana* and *Acacia baileyana*]: identifying invaders. *Urban Green File* 9,6: 8, 9. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ACACIA, CORTADERIA

WELLS, M.J. 1978. Nassella tussock. In C.H. Stilton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 140–143. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-GRASS, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, STIPA

BELZ, R.G., REINHARDT, C.F., FOXCROFT, L.C. & HURLE, K. 2006. Residue allelopathy in *Parthenium hysterophorus* L.—does parthenin play a leading role? *Crop Protection* (in press). A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, ALLELOPATHY, PARTHENIUM

GREMMEN, N.J.M., CHOWN, S.L. & MARSHALL, D.J. 1998. Impact of the introduced grass *Agrostis stolonifera* on vegetation and soil fauna communities at Marion Island, subantarctic. *Biological Conservation* 85: 223–231. A-GRASS, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, N-INVERTEBRATE, AGROSTIS

HILL, M.P. & OLCKERS, T. 1997. Wild tomato: a weed of increasing importance in South Africa. *Parks and Grounds* 95: 23. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, SOLANUM

KEMPER, J., COWLING, R.M. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1999. Fragmentation of South African renosterveld shrublands: effects on plant community structure and conservation implications. *Biological Conservation* 90,2: 103–111. A-GRASS, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, CONSERVATION

STEINKE, T.D. 1965. A dangerous new weed: nassella tussock grass. *Farming in South Africa* 141,6: 9–11. A-GRASS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, GRAZING, ECONOMICS, STIPA

STEINSCHEN, A.K., GÖRNE, A. & MILTON, S.J. 1996. Threats to the Namaqualand flowers: outcompeted by grass or exterminated by grazing? *South African Journal of Science* 92,5: 237–242. A-GRASS, KAROO, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, CONSERVATION

VLOK, J.H.J. 1988. Alpha diversity of Lowland Fynbos herbs at various levels of infestation by alien annuals. *South African Journal of Botany* 54,6: 623–627. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, IMPACT, N-PLANT, N-BIODIVERSITY

VOGELPOEL, L., CYWES, S., CYWES, M. & PAUW, A. 1999. Alien *Disa* hybrids on Table

Mountain—implications for nature conservation. *Orchids South Africa* 30: 26–33. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, T-PLANT, FYNBOS, RIVER, IMPACT, HYBRIDIZATION, UTILISATION, HORTICULTURE, POLLINATION, CONSERVATION

## A-Herbaceous Plants— Introduction (0)

### 8.2.5 A-Herbaceous Plants—Invasion (7)

CAMPBELL, B.M., GUBB, A. & MOLL, E.J. 1980. The vegetation of the Edith Stephens Cape Flats Flora Reserve. *Journal of South African Botany* 46,4: 435–444. A-GRASS, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD

HENDERSON, L. 2004. *The distribution of Pompom Weed (Campuloclinium macrocephalum) in Gauteng Province, 2002/2003 and 2003/2004 summer seasons*. Unpublished final report submitted to Gauteng Department of Agriculture, Nature Conservation, Environment and Land Affairs, 25 pp. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, HISTORY, ROADSIDE-SURVEY, CAMPULOCLINUM

MILTON, S.J. 2004. Grasses as invasive alien plants in South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 100: 69–75. A-GRASS, ECOLOGY, INVASION

MILTON, S.J., HOFFMANN, J.H., BOWIE, R.C.K., D'AMICO, J., GRIFFITHS, M., JOUBERT, D., LOEWENTHAL, D., MOINDE, N.N., SEYMOUR, C., TORAL-GRANDA, M.V. & WISEMAN, R. 1998. Invasive fountain grass on the Cape Peninsula. *South African Journal of Science* 94: 57, 58. A-GRASS, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, PENNISETUM

SMITH, V.R., PAMMENTER, N.W. & DRENNAN, P.M. 1986. A case study of an alien vascular plant (*Agrostis stolonifera*) introduced on Marion Island. *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 16,3: 128–132. A-GRASS, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, AGROSTIS

WELLS, M.J. 1974. *Nassella trichotoma* (Nees) Hack, in South Africa. *Unpublished duplicated papers presented at the First National Weeds Conference 13–14 August 1974*, pp. 125–137. National Programme for Environmental Sciences, CSIR, Pretoria. A-GRASS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, STIPA

WELLS, M.J. 1976. *Nassella tussock threatens you!* Pamphlet, Department of Agricultural Technical Services, Pretoria, 4 pp. A-GRASS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, STIPA

### 8.2.6 A-Herbaceous Plants— Management (23)

BENNETT, P.H. & VAN STADEN, J. 1986. Gall formation in crofton weed, *Eupatorium adenophorum* Spreng. (syn. *Ageratina adenophora*), by the *Eupatorium* gall fly *Procecidochares utilis* Stone (Diptera: Trypetidae). *Australian Journal of Botany* 34: 473–480. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGERATINA (EUPATORIUM)

CRAEMER, C. 1995. Host specificity, and release in South Africa, of *Aceria malherbae* Nuzzaci (Acari:

- Eriophyoidea), a natural enemy of *Convolvulus arvensis* L. (Convolvulaceae). *African Entomology* 3: 213–215. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONVULVULUS, ACERIA
- DU TOIT, E. 1938. The spear thistle. *Farming in South Africa* 13: 15, 17. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, CIRSIUM
- ERASMUS, D.J., BENNETT, P.H. & VAN STADEN, J. 1992. The effect of galls induced by the gall fly *Procecidochares utilis* on vegetative growth and reproductive potential of crofton weed, *Ageratina adenophora*. *Annals of Applied Biology* 120: 173–181. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, GROWTH, REPRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGERATINA (EUPATORIUM)
- FINDLAY, J.B.R., GREEN, W.M. & MEYER, J.C. 1987. The control of annual weeds in the summer rainfall area with two glyphosate formulations. *Paper presented at the Southern Africa Weed Science Society Congress, Potchefstroom, July 1987*. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL
- HILL, M.P. & HULLEY, P.E. 1996. Tortoise beetles to the rescue? Biological control of the wild tomato. *The Naturalist* 40,3: 20–22. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- HODSON, J.L., HOFFMANN, J.H. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 2003. Biological control of spear thistle, *Cirsium vulgare* (Asteraceae), in South Africa: a modest start for *Rhinocyllus conicus* (Coleoptera: Curculionidae). *African Entomology* 11: 15–20. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CIRSIUM
- HOLMES, P.M. 2005. Results of a lucerne old-field restoration experiment at the fynbos-karoo interface. *South African Journal of Botany* 71: 326–338. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, FYNBOS, KAROO, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, RESTORATION, SEED-BANK, MANAGEMENT
- I'ONS, J.H. & NEL, L.O. 1977. On the chemical control of nassella tussock in the Eastern Cape Province. *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Stellenbosch, 1977*, pp. 185–192. A-GRASS, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, STIPA
- KLUGE, R.L. 1991. Biological control of crofton weed, *Ageratina adenophora* (Asteraceae), in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 187–192. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGERATINA (EUPATORIUM)
- MCCONNACHIE, A.J. & WITT, A.B.R. 2004. Aspects of the biology and host range of *Alcidodes sedi* (Curculionidae: Mecynobini), a potential biological control agent for the introduced plant *Bryophyllum delagoense* (Crassulaceae) in South Africa and Australia. In J.M. Cullen, D.T. Briese, D.J. Kriticos, W.M. Lonsdale, L. Morin & J.K. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of the XI International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds*, pp. 198–202. CSIRO Entomology, Canberra, Australia. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, BRYOPHYLLUM, ALCIDODES
- MORRIS, M.J. 1989. Host specificity studies of a leaf spot fungus, *Phaeoramularia* sp., for the biological control of crofton weed (*Ageratina adenophora*) in South Africa. *Phytophylactica* 21: 281–283.
- A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGERATINA (EUPATORIUM), PHAEORAMULARIA
- MUSIL, C.F., MILTON, S.J. & DAVIS, G.W. 2005. The threat of alien invasive grasses to lowland Cape floral diversity: an empirical appraisal of the effectiveness of practical control strategies. *South African Journal of Science* 101: 337–344. A-GRASS, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, EVALUATION
- VAN DER LAAN, M., REINHARDT, C.F., TRUTER, W., BELZ, R., FOXCROFT, L.C. & HURLE, K. 2006. Interference potential of the perennial grasses *Eragrostis curvula*, *Panicum maximum* and *Digitaria eriantha* with the invasive alien plant *Parthenium hysterophorus* L. *Tropical Grasslands* (submitted) N-GRASS, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, PARTHENIUM
- VAN STADEN, J. & BENNETT, P.H. 1991. Effect of galling on assimilate partitioning in crofton weed (*Ageratina adenophora*). *South African Journal of Botany* 57,2: 128–130. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PHYSIOLOGY, AGERATINA (EUPATORIUM)
- VAN ZYL, D. 1975. Diaboliese gras kan boere op hul knieë bring. *Die Landbouweekblad* 26.9.1975: 36–40. A-GRASS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, STIPA
- VAN ZYL, D. 1978. Roei nassella so uit. *Die Landbouweekblad* 10.3.1978: 24–29. A-GRASS, MANAGEMENT, STIPA
- VILJOEN, B.D. 1987. Effect of rate and time of application of tetrapion on nassella tussock (*Stipa trichotoma* Nees) in South Africa. *South African Journal of Plant and Soil* 4,2: 79–81. A-GRASS, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, STIPA
- VILJOEN, B.D. 1987. Pasture recovery after nassella tussock control with tetrapion. *Applied Plant Science* 1: 18–22. A-GRASS, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, RESTORATION, STIPA
- VILJOEN, B.D. 1999. Influence of adjuvants on tetrapion efficacy for nassella tussock (*Stipa trichotoma* Nees) control and subsequent seedling establishment: a preliminary study. *South African Journal of Plant and Soil* 16,2: 102–105. A-GRASS, REGENERATION, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, STIPA
- VILJOEN, B.D. & ERASMUS, D.J. 1996. Effect of tetrapion on the germination and survival of nassella tussock (*Stipa trichotoma*) and three pasture species under artificial conditions. *Applied Plant Science* 10,2: 55–59. A-GRASS, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, REGENERATION, RESTORATION, STIPA
- WITT, A.B.R., MCCONNACHIE, A.J. & STALS, R. 2004. *Alcidodes sedi* (Marshall) Col.: Curculionidae), a candidate agent for the biological control of *Bryophyllum delagoense* (Crassulaceae) in Australia and South Africa. *Biological Control* 31,3: 380–387. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, BRYOPHYLLUM, ALCIDODES
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1991. Biological control of spear thistle, *Cirsium vulgare*, in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 199–206. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CIRSIUM

## 8.3 Alien Succulent Plants (208)

- ARCHIBALD, E.E.A. 1936. *An anatomical investigation of jointed cactus (Opuntia aurantiaca, Lindley) with germination tests, and observations on movements of the stomata*, 2 volumes. Unpublished M.Sc. thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MORPHOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, GERMINATION, OPUNTIA, ECOLOGY
- ARCHIBALD, E.E.A. 1939. The development of the ovule and seed of jointed cactus (*Opuntia aurantiaca*, Lindley). *South African Journal of Science* 36: 195–211. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MORPHOLOGY, REPRODUCTION, OPUNTIA, ECOLOGY
- ARNOLD, T.J. 1977. The origin and relationships of *Opuntia aurantiaca* Lindley. *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Stellenbosch, 1977*, pp. 269–286. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ORIGIN, TAXONOMY, OPUNTIA, ECOLOGY
- CAMPBELL, P.L. 1988. Seed germination of *Harrisia martinii* and *Pereskia aculeata* with reference to their potential spread in Natal. *Applied Plant Science* 2: 60–62. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, GERMINATION, PERESKIA, HARRISIA
- DEAN, W.R.J. & MILTON, S.J. 2000. Directed dispersal of *Opuntia* species in the Karoo, South Africa: are crows the responsible agents? *Journal of Arid Environments* 45: 305–314. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, SEED-DISPERSAL, OPUNTIA
- FOXCROFT, L.C., HOFFMANN, J.H., VILJOEN, J.J. & KOTZE, J.J. 2006. Environmental factors influencing the distribution of *Opuntia stricta*, an invasive alien plant in the Kruger National Park, South Africa. *South African Journal of Botany* (in press). A-SUCCULENT PLANT, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, OPUNTIA
- LOTTER, W.D. 1997. *Seed germination of Opuntia stricta in the Kruger National Park*. Research Project Report for B.Tech. degree, Nature Conservation, Technikon Pretoria, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, RECRUITMENT, GERMINATION, OPUNTIA
- LOTTER, W.D. 1999. Seed germination of *Opuntia stricta*: implications for management strategies in the Kruger National Park. *South African Journal of Botany* 65,4: 295–298. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, RECRUITMENT, GERMINATION, OPUNTIA
- LOTTER, W.D. 1999. The influence of baboon predation and time in water on seed germination and early establishment of *Opuntia stricta* (Australian pest pear), in the Kruger National Park. *Koedoe* 42,1: 43–50. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-MAMMAL, RECRUITMENT, GERMINATION, OPUNTIA
- MCGARVIE, O. & PAROLIS, H. 1979. The mucilage of *Opuntia ficus-indica*. *Carbohydrate Research* 69: 171–179. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MORPHOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, OPUNTIA, ECOLOGY
- SERFONTEIN, J. 1961. *Ekologiese studies van litjieskaktus (Opuntia aurantiaca Lindley)*. Unpublished M.Sc. thesis, University of Stellenbosch, Stellenbosch. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, OPUNTIA
- WHITING, B.H., BATE, G.C. & ERASMUS, D.J. 1986. Photosynthesis and carbon allocation in invasive plants of South African biomes. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 179–188. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, A-SUCCULENT PLANT, A-GRASS, ECOLOGY, COMPETITION, PHOTOSYNTHESIS, PHYSIOLOGY, AGROSTIS, OPUNTIA, RUBUS, STIPA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1977. A sampling system for field infestations of jointed cactus, *Opuntia aurantiaca* Lindley. *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Stellenbosch, 1977*, pp. 203–220. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, SPREAD, SURVEY-METHOD, OPUNTIA, ECOLOGY
- ANONYMOUS 1970. Gevaarlike plante: Litjieskaktus. *Die Landbouweekblad* 2.9.1970: 148, 149. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- HENDERSON, L. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 2003. Chainfruit cholla (*Opuntia fulgida* Engelm.) misidentified as rosea cactus (*Opuntia rosea* DC.) in South Africa. *South African Journal of Plant and Soil* 20,1: 46, 47. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, TAXONOMY, OPUNTIA
- MCGIBBON, J. 1858. *Catalogue of plants in the Botanic Gardens, Cape Town*. Solomon, Cape Town. ACACIA, OPUNTIA, IDENTIFICATION
- MORAN, V.C., ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & ANNECKE, D.P. 1976. The identity and distribution of *Opuntia aurantiaca* Lindley. *Taxon* 25: 281–287. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, TAXONOMY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, OPUNTIA
- OBERMEYER, A.A. 1976. Cactaceae. In J.H. Ross (ed.), *Flora of southern Africa*, Volume 22: 144–156. Government Printer, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, TAXONOMY, OPUNTIA, IDENTIFICATION
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1978. Jointed cactus. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 108–111. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1978. Prickly pear. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 112–115. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1978. Imbricate cactus. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 116–119. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1978. Rosea cactus. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 120–123. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the

Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA

ANONYMOUS 1981. Turksvye erger as gifplante vir kleinvee. *Die Landbouweekblad* 23.1.1981. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, OPUNTIA

BYFORD-JONES, C. 1990. Another invader plant runs amuck (Barbados goosberry-*Pereskia aculeata*). *Farmers Weekly* 5 October 1990:38-9. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM90-0092) A-SUCCULENT PLANT, IMPACT

BYFORD-JONES, C. 1991. Prickly problem: Jointed cactus (*Opuntia aurantica*)—most costly declared weed in South Africa. *Farmers Weekly* 20 December 1991:12-3. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM92-0038) A-SUCCULENT PLANT, IMPACT

DEAN[née MILTON], S.J. 1994. Undesirable plant of the month—Cactus. *Prince Albert Friend* 3: 16. (Publicity Association, Prince Albert, May 1994). A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT

MACDONALD A.C. 1891. Does Kaalblad change into Doornblad? *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 4: 106, 107. OPUNTIA, IMPACT

ANONYMOUS 1891. Prickly pear. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 4: 133. OPUNTIA, INTRODUCTION

ANONYMOUS 1894. The introduction of plants and animals into a new country. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 7: 305. OPUNTIA, INTRODUCTION

FISCHER A. 1892. New cactus (prickly pear). *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 5: 93. OPUNTIA, INTRODUCTION

ANONYMOUS 1907. Prickly pear and jointed cactus. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 31: 137, 138. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, INVASION, OPUNTIA

BOWKER, J.B. 1893. Jointed opuntia (*Opuntia aurantiaca*). *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 6: 328. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, OPUNTIA

BOWKER, J.B. 1894. Jointed cactus. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 7: 405. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, OPUNTIA

DU TOIT, R. 1942. The spread of prickly pear in the Union. *Farming in South Africa* 17: 300–304. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, OPUNTIA

EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W. 1996. *SMME opportunities and control of Cereus peruvianus*. CSIR Report No. FOR-I 629. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, SAVANNA, INVASION, UTILISATION, CEREUS

FOXCROFT, L.C., ROUGET, M., RICHARDSON, D.M. & MAC FADYEN, S. 2004. Reconstructing 50 years

of *Opuntia stricta* invasion in the Kruger National Park, South Africa: environmental determinants and propagule pressure. *Diversity and Distributions* 10: 427–437. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, SPECIES-MODELLING, GIS, OPUNTIA

KLUGE, R.L. & CALDWELL, P.M. 1991. Alarming new records of *Pereskia*: an invasive from South America. *Veld & Flora* 77.2: 39. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, PERESKIA

LANSDELL, K.A. 1923. Weeds of South Africa. The jointed cactus (*Opuntia aurantiaca*) Gillies. Order Cactaceae. *Journal of the Department of Agriculture of the Union of South Africa* 7: 170–177. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, OPUNTIA

LANSDELL, K.A. 1923. Weeds of South Africa. The imbricate cactus. *Journal of the Department of Agriculture of the Union of South Africa* 7: 407–410. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, OPUNTIA

MAASDORP, G.H. 1906. (Quoted in Vosloo 1906.) *Report of the Select Committee on Prickly Pear*. Cape of Good Hope. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, OPUNTIA, INVASION

MACDONALD A.C. 1891. Prickly pear in South Africa. Report by Mr A.C. MacDonald (laid before a Select Committee of the House of Assembly). *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 4: 21-25. OPUNTIA, INVASION

MILTON, S.J. & DEAN, W.R.J. 1987. Cactus in the Karoo: a thorny problem. *Veld & Flora* 73: 128–131. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION

STEYN, E.M.A. & SMITH, G.F. 2000. Agavaceae: *Agave vivipara*: a naturalised alien in southern Africa. *Bothalia* 30.1: 43–46. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, AGAVE

ANNECKE, D.P., KARNY, M. & BURGER, W.A. 1969. Improved biological control of the prickly pear, *Opuntia megacantha* Salm-Dyck, in South Africa through the use of an insecticide. *Phytophylactica* 1: 9–13. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, OPUNTIA

ANNECKE, D.P. & MORAN, V.C. 1978. Critical reviews of biological pest control in South Africa. 2. The prickly pear, *Opuntia ficus-indica* (L.) Miller. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 41: 161–188. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION, OPUNTIA

ANONYMOUS 1899. Scrub exterminator for eradication of prickly pear. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 14: 407. OPUNTIA, MANAGEMENT

ANONYMOUS 1899. Correspondence: the much abused prickly pear. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 14: 817. OPUNTIA, MANAGEMENT

ANONYMOUS 1914. Eradication of the prickly pear. *Agricultural Journal of the Union of South Africa* 7: 324, 325. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA

ANONYMOUS 1914. The prickly pear problem. Clearing by gas. *Agricultural Journal of the Union of South*



- Africa* 7: 392–395. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, OPUNTIA
- ANONYMOUS 1934. Eradication of the prickly pear pest. *Farming in South Africa* 9: 43. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- ANONYMOUS 1938. Eradication of prickly pear. Provisions of proclamation No. 161 of 1938 issued under the Weeds Act-1937. *Farming in South Africa* 13: 347, 355. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, OPUNTIA
- ANONYMOUS 1957. Eradication of jointed cactus and prickly pear. *Farming in South Africa* 33:60: 21–23. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, OPUNTIA
- ANONYMOUS 1960. Jointed cactus can be eradicated completely. *Farming in South Africa* 35: 5. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- ANONYMOUS 1967. Combat the jointed cactus—if you want to avoid a fine. *Farming in South Africa* 43:9: 27–32. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, OPUNTIA
- ANONYMOUS 1975. Turksvyterroris staan rug teen die muur. *Die Landbouweekblad* 17.10.1975: 18–21. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- BOWKER, F. 1910. Letter entitled, 'Prickly pear destroyed by cochineal'. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 37: 129. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- BREDENKAMP, B. 1980. *Pereskia aculeata*—a thorny problem. *Forestry News* 1/80: 6–8. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, PERESKIA
- BRUTSCH, M.O. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1993. The prickly pear (*Opuntia ficus-indica* [Cactaceae]) in South Africa: utilization of the naturalized weed, and of the cultivated plants. *Economic Botany* 47,2: 154–162. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, OPUNTIA
- BRUTSCH, M.O. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1995. Control and utilization of wild opuntias. In G. Barbera, P. Inglese & E. Pimienta-Barrios (eds), *Agroecology, cultivation and uses of cactus pear*, pp. 155–166. FAO, Rome. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, OPUNTIA
- BURGER, W.A. 1969. DDT controls prickly pear in the Eastern Cape. *Farming in South Africa* 44: 38, 39. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, OPUNTIA
- BURGER, W.A. 1972. Control cactoblastis and cochineal. *Farming in South Africa* 425 (reprint). A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- DU TOIT, E. 1935. The jointed-cactus eradication campaign. *Farming in South Africa* 10: 344. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, OPUNTIA
- DU TOIT, E. 1937. Prickly-pear eradication. Directions on the use of arsenic pentoxide. *Farming in South Africa* 12: 411, 412. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, OPUNTIA
- FISCHER, A. 1888. Answer to query 18. Prickly pear and cochineal. *Agricultural Journal: Department of Agriculture of the Cape of Good Hope* 1: 126. OPUNTIA, MANAGEMENT
- FOXCROFT, L.C. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 2000. Dispersal of *Dactylopius opuntiae* (Cockerell) (Hemiptera: Dactylopiidae), a biological control agent of *Opuntia stricta* (Haw.) Haw (Cactaceae), in the Kruger National Park, South Africa. *Koedoe* 43,2: 1–5. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- FOXCROFT, L.C., HOFFMANN, J.H., VILJOEN, J.J. & KOTZE, J.J. 2006. Influence of *Opuntia stricta* density and other environmental features on *Cactoblastis cactorum* distribution in Kruger National Park, South Africa. *South African Journal of Botany* (in press). A-SUCCULENT PLANT, SAVANNA, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- GEYER, J.W.C. 1941. The biological control of the 'rondebelaar' prickly pear. *Farming in South Africa* 16: 301–304. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- GEYER, J.W.C. 1947. A study of the biology and ecology of *Exochomus flavipes* Thunb. (Coccinellidae, Coleoptera). Part 1. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 9: 219–234. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, EXOCHOMUS
- GEYER, J.W.C. 1947. A study of the biology and ecology of *Exochomus flavipes* Thunb. (Coccinellidae, Coleoptera). Part 2. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 10: 64–109. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, EXOCHOMUS
- GITHURE, C.W., ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1999. Host specificity of biotypes of *Dactylopius opuntiae* (Cockerell) (Homoptera: Dactylopiidae): prospects for biological control of *Opuntia stricta* (Haworth) Haworth (Cactaceae) in Africa. *African Entomology* 7: 43–48. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- GUNN, B.H. 1974. *Laboratory investigations into the dispersal of crawlers of Dactylopius austrinus De Lotto (Homoptera Dactylopiidae)*. Unpublished B.Sc. (Hons) project, Rhodes University, Grahamstown. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- GUNN, B.H. 1977. Artificial dispersal of the cochineal insect, *Dactylopius austrinus* De Lotto in infestations of jointed cactus *Opuntia aurantiaca* Lindley. *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Stellenbosch, 1977*, pp. 287–295. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- GUNN, B.H. 1978. Sexual dimorphism in the first instar of the cochineal insect *Dactylopius austrinus* De Lotto (Homoptera Dactylopiidae). *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 41: 333–338. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- GUNN, B.H. 1979. *Dispersal of the cochineal insect Dactylopius austrinus De Lotto (Homoptera Dactylopiidae)*. Unpublished Ph.D. thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- HOBSON, W.G. 1896. How to destroy prickly pears with Arsenite of Soda. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 9: 298. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, OPUNTIA

- HOFFMANN, J.H. 1976. *Pre-release studies on Zophodia tapiacola* (Dyar) (Pyrilidae: Lepidoptera), a biological control agent against jointed cactus, *Opuntia aurantiaca* Lindley. M.Sc. thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, TUCUMANIA (ZOPHODIA)
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 1976. *Request for permission to release Zophodia tapiacola* (Dyar) (Pyrilidae Lepidoptera) as a biological control agent against jointed cactus in South Africa. Unpublished Department of Agriculture report, Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria, 5 pp. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, TUCUMANIA (ZOPHODIA)
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 1977. The pyralid moth, *Tucumania tapiacola* Dyar (Lepidoptera), imported into South Africa from Argentina for jointed cactus control. In *Proceedings of the Second National Weed Conference of South Africa, 2–4 February 1977, Stellenbosch*, pp. 297–302. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, TUCUMANIA (ZOPHODIA)
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 1981. Release of *Tucumania tapiacola* (Lepidoptera: Phycitidae) in South Africa against *Opuntia aurantiaca*: the value of detailed monitoring. In E.S. Delfosse (ed.), *Proceedings of the Fifth International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, 22–27 July 1980, Brisbane, Australia*, pp. 367–373. CSIRO. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MONITORING, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, TUCUMANIA (ZOPHODIA)
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 1982. *Evaluation of Tucumania tapiacola* Dyar (Lepidoptera: Phycitidae) for biological control of jointed cactus in South Africa. Ph.D. thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, TUCUMANIA (ZOPHODIA)
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 1983. An appraisal of *Tucumania tapiacola* Dyar (Lepidoptera: Phycitidae) as a biological control agent against jointed cactus. In *Proceedings of the Fifth National Weeds Conference of South Africa, 25–27 January 1983, Stellenbosch*, pp. 169–173. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, TUCUMANIA (ZOPHODIA)
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 1986. Evidence that the two currently recognized nominal species of *Tucumania* Dyar (Lepidoptera: Phycitidae) are not distinct. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 49: 267–274. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, TUCUMANIA (ZOPHODIA)
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 1988. A pre-release assessment of *Nanaia* sp. (Lepidoptera: Phycitidae) from *Opuntia pascoensis* for biological control of *Opuntia aurantiaca*. *Entomophaga* 33: 81–86. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, NANAIA
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 2000. Recovery in progress after floods cause temporary set back for biocontrol of *Opuntia stricta*. *Prickly Pear* 2: 2, 3. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 2004. Biotypes, hybrids and biocontrol: lessons from cochineal insects on *Opuntia* weeds. In J.M. Cullen, D.T. Brieseman, D.J. Kritikos, W.M. Lonsdale, L. Morin & J.K. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of the Eleventh International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds*, pp. 283–286. CSIRO Entomology, Canberra, Australia. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- HOFFMANN, J.H., IMPSON, F.A.C. & VOLCHANSKY, C.R. 2002. Biological control of cactus weeds: implications of hybridisation between control agent biotypes. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 39: 900–908. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, GENETIC DIVERSITY, HOST-SPECIFICITY, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- HOFFMANN, J.H. & MORAN, V.C. 1977. Pre-release studies on *Tucumania tapiacola* Dyar (Lepidoptera: Pyralidae), a potential biocontrol agent against jointed cactus. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 40: 205–209. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, TUCUMANIA (ZOPHODIA)
- HOFFMANN, J.H., MORAN, V.C. & ZELLER, D.A. 1998. Evaluation of *Cactoblastis cactorum* (Lepidoptera: Phycitidae) as a biological control agent of *Opuntia stricta* (Cactaceae) in the Kruger National Park, South Africa. *Biological Control* 12: 20–24. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- HOFFMANN, J.H., MORAN, V.C. & ZELLER, D.A. 1998. Exploiting a partially successful biocontrol agent for integrated control of a weed: *Cactoblastis cactorum* (Lepidoptera: Phycitidae) on *Opuntia stricta* (Cactaceae) in South Africa. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 35: 156–160. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- HOFFMANN, J.H., MORAN, V.C. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1999. Integrated management of *Opuntia stricta* (Haworth) Haworth (Cactaceae) in South Africa: an enhanced role for two, renowned, insect agents. In *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 15–20. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- HOFFMANN, J.H. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1990. Ovipositional and feeding habits in cactophagous pyralids: predictions for biological control of cactus weeds in southern Africa. In E.S. Delfosse (ed.), *Proceedings of the Seventh International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, 6–11 March 1988, Rome, Italy. 1st Sper. Patol. Veg. (MAF)*, pp. 395–399. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- HOFFMANN, J.H. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1999. Getting to grips with a spiny problem. *Veld & Flora* 85: 128, 129. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- KARNY, M. 1972. Comparative studies on three *Dactylopius* species (Homoptera: Dactylopiidae) attacking introduced opuntias in South Africa. *Department of Agricultural Technical Services, Republic of South Africa, Entomology Memoir* 26: 1–19. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- KLEIN, H. 1999. Biological control of three cactaceous weeds, *Pereskia aculeata* Miller, *Harrisia martinii* (Labouret) Britton and *Cereus jamacaru* De Candolle in South Africa. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 3–14. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CEREUS, HARRISIA, PERESKIA

- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Australian pest pear/sour prickly pear (*Opuntia stricta*). *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 2.14: 1, 2. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Cactus biocontrol: general aspects. *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 2.1: 1, 2. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONCEPT
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Cochineal insects (*Dactylopius* spp.). *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 2.2: 1–4. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Harrisia cactus/moon cactus (*Harrisia martinii*). *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 2.8: 1, 2. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HARRISIA
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Harrisia cactus mealybug (*Hypogeococcus pungens*). *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 2.5: 1–3. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HARRISIA, HYPOGEOCOCCUS
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Harrisia cactus stem-boring beetle (*Alcidion cereicola*). *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 2.6: 1–3. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HARRISIA, ALCIDION
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Imbricate cactus (*Opuntia imbricata*). *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 2.11: 1, 2. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Jointed cactus (*Opuntia aurantiaca*). *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 2.9: 1, 2. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Prickly pear (*Opuntia ficus-indica*). *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 2.10: 1–3. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Prickly pear stem-boring beetles. *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 2.4: 1, 2. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Queen of the night cactus (*Cereus jamacaru*). *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 2.7: 1, 2. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CEREUS
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Rosea cactus (*Opuntia fulgida*). *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 2.13: 1. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Smooth prickly pear (*Opuntia monacantha*) (= *O. vulgaris*). *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 2.12: 1, 2. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. The cactus moth (*Cactoblastis cactorum*). *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 2.3: 1–3. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- LE ROUX, S.P. 1957. Scheme to eradicate jointed cactus. *Farming in South Africa* 33,4: 10, 14. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- LOTTER, W.D. 1996. *Strategic Management Plan for Opuntia stricta in the Kruger National Park*. Scientific Report 17/96. National Parks Board of South Africa, Skukuza. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- LOTTER, W.D. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1998. An integrated management plan for the control of *Opuntia stricta* (Cactaceae) in the Kruger National Park, South Africa. *Koedoe* 41: 63–68. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA
- MALAN, D.E. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1988. Chemical control of *Opuntia imbricata* (Hand.) DC and *Opuntia rosea* DC. *Applied Plant Science* 2: 13–16. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, OPUNTIA
- MORAN, V.C. 1975. *Opuntia aurantiaca*—a major problem. *Cactus & Succulent Journal of Great Britain* 37: 63, 64. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- MORAN, V.C. 1977. Strategies for the biological control of *Opuntia aurantiaca* Lindley. *Proceedings of the Second Southern African Congress for Entomology, Pretoria*, pp. 48, 49. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- MORAN, V.C. 1980. Interactions between phytophagous insects and their *Opuntia* hosts. *Ecological Entomology* 5: 153–164. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- MORAN, V.C. 1981. Belated kudos for cochineal insects. *Antenna: Bulletin of the Royal Entomological Society of London* 5: 54–58. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- MORAN, V.C. 1981. The biological control of *Opuntia aurantiaca* in South Africa: evaluation and emerging control strategies. *Proceedings of the Fifth International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, Brisbane, Australia*. 1980, pp. 383–387. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, STRATEGIC, EVALUATION, OPUNTIA
- MORAN, V.C. & ANNECKE, D.P. 1979. Critical reviews of biological pest control in South Africa. 3. The



- jointed cactus *Opuntia aurantiaca* Lindley. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 42: 299–329. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- MORAN, V.C. & COBBY, B.S. 1979. On the life-history and fecundity of the cochineal insect, *Dactylopius austrinus* De Lotto (Homoptera: Dactylopiidae), a biological control agent for the cactus *Opuntia aurantiaca*. *Bulletin of Entomological Research* 69: 629–636. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- MORAN, V.C., GUNN, B.H. & WALTER, G.H. 1981. Wind dispersal and settling of first-instar crawlers of the cochineal insect *Dactylopius austrinus* (Homoptera: Coccoidea: Dactylopiidae). *Ecological Entomology* 7: 409–419. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- MORAN, V.C. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1987. The effects of simulated and natural rainfall on cochineal insects (Homoptera: Dactylopiidae): colony distribution and survival on cactus cladodes. *Ecological Entomology* 12: 61–68. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- MORAN, V.C., HOFFMANN, J.H. & BASSON, N.C.J. 1987. The effects of simulated rainfall on cochineal insects (Homoptera: Dactylopiidae): colony composition and survival on cactus cladodes. *Ecological Entomology* 12: 51–60. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- MORAN, V.C., HOFFMANN, J.H. & COBBY, B.S. 1979. *Application for permission to release the moth Mimorista pulchellalis Dyar (Pyrallidae) as a biological control agent against jointed cactus*. Department of Agriculture report, Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, MIMORISTA
- MORAN, V.C. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G., 1984. The biological control of cactus weeds: achievements and prospects. *Biocontrol News & Information* 5: 297–320. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION
- MORAN, V.C. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1985. The biological control of Cactaceae: success ratings and the contribution of individual species. In E.S. Delfosse (ed.), *Proceedings of the Sixth International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, 19–25 August 1984, Vancouver, Canada*, pp. 69–75. Agriculture Canada, Ottawa. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION
- MORAN, V.C. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1991. Biological control of cactus weeds of minor importance in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 37–55. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION
- MORAN, V.C. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1991. Biological control of prickly pear, *Opuntia ficus-indica*, in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 5–28. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION, OPUNTIA
- MORRIS, J. 1936. Proclaimed weeds in the Orange Free State. *Farming in South Africa* 11: 476. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, ACANTHOSPERMUM, CIRSIUM, OPUNTIA, XANTHIUM
- MORRIS, J.J. 1957. Imported plant becomes national problem. It's days numbered. *Farming in South Africa* 33,4: 11–14. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- NAUDE, C.P. 1957. Chemical methods of control bring new hope. *Farming in South Africa* 33,4: 16–21. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, OPUNTIA
- NAUDE, T.J. 1955. Biological control of jointed cactus. *Farming in South Africa* 30: 259, 260, 272. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- NAUDE, T.J. 1956. Biological control of the prickly pear. *World Crops* 8: 401, 402. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- NAUDE, T.J. 1956. Biological control of prickly pear. *Farming in South Africa* 30: 493, 494, 523. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- NIEMAN, E. 1981. *The effect of adult feeding and host plant density on fecundity and longevity of a pyralid moth Mimorista pulchellalis Dyar*. Unpublished report, Department of Zoology and Entomology, Rhodes University, Grahamstown. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, MIMORISTA
- NIEMAN, E. 1991. The introduction of *Mimorista pulchellalis* (Lepidoptera: Pyraustidae) into South Africa for the biological control of jointed cactus, *Opuntia aurantiaca*. I. Biology and mass-rearing techniques. *Entomophaga* 36,1: 69–76. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, MIMORISTA
- NIEMAN, E. 1991. The introduction of *Mimorista pulchellalis* (Lepidoptera: Pyraustidae) into South Africa for the biological control of jointed cactus, *Opuntia aurantiaca*. 2. Field evaluation. *Entomophaga* 36,1: 77–86. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, MIMORISTA
- NOBBS, E.A. 1906. Notes on the prickly pear. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 29: 637–642. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- NOBBS, E.A. 1906. Notes on the jointed cactus. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 29: 812–814. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- NOBBS, E.A. 1907. Experiments upon the destruction of prickly pear-1907. Final report. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 31: 676–682. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- NOBBS, E.A. 1908. Experiments upon the destruction of jointed cactus 1907. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 32: 341–346. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- NOBBS, E.A. 1912. The jointed cactus. *Agricultural Journal of the Union of South Africa* 3: 224–226. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- OLCKERS, T. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1991. Utilization of prickly pear: an integral part of control in Valley Bushveld? In P.J.K. Zacharias, G.C. Stuart-Hill & J. Midgley (eds), *Proceedings of the First Valley*

- Bushveld/ Subtropical Thicket Symposium*, pp. 22, 23. Grassland Society of Southern Africa, Special Publication. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, SAVANNA, UTILISATION, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA
- PETTEY, F.W. 1934. *Cactoblastis cactorum*. Government's policy with regard to distribution of the insect. *Farming in South Africa* 9: 138, 139, 150. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- PETTEY, F.W. 1934. *Cactoblastis* and jointed cactus. *Farming in South Africa* 9: 179, 180. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- PETTEY, F.W. 1935. *Cactoblastis* and its progress in South Africa. *Farming in South Africa* 10: 339–356. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- PETTEY, F.W. 1939. Biological control of jointed cactus. *Farming in South Africa* 14: 413–415. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- PETTEY, F.W. 1941. How to make best use of *Cactoblastis* and cochineal insects. *Farming in South Africa* 16: 133. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS, DACTYLOPIUS
- PETTEY, F.W. 1943. Prickly pear eradication by insects and felling of plants. *Farming in South Africa* 18: 743–746. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA
- PETTEY, F.W. 1946. Biological control of prickly pear. *Farming in South Africa* 21: 31–33. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- PETTEY, F.W. 1948. The biological control of prickly pears in South Africa. *Department of Agriculture Bulletin* 153, Entomology Series No. 22, 163 pp. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- PETTEY, F.W. 1950. The cochineal (*Dactylopius opuntiae*) and the problem of its control in spineless cactus plantations. Part 1. Its history, distribution, biology, and what it has accomplished in the control of prickly pear in South Africa. *Department of Agriculture, Union of South Africa, Bulletin* 296, Entomology Series No. 26, 12 pp. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- PETTEY, F.W. 1953. The boring beetles of the prickly pear in South Africa and their importance in the control of *Opuntia megacantha*. *Department of Agriculture, Union of South Africa, Science Bulletin* 340, Entomology Series No. 38, 36 pp. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- PETTEY, F.W. & DU TOIT, E. 1939. Biological control of jointed cactus. *Farming in South Africa* 14: 413–415. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- PHILLIPS, E.P. 1938. Jointed cactus and its eradication. *Farming in South Africa* 13: 216, 217. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA
- PHILLIPS, E.P. 1940. Opuntias in South Africa. I. Some naturalized species with special reference to prickly pear, and methods for its eradication. *Farming in South Africa* 15: 119–128. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA
- PHILLIPS, E.P. 1940. Opuntias in South Africa. II. Some species of *Opuntia* cultivated or naturalized in South Africa. *Farming in South Africa* 15: 125–128. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA
- POLE EVANS, I.B. 1939. Solving the Union's pasture, crop and insect problems. *Farming in South Africa* 14: 520–540. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- RIPLEY, L.B. 1937. *Nosema* disease of *Cactoblastis*. *Farming in South Africa* 12: 325, 345. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- ROBERTSON, H.G. 1985. Egg predation by ants as a partial explanation of the difference in the performance of *Cactoblastis cactorum* on cactus weeds in South Africa and Australia. In E.S. Delfosse (ed.), *Proceedings of the Sixth International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, 19–25 August 1984, Vancouver, Canada*, pp. 83–88. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- ROBERTSON, H.G. 1985. *The ecology of Cactoblastis cactorum (Berg) (Lepidoptera: Phycitidae) in relation to its effectiveness as a biological control agent of prickly pear and jointed cactus in South Africa*. Unpublished Ph.D. thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- ROBERTSON, H.G. 1987. Oviposition site selection in *Cactoblastis cactorum* (Lepidoptera): constraints and compromises. *Oecologia* 73: 601–608. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- ROBERTSON, H.G. 1988. Spatial and temporal patterns of predation by ants on eggs of *Cactoblastis cactorum*. *Ecological Entomology* 13: 207–214. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- ROBERTSON, H.G. 1989. Seasonal temperature effects on fecundity of *Cactoblastis cactorum* (Berg) (Lepidoptera: Pyralidae): differences between South Africa and Australia. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 52: 71–80. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- ROBERTSON, H.G. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1989. Mortality and life tables of *Cactoblastis cactorum* (Berg) (Lepidoptera: Pyralidae) compared on two host plant species. *Bulletin of Entomological Research* 79: 7–17. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- SCHONLAND, S. 1924. The jointed cactus. *Journal of the Department of Agriculture of the Union of South Africa* 9: 216–225. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- SELLERS, W.F. 1952. The collection of the cactus weevil, *Cactophagus spinolae* (Gylh.), in

- Mexico and its dispatch to South Africa. *Bulletin of Entomological Research* 43: 43–50. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, CACTOPHAGUS
- SERFONTEIN, J. 1959. Control of jointed cactus: 'Encirclement Plan' gives good results. *Farming in South Africa* 35,9: 42, 43. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, STRATEGIC, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA
- SERFONTEIN, J. 1964. Jointed cactus: ornamental plant threatens two million morgen of veld. *Farming in South Africa* 40,3: 43–47. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- SERFONTEIN, J. 1964. A prickly problem: control jointed cactus with correct veld management. *Farming in South Africa* 40,4: 23, 24. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- SERFONTEIN, J. 1964. Can jointed cactus spread further? *Farming in South Africa* 40,6: 67, 68. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- SLABBER, J.D. 1964. *Die doeltreffendheid van litjieskaktusbestryding in die distrikte Fort Beaufort en Victoria-Oos*. Unpublished M.Sc. thesis, University of Pretoria, Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, EVALUATION, OPUNTIA
- SMIT, B. 1928. 'Cactus Insects'. In H.W. Turpin & G.A. Gill (eds), *Insurance against drought, Department of Agriculture and Forestry Union of South Africa Bulletin* 36. Appendix, 62 pp. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- TOOKE, F.G.C. 1930. Insects in relation to prickly pear control. *South African Journal of Natural History* 6: 386–393. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- VAN DE VENTER, H.A. 1977. A thorny problem. *Focus*, University of Port Elizabeth, Port Elizabeth. June, pp. 38, 39. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- VAN DER MERWE, C.R. 1930. Eradication of the cactus pest. *Farming in South Africa* 5: 37, 38. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA
- VAN DER MERWE, C.R. 1930. Eradication of prickly pear. *Farming in South Africa* 5: 165, 166, 168. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA
- VAN DER MERWE, C.R. 1931. Prickly pear and its eradication. *Department of Agriculture and Forestry of the Union of South Africa Science Bulletin* 93: 1–32. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA
- VAN DER MERWE, C.R. 1932. Jointed cactus and its eradication. *Union of South Africa, Department of Agriculture, Division of Chemistry, Series* 125 (Reprint No. 30), 15 pp. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA
- VAN DER MERWE, C.R. 1932. Jointed cactus and its eradication. *Farming in South Africa* 6: 495–497. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA
- VAN DER MERWE, C.R. 1932. Eradication of jointed cactus—methods recommended. *Farming in South Africa* 7: 21–23. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA
- VAN DER WESTHUIZEN, A. 1977. *The effect of Tordon on crawlers of Dactylopius austrinus De Lotto (Homoptera Dactylopiidae)*. Unpublished report. Rhodes University, Grahamstown. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, CHEMICAL, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- VAN ZYL, D. 1976. Litjieskaktus bly vyand nommer een. *Die Landbouweekblad* 6.2.1976: 24–27. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- VAN ZYL, D. 1978. Taai kaktus ware onkruidduidel. *Die Landbouweekblad* 20.1.1978. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- VOLCHANSKY, C.R., HOFFMANN, J.H. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1999. Host-plant affinities of two biotypes of *Dactylopius opuntiae* (Homoptera: Dactylopiidae): enhanced prospects for biological control of *Opuntia stricta* (Cactaceae) in South Africa. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 36: 85–91. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- WALTER, G.H. 1977. *The role of wax in predation of cochineal by coccinellid beetles, Exochomus flaviventris Mader (Coleoptera, Coccinellidae)*. Unpublished report. Rhodes University, Grahamstown. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MORPHOLOGY, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, OPUNTIA, EXOCHOMUS
- WARREN, E. 1914. The prickly pear pest. *Agricultural Journal of South Africa* 7: 387–395. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, OPUNTIA
- WHITING, B.H. 1980. *Crassulacean acid metabolism in jointed cactus (Opuntia aurantiaca Lindley) with special reference to the effects of hexaflurate*. Unpublished M.Sc. thesis, University of Port Elizabeth, Port Elizabeth. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, PHYSIOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, OPUNTIA
- WILLIAMS, H. 2001. The pereskia flea beetle (*Phenrica guérini*). A natural enemy of pereskia (*Pereskia aculeata*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 2. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PERESKIA, PHENRICA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1979. Herbicidal control in relation to distribution of *Opuntia aurantiaca* Lindley and its effects on cochineal populations. *Weed Research* 19: 89–914. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHEMICAL, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1981. *The ecology and control of Opuntia aurantiaca in South Africa in relation to the cochineal insect Dactylopius austrinus*. Unpublished Ph.D. thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS

- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1984. Biologische Bekämpfung von Unkrautkakteen. *Giesener Beiträge zur Entwicklungsforschung* 1,2: 141–152. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1990. The utilisation of an invader cactus weed as part of an integrated control approach. In E.S. Delfosse (ed.), *Proceedings of the Seventh International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, 6–11 March 1988, Rome, Italy. 1st Sper. Patol. Veg. (MAF)*, pp. 429–432. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1997. Opuntia invaders in Africa: solving conflicts of interest with biological control. In M. Behailu & F. Tegegne (eds), *Proceedings of the International Workshop on 'Opuntia in Ethiopia: State of knowledge in Opuntia research', February 23–27, 1997*, pp. 180–193. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, UTILISATION, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1999. South Africa's contribution to the prosperity of the cochineal industry. *Memoria del Primer Congreso Internacional de Grana Chochinilla y Colorantes Naturales, 7–10 September 1998, Oaxaca, Mexico*, pp. 3, 4. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G., BLOEM, S. & KLEIN, H. 2004. *Biology, history, threat, surveillance and control of the Cactus Moth, Cactoblastis cactorum*. IAEA. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, CACTOBLASTIS
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G., BURGER, W.A. & ANNECKE, D.P. 1974. The biological control of jointed cactus in South Africa. *Unpublished duplicated papers presented at the First National Weeds Conference, Pretoria, 13–14 August 1974*, pp. 204–211. National Programme for Environmental Sciences, CSIR. Pretoria. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G., ERB, H.E. & MCFADYEN, R.E. 1979. Annotated list of some cactus-feeding insects in South America. *Acta Zoologica Lilloana* 33: 101–112. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & GRANATA, G. 2002. Insect pests and diseases. In P.S. Nobel (ed.), *Cacti: biology and uses*, pp. 235–254. University of California Press, Berkeley. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & MALAN, D.E. 1980. Present status of prickly pear (*Opuntia ficus-indica* (L) Mill.) control in South Africa. *Proceedings of the Third National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Pretoria, 1979*, pp. 79–85. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, EVALUATION, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & MALAN, D.E. 1980. A modified technique for the herbicidal control of jointed cactus *Opuntia aurantiaca* Lindley in South Africa. *Agroplante* 12: 65–67. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, TECHNIQUE, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & MALAN, D.E. 1981. The role of imported natural enemies in suppressing re-growth of prickly pear, *Opuntia ficus-indica*, in South Africa. *Proceedings of the Fifth International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds, Brisbane, Australia, 1980*, pp. 375–381. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, REGENERATION, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G., MALAN, D.E. & VILJOEN, B.D. 1982. Screening of some water based herbicides for jointed cactus (*Opuntia aurantiaca* Lindley) control. *Proceedings of the Fourth National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Pretoria, 1981*, pp. 21–50. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & MORAN, V.C. 1982. Ecology and management of cactus weeds in South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 78: 314–320. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & MORAN, V.C. 1991. Biological control of prickly pear, *Opuntia ficus-indica* (Cactaceae), in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 29–36. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G., MORAN, V.C. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1986. Insect herbivores as determinants of the present distribution and abundance of invasive cacti in South Africa. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 269–274. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & VAN DE VENTER, H.A. 1981. Control of jointed cactus. *Farming in South Africa. Weed Series, Division of Agricultural Information A11/181*. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & VAN DE VENTER, H.A. 1981. Jointed cactus. *Farming in South Africa. Weed Series, Division of Agricultural Information A1*. A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA

## 8.4 Alien Woody Plants (766)

### 8.4.1 Alien Woody Plants – Acacia (37)

- ALLSOPP, N. 1984. *The distribution of phosphorus in the root systems of the Proteaceae and the identification of their rhizosphere and rhizoplane fungi*. M.Sc. thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, NUTRIENT, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, HAKEA
- ALLSOPP, N. 1992. *The occurrence and ecophysiology of vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal plants in the Cape floristic region*. Ph.D. thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, MYCORRHIZA, ECOPHYSIOLOGY
- ALLSOPP, N., OLIVIER, D.L. & MITCHELL, D.T. 1987. Fungal populations associated with root systems of proteaceous seedlings at a lowland fynbos site in South Africa. *South African Journal of Botany* 53: 365–369. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, MYCORRHIZA, HAKEA

- ALLSOPP, N. & STOCK, W.D. 1993. Mycorrhizal status of plants growing in the Cape Floristic Region, South Africa. *Bothalia* 23: 91–104. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, MYCORRHIZA, HAKEA
- BOND, W.J. & MIDGLEY, G.F. 2000. A proposed CO<sub>2</sub>-controlled mechanism of woody plant invasion in grasslands and savannas. *Global Change Biology* 6: 865–870. A-WOODY PLANT, GRASSLAND, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, GLOBAL-CHANGE
- BOTHA, N.J.T. 1979. *Enkele aspekte van die minerale voeding van Acacia saligna (Labill) Wendl.* Unpublished M.Sc. thesis, University of Stellenbosch, Stellenbosch. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, NUTRITION, ACACIA
- BROWN, N.A.C. & BOOYSEN, P. DE V. 1967. Seed germination and seedling growth of two *Acacia* species under field conditions in grassveld. *South African Journal of Agricultural Science* 10: 659–666. A-WOODY PLANT, GRASSLAND, ECOLOGY, INVASION, GERMINATION, REGENERATION, ACACIA
- BROWN, N.A.C. & BOOYSEN, P. DE V. 1969. Seed coat impermeability in several *Acacia* species. *Agroplante* 1: 51–60. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, REGENERATION, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, ACACIA
- CAMPBELL, B.M., MCKENZIE, B. & MOLL, E.J. 1979. Should there be more tree vegetation in the Mediterranean climatic region of South Africa. *Journal of South African Botany* 45: 453–457. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVADABILITY
- CAMPBELL, P.L., ERASMUS, D.J. & VAN STADEN, J. 1988. Enhancing seed germination of sand blackberry. *HortScience* 23: 560, 561. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, GERMINATION
- COOMBES, J. & BREDEKAMP, B. 1979. A giant bugweed. *Forestry News* 1179: 18. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, SOLANUM
- DAVIDGE, C. 1977. Baboons as dispersal agents for *Acacia cyclops*. *Zoologica Africana* 12: 249, 250. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SEED-DISPERSAL, IMPACT, N-MAMMAL, ACACIA
- DAVIS, G.W., COWLING, R.M., BAILEY, C.L. & MIDGLEY, G.F. 1992. Morphological and physiological attributes of potential plant invaders in Mediterranean-type systems: the case of *Banksia speciosa* in the Fynbos. In *Proceedings of the Sixth International Conference on Mediterranean Climate Ecosystems (Medecos)*, pp 341–346. Maleme (Crete) Greece 23–27 September 1991. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASIVENESS
- DEAN, W.R.J. 1985. The utilization of *Solanum mauritianum* woodland by birds in the north-eastern Transvaal. *Proceedings of the Symposium on Birds and Man, Johannesburg 1983*, pp. 89–97. A-WOODY PLANT, AVIFAUNA, AVIAN-FRUGIVORY, SOLANUM, ECOLOGY
- ERASMUS, D.J. & VAN STADEN, J. 1986. Germination of *Chromolaena odorata* (L.) K. & R. achenes: effect of temperature, imbibition and light. *Weed Research* 26: 75–81. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, GERMINATION, CHROMOLAENA
- ERASMUS, D.J. & VAN STADEN, J. 1987. Germination of *Chromolaena odorata* (L.) K. & R. achenes: effect of storage, harvest locality and the pericarp. *Weed Research* 27: 113–118. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, GERMINATION, CHROMOLAENA
- EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W. 1994. An overview of the riparian vegetation and its requirements in terms of surface and sub-surface flow and bank recharge along the Kouga River. In *DWAF, Algoa Reconnaissance Flow Assessment Worksession, 8–10 December 1994*. A-WOODY PLANT, RIPARIAN TREES, WATER USE, SCOURING, ECOLOGY
- EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W., BOTHA, S. & BOND, W.J. 2002. *The influence of fire severity on post fire vegetation recovery on the Cape Peninsula*. Working for Water report. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, FYNBOS, SEEDLING DENSITY, MONITORING, PERMANENT PLOTS, DATA, DIVERSITY, FUEL LOAD
- FUGLER, S.R. 1979. *Some aspects of the autecology of three Hakea species in the Cape Province, South Africa*. Unpublished M.Sc. thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, HAKEA
- GAREEB, M., PAMMENTER, N.W., BOWER, J.P. & ZACHARIADES, C. 2004. Determining optimal growth conditions for the South African biotype of *Chromolaena odorata*. Abstract. In M.D. Day & R.E.C. McFadyen (eds), *Proceedings of the Sixth International Workshop on Biological Control and Management of Chromolaena*. May 2003. ACIAR Technical Reports 55: 18. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, CHROMOLAENA
- GILL, A.M. & NESER, S. 1984. *Acacia cyclops* and *Hakea sericea* at home and abroad. Medecos IV. In *Proceedings of the 4th International Conference on Mediterranean Ecosystems, Perth*, pp. 57, 58. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASIVENESS, ACACIA, HAKEA
- GLYPHIS, J.P. 1976. *Birds as dispersal agents for Acacia cyclops*. Unpublished Zoology Honours project, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SEED-DISPERSAL, IMPACT, N-BIRD, ACACIA
- GLYPHIS, J.P., MILTON, S.J. & SIEGFRIED, W.R. 1981. Dispersal of *Acacia cyclops* by birds. *Oecologia (Berl.)* 48: 138–141. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SEED-DISPERSAL, IMPACT, N-BIRD, ACACIA
- GRAAFF, J.L. & VAN STADEN, J. 1987. The relationship between storage conditions and seed germination in two species of *Sesbania*. *South African Journal of Botany* 53: 143–146. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, SESBANIA
- HILL, M.P. & HULLEY, P.E. 2000. Aspects of the phenology and ecology of the South American weed, *Solanum sisymbriifolium*, in the Eastern Cape Province of South Africa. *African Plant Protection* 5,2: 53–59. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, PHENOLOGY, SOLANUM
- HOLMES, P.M. 1989. Indigenous seed-feeding bugs on alien *Acacia cyclops*. *Veld & Flora* 75,4: 121, 122. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ACACIA
- HOLMES, P.M. 1990. Vertical movement of soil-stored seeds at a sandplain fynbos site. *South African Journal of Ecology* 1: 8–11. A-WOODY PLANT,



- ECOLOGY, INVASION, REGENERATION, SEED-BANK, IMPACT, N-RODENT, SEED-BURIAL, ACACIA
- HOLMES, P.M. 2002. Depth distribution and composition of seed banks in alien-invaded and uninvaded fynbos vegetation. *Austral Ecology* 27: 110–120. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, COMMUNITY STRUCTURE, RESTORATION, SEED-BURIAL, SEED-BANK
- HOLMES, P.M. & COWLING, R.M. 1997. Diversity, composition and guild structure relationships between soil-stored seed banks and mature vegetation in alien plant-invaded South African fynbos shrublands. *Plant Ecology* 133: 107–122. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, FIRE, RECRUITMENT, RESTORATION, SEED-BANK
- HOLMES, P.M. & MOLL, E.J. 1990. Effect of depth and duration of burial on alien *Acacia saligna* and *Acacia cyclops* seeds. *South African Journal of Ecology* 1: 12–17. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, REGENERATION, SEED-BANK, ACACIA, SEED-DECAY, GERMINATION, STRATEGIC
- HOLMES, P.M. & NEWTON, R.J. 2004. Patterns of seed persistence in South African fynbos. *Plant Ecology* 172: 143–158. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, ACACIA, DORMANCY, FIRE, GERMINATION, SEED-BANK
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A., JUBB, R.A. & SKEAD, C.J. 1979. Field studies of six southern African species of *Erythrina*. *Annals of the Missouri Botanical Garden* 66: 521–527. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, ERYTHRINA, ACRIDOTHERES, STURNUS
- JONES, R.N. 1963. Studies in the autecology of Australian acacias in South Africa. 3. Preliminary studies of the germination of seed of *Acacia cyclops* and *Acacia cyanophylla*. *South African Journal of Science* 59: 296–298. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, REGENERATION, SEED-BANK, ACACIA
- KNIGHT, R.S. 1986. A comparative analysis of fleshy fruit displays in alien and indigenous plants. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 171–178. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ADAPTATION, COMPETITION, DISPERSAL, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MUTUALISM, AVIAN-FRUGIVORY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, ACACIA, LANTANA, MYOPORUM, PITTOSPORUM, RUBUS, SOLANUM
- KNIGHT, R.S. & MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1991. Acacias and korhaans: an artificially assembled seed-dispersal system. *South African Journal of Botany* 57: 220–225. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-BIRD, SEED-DISPERSAL, MUTUALISM, ACACIA
- LINDER, H.P. 1974. *Studies in the biology of the Australian acacias in South Africa: invertebrate fauna in the litter*. Unpublished Zoology Project, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, LITTER, ACACIA
- LÜBBE, W.A. & GELDENHUYS, C.J. 1991. Regeneration patterns in planted and natural forest stands near Knysna, southern Cape. *South African Forestry Journal* 159: 43–50. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, IMPACT, N-PLANT, RESTORATION, ECOLOGY
- MBALO, B.A. & WITKOWSKI, E.T.F. 1997. Tolerance to soil temperatures experienced during and after the passage of fire in seeds of *Acacia karroo*, *A. tortilis* and *Chromolaena odorata*. *South African Journal of Botany* 63: 421–425. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, GERMINATION, FIRE, SOIL-TEMPERATURE, CHROMOLAENA
- MCDOWELL, C.R. 1979. *Competition between Virgilia oroboides (Berg) Salter, Albizia lophantha (Willd.) Benth. and Acacia longifolia (Andr.) Willd.: a pilot study*. Unpublished Botany honours project, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA)
- MCDOWELL, C.R. & MOLL, E.J. 1980. Studies of seed germination and seedling competition in *Virgilia oroboides* (Berg.) Salter, *Albizia lophantha* (Willd.) Benth. and *Acacia longifolia* (Andr.) Willd. *Journal of South African Botany* 47,4: 653–685. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, GERMINATION, SEEDLING-RECRUITMENT, IMPACT, COMPETITION, N-PLANT, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA)
- MILTON, S.J. 1980. Australian acacias in the southwest Cape: preadaptation, predation and success. In S. Naser & A.L.P. Cairns (eds), *Proceedings of the Third National Weeds Conference of South Africa*, pp. 69–78. Balkema, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVASIVENESS, SPREAD, ACACIA
- MILTON, S.J. 1980. *Studies on Australian acacias in the South Western Cape, South Africa*. M.Sc. thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town, South Africa. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVASIVENESS, SPREAD, ACACIA
- MILTON, S.J. 1982. Effects of shading on nursery-grown acacias. *Journal of South African Botany* 48: 245–272. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, ACACIA
- MILTON, S.J. 1998. Austrian student studies blasiebrak in Prince Albert. *Prince Albert Friend* 39: 2, 6. (Publicity Association, Prince Albert). A-WOODY PLANT, KAROO, ECOLOGY, RESEARCH, ATRIPLEX
- MILTON, S.J. & HALL, A.V. 1981. Reproductive biology of Australian acacias in the S.W. Cape. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa* 44: 65–487. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, REGENERATION, ACACIA
- MILTON, S.J. & MOLL, E.J. 1982. Phenology of Australian acacias in the S.W. Cape, South Africa and its implications for management. *Botanical Journal of the Linnean Society* 84: 295–327. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, PHENOLOGY, ACACIA
- MILTON, S.J. & SIEGFRIED, W.R. 1981. Above-ground biomass of Australian acacias in the southern Cape, South Africa. *Journal of South African Botany* 47: 701–716. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, BIOMASS, ACACIA
- MITCHELL, D.T. & ALLSOPP, N. 1984. Changes in the phosphorus composition of *Hakea sericea* (Proteaceae) during germination under low phosphorus conditions. *New Phytologist* 96: 239–247. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, NUTRIENT, HAKEA, FYNBOS
- MOLL, E.J., ROTH, R.H. & BOTHA, M.A. 1991. *Table Mountain distribution of alien plants 1976–1991*. Department of Botany, University of Cape Town,

- Cape Town. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM93-0153). A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, ACACIA, HAKEA, PINUS
- OSBORN, J.B. & OSBORN, E. 1931. Studies on the germination of seed of the black wattle (*Acacia mollissima*) and the green wattle (*Acacia decurrens normalis*). *South African Journal of Science* 28: 222–237. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, GERMINATION, ACACIA
- PHILLIPS, J.F.V. 1935. Diameter growth rhythm in *Acacia melanoxylon* R.Br. ('Tasmanian Blackwood') as shown by dendrographic observations on the Witwatersrand. *Journal of South African Botany* 1: 155–160. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, ACACIA, ECOLOGY
- PIETERSE, P.J. & CAIRNS, A.L.P. 1986. An effective technique of breaking the seed dormancy of *Acacia longifolia*. *South African Journal of Plant and Soil* 3,2: 85–87. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, GERMINATION, DORMANCY, ACACIA, ECOLOGY
- PIETERSE, P.J. & CAIRNS, A.L.P. 1986. The effect of fire on an *Acacia longifolia* seed bank in the south-western Cape. *South African Journal of Botany* 52,3: 233–236. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, SEED-BANK, GERMINATION, FIRE, ACACIA
- PIETERSE, P.J. & CAIRNS, A.L.P. 1987. The effect of fire on an *Acacia longifolia* seed bank and the growth, mortality and reproduction of seedlings established after a fire in the South-West Cape. *Applied Plant Science* 1: 34–38. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, SEED-BANK, GERMINATION, SEEDLING-RECRUITMENT, FIRE, ACACIA
- PIETERSE, P.J. & CAIRNS, A.L.P. 1988. Factors affecting the reproductive success of *Acacia longifolia* (Andr.) Willd. in the Banhoek Valley, south-western Cape, Republic of South Africa. *South African Journal of Botany* 54: 461–464. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, SEED-BANK, GERMINATION, SEEDLING-RECRUITMENT, FIRE, ACACIA
- PIETERSE, P.J. & CAIRNS, A.L.P. 1988. The population dynamics of the weed *Acacia longifolia* (Fabaceae) in the absence and presence of fire. *South African Journal of Forestry* 145: 25–27. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, SEED-BANK, GERMINATION, SEEDLING-RECRUITMENT, FIRE, ACACIA
- PIETERSE, P.J. & CAIRNS, A.L.P. 1990. Investigations on the removal by animals of *Acacia longifolia* (Fabaceae) seed from the soil surface at Banhoek in the southwestern Cape. *South African Journal of Plant and Soil* 7,2: 155–157. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, SEED-BANK, IMPACT, N-ANIMALS, ACACIA
- RATSIRARSON, H., ROBERTSON, H.G., PICKER, M.D. & VAN NOORT, S. 2002. Indigenous forests versus exotic eucalypt and pine plantations: a comparison of leaf-litter invertebrate communities. *African Entomology* 10,1: 93–99. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, LITTER, EUCALYPTUS, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & COWLING, R.M. 1994. The ecology of invasive alien pines (*Pinus* spp.) in the Jonkershoek Valley, Stellenbosch, South Africa. *Bontebok* 9: 1–10. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, ECOLOGY, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M., COWLING, R.M., BOND, W.J., STOCK, W.D. & DAVIS, G.W. 1995. Links between biodiversity and ecosystem function in the Cape Floristic Region. In G.D. Davis & D.M. Richardson (eds), *Mediterranean-type ecosystems. The function of biodiversity*, pp. 285–333. Ecological Studies 109. Springer-Verlag, Berlin. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVASIVENESS, INVADABILITY, N-BIODIVERSITY
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & RUNDEL, P.W. 1998. Ecology and biogeography of *Pinus*—an introduction. In D.M. Richardson (ed.), *Ecology and biogeography of Pinus*, pp. 3–46. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, ECOLOGY, BIOGEOGRAPHY, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & VAN WILGEN, B.W. 1984. Factors affecting regeneration success of *Hakea sericea*. *South African Forestry Journal* 131: 63–68. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, REGENERATION, HAKEA
- RICHARDSON, D.M., VAN WILGEN, B.W. & MITCHELL, D.T. 1987. Aspects of the reproductive ecology of four Australian *Hakea* species in South Africa. *Oecologia* 71: 345–354. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVASIVENESS, HAKEA
- ROBERTSE, P.J. 1971. 'n *Morfologiese studie van die genus Acacia Miller in Suid-Afrika*. Unpublished Ph.D. thesis, University of Pretoria, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, MORPHOLOGY, ACACIA, INVASIVE
- ROBERTSE, P.J. & VORSTER, E. 1974. 'n *Ontogenetiese studie van bloeiwyse, blom, vrug en saad van uitheemse Acacia-soorte wat as onkruides verklaar is, in vergelyking met die van 'n aantal Suid-Afrikaanse soorte*. National Programme for Environmental Sciences, Terrestrial Biology Section Annual Report, pp. 12, 13. A-WOODY PLANT, MORPHOLOGY, ACACIA, INVASIVE
- ROUX, E.R. 1964. The Australian acacias in South Africa. In D.H. Davies (ed.), *Ecological studies in southern Africa (Monographiae Biologicae, Volume 14.)*, pp. 137–142. Junk, The Hague. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, ACACIA
- ROUX, E.R. 1965. Salt tolerance in four invasive exotic acacias of the Cape Peninsula. *South African Journal of Science* 61: 438. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, ACACIA
- ROUX, E.R. & MARAIS, C.C.G. 1964. Rhizobial nitrogen fixation in some South African acacias. *South African Journal of Science* 60: 203, 204. A-WOODY PLANT, PHYSIOLOGY, NITROGEN-FIXATION, ACACIA, ECOLOGY
- ROUX, E.R. & WARREN, J.L. 1963. Studies in the autecology of Australian acacias in South Africa. 2. Symbiotic nitrogen fixation in *Acacia cyclops* A. Cunn. *South African Journal of Science* 59: 294, 295. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, NITROGEN-FIXATION, ACACIA
- RUTHERFORD, M.C., MIDGLEY G.F. & DAVIS, G.W. 1993. Covert symptoms of pollution stress in introduced vegetation near Cape Town. *South African Journal of Science* 89: 50, 51. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, AIR-POLLUTION
- SCHUTTE, K.H. 1960. Trace element deficiencies in Cape vegetation. *Journal of South African Botany* 26: 45–49. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, NUTRIENT, ACACIA, HAKEA, PINUS
- SIMONS, L. 1998. *Alien C3 grasses responses to soils from natural and alien vegetation*. Unpublished B.Sc.(Hons) thesis, University of the

- Western Cape, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, A-GRASS, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, PHOTOSYNTHESIS, SOIL, NUTRIENT
- SOMMERVILLE, J.E.M. 1977. *Growth strategies and seed germination in aggressive alien invasive species*. Unpublished Botany Honours project, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASIVENESS, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, GERMINATION, ACACIA
- SOMMERVILLE, J.E.M. 1981. A comparison of the seasonal growth of indigenous and non-indigenous species in the South Western Cape. *Journal of South African Botany* 47: 797–805. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, INVASIVENESS, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, PHENOLOGY, ACACIA, HAKEA, PINUS
- SPIES, J.J. & STIRTON, C.H. 1982. Meiotic studies of some South African cultivars of *Lantana camara* (Verbenaceae). *Bothalia* 14: 101–111. A-WOODY PLANT, TAXONOMY, GENETICS, LANTANA, ECOLOGY
- SPIES, J.J. & STIRTON, C.H. 1982. Embryo sac development in some South African cultivars of *Lantana camara*. *Bothalia* 14: 113–117. A-WOODY PLANT, TAXONOMY, MORPHOLOGY, LANTANA, ECOLOGY
- SPIES, J.J. & STIRTON, C.H. 1982. Chromosome numbers of southern African plants: 1. *Journal of South African Botany* 48,1: 21, 22. A-WOODY PLANT, TAXONOMY, GENETICS, LANTANA, ECOLOGY
- TAYLOR, H.C. 1977. Aspects of the ecology of the Cape of Good Hope Nature Reserve in relation to fire and conservation. In *Proceedings of the Symposium on the Environmental Consequences of Fire and Fuel Management in Mediterranean Ecosystems, August 1–5 1977, Palo Alto, California*. USDA Forest Services General Technical Report W0-3, pp. 483–487. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, FIRE, CONSERVATION, ACACIA, PINUS
- THERON, J.M., VAN LAAR, A., KUNNEKE, A. & BREDENKAMP, B.V. 2004. A preliminary assessment of utilizable biomass in invading *Acacia* stands on the Cape coastal plains. *South African Journal of Science* 100,1/2: 123–125. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, UTILISATION, FUELWOOD, BIOMASS, ACACIA
- VAN STADEN, J. & CAMPBELL, P. 1984. A complex dormancy mechanism in seeds of the weed *Rubus cuneifolius*. *South African Journal of Plant and Soil* 1: 48–50. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, DORMANCY, RUBUS
- VAN WARMELO, W. & MOLL, E.J. (eds) 1988. *Rational biomass utilization in the Greater Cape Town Region. Proceedings of a seminar, Kirstenbosch, 22 February 1988*. Botanical Society of South Africa, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, UTILISATION, FUELWOOD, BIOMASS, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, ACACIA
- VAN WILGEN, B.W. & SIEGFRIED, W.R. 1986. Seed dispersal properties of three pine species as a determinant of invasive potential. *South African Journal of Botany* 52,6: 546–548. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, SEED-DISPERSAL, SEED-SIZE, INVASIVENESS, PINUS
- VON SENER, I., BARKER, N. & ZACHARIADES, C. 2002. Preliminary phytogeography of *Chromolaena* *odorata*: finding the origin of a South African weed. In C. Zachariades, R. Muniappan & L.W. Strathie (eds), *Proceedings of the Fifth International Workshop on Biological Control and Management of Chromolaena odorata*, pp. 90–99. ARC-PPRI, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, TAXONOMY, ORIGIN, CHROMOLAENA, ECOLOGY
- WITBOOI, B. 1998. *An assessment of the effects of soil fertility on the success of Atriplex linleyi*. Unpublished B.Sc.(Hons) thesis, University of the Western Cape, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SOIL, NUTRIENT, ATRIPLEX
- WITKOWSKI, E.T.F. & WILSON, M. 2001. Changes in density, biomass, seed banks and seed production of the alien invasive plant *Chromolaena odorata*, along a 15 year chronosequence. *Plant Ecology* 152: 13–27. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, SEED-BANK, REPRODUCTION, REGENERATION, CHROMOLAENA
- WITKOWSKI, E.T.F. 1991. Growth and competition between seedlings of *Protea repens* (L.) L. and the alien invasive, *Acacia saligna* (Labill.) Wendl., in relation to nutrient availability. *Functional Ecology* 5: 101–110. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, IMPACT, N-PLANT, NUTRIENT, COMPETITION, ACACIA
- WITKOWSKI, E.T.F. 1994. Growth of seedlings of the invasives, *Acacia saligna* and *A. cyclops*, in relation to soil phosphorus. *Australian Journal of Ecology* 19: 290–296. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, NUTRIENT, ACACIA

#### 8.4.2 A-Woody Plants—Identification (59)

- ANDERSON, T.A. 2000. *Is it an alien or indigenous tree?*, 8 pp. Botany Department, McGregor Museum. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, INVASIVE
- ANONYMOUS 1950. St. John's Wort, a dangerous weed. *Farming in South Africa* 25,287: 61–63. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT, IDENTIFICATION, HYPERICUM
- ANONYMOUS 1970. Gevaarlike plante: lantana. *Die Landbouweekblad* 7 July 1970: 66, 67. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, MANAGEMENT, LANTANA
- ANONYMOUS 1970. Gevaarlike plante: hakea. *Die Landbouweekblad* 18.8.1970: 67. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, MANAGEMENT, HAKEA
- ANONYMOUS 1970. Gevaarlike plante: Johannesburgskruif. *Die Landbouweekblad* 25.8.1970: 6. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, MANAGEMENT, HYPERICUM
- ANONYMOUS 2005. Alien watch [Acacia]. *Gardener* February 2005: 4. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ACACIA, INVASIVE
- BOUCHER, C. 1978. Black wattle. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 48–51. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA



- BOUCHER, C. & STIRTON, C.H. 1978. Rooikrans. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 40–43. Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA
- BOUCHER, C. & STIRTON, C.H. 1978. Golden wattle. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 56–59. Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA
- BOUCHER, C. & STIRTON, C.H. 1978. Port Jackson. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 60–63. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA
- BYFORD-JONES, C. 1979. Decorative but deadly. *Farmers Weekly* 4.4.1979: 13. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, IMPACT, UTILISATION, HORTICULTURE, SESBANIA
- BYFORD-JONES, C. 1989. Watch out for this alien (*Chromolaena odorata*). *Farmers Weekly* 12 May 1989: 13–15. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM89-1928) A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT, IDENTIFICATION, CHROMOLAENA
- CODD, L.E.W. 1951. Trees and shrubs of the Kruger National Park. *Memoirs of the Botanical Survey of South Africa* 26: 1–192. A-WOODY PLANT, SAVANNA, INVASION, LANTANA, NERIUM
- CODD, L.E.W. 1958. The *Albizia* species of South Africa. *Bothalia* 7: 67–82. A-WOODY PLANT, TAXONOMY, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), INVASIVE
- COMINS, D.M. 1962. The vegetation of the districts of East London and King William's Town, Cape Province. *Memoirs of the Botanical Survey of South Africa* 33: 1–32. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ACACIA, EUCALYPTUS, OPUNTIA, PINUS
- FOURCADE, H.G. 1941. Check-list of the flowering plants of the divisions of George, Knysna, Humansdorp, and Uniondale. *Memoirs of the Botanical Survey of South Africa* 20: 1–127. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), HAKEA, OPUNTIA
- GORDON, A.J. 1978. St John's wort. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 84–87. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, HYPERICUM
- HARDING, G.B. 1978. Mesquite. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 128–131. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, PROSOPIS
- HARDING, G.B. 1987. The status of *Prosopis* as a weed. *Applied Plant Science* 1: 43–48. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, PROSOPIS
- HARDING, G.B. 1988. *The genus Prosopis as an invasive alien in southern Africa*. Ph.D. thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, PROSOPIS
- HARDING, G.B. & BATE, G.C. 1991. The occurrence of invasive *Prosopis* species in the north-western Cape, South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 87: 188–192. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, PROSOPIS
- HENDERSON, L. 1987. Barrier plants of southern Africa. *Memoirs of the Botanical Survey of South Africa* 55: 1–97. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASIVE, N-ALTERNATIVE
- HENDERSON, L. 1989. Invasive alien woody plants of Natal and the north-eastern Orange Free State. *Bothalia* 19,2: 237–261. A-WOODY PLANT, SAVANNA, GRASSLAND, FOREST, ROADSIDE-SURVEY, INVASIVE
- HENDERSON, L. 1990. Jacaranda/jakaranda. Weeds/ Onkruid A.33/1991. *Farming in South Africa*. A-WOODY PLANT, JACARANDA, INVASIVE
- HENDERSON, L. 1991. Alien invasive *Salix* spp. (willows) in the Grassland Biome of South Africa. *South African Forestry Journal* 157: 91–95. A-WOODY PLANT, GRASSLAND, SALIX, INVASIVE
- HENDERSON, L. 1991. Invasive alien woody plants of the Orange Free State. *Bothalia* 21,1: 73–89. A-WOODY PLANT, GRASSLAND, SAVANNA, NAMA-KAROO, ROADSIDE-SURVEY, INVASIVE
- HENDERSON, L. 1991. Invasive alien woody plants of the northern Cape. *Bothalia* 21,2: 177–189. A-WOODY PLANT, NAMA-KAROO, SAVANNA, ROADSIDE-SURVEY, PROSOPIS, INVASIVE
- HENDERSON, L. 1992. Oleander: an invasive riverside shrub from the Mediterranean. *Veld & Flora* 78,3: 84, 85. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, NERIUM
- HENDERSON, L. 1992. Mesquite/prosopis. Weeds/ Onkruid A.34/1992. *Farming in South Africa*. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, PROSOPIS
- HENDERSON, L. 1992. Invasive alien woody plants of the eastern Cape. *Bothalia* 22,1: 119–143. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, GRASSLAND, SAVANNA, NAMA-KAROO, ROADSIDE-SURVEY, INVASIVE
- HENDERSON, L. 1998. Invasive alien woody plants of the southern and southwestern Cape region, South Africa. *Bothalia* 28,1: 91–112. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, FYNBOS, SAVANNA, SUCCULENT-KAROO, ROADSIDE-SURVEY, INVASIVE
- HENDERSON, L. 2002. Invasive alien plants in southern Africa. Part 4: eucalypts and myrtles (Myrtaceae). *SABONET News* 7,2: 106–109. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, HISTORY, IDENTIFICATION, EUCALYPTUS, LEPTOSPERMUM
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1980. Exotic weeds and macchia vegetation in the Eastern Cape. *The Eastern Cape Naturalist* 69: 21–23. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), HAKEA, LANTANA, OPUNTIA, PINUS, SESBANIA, SOLANUM
- JESSOP, J.P. & JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1969. The vegetation of the Thomas Baines Nature Reserve. *Journal of South African Botany* 35: 367–392. A-

- WOODY PLANT, A-SUCCULENT PLANT, FYNBOS, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACACIA, HAKEA, OPUNTIA
- JOHNSON, C. 1978. Australian myrtle. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 92–95. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, LEPTOSPERMUM
- KLUGE, R.L. 1978. Water hyacinth. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 68–71. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, IDENTIFICATION, IMPACT, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, EICHHORNIA
- KRUGER, F.J. 1978. Cluster pine. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 124–127. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, PINUS
- MOLL, E.J. 1978. Blackwood. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 52–55. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation, Cape Prov. Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA
- MOLL, E.J. 1981. *Trees of Natal: a comprehensive field guide to over seven hundred indigenous and naturalized species*, 572 pp. Eco-lab Trust Fund, Department of Botany, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, GRASSLAND, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, FIELD-GUIDE
- MOLL, E.J. 1992. *Trees of Natal: a comprehensive field guide to over eight hundred indigenous and naturalized species*, 542 pp. Eco-Lab Trust Fund, Department of Botany, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, GRASSLAND, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, FIELD-GUIDE
- MOLL, E.J. & SCOTT, L. 1981. *Trees and shrubs of the Cape Peninsula: a comprehensive field guide to over two hundred and thirty indigenous and naturalized species*, 119 pp. Eco-lab Trust Fund, Department of Botany, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, FYNBOS, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, FIELD-GUIDE
- NESER, S. 1978. Rock hakea. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 72–75. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, HAKEA
- NESER, S. 1978. Sweet hakea. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 80–83. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, HAKEA
- NESER, S. & FUGLER, S.R. 1978. Silky hakea. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 76–79. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, HAKEA
- OLIVER, E.G.H. 1966. Hakea. *Mobil Farmer* 55. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, HAKEA
- PHILLIPS, E.P. 1938. The naturalized species of *Hakea*. *Farming in South Africa* 13: 424. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, HAKEA
- PIENAAR, K. 1976. Mooi tuinstruik word duiwelse bedreiging. *Die Landbouweekblad*. 14.5.1976: 84–87. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, IMPACT, UTILISATION, HORTICULTURE, SESBANIA
- PIENAAR, K. 1977. *Sesbania punicea* (Cav.) Benth. The handsome plant terrorist. *Veld & Flora* 63,4: 17, 18. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, IMPACT, UTILISATION, HORTICULTURE, SESBANIA
- PIENAAR, K.J. 1978. *Sesbania*. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 136–139. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, SESBANIA
- ROSS, J.H. 1975. The naturalized and cultivated exotic *Acacia* species in South Africa. *Bothalia* 11: 463–470. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, TAXONOMY, ACACIA, INVASIVE
- ROSS, J.H. 1975. Mimosoideae. *Flora of southern Africa* 16,1: 6, 7. Government Printer, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, TAXONOMY, ACACIA, INVASIVE
- SCHELLINGHOUT, J. 1979. Paraffin vat duiwelstruik kort. *Die Landbouweekblad* 23.2.1979: 10–12. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, SESBANIA
- STIRTON, C.H. (ed.) 1978. *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town, 175 pp. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), EICHHORNIA, HAKEA, LANTANA, LEPTOSPERMUM, MYRIOPHYLLUM, NERIU, NICOTIANA, OPUNTIA, PROSOPIS, SALVINIA, SESBANIA, STIPA
- STIRTON, C.H. 1978. Lantana. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 88–91. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, TAXONOMY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- STIRTON, C.H. 1978. Oleander. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 100–103. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, NERIU
- STIRTON, C.H. 1978. Wild tobacco. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 104–107. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, NICOTIANA

- STIRTON, C.H. 1981. Notes on the taxonomy of *Rubus* in South Africa. *Bothalia* 13: 331, 332. A-WOODY PLANT, TAXONOMY, RUBUS, ECOLOGY
- TAYLOR, H.C. 1978. Stinkbean. In C.H. Stirton (ed.), *Plant invaders: beautiful but dangerous*, pp. 64–67. The Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation of the Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA)
- VAN ZYL, D. 1977. 'n Satan in engelgewaad. *Die Landbouweekblad* 18.2.1977: 24–27. A-WOODY PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, IMPACT, SESBANIA
- ALLSOPP, N. & HOLMES, P.M. 2001. The impact of alien plant invasion on mycorrhizas in mountain fynbos vegetation. *South African Journal of Botany* 67: 150–156. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, HAKEA, PINUS, GUILD STRUCTURE, RESTORATION, SOIL, NUTRIENT
- ANDERSON, M.D. 1994. Possible tree-breeding by Black Swifts *Apus barbatus*. *Ostrich* 65,2: 344, 345. A-WOODY PLANT, IMPACT, NESTING, N-BIRD
- ANDERSON, M.D. 1994. First record of Sociable Weavers nesting in an exotic tree. *Birding in South Africa* 47,1: 20. A-WOODY PLANT, IMPACT, NESTING, N-BIRD
- ANDERSON, M.D. & ANDERSON, T.A. 2001. Too much, too quickly? Doubts about the sustainability of the camelthorn wood harvest. *African Wildlife* 55: 21–23. A-WOODY PLANT, IMPACT, UTILISATION, FUELWOOD
- ANDERSON, M.D. & TALJAARD, F.D. 2002. *De Aar's Lesser Kestrels: one of the wonders of the Karoo*. Unpublished brochure. Raptor Conservation Group, Emthanjeni Municipality, and Northern Cape Department of Agriculture, Land Reform, Environment and Conservation, Kimberley. A-WOODY PLANT, IMPACT, ROOSTING, N-BIRD
- ARMSTRONG, A.J. & VAN HENSBERGEN, H.J. 1996. Impacts of afforestation with pines on assemblages of native biota in South Africa. *South African Forestry Journal* 175: 35–42. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, SYLVICULTURAL-AREA, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, PINUS
- ARMSTRONG, A.J., VAN HENSBERGEN, H.J., SCOTT, D.F. & MILTON, S.J. 1996. Are pine plantations 'Inhospitable seas' around remnant native habitat within south-western Cape forestry areas? *South African Forestry Journal* 176: 1–10. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, SYLVICULTURAL-AREA, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, PINUS
- BOMHARD, B., RICHARDSON, D.M., DONALDSON, J.S., HUGHES, G.O., MIDGLEY, G.F., RAIMONDO, T., REBELO, A.G., ROUGET, M. & THUILLER, W. 2005. Potential impacts of future land use and climate change on the Red List status of the Proteaceae in the Cape Floristic Region, South Africa. *Global Change Biology* 11: 1452–1468. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, GLOBAL-CHANGE, LAND-USE
- BOSCH, J.M. & HEWLETT, J.D. 1982. A review of catchment experiments to determine the effect of vegetation changes on water yield and evapotranspiration. *Journal of Hydrology* 55: 3–23. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, HYDROLOGY
- BOSCH, J.M., VAN WILGEN, B.W. & BANDS, D.P. 1986. A model for comparing water yield from fynbos catchments burnt at different intervals. *Water SA* 12: 191–196. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, HYDROLOGY, MODELLING, FIRE
- BREYTENBACH, G.J. 1986. Impact of alien organisms on terrestrial communities with emphasis on communities in the south-western Cape. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 229–238. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, A-BIRD, A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, A-MAMMAL, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, N-BIRD, N-INVERTEBRATE, N-MAMMAL, HYBRIDIZATION, MYRMECOCHORY, POLLINATION, SEED-DISPERSAL, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION
- COETSEE, J. 1995. Prosopis moed beter bestry word. *Landbouweekblad* (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM97-0112) A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT
- COETSEE, J. 1998. Prosopis met nuwe plan getakel. *Landbouweekblad* 1064 (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2001-167) A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT
- COWLING, R. 1976. The ecological status of the understorey communities of pine forests on Table Mountain. In E.J. Moll & B.M. Campbell (eds), *The ecological status of Table Mountain*, pp. 1–29. Department of Botany, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, PINUS
- COWLING, R.M. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1995. *Fynbos: South Africa's unique floral kingdom*. Fernwood Press, Cape Town. (5th printing in 2003) A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT
- COWLING, R.M., MOLL, E.J. & CAMPBELL, B.M. 1976. The ecological status of the understorey communities of pine forests on Table Mountain. *South African Forestry Journal* 99: 13–24. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, PINUS
- COWLING, R.M., RICHARDSON, D.M. & MUSTART, P.J. 1997. Fynbos. In R.M. Cowling, D.M. Richardson & S.M. Pierce (eds), *Vegetation of southern Africa*, pp. 99–130. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT
- DEAN, W.R.J., ANDERSON, M.D., MILTON, S.J. & ANDERSON, T.A. 2001. Avian assemblages in native *Acacia* and alien *Prosopis* drainage line woodland in the Kalahari, South Africa. *Arid Zone Ecology Forum meeting, Calitzdorp, September 2001*. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PROSOPIS
- DEAN, W.R.J., ANDERSON, M.D., MILTON, S.J. & ANDERSON, T.A. 2002. Avian assemblages in native *Acacia* and alien *Prosopis* drainage line woodland in the Kalahari, South Africa. *Journal of Arid Environments* 51: 1–19. A-WOODY PLANT, ARID SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, WOODLAND STRUCTURE, AVIFAUNA, DIVERSITY, PROSOPIS
- DE RONDE, C. 1984. Litter accumulation problems identified in *P. pinaster* stands of the Cape Province.

- South African Forestry Journal 131: 48–52. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, LITTER, PINUS
- DYE, P.J. 1996. Climate, forest and streamflow relationships in South African afforested catchments. *Commonwealth Forestry Review* 75: 31–38. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY
- DYE, P.J. & JARMAIN, C. 2004. Water use by black wattle (*Acacia mearnsii*): implications for the link between removal of invading trees and catchment streamflow response. *South African Journal of Science* 100,1/2: 40–44. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, ACACIA
- EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W. 1996. *Baseline study of the riparian vegetation for an impact assessment of the altered flow below the Mohale Dam in the Senqunyane and Senqu Rivers, Lesotho*. (This report has been integrated into: Afridev consultants 1996. LHDA Contract 1008—Baseline Biology Survey and Reserve Development, Phase 1B. Draft Final Report). A-WOODY PLANT, ACACIA, SALIX, SOIL-EROSION, DATA, IMPACT
- FISKE, S. 1978. New weed threatens timber industry, watch out for trifid weed. *Farmers Weekly* 1 November 1978. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, SYLVICULTURE, CHROMOLAENA
- FODEN, W.B. & BOND, W.J. 1998. Impacts of alien clearing on postfire biodiversity and erosion. *South African Association of Botanists XXVI Conference, Cape Town*. (Poster Paper). A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, FIRE, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, SOIL-EROSION
- FODEN, W.B. & BOND, W.J. 1997. Impacts of alien clearing on postfire biodiversity and erosion. *Fynbos Forum, Genadendal, South Africa*. (Oral paper). A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, FIRE, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, SOIL-EROSION
- FRASER, M.W. & CROWE, T.M. 1990. Effects of alien woody plant invasion on the birds of Mountain Fynbos in the Cape of Good Hope Nature Reserve. *South African Journal of Zoology* 25,2: 97–108. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRDS
- FRENCH, K. & MAJOR, R.E. 2001. Effect of an exotic *Acacia* (Fabaceae) on ant assemblages in South African fynbos. *Austral Ecology* 26,4: 303–310. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ACACIA
- GOODALL, J.M., KLUGE, R.L., ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & OLCKERS, T. 1994. Adverse effects of the exotic weed *Chromolaena odorata* on land utilization in southern Africa. *Proceedings of the Fifth Annual Scientific Conference of the SADC Land and Water Management Research Programme, 10–14 October 1994, Harare, Zimbabwe*, pp. 15–24. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, LAND-USE, CHROMOLAENA
- HALL, A.V. & BOUCHER, C. 1977. The threat posed by alien weeds to the Cape flora. *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Stellenbosch, 1977*, pp. 35–145. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), EUCALYPTUS, HAKEA, PINUS
- HOLMES, P.M. & COWLING, R.M. 1997. The effects of invasion by *Acacia saligna* on the guild structure and regeneration capabilities of South African fynbos shrublands. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 34: 317–332. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, SEED-BANK, ACACIA, FIRE, RECRUITMENT, RESTORATION
- HOLMES, P.M., DENNILL, G.B. & MOLL, E.J. 1987. Effects of feeding by native alydid insects on the seed viability of an alien invasive weed, *Acacia cyclops*. *South African Journal of Science* 83: 580, 581. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, GERMINATION, SEED-DECAY, SEED-BANK
- HOLMES, P.M. & MARAIS, C. 2000. Impacts of alien plant clearance on vegetation in the mountain catchments of the Western Cape. *South African Forestry Journal* 189: 113–117. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, FIRE, SEEDLING-RECRUITMENT, PINUS, HAKEA
- HOLMES, P.M. & REBELO, A.G. 1988. The occurrence of seed-feeding *Zulubius acaciaphagus* (Hemiptera, Alydidae) and its effects on *Acacia cyclops* seed germination and seed banks in South Africa. *South African Journal of Botany* 54: 319–324. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, REGENERATION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, SEED-BANK, ACACIA, SEED-DECAY, BIOCONTROL
- HOLMES, P.M. & REBELO, A.G. 1989. Indigenous seed-feeding bugs on alien *Acacia cyclops*. *Veld & Flora* 75: 121, 122. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, REGENERATION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, SEED-BANK, ACACIA, SEED-DECAY
- JONES, R.N., ROUX, E.B. & WARREN, J.M. 1963. Studies in the autecology of Australian acacias in South Africa. 4. The production of toxic substances by *Acacia cyclops* and *A. cyanophylla* and their possible ecological significance. *South African Journal of Science* 59: 295, 296. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, TOXICITY, ALLELOPATHY, ACACIA
- KAIN, D.N.E. 1976. The cost of weeds—R200 million. *Vleis/Meat* July, 15–17. A-WOODY PLANT, IMPACT, ECONOMICS, CHROMOLAENA, HAKEA, HARRISIA, LANTANA, RUBUS
- LE MAITRE, D.C., VERSVELD, D.B. & CHAPMAN, R.A. 2000. The impact of invading alien plants on surface water resources in South Africa: a preliminary assessment. *Water SA* 26,3: 397–408. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY
- LE ROUX, P.J. 1980. Encroaching plant species in state plantations in South Africa with special reference to their occurrence in the afforested area of the Transvaal. *Proceedings of the Third National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Pretoria, 1979*, pp. 181–186. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT, SYLVICULTURE, ACACIA, LANTANA, RUBUS, SESBANIA, SOLANUM
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1983. Has the Rameron Pigeon been bugged? *African Wildlife* 37, 2: 70. A-WOODY PLANT, IMPACT, N-BIRD, N-PLANT, SEED-DISPERSAL, SOLANUM
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1983. How do the invasive Australian acacias compare? *African Wildlife* 37,2: 78. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, ACACIA

- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1983. Inheemse plante swieg voor die indringers. *Custos* 12,5: 11–13 A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1984. What can be learned from the Safring Databank—the case of the Acacia Pied Barbet. *Safring News* 13,1: 25–34. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, IMPACT, N-BIRD, DATA
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1985. Interactions between birds and plants—a review of research by the FitzPatrick Institute. *Bokmakierie* 3,3: 87–89. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, IMPACT, N-BIRD
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1986. Range expansion in the Pied Barbet and the spread of alien tree species in southern Africa. *Ostrich* 57: 75–94. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1986. Do Redbreasted Sparrowhawks belong in the Karoo? *Bokmakierie* 38,1: 3, 4. A-WOODY PLANT, KAROO, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, POPULUS
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1990. Range expansion of the Masked Weaver *Ploceus velatus* in the Karoo facilitated by the spread of alien mesquite trees. *Ostrich* 61: 85, 86. A-WOODY PLANT, KAROO, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, PROSOPIS
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1992. Vertebrate populations as indicators of environmental change in southern Africa. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa* 48: 87–122. A-WOODY PLANT, IMPACT, N-VERTEBRATES
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., RICHARDSON, D.M. & POWRIE, F.J. 1986. Range expansion of the hadedah ibis *Bostrychia hagedash* in southern Africa. *South African Journal of Zoology* 21: 331–342. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, ROOSTING
- MALAN, G. 2001. The avifauna of riparian-*Pinus* habitat edges at Mooiplaas forestry estate, KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. *South African Journal of Wildlife Research* 31: 73–84. A-WOODY PLANT, SYLVICULTURAL-AREA, RIPARIAN, SYLVICULTURE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PINUS
- MALAN, G. & ROBINSON, E.R. 1999. The diet of the Black Sparrowhawk: hunting columbids in man-altered environments. *Durban Museum Novitates* 24: 43–47 A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING
- MALAN, G. & SHULTZ, S. 2002. Nest-site selection of the Crowned Hawk-Eagle in the forests of KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa, and Tai, Ivory Coast. *Journal of Raptor Research* 36: 300–308. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING
- MIDGLEY, G.F., RUTHERFORD, M.C., DAVIS, G.W. & BÖSENBERG, J. DE W. 1992. Responses of heliophilous *Rhus* species to environmental modification by invasive shrubs. *Functional Ecology* 6: 334–345. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-WOODY PLANT, COMPETITION
- MILTON, S.J. 1977. *Understorey vegetation of a pine plantation, Bosboukloof experimental catchment*. Honours project, Forestry Faculty, University of Stellenbosch, Stellenbosch. Jonkershoek Forest Station library. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, PINUS
- MILTON, S.J. 1981. Litterfall of exotic acacias in the South Western Cape. *Journal of South African Botany* 47: 147–155. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, LITTER, ACACIA
- MILTON, S.J., GASSER, S., BORTENSCHLAGER, S. & DEAN, W.R.J. 1999. Invertebrates and leaf damage on alien *Atriplex lindleyi* and indigenous *A. vestita* in the southern Karoo, South Africa. *African Entomology* 7,2: 298–301. A-WOODY PLANT, KAROO, ATRIPLEX, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT
- MOLL, E.J. 1985. Cape vegetation most endangered. *Custos* 14,7: 42–47. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT
- MUSIL, C.F. 1993. Effect of invasive Australian acacias on the regeneration, growth and nutrient chemistry of South African lowland fynbos. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 30: 361–372. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, IMPACT, N-PLANT, NUTRIENT, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, RESTORATION, ACACIA
- MUSIL, C.F. & MIDGLEY, G.F. 1990. The relative impact of invasive Australian acacias, fire and season on the soil chemical status of a sand plain lowland fynbos community. *South African Journal of Botany* 56: 419–427. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, SOIL-NUTRIENT, FIRE, ACACIA
- NEL, J.C.J. 1938. The hakea weed. *Farming in South Africa* 13: 11, 12. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, HAKEA
- PHILLIPS, E.J., HARDING, J.J. & DU TOIT, H. 1939. American bramble. *Farming in South Africa* 14: 272–274. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, RUBUS
- PRIVETT, S.D.J., COWLING, R.M. & TAYLOR, H.C. 2001. Vegetation change in the Cape of Good Hope Nature Reserve: 1966–1996. *Bothalia* 31, 1: 99–115. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, HISTORY
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 1989. *The ecology of invasions by Pinus (Pinaceae) and Hakea (Proteaceae) species, with special emphasis on patterns, processes and consequences of invasion in mountain fynbos of the southwestern Cape Province, South Africa*. Ph.D. thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, HAKEA, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & BRINK, M.P. 1985. Notes on *Pittosporum undulatum* in the south-western Cape. *Veld & Flora* 71: 75–77. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, PITTOSPORUM
- RICHARDSON, D.M., GELDERBLOM, C., VAN WILGEN, B.W. & TRINDER-SMITH, T.H. 1998. Current and future threats to biodiversity on the Cape Peninsula, South Africa. In P.W. Rundel, G. Montenegro & F. Jaksic (eds), *Landscape degradation in Mediterranean-type ecosystems*, pp. 189–204. Springer-Verlag, Berlin. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, N-BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION
- RICHARDSON, D.M., MACDONALD, I.A.W. & FORSYTH, G.G. 1989. Reductions in plant species richness under stands of alien trees and shrubs in the fynbos biome. *South African Forestry Journal* 149: 1–8. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, N-PLANT
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & VAN WILGEN, B.W. 1986. Effects of thirty five years of afforestation with *Pinus*



- radiata* on the composition of Mesic Mountain Fynbos near Stellenbosch. *South African Journal of Botany* 52: 309–315. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & VAN WILGEN, B.W. 1992. Ecosystem, community and species response to fire in mountain fynbos: conclusions from the Swartboskloof experiment. In B.W. van Wilgen, D.M. Richardson, F.J. Kruger & H.J. van Hensbergen (eds), *Fire in South African mountain fynbos*, pp. 273–283, Springer-Verlag, Berlin. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, FIRE
- RICHARDSON, D.M., VAN WILGEN, B.W., HIGGINS, S.I., TRINDER-SMITH, T.H., COWLING, R.M. & MCKELLY, D.H. 1996. Current and future threats to biodiversity on the Cape Peninsula. *Biodiversity and Conservation* 5: 607–647. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, MODELLING, CONSERVATION, INVASION
- RUTHERFORD, M.C. & POWRIE, L.W. 1993. Allelochemic control of biomass allocation in interacting shrub species. *Journal Chemical Ecology* 19: 5. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-WOODY PLANT, COMPETITION, ALLELOPATHY, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, BIOMASS
- RYCROFT, H.B. 1958. The threat of alien vegetation. *Journal of the Mountain Club of South Africa* 61: 49, 50. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, CONSERVATION, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), HAKEA, INVASION
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 2004. Brought back from the brink of extinction. *The Water Wheel* 3,6: 5. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 2005. Threat levels to odonate assemblages from invasive alien tree canopies. In A. Cordero (ed.), *Dragonflies and forest ecosystems*. A-WOODY PLANT, RIPARIAN, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, CONSERVATION
- SAMWAYS, M.J. & MOORE, S.D. 1991. Influence of exotic conifer patches on grasshopper (Orthoptera) assemblages in a grassland matrix at a recreational resort, Natal, South Africa. *Biological Conservation* 57: 205–219. A-WOODY PLANT, GRASSLAND, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, PINUS
- SAMWAYS, M.J. & TAYLOR, S. 2003. Removal of invasive alien trees gives damselflies a reprieve. *Rostrum* 63: 1. A-WOODY PLANT, RIPARIAN, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- SAMWAYS, M.J. & TAYLOR, S. 2004. Impacts of invasive alien plants on red-listed South African dragonflies (Odonata). *South African Journal of Science* 100: 78–80. A-WOODY PLANT, RIPARIAN, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, CONSERVATION
- SAMWAYS, M.J., TAYLOR, S. & TARBOTON, W. 2005. Extinction reprieve following alien removal. *Conservation Biology* 19,4: 1329, 1330. A-WOODY PLANT, RIPARIAN, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- SCOTT, D.F., LE MAITRE, D.C. & FAIRBANKS, D.H.K. 1998. Forestry and streamflow reductions in South Africa: a reference system for assessing extent and distribution. *Water SA* 24 (July 1998): 187–199. A-WOODY PLANT, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, MODELLING
- SCOTT, D.F. & SMITH, R.E. 1997. Preliminary empirical models to predict reductions in annual and low flows resulting from afforestation. *Water SA* 23: 135–140. A-WOODY PLANT, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, MODELLING, SYLVICULTURE
- SIMPSON, A. 1960. Alien vegetation. *Cape Wildlife* 16: 8–12. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, ACACIA, HAKEA, PINUS
- SLINGSBY, P. 1979. Australian Myrtle. *Veld & Flora* 65,1: 22, 23. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, LEPTOSPERMUM
- STEENKAMP, H.E. & CHOWN, S.L. 1996. Influence of dense stands of an exotic tree, *Prosopis glandulosa* Benson, on a savanna dung beetle (Coleoptera: Scarabaeinae) assemblage in southern Africa. *Biological Conservation* 78: 305–311. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, PROSOPIS
- STOCK, W.D. & ALLSOPP, N. 1992. Functional perspectives of ecosystems. In R.M. Cowling (ed.), *The ecology of fynbos*, pp. 241–259. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, IMPACT, SOIL, NUTRIENT
- TERBLANCH, M., DE KLERK, W.A., SMIT, J.D. & ASELAAR, T.F. 1966. A toxicological study of the plant *Sesbania punicea* Benth. *Journal of the South African Veterinary Medical Association* 37,2: 191–197. A-WOODY PLANT, IMPACT, MAMMAL, TOXICITY, SESBANIA
- TRINDER-SMITH, T.H., COWLING, R.M. & LINDER, H.P. 1996. Profiling a besieged flora: endemic and threatened plants of the Cape Peninsula, South Africa. *Biodiversity and Conservation* 5,5: 575–589. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, IMPACT, N-PLANT, CONSERVATION
- VAN WILGEN, B.W. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1985. The effects of alien shrub invasions on vegetation structure and fire behaviour in South African fynbos shrublands: A simulation study. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 22: 955–966. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, FIRE
- VAN WILGEN, B.W., RICHARDSON, D.M., KRUGER, F.J. & VAN HENSBURG, H.J. (eds) 1992. *Fire in South African mountain fynbos: species, community and ecosystem response in Swartboskloof*. Ecological Studies 93. Springer-Verlag, Berlin. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, FIRE
- VERSVELD, D.B., LE MAITRE, D.C. & CHAPMAN, R.A. 1998. *Alien invading plants and water resources in South Africa (Preliminary Assessment)*. Report No TT 99/88, Water Research Commission, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY
- VERSVELD, D.B. & VAN WILGEN, B.W. 1986. Impact of woody aliens on ecosystem properties. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 239–246. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, BIOMASS, LITTER, FIRE, NUTRIENT, HYDROLOGY, SOIL-EROSION

- WITKOWSKI, E.T.F. 1991. Effects of invasive alien acacias on nutrient cycling in the coastal lowlands of the Cape fynbos. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 28: 1–15. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, SOIL, NUTRIENT, ACACIA
- WITKOWSKI, E.T.F. 2003. Impacts of invasion of *Chromolaena odorata* in the Greater St Lucia Wetland Park and surrounding areas. *People and Parks Meeting (part of the World Park's Congress 2003): environment of St Lucia Wetland: processes of change. Cape Vidal, Sept 2003*. (Published on the conference CD). A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, CHROMOLAENA
- WOODS, D.H. 1950. The menace of the pine. *Journal of the Mountain Club of South Africa* 53: 78–87. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, PINUS
- WOODS, D.H. 1957. *The menace of alien vegetation*. Department of Nature Conservation Report 14: 64, 65. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, ACACIA
- WOODS, D.H. 1965. The menace of alien vegetation. *Journal of the Mountain Club of South Africa* 68: 43. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), EUCALYPTUS, HAKEA, PINUS
- WOODS, D.H. 1968–1969. The menace of alien vegetation. *Habitat* 8: 10. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, ACACIA, HAKEA, PINUS
- YELENIK, S., STOCK, W.D. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2004. Ecosystem-level impacts of invasive alien nitrogen-fixing plants. Ecosystem and community-level impacts of invasive alien *Acacia saligna* in the fynbos vegetation of South Africa. *Restoration Ecology* 12: 44–51. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, NITROGEN-FIXATION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, ACACIA
- ROUX, E.R. 1961. History of the introduction of Australian acacias on the Cape Flats. *South African Journal of Science* 57: 99–102. A-WOODY PLANT, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ACACIA, HAKEA, PINUS
- SHAUGHNESSY, G.L. 1980. *Historical ecology of alien woody plants in the vicinity of Cape Town, South Africa*. Unpublished Ph.D. thesis, University of Cape Town (School of Environmental & Geographical Science, Research Report No. 23.), Cape Town A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, FUELWOOD, SOIL-EROSION-CONTROL, SYLVICULTURE, HORTICULTURE, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), EUCALYPTUS, HAKEA, LEPTOSPERMUM, PINUS, SESBANIA
- SHAUGHNESSY, G.L. 1986. A case study of some woody plant introductions to the Cape Town area. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 37–43. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, FUELWOOD, HORTICULTURE, SOIL-EROSION-CONTROL, SYLVICULTURE, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), EUCALYPTUS, HAKEA, LEPTOSPERMUM, PINUS
- ADAMSON, R.S. 1927. Alien trees at Kirstenbosch. *Journal of the Botanical Society of South Africa* 13: 17–20. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASIVE
- BENCKE, J.D. 1908. Port Jackson willow as a sluit stopper. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 32: 652. A-WOODY PLANT, UTILISATION, SOIL-EROSION-CONTROL, ACACIA, INVASIVE
- BOND, W.J. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1990. What can we learn from extinctions and invasions about the effects of climate change? *South African Journal of Science* 86: 429–433. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, GLOBAL-CHANGE
- BOUCHER, C. 1978. Cape Hangklip area II. The vegetation. *Bothalia* 12: 455–497. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ACACIA, EUCALYPTUS, HAKEA, PINUS
- BOUCHER, C. 1984. Patterns of invasion by larger woody alien species in selected areas of the Fynbos Biome, South Africa. In B. Dell (ed.), *Proceedings Medecos IV. 4th International conference on Mediterranean ecosystems*, pp. 12, 13. Botany Department, University of Western Australia, Nedlands, Western Australia. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD
- BOUCHER, C. & BOUCHER, D.A. 1978. Uitheemse indringerplante bedreig die Kaapse Weskus. *Elsenburg Joernaal* 2: 1–11. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACACIA, LEPTOSPERMUM, NICOTIANA
- BOUCHER, C., ERASMUS, D., MARAIS, C., MCDONALD, D.J. 1995. *An inventory of sources of data pertaining to the Fynbos Biome—Volume 1*. FRD Programme Report Series 19. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, SPREAD, DATA, INVASIVE
- BOUCHER, C., ERASMUS, D., MARAIS, C., MCDONALD, D.J. 1996. *An inventory of sources of data pertaining to the Fynbos Biome—Volume 2*. FRD Programme Report Series 25. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, SPREAD, DATA, INVASIVE
- BURGESS, M. 2004. Crack willow: friend or foe? [*Salix*] *Farmers Weekly* 94012: 44–46. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2005-0038) A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SALIX
- BURGOYNE, P.M. & HENDERSON, L. 2000. Red-flowering tea-tree invasion. *Veld & Flora* 86,4: 159. A-WOODY PLANT, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, LEPTOSPERMUM
- DREW, G.H., MIDGLEY, G.F., JACK, C.D., HEWITSON, B.C. & WALAWEGE, R.P. 2003. Modelling climate and vegetation dynamics over southern Africa. In *Proceedings of the International Geophysical Union Annual Congress*, Commission C-02 Climatology. A-PLANT, INVASION, ECOLOGY, GLOBAL-CHANGE
- DUGGAN, K.J. & HENDERSON, L. 1982. Progress with a survey of exotic, woody plant invaders of the Transvaal. *Proceedings of the fourth National Weeds Conference of South Africa, 1981*. Balkema, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ROADSIDE-SURVEY
- DYER, C. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1992. Population genetics of the invasive Australian shrub *Hakea sericea* (Proteaceae) in South Africa. *South African Journal of Botany* 58: 117–124. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, GENETICS, HAKEA

- EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W. 1999. *Agulhas Plain field mapping: final report*. Institute for Plant Conservation, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, GIS, COMPUTERISED-DATABASE, POLYGONS, HABITATS
- EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W., DE GREEF, G. & BERENS, C. 2000. *The development and corroboration of a predictive and geographic information system-based map for the Baviaanskloof Conservation Area*. Institute for Plant Conservation, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. April 2000. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, GIS, COMPUTERISED-DATABASE, MODELLING
- FORSYTH, G.G., RICHARDSON, D.M., BROWN, P.J. & VAN WILGEN, B.W. 2003. *A rapid assessment of the invasive status of Eucalyptus species in the Western Cape and Mpumalanga Provinces, South Africa*. CSIR Division of Water, Environment and Forestry Technology Report, CSIR, Stellenbosch. (Produced on contract to the Working for Water Programme.) A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, EUCALYPTUS
- FORSYTH, G.G., RICHARDSON, D.M., BROWN, P.J. & VAN WILGEN, B.W. 2004. A rapid assessment of the invasive status of *Eucalyptus* species in two South African provinces. *South African Journal of Science* 100: 75–77. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, EUCALYPTUS
- FOXCROFT, L.C. & MARTIN, B.W. 2002. *The status of Chromolaena odorata in the Mpumalanga Lowveld*. SANParks Report 04/02. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CHROMOLAENA
- HAIGH, H. 1977. Problem plants in State forests. *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Stellenbosch, 1977*, pp. 83–87. A-WOODY PLANT, SYLVICULTURAL-AREA, INVASION, IMPACT, SYLVICULTURE, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), CHROMOLAENA, HAKEA, LANTANA, LEPTOSPERMUM, OPUNTIA, PINUS, RUBUS, SESBANIA
- HALL, A.V. 1961. Distribution studies of introduced trees and shrubs in the Cape Peninsula. *Journal of South African Botany* 27: 101–110. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, SPREAD, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), EUCALYPTUS, HAKEA, PINUS
- HENDERSON, L. & DUGGAN, K.J. 1981. *The minimum effective sampling level for the determination of the major exotic, woody plant invaders, the frequency of occurrence and relative importance, and major invasion trends in the central Transvaal*. Unpublished report, Botanical Research Institute, Department Agriculture and Water Supply. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, HISTORY, ABUNDANCE, TECHNIQUE
- HENDERSON, L. & MUSIL, K.J. 1984. Exotic woody plant invaders of the Transvaal. *Bothalia* 15: 297–313. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ROADSIDE-SURVEY
- HIGGINS, S.I. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1998. Pine invasions in the southern hemisphere: modelling interactions between organism, environment and disturbance. *Plant Ecology* 135: 59–78. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, ECOLOGY, MODELLING, DISTURBANCE, PINUS
- HÖNIG, M.A., COWLING, R.M. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1992. The invasive potential of Australian banksias in South African Mountain Fynbos: A comparison of the reproductive potential of *Banksia ericifolia* and *Leucadendron laureolum*. *Australian Journal of Ecology* 17: 305–314. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVASIVENESS, BANKSIA
- HOY, L. & TAYLOR, M. 2005. Wicked wattles [invasive wattles growing alongside rivers, *Acacia*]. *South African Gardening* April 2005: 52. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, ACACIA
- HURLEY, B.P. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 2003. *Sirex noctilio* (Hymenoptera: Siricidae): the threat to the pine industry. *Proceedings of the 14th Congress of the Entomological Society of South Africa, 6–9 July 2003, University of Pretoria, Pretoria, South Africa*, p. 40. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, A-WOODY PLANT, SIREX, PINUS
- KOTZE, J.J. 1926. *Pinus patula* Schl. & Chain., its introduction into and growth in South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 23: 455–466. A-WOODY PLANT, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, PINUS
- KRAAIJ, T. & CRAMER, M.D. 1999. Do the gas exchange characteristics of alien acacias enable them to successfully invade the fynbos? *South African Journal of Botany* 65,3: 232–238. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, ACACIA, NITROGEN, COMPETITION, PHOTOSYNTHESIS
- LE ROUX, P.J. 1982. Plant invader species in pine plantations in South Africa. *Proceedings of the Fourth National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Pretoria, 1981*, pp. 155–168. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, IMPACT, SYLVICULTURE, ACACIA, EUCALYPTUS, RUBUS, SOLANUM
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1981. When is a Christmas tree not a Christmas tree? *Natal Parks Board News* 10,2: 22–25. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1983. Alien trees, shrubs and creepers invading indigenous vegetation in the Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Game Reserves Complex in Natal. *Bothalia* 14: 949–959. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, SURVEY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1983. No vegetation type safe from invasion. *Custos* 12,5: 7–9. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1984. Is the fynbos biome especially susceptible to invasion by alien plants—a reanalysis of available data. *South African Journal of Science* 80: 369–377. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, INVADABILITY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1984. Infiltration of dreaded weed alarms experts. *Custos* 13,8: 33–35. A-WOODY PLANT, SAVANNA, FOREST, SPREAD, CHROMOLAENA, INVASIVE
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1984. Is the Fynbos unusually susceptible to invasion by alien plants—a reanalysis of available data. In B. Dell (ed.), *Proceedings of the Fourth International Conference on Mediterranean Ecosystems, Perth*, pp. 97, 98. Botany Department, University of Western Australia, Perth. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, INVADABILITY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1984. Pesplant mik nou ook na Krugerwildtuin. *Custos* 13,8: 31–33. A-WOODY



- PLANT, SAVANNA, FOREST, INVASION, SPREAD, CHROMOLAENA
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 2000. Alien's days are numbered. *Our Living World* May 2000: 10. A-WOODY PLANT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA, INVASIVE
- MANDERS, P.T. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1992. Colonization of Cape fynbos communities by forest species. *Forest Ecology and Management* 48: 277–293. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD
- MARR, R.S. 1962. *The genus Lantana with special reference to Lantana camara*. Unpublished report. Faculty of Agriculture, University of Natal, Pietermaritzburg. A-WOODY PLANT, TAXONOMY, LANTANA, INVASIVE.
- MCLACHLAN, D. & MOLL, E.J. 1976. A report on fire and vegetation on Table Mountain. *South African Forestry Journal* 99: 7–12. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, FIRE
- MCLACHLAN, D. & MOLL, E.J. 1977. *A path and recreation report of Table Mountain*. Department of Botany, UCT, 153 pp. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, FIRE
- MCLACHLAN, D., MOLL, E.J. & HALL, A.V. 1980. Re-survey of the alien vegetation in the Cape Peninsula. *Journal of South African Botany* 46,2: 127–146. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, FIRE, ACACIA, HAKEA, PINUS
- MIDDLEMISS, E. 1963. The distribution of *Acacia cyclops* in the Cape Peninsula by birds and other animals. *South African Journal of Science* 59: 419, 420. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIRD, N-MAMMAL, SEED-DISPERSAL, ACACIA
- MIDGLEY, G.F., BOND, W.J., WAND, S.J.E. & ROBERTS, R. 2000. Will Gullivers travel? Potential causes of changes in savanna tree success due to rising atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>. In S. Ringrose & R. Chanda (eds), *Towards sustainable management in the Kalahari Region—some essential background and critical issues*, pp. 166–175. University of Botswana, Gaborone, Botswana. A-WOODY PLANT, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, GLOBAL-CHANGE
- MOLL, E.J. 1968. 'Killer Weed' stabilised? *Natal Wildlife* 9,2: 5. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CHROMOLAENA
- MOLL, E.J. 1973. Triffids yea or nay. *Natal Wildlife* 14,4: 16, 17. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CHROMOLAENA
- MOLL, E.J. & BOSSI, L. 1983. *1:1 000 000 Vegetation map of the Fynbos Biome*. Chief Director Surveys and Mapping, Mowbray. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, SPREAD, MAPPING-PROJECT
- MOLL, E.J. & BOSSI, L. 1984. Assessment of the extent of the natural vegetation of the Fynbos Biome of South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 80,8: 355–358. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, SPREAD
- MOLL, E.J., BOSSI, L. & JARMAN, M.L. 1984. *Fynbos Biome vegetation map*. Final report. CSIR, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, SPREAD, MAPPING-PROJECT
- OLIVIER, M.C. 1977. A systematic check list of the spermatophyta of the Baakens River Valley, Port Elizabeth. *Journal of South African Botany* 43: 145–159. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), EUCALYPTUS, HAKEA, HYPERICUM, LEPTOSPERMUM, OPUNTIA, PINUS, SESBANIA
- PAUW, A. 2001. Aliens, flames and flowers: a report-back on the Cape fires. *African Wildlife* 55,1: 20–25. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, SEED-BANK, IMPACT, N-PLANT, FIRE, POLLINATION, MUTUALISM, SOIL, SOIL-EROSION, CONSERVATION, INVASION
- PHILLIPS, J.F.V. 1928. The behaviour of *Acacia melanoxylon* H. Br. in the Knysna forests: an ecological study. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa* 16: 31–43. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, ECOLOGY, INVASION, ACACIA
- PHILLIPS, J.F.V. 1931. The behaviour of *Acacia melanoxylon* S. Br. ('blackwood') in the forests of Knysna. Appendix II. In Forest succession and ecology in the Knysna region. *Memoirs of the Botanical Survey of South Africa* 14: 291–305. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, ECOLOGY, INVASION, ACACIA
- POYNTON, R.J. 1959. Notes on exotic forest trees in South Africa, edn 2. *Department of Forestry Bulletin* 38. Government Printer Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, ACACIA, EUCALYPTUS, PINUS, POPULUS, INVASIVE
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 1984. A cartographic analysis of physiographic factors influencing the distribution of *Hakea* spp. in the S.W. Cape Province. *South African Forestry Journal* 128: 36–40. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MAPPING-PROJECT, HAKEA
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 1988. Age structure and regeneration after fire in a self-sown *Pinus halepensis* forest on the Cape Peninsula, South Africa. *South African Journal of Botany* 54: 140–144. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, ECOLOGY, FIRE, REGENERATION, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 1990. Pines on the move: invasions in perspective. *African Wildlife* 44: 162–167. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, ECOLOGY, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 1995. Pine trees on the move down south. *Aliens* 2: 8, 9. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, ECOLOGY, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. (ed.) 1998. *Ecology and biogeography of Pinus*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, ECOLOGY, BIOGEOGRAPHY, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 2000. Mediterranean pines as invaders in the southern hemisphere. In G. Ne'eman & L. Trabaud (eds), *Ecology, biogeography and management of Pinus halepensis and P. brutia forest ecosystems in the Mediterranean Basin*, pp. 131–142. Backhuys Publishers, Leiden, The Netherlands. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, ECOLOGY, BIOGEOGRAPHY, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 2000. *Pinus halepensis*. Full species account for: The Forestry Compendium (Module 1). (Multimedia CD Rom). CABI Publishing, CAB International, Wallingford, Oxon, UK. [Expanded version published as a book chapter in 2002: D. Richardson (2002). *Pinus halepensis*. In CAB International. *Pines of silvicultural importance*, pp. 146–160. CABI Publishing, Wallingford, U.K.]. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, ECOLOGY, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & BOND, W.J. 1991. Determinants of plant distribution: evidence from pine invasions.

- American Naturalist* 137: 639–668. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & BROWN, P.J. 1986. Invasion of mesic mountain fynbos by *Pinus radiata*. *South African Forestry Journal* 56: 529–536. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, ECOLOGY, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & COWLING, R.M. 1992. Why is mountain fynbos invisable and which species invade? In B.W. van Wilgen, D.M. Richardson, F.J. Kruger & H.J. van Hensbergen (eds), *Fire in South African mountain fynbos*, pp. 161–181. Springer-Verlag, Berlin. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, INVASIVENESS, INVADABILITY
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & COWLING, R.M. 1993. Spotlight on banksias. Managing biological invasions by assessing the risk of new introductions. *Veld & Flora* 79,1: 24, 25. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVASIVENESS, RISK-ASSESSMENT, BANKSIA
- RICHARDSON, D.M., COWLING, R.M. & LE MAITRE, D.C. 1990. Assessing the risk of invasive success in *Pinus* and *Banksia* in South African mountain fynbos. *Journal of Vegetation Science* 1: 629–642. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVASIVENESS, RISK-ASSESSMENT, BANKSIA, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & HIGGINS, S.I. 1998. Pines as invaders in the southern hemisphere. In D.M. Richardson (ed.), *Ecology and biogeography of Pinus*, pp. 450–473. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, ECOLOGY, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & PETIT, R. 2005. Pines as invasive aliens: Outlook on transgenic pine plantations in the southern hemisphere. In Williams, C.G. (ed.), *Landscapes, genomics and transgenic conifer forests*, pp. 169–188. Springer, Dordrecht. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, ECOLOGY, GENETIC-MODIFICATION, PINUS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & REJMÁNEK, M. 1998. Pohutukawa *Metrosideros excelsa*—A South African weed! *True Colours (Newsletter of the Project Crimson Trust, New Zealand)* Autumn 1998: 2, 3. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, METROSIDEROS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & REJMÁNEK, M. 1999. *Metrosideros excelsa* takes off in the fynbos. *Veld & Flora* 85: 14–16. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, METROSIDEROS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & REJMÁNEK, M. 2004. Invasive conifers: A global survey and predictive framework. *Diversity and Distributions* 10: 321–331. A-WOODY PLANT, BIOGEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVADABILITY, INVASION, SPREAD, RISK-ASSESSMENT
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & ROUGET, M. 2002. Alien tree invasions in South Africa: pulling together pieces of the puzzle from natural experiments. In H.S. Jacob, J. Dodd & J. Moore (eds), 13th Australian Weeds Conference. *Papers & Proceedings*, pp. 47–50. Council of Australian Weed Science Societies & Plant Protection Society of Western Australia, Perth. A-WOODY PLANT BIOGEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVADABILITY, INVASION, SPREAD, RISK-ASSESSMENT
- RICHARDSON, D.M., ROUGET, M. & REJMÁNEK, M. 2004. Using natural experiments in the study of alien tree invasions: opportunities and limitations. In M.S. Gordon & S.M. Bartol (eds), *Experimental approaches to conservation biology*, pp. 180–201. University of California Press, Berkeley. A-WOODY PLANT, BIOGEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVADABILITY, INVASIVENESS, INVASION, SPREAD, RISK-ASSESSMENT
- RICHARDSON, D.M., WILLIAMS, P.A. & HOBBS, R.J. 1994. Pine invasions in the southern hemisphere: determinants of spread and invadability. *Journal of Biogeography* 21: 511–527. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, INVADABILITY, PINUS
- ROUGET, M., RICHARDSON, D.M., MILTON, S.J. & POLAKOW, D. 2001. The dynamics of invasion by four *Pinus* species in a highly fragmented semi-arid shrubland in South Africa. *Plant Ecology* 152: 79–92. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, PINUS, SPECIES-MODELLING, GIS
- ROUGET, M., RICHARDSON, D.M., NEL, J.A. & VAN WILGEN, B.W. 2002. Commercially-important trees as invasive aliens—towards spatially explicit risk assessment at a national scale. *Biological Invasions* 4: 397–412. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, SPECIES-MODELLING, GIS, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, RISK-ASSESSMENT
- ROURKE, J.P. 1991. Cupressaceae: *Tetraclinis articulata*; a hitherto unrecorded naturalized alien conifer in South Africa. *Bothalia* 21,1: 62–64. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, TETRACLINIS
- ROUX, E.R. 1964. More on invading trees. *Scientific South Africa* 2: 46. A-WOODY PLANT, ACACIA, INVASIVE
- ROUX, E.R. & MIDDLEMISS, E. 1963. Studies in the autecology of Australian acacias in South Africa. 1. The occurrence and distribution of *Acacia cyanophylla* and *A. cyclops* in the Cape Province. *South African Journal of Science* 59: 286–294. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACACIA
- SCHONLAND, S. 1919. Phanerogamic flora of the division of Uitenhage and Port Elizabeth. *Memoirs of the Botanical Survey of South Africa* 1: 1–118. A-WOODY PLANT, A-SUCCULENT PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ACACIA, OPUNTIA
- STALMANS, M. 1992. Altitudinal difference in the invasive potential of *Jacaranda mimosifolia* at the Northern Transvaal Drakensberg escarpment. *Journal of Dendrology* 13: 25–28. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CLIMATE, JACARANDA
- STIRTON, C.H. 1981. New records of naturalized *Rubus* in southern Africa. *Bothalia* 13: 333–337. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, TAXONOMY, RUBUS
- STORY, R. 1952. A botanical survey of the Keiskammahoek District. *Memoirs of the Botanical Survey of South Africa* No. 27. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ACACIA, PINUS, RUBUS
- STOW, D., HOPE, A., RICHARDSON, D.M., GARRISON, C., CHEN, D. & SERVICE, D. 2000. Potential of digital colour-infrared camera imagery for mapping alien plant invasions in South African shrublands. *International Journal of Remote Sensing* 21: 2965–2970. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, SPREAD, MAPPING-PROJECT, TECHNIQUE
- TAYLOR, H.C. 1962. *Some thoughts on mountain reserves*. Department of Nature Conservation

- Report 19: 31–37. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, N-BIODIVERSITY, ACACIA
- TAYLOR, H.C. 1968–69. Pesplante en natuurbewaring in die Winterreestreek. *Habitat* 8: 6–9. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, N-BIODIVERSITY, ACACIA, HAKEA, PINUS
- TAYLOR, H.C. 1969. *A vegetation survey of the Cape of Good Hope Nature Reserve*. Unpublished M.Sc. thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, SPREAD, ACACIA
- TAYLOR, H.C. 1972. Notes on the vegetation of the Cape Flats. *Bothalia* 10: 637–646. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, SPREAD, ACACIA, HAKEA, LEPTOSPERMUM
- TAYLOR, H.C. 1974. Weeds in the South Western Cape vegetation. *Unpublished duplicated papers presented at the First National Weeds Conference 13–14 August 1974*, pp. 42–54. National Programme for Environmental Sciences CSIR, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONSERVATION, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), HAKEA, LANTANA, LEPTOSPERMUM, PINUS, SESBANIA
- TAYLOR, H.C. 1975. Weeds in the South Western Cape vegetation. *South African Forestry Journal* 93: 32–36. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONSERVATION, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), HAKEA, LANTANA, LEPTOSPERMUM, PINUS, SESBANIA
- VAN DER SCHIJFF, H.P. & SCHOONRAAD, E. 1971. The flora of the Mariëpskop Complex. *Bothalia* 10: 461–500. A-WOODY PLANT, GRASSLAND, INVASION, SPREAD, PINUS
- VERSVELD, D.B., BAILEY, C., EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W., LE MAITRE, D.C., CHAPMAN, R.A. & BROWN, P. 1997. *A reconnaissance and problem scoping of alien invasive plants and other land use factors in catchments supplying Rand Water*. Report No. CENV/P/C 97031. Division of Water, Environment and Forestry Technology, CSIR, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY
- VON BREITENBACH, F. 1989. *National list of introduced trees*, 146 pp. Dendrological Foundation, South Africa. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASIVE
- WELLS, M.J., DUGGAN, K.J. & HENDERSON, L. 1980. Woody plant invaders of the central Transvaal. *Proceedings of the Third National Weeds Conference of South Africa, 1979*. Balkema, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ROADSIDE-SURVEY, ACACIA, ARUNDO, LANTANA, MELIA, OPUNTIA, POPULUS, PYRACANTHA, SALIX, SESBANIA, SOLANUM
- WICHT, M.L. 1971. Creeping invasions of the 'green cancers'. *African Wildlife* 25,1: 11–14. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, CONSERVATION, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), HAKEA, LEPTOSPERMUM, PINUS
- WITKOWSKI, E.T.F. 2002. Invasion intensity and regeneration potential of the non-native invasive plant *Chromolaena odorata* at St Lucia, South Africa. In C. Zachariades, R. Muniappan & L.W. Strathie (eds), *Proceedings of the Fifth International Workshop on Biological Control and Management of Chromolaena odorata, Durban, South Africa 23–25 October 2000*, pp. 106–117. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, REGENERATION, CHROMOLAENA
- WOODS, D.H. 1974. The disappearing Cape. *African Wildlife* 28,4: 26–29. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, CONSERVATION, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), EUCALYPTUS, LEPTOSPERMUM, PINUS, SESBANIA
- ZAHN, C.A. & NEETHLING, E.J. 1929. The cluster pine (*Pinus pinaster*) at the Cape. *South African Journal of Science* 26: 195–210. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, PINUS
- ZAHN, C.A. & NEETHLING, E.J. 1929. Notes on the exotic trees in the Cape Peninsula. *South African Journal of Science* 26: 211–234. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ACACIA, PINUS
- ANONYMOUS 1930. Eradication of brambles. *Farming in South Africa* 5: 184. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RUBUS
- ANONYMOUS 1952. The control of American Bramble. *Farming in South Africa* 27: 283, 284, 288. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RUBUS
- ANONYMOUS 1962. American bramble declared a weed. *Farming in South Africa* 38,1: 29. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, RUBUS
- ANONYMOUS 1967. Control and elimination of infestation of alien vegetation in the Cape of Good Hope Nature Reserve (Resolution). *South African Journal of Science* 63,10: 425, 426. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM89-336) A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT
- ANONYMOUS 1969. *Lantana camara*. *Farmers Weekly* 16 July 1969: 67. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LANTANA
- ANONYMOUS 1969. Staat het die Satan oorwin. *Die Landbouweekblad* 11 February 1969: 4–6. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, SOLANUM
- ANONYMOUS 1976. Biological control of bramble in open areas. *Forestry News* 24/76: 16. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, RUBUS
- ANONYMOUS 1976. Conservation problems, pest plants—a co-ordinated approach. *Veld & Flora* 62,2: 2, 3. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT, CO-ORDINATION, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), HAKEA, LEPTOSPERMUM, PINUS, SESBANIA
- ANONYMOUS 1981. Alien invader trees. *Journal of Dendrology* 1,3/4: 114–119. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT
- ANONYMOUS 1990. Curbing the alien invasion (eucalypts). *Farmers Weekly*, 23 February 1990: 26, 27, 29. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM90-0066). A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, EUCALYPTUS

- ANONYMOUS 2004. Alien-eating bug may be released to stop black wattle tree from spreading. *Cape Times* 3 February 2004: (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2004-0073). A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, ACACIA
- BAARS, J-R. 2000. Emphasizing behavioural host-range: the key to resolving ambiguous host-specificity results on *Lantana camara* L. In N.R. Spencer (ed.), *Proceedings of the Tenth International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds*, 4–14 July 1999, Montana State University, Bozeman, Montana, USA, pp. 887–896. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-SELECTION, TECHNIQUE, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- BAARS, J-R. 2001. Biology and laboratory culturing of the root-feeding flea beetle, *Longitarsus columbicus columbicus* Harold, 1876 (Chrysomelidae: Alticinae): a potential natural enemy of *Lantana camara* L. (Verbenaceae) in South Africa. *Entomotropica (formerly Boletín de Entomología Venezolana)* 16,3: 149–155. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA, LONGITARSUS
- BAARS, J-R. 2001. The lantana sap sucker (*Falconia intermedia*). A natural enemy of lantana (*Lantana camara*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 6. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA, FALCONIA
- BAARS, J-R. 2003. Geographical range, impact, and parasitism of lepidopteran species associated with the invasive weed *Lantana camara* in South Africa. *Biological Control* 28: 293–301. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- BAARS, J-R. & HEYSTEK, F. 2003. Geographical range and impact of five biocontrol agents established on *Lantana camara* in South Africa. *BioControl* 48: 743–759. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- BAARS, J-R. & NESER, S. 1999. Past and present initiatives on the biological control of *Lantana camara* (Verbenaceae) in South Africa. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 21–33. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, EVALUATION, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- BAARS, J-R, URBAN, A.J. & HILL, M.P. 2003. Biology, host range, and risk assessment supporting release in Africa of *Falconia intermedia* (Heteroptera: Miridae), a new biocontrol agent for *Lantana camara*. *Biological Control* 28: 282–292. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RISK-ASSESSMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA, FALCONIA
- BIRCH, E.B. 1961. *Lantana camara with special reference to its control. A review of literature*. Unpublished report, Faculty of Agriculture, University of Natal, Pietermaritzburg. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- BOUCHER, C. & MARAIS, C. (eds) 1995. *Managing fynbos catchments for water*. FRD Programme Report Series 24. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, HYDROLOGY, FIRE, MANAGEMENT
- BREYTENBACH, G.J. 1989. Alien control: can we afford to slash and burn *Hakea* in Fynbos ecosystems? *South African Forestry Journal* 151: 6–16. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, HAKEA
- BURGERS, C.J., MARAIS, C. & BEKKER, S.J. 1995. The importance of mountain catchments for maintaining the water resources of the Western Cape Province and the need for optimal management. In C. Boucher & C. Marais (eds), *Managing fynbos catchments for water*. FRD Programme Report Series 24. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, MANAGEMENT
- BYFORD-JONES, C. 1984. Knock-out for bramble. *Farmers Weekly* January 1984. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM89-1071) A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT
- BYRNE, M.J., CURRIN, S. & HILL, M.P. 2002. The influence of climate on the establishment and success of the biocontrol agent, *Gratiana spadicea* released on *Solanum sisymbriifolium* in South Africa. *Biological Control* 24,2: 128–134. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CLIMATE-MATCHING, EVALUATION, SOLANUM, GRATIANA
- CAMPBELL, P.L. 2000. *Wattle control*. Handbook No. 3, 43 pp. Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA
- CAMPBELL, P.L., BELL, R.S. & KLUGE, R.L. 1990. Identifying the research requirements for the control of silver wattle (*Acacia dealbata*) in Natal. *South African Forestry Journal* 155: 37–41. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESEARCH, ACACIA
- CAMPBELL, P.L., HENDERSON, L., FINDLAY, J.B.R. & KLUGE, R.L. 2000. Integrated control of alien plants. In P.L. Campbell, *Rehabilitation recommendations after alien plant control*. Plant Protection Research Institute Handbook No. 11. Agricultural Research Council, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, A-SUCCULENT PLANT, A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL
- CAMPBELL, P.L. & KLUGE, R.L. 1999. Development of integrated control strategies for wattle. I. Utilization of wattle, control of stumps and rehabilitation with pastures. *South African Journal of Plant and Soil* 16,1: 24–30. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, UTILISATION, RESTORATION, ACACIA
- CAMPBELL, P.L., NAUDÉ, D.C. & KLUGE, R.L. 1999. Development of integrated strategies for wattle. II. Control of unwanted wattle. *South African Journal of Plant and Soil* 16,1: 31–37. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, UTILISATION, RESTORATION, ACACIA
- CAMPBELL, P.L. & VAN STADEN, J. 1990. Utilisation of solasodine from fruits for long-term control of *Solanum mauritianum*. *South African Forestry Journal* 155: 57–60. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, SOLANUM
- CAMPBELL, P.L., VAN STADEN, J., STEVENS, C. & WHITWELL, M.I. 1992. The effects of locality, season and year of seed collection on the germination of bugweed (*Solanum mauritianum* Scop.) seeds. *South African Journal of Botany* 58,5: 310–316. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, SOLANUM
- CHAPMAN, R.A., LE MAITRE, D.C. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2001. *Scenarios for invading woody plants*. Report WRC 907/1/01 to the Water Research Commission. Water Research Commission,

- Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC
- CILLIERS, C.D., ESLER, K.J. & BOUCHER, C. 2004. Effects of alien plant management and fire on soil seed banks and regeneration in the Cape Peninsula National Park, South Africa. *South African Journal of Botany* 70,5: 705–712. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, FIRE, SEED-BANK, RESTORATION, MANAGEMENT
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1977. On the biological control of *Lantana camara* in South Africa. In *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa*, pp. 341–344. Balkema, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1982. *An evaluation of the effects of imported insects on the weed Lantana camara L. in South Africa*. Unpublished Ph.D. thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1983. The weed, *Lantana camara* L., and the insect natural enemies imported for its biological control into South Africa. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 46,1: 131–138. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1987. Notes on the biology of the established insect natural enemies of *Lantana camara* L. (Verbenaceae) and their seasonal history in South Africa. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 50: 1–13. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1987. An evaluation of three insect natural enemies for the biological control of the weed *Lantana camara* L. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 50: 15–34. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- CILLIERS, C.J. 1989. Establishment of and the contribution to leaf damage by *Calcomyza lantanae* (Diptera: Agromyzidae) on the weed *Lantana camara* in South Africa. *Proceedings of the Seventh Entomological Congress organised by the Entomological Society of Southern Africa. Pietermaritzburg 10–13 July 1989*. p. 23. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA, CALCOMYZA
- CILLIERS, C.J. & NESER, S. 1991. Biological control of *Lantana camara* (Verbenaceae) in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 57–75. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- COETSEE, J. 1993. *Prosopis vervuill* Karoo. *Landbouweekblad* 773: 36–39 (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM94-0100) A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT
- COETZER, W. 2000. Oviposition preference of *Sulcobruchus subsuturalis* (Pic) (Coleoptera: Bruchidae), an introduced natural enemy of *Caesalpinia decapetala* (Roth) Alston (Caesalpinaceae) in South Africa. *African Entomology* 8,2: 293–297. A-WOODY PLANT, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CAESALPINIA
- COETZER, W. 2001. The Mauritius thorn seed-weevil (*Sulcobruchus subsuturalis*). A natural enemy of Mauritius thorn (*Caesalpinia decapetala*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 1. A-WOODY PLANT, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CAESALPINIA
- COETZER, W. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1997. Establishment of *Neltumius arizonensis* (Coleoptera: Bruchidae) on mesquite (*Prosopis* species: Mimosaceae) in South Africa. *Biological Control* 10: 187–192. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PROSOPIS, NELTUMIUS
- COETZER, W. & NESER, S. 1999. Biological control initiatives against the invasive Oriental legume, *Caesalpinia decapetala* (Roth) Alston (Mauritius thorn), in South Africa. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* 1: 145–152. A-WOODY PLANT, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CAESALPINIA
- COLLINSON, F.H. 1984. Alien plant control at Pilanesberg National Park. *Journal of Dendrology* 4,3/4: 142–149. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, SAVANNA
- CROUDACE, J. & CROUDACE, K. 1999. *Alien clearing handbook for the Western Cape*. Bo-Kloof Fynbos Conservation & Environmental Information Trust, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, TECHNIQUE, CONSERVATION
- DEN BREEËN, A. & MORRIS, M.J. 2003. Pathogenicity and host specificity of *Mycovellosiella lantanae* var. *lantanae*, a potential biocontrol agent for *Lantana camara* in South Africa. *Biocontrol Science and Technology* 13: 313–322. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA, MYCOVELLOSIELLA
- DENNILL, G.B. 1985. The effect of the gall wasp *Trichilogaster acaciaelongifoliae* (Hymenoptera: Pteromalidae) on reproductive potential and vegetative growth of the weed *Acacia longifolia*. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 14: 53–61. A-WOODY PLANT, REPRODUCTION, GROWTH, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, TRICHILOGASTER
- DENNILL, G.B. 1987. Establishment of the gall wasp *Trichilogaster acaciaelongifoliae* (Pteromalidae) for the biological control of *Acacia longifolia* in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 19: 115–168. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, TRICHILOGASTER
- DENNILL, G.B. 1987. The importance of technique in establishing biocontrol agents—the moth *Carposina autologa* on *Hakea sericea*. *Annals of Applied Biology* 110: 163–168. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, CARPOSINA
- DENNILL, G.B. 1988. The importance of understanding host plant phenology in the biological control of *Acacia longifolia*. *Annals of Applied Biology* 111: 661–666. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, PHENOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA
- DENNILL, G.B. 1988. Why a gall former can be a good biocontrol agent: the gall wasp *Trichilogaster acaciaelongifoliae* and the weed *Acacia longifolia*. *Ecological Entomology* 13: 1–9. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, TRICHILOGASTER
- DENNILL, G.B. 1990. The contribution of a successful biocontrol project to the theory of agent selection in weed biocontrol—the gall wasp *Trichilogaster acaciaelongifoliae* and the weed *Acacia longifolia*.



- Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 31: 147–154. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, TRICHILOGASTER
- DENNILL, G.B. & DONNELLY, D. 1991. Biological control of *Acacia longifolia* and related weed species (Fabaceae) in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 115–135. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA
- DENNILL, G.B., DONNELLY, D. & CHOWN, S.L. 1993. Expansion of host-plant range of a biocontrol agent *Trichilogaster acaciaelongifoliae* (Pteromalidae) released against the weed *Acacia longifolia* in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 43: 1–10. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, TRICHILOGASTER
- DENNILL, G.B., DONNELLY, D., STEWART, K. & IMPSON, F.A.C. 1999. Insect agents used for the biological control of Australian *Acacia* species and *Paraserianthes lophantha* (Willd.) Nielsen (Fabaceae) in South Africa. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 45–54. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), MELANTERIUS, TRICHILOGASTER
- DENNILL, G.B. & GORDON, A.J. 1990. Climate-related differences in the efficacy of the Australian gall wasp (Hymenoptera: Pteromalidae) released for the control of *Acacia longifolia* in South Africa. *Environmental Entomology* 19,1: 130–136. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, TRICHILOGASTER
- DENNILL, G.B. & GORDON, A.J. 1991. *Trichilogaster* sp. (Hymenoptera: Pteromalidae), a potential biocontrol agent for the weed *Acacia pycnantha* (Fabaceae). *Entomophaga* 36: 295–301. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, TRICHILOGASTER
- DENNILL, G.B., GORDON, J.A. & NESER, S. 1987. Difficulties with the release and establishment of *Carposina autologa* Meyrick (Carposinidae) on the weed *Hakea sericea* (Proteaceae) in South Africa. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 50: 463–468. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, CARPOSINA
- DENNY, R.P. & GOODALL, J.M. 1991. Variable effects of glyphosate and triclopyr used for the control of American bramble, *Rubus cuneifolius* agg, in pine plantations. *South African Forestry Journal* 159: 11–15. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, RUBUS
- DENNY, R.P. & GOODALL, J.M. 1992. Control of 'inkberry', *Cestrum laevigatum*, with triclopyr and imazapyr. *Applied Plant Science* 6,2: 52–54. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, CESTRUM
- DENNY, R.P. & GOODALL, J.M. 1992. Herbicide treatments applied to stems and stumps of bugweed, *Solanum mauritianum*. *South African Forestry Journal* 161: 41–43. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, SOLANUM
- DENNY, R.P. & NAUDE, D.C. 1994. Imazapyr applied to cut-stumps kills *Chromolaena odorata*. *Applied Plant Science* 8,2: 43–45. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, CHROMOLAENA
- DENNY, R.P. & SCHUMANN, A.W. 1994. Weed control. In H.A. van der Sijde (ed.), *Forestry handbook*, pp. 219–230. Southern African Institute of Forestry, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT
- D'EWES, D. 1961. Volunteers fight a floral invasion because they know there is nothing exotic about the alien acacias. *Veldtrust* September/October 1961: 24, 25. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, VOLUNTEERS, ACACIA
- DONNELLY, D. 1977. *The effect of spraying herbicides on acacias and in the fynbos*. Unpublished Botany project, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, ACACIA
- DONNELLY, D. 1986. *Rayieria* sp. (Heteroptera: Miridae): Host specificity, conflicting interests, and rejection as a biological control agent against the weed *Acacia longifolia* (Andr.) Willd. in South Africa. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 49: 183–193. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, ACACIA
- DONNELLY, D. 1992. The potential host range of three seed-feeding *Melanterius* spp. (Curculionidae), candidates for the biological control of Australian *Acacia* spp. and *Paraserianthes (Albizia) lophantha* in South Africa. *Phytophylactica* 24: 167. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, MELANTERIUS, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA)
- DONNELLY, D., CALITZ, F.J. & VAN AARDE, I.M.R. 1992. Insecticidal control of *Melanterius servulus* (Coleoptera: Curculionidae), a potential biocontrol agent of *Paraserianthes lophantha* (Leguminosae), in commercial seed orchards of black wattle, *Acacia mearnsii* (Leguminosae). *Bulletin of Entomological Research* 82: 197–202. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, MELANTERIUS, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA)
- DONNELLY, D. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 2004. Utilization of an unpredictable food source by *Melanterius ventralis*, a seed-feeding control agent of *Acacia longifolia* in South Africa. *BioControl* 49,2: 225–235. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, MELANTERIUS
- DORCHIN, N., CRAMER, M.D. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 2006. The carbon costs of wasp-induced galls on *Acacia pycnantha*. *Ecology* (submitted). A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, TRICHILOGASTER
- DREYER, N. 2003. Ukuvuka teams branch out into clearing of private land. *Cape Times* 6 October 2003 (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2003-0337). A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CO-OPERATION
- DU PLESSIS, H.S. 1972. Nuwe wapen teen groen kanker. *Die Landbouweekblad* 18.7.1972: 38–40. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA
- DU TOIT, R. 1950. Lantana as a weed. *Farming in South Africa* 25: 163, 164. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, LANTANA
- ERASMUS, D.J. & CLAYTON, J.N.G. 1992. Towards costing chemical control of *Lantana camara* L. *South African Journal for Plant and Soil* 9,4: 206–210. A-WOODY PLANT, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, ECONOMICS, LANTANA
- ERASMUS, D.J., MAGGS, K.A.R., BIGGS, H.C., ZELLER, D.A. & BELL, R.S. 1993. Control of *Lantana camara* in the Kruger National Park, South Africa, and subsequent vegetation dynamics.

- Brighton Crop Protection Conference—Weeds, pp. 399–404. A-WOODY PLANT, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, RESTORATION, LANTANA
- ERASMUS, D.J. & NOEL, D.J.R. 1989. Chemical control of *Chromolaena odorata*: efficacy of herbicides applied to stumps. *Applied Plant Science* 3: 18–21. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, CHROMOLAENA
- ERASMUS, D.J. & VAN STADEN, J. 1984. The effect of leaf age and decapitation of the cane apex on translocation of assimilates in the weed *Rubus cuneifolius*. *South African Journal of Botany* 3: 33–37. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, RUBUS
- ERASMUS, D.J. & VAN STADEN, J. 1985. Screening of candidate herbicides in field trials for chemical control of *Chromolaena odorata*. *South African Journal of Plant and Soil* 3: 66–70. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, CHROMOLAENA
- ERASMUS, D.J. & VAN STADEN, J. 1987. Chemical control of *Chromolaena odorata*: efficacy of triclopyr and glyphosate applied to regrowth. *Applied Plant Science* 1: 39–42. A-WOODY PLANT, REGENERATION, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, CHROMOLAENA
- ERASMUS, D.J., VILJOEN, B.D. & COETZER, R.L.J. 1996. Efficacy of selected herbicides applied to *Sesbania punicea* stumps. *Applied Plant Science* 10,1: 12–15. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, SESBANIA
- ERB, H.E. 1980. The natural enemies and distribution of *Sesbania punicea* (Cav.) Benth. in Argentina. *Proceedings of the Third National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Pretoria, 1979*, pp. 205–210. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA
- ERB, H.E. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1986. *Pachycentrinus convexicollis* Hustache (Coleoptera: Curculionidae), a possible biocontrol agent against jointed cactus. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 49: 392–394. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, PACHYCENTRINUS
- ESTERHUYSEN, E.E. 1936. Regeneration after clearing at Kirstenbosch. *Journal of South African Botany* 2: 177–185. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, ACACIA, RUBUS, SOLANUM
- EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W. 2002. *Review of alien clearing and fynbos restoration by The Redhill Fynbos Restoration Project (May 1996 to April 2001), in order to make the results comparable to other areas*. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, CLEARING, STACKING, RECOVERY, FIRE
- EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W. & RATHOGWA, N. 2005. *Progress report on the project: Development of a Clearing Protocol Based on Ecological Criteria for Mesic Savannas and Sweet Grassveld for the Working for Water Programme*. November 2004. A-WOODY PLANT, SAVANNA, GRASSLAND, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, PERMANENT PLOTS, DIVERSITY, INVASION, CLEARING METHODS, CHROMOLAENA, LANTANA
- FENN, J.A. 1980. Control of hakea in the Western Cape. *Proceedings of the Third National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Pretoria, 1979*, pp. 167–173. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, HAKEA
- FISKE, S. 1980. Bramble bashing. *Farmers Weekly* 18 June 1980: 25. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, RUBUS
- FUGLER, S.R. 1982. *Hakea manual*. (Revised by D.M. Richardson and B.W. van Wilgen). Department of Environmental Affairs, Jonkershoek Research Station, Stellenbosch. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, HAKEA
- FUGLER, S.R. 1982. Infestations of three Australian *Hakea* species in South Africa and their control. *South African Forestry Journal* 120: 63–68. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, HAKEA
- FYFE, R.V. 1973. The *Lantana* bug, *Teleonemia lantanae* Distant. *Journal of the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research* 10,3: 181–186. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA, TELEONEMIA
- GALETOWITSCH, S.M. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2005. Riparian scrub recovery after clearing of invasive alien trees in headwater streams of the Western Cape, South Africa. *Biological Conservation* 122: 509–521. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, RIPARIAN, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION
- GAREEB, M., DEN BREEYEN, A., STRATHIE, L.W. & ZACHARIADES, C. 2002. Biological control of *Chromolaena*: news from South Africa. *Chromolaena odorata Newsletter* 15: 1–6. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- GAREEB, M. & ZACHARIADES, C. 2003. *Calycomyza eupatorivora*, a new agent for biological control of *Chromolaena odorata* in South Africa. *Proceedings of the South African Sugar Technologists' Association* 77: 622, 623. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA, CALCOMYZA
- GELDENHUYS, C.J. 1986. Costs and benefits of the Australian Blackwood, *Acacia melanoxylon*, in South African Forestry. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 275–283. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, ACACIA
- GELDENHUYS, C.J. 1996. The Blackwood Group System: its relevance for sustainable forest management in the southern Cape. *South African Forestry Journal* 177: 721. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, ACACIA
- GELDENHUYS, C.J. 1997. Native forest regeneration in pine and eucalypt plantations in Northern Province, South Africa. *Forest Ecology and Management* 99: 101–115. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, EUCALYPTUS, PINUS
- GELDENHUYS, C.J. 1999. Restoration of the biodiversity and productivity of degraded forest by planting useful tree species. In F. Rasolo & M. Raunet (eds), *Gestion agrobiologique des sols*

- et des systèmes de culture. Actes de l'atelier international, Antsirabe, Madagascar, 23–28 mars 1998. Anae, Cirad, Fafiala, Fifamanor, Fofifa, Tafa, Montpellier, France, Cirad, collection Colloques*, pp. 543–551. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-WOODY PLANT, N-BIODIVERSITY, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION
- GOODALL, J.M., DENNY, R.P. & DICKS, H.M. 1991. The effects of five herbicides on *Pinus patula* saplings when applied 'over-the-top' for woody weed control. *South African Forestry Journal* 157: 38–45. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, PINUS
- GOODALL, J.M. & ERASMUS, D.J. 1996. Review of the status and integrated control of the invasive alien weed, *Chromolaena odorata*, in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 56: 151–164. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, EVALUATION, CHROMOLAENA
- GOODALL, J.M., KLUGE, R.L. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1996. Developing integrated control strategies for *Chromolaena odorata* in southern Africa. *Second International Weed Control Congress, Copenhagen, 1996*, pp. 729–734. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- GORDON, A.J. 1993. The impact of the hakea seed-moth *Carposina autologa* (Carposinidae) on the canopy-stored seeds of the weed *Hakea sericea* (Proteaceae). *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 45: 105–113. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, CARPOSINA
- GORDON, A.J. 1999. A review of established and new insect agents for the biological control of *Hakea sericea* Schrader (Proteaceae) in South Africa. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 35–43. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION, HAKEA
- GORDON, A.J. 1999. Biological control of Australian myrtle, *Leptospermum laevigatum* (J. Gaertn.) F. Muell. (Myrtaceae), in South Africa. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 140–143. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LEPTOSPERMUM
- GORDON, A.J. 2001. The hakea fruit weevil (*Erytenna consputa*). A natural enemy of silky hakea (*Hakea sericea*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 8. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, ERYTENNA
- GORDON, A.J. 2001. The hakea seed-moth (*Carposina autologa*). A natural enemy of silky hakea (*Hakea sericea*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 12. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, CARPOSINA
- GORDON, A.J. & KLUGE, R.L. 1991. Biological control of St. John's wort, *Hypericum perforatum* (Clusiaceae) in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 77–90. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HYPERICUM
- GORDON, A.J., KLUGE, R.L. & NESER, S. 1986. The effect of the gall midge, *Zeuxidiplosis giardi*, (Diptera: Cecidomyiidae) on seedlings of St. John's wort, *Hypericum perforatum* (Clusiaceae). In E.S. Delfosse (ed.), *Proceedings of the Sixth International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, 19–25 August 1984, Vancouver, Canada, Agriculture Canada, Ottawa*, pp. 743–748. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HYPERICUM
- GORDON, A.J. & NESER, S. 1986. The seasonal history of the gall midge, *Zeuxidiplosis giardi* Kieffer (Diptera: Cecidomyiidae), an introduced natural enemy of St. John's wort, *Hypericum perforatum* L. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 49: 115–120. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HYPERICUM
- GRAAFF, J.L. 1986. *Lantana camara*, the plant and some methods for its control. *South African Forestry Journal* 136: 26–30. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LANTANA
- GRAAFF, J.L. 1986. Chemical control of *Sesbania punicea*: some preliminary results. *South African Forestry Journal* 136: 32, 33. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, SESBANIA
- GRAAFF, J.L. 1987. The seedfly *Ophiomyia lantanae* and other factors responsible for reducing germination in *Lantana camara* forms found in Natal. *South African Journal of Botany* 53: 104–107. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA, OPHIOMYIA
- GREEN, H.L. 1976. Conservation problems, Diepsloot—daylight after 20 months. *Veld & Flora* 62.4: 2, 3. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, VOLUNTEERS, CONSERVATION, ACACIA, HAKEA
- HAIGH, H. 1974. Problems caused by weeds in forestry in Natal. *Unpublished duplicated papers presented at the First National Weeds Conference 13–14 August 1974*, pp. 21–28. National programme for Environmental Sciences, CSIR Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, SYLVICULTURAL-AREA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, SYLVICULTURE, ACACIA
- HAIGH, H. 1980. Bramble control in Natal. *Proceedings of the Third National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Pretoria, 1979*, pp. 175–180. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, RUBUS
- HARDING, G.B. 1991. Sheep can reduce recruitment of invasive *Prosopis* species. *Applied Plant Science* 5.1: 25–28. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, UTILISATION, GRAZING, PROSOPIS
- HARDING, J.J. 1938. The bugtree. *Farming in South Africa* 13: 13, 14. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, SOLANUM
- HARRIS, M.S. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1985. The weed *Sesbania punicea* (Leguminosae) in South Africa nipped in the bud by the weevil *Trichapion lativentre*. In E.S. Delfosse (ed.), *Proceedings of the Sixth International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, 19–25 August 1984, Vancouver, Canada*, pp. 757–760. Agriculture Canada, Ottawa. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA, TRICHAPION
- HARRIS, M.S. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1986. The weed *Sesbania punicea* (Leguminosae) in South Africa nipped in the bud by the weevil *Trichapion lativentre*. *The Naturalist* 30: 28–31. A-WOODY PLANT,



- MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA, TRICHAPION
- HATTINGH, E.R. 1958. Weed problems and present control practices in South Africa. *Proceedings of the African Weed Control Conference, Victoria Falls, Southern Rhodesia*, pp. 118–131. A-WOODY PLANT, A-SUCCULENT PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA, OPUNTIA
- HAWKINS, T.M. 1966. Exotic acacias in South Africa. *Nature* 210(5036): 577. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA
- HEESOM, D. 1976. Conservation problems, pest plants—a co-ordinated approach. Part I. *Veld & Flora* 62,2: 2, 3. Part II. *Veld & Flora* 62,3: 2–4. A-WOODY PLANT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT, VOLUNTEERS, CO-ORDINATION, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), EUCALYPTUS, HAKEA, LANTANA, LEPTOSPERMUM, OPUNTIA, SESBANIA
- HENDERSON, L. & HARDING, G. 1992. Mesquite. Farming in South Africa, Series Weeds A.34. Government Printer, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, HISTORY, ORIGIN, MORPHOLOGY, LEGISLATION, MANAGEMENT
- HENDRY, N.S. & VAN STADEN, J. 1982. Seed germination and the potential for control of *Acacia mearnsii* as a weed. *South African Journal of Science* 78: 206, 207. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, REGENERATION, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA
- HIGGINS, S.I., TURPIE, J.K., COSTANZA, R., COWLING, R.M., LE MAITRE, D.C., MARAIS, C.M. & MIDGLEY, G.F. 1997. An ecological economic simulation model of mountain fynbos ecosystems: dynamics, valuation and management. *Ecological Economics* 22: 155–169. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, MODELLING
- HILL, M.P. 1999. *Gratiana lutescens* (Boheman) (Coleoptera: Chrysomelidae: Cassidinae) reconsidered as a natural enemy of satansbos, *Solanum elaeagnifolium* Cavanilles (Solanaceae), in South Africa. *African Entomology* 7,2: 177–181. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, GRATIANA
- HILL, M.P. & HULLEY, P.E. 1995. Biology and host range of *Gratiana spadicea* (Klug, 1829) (Coleoptera: Chrysomelidae: Cassidinae), a potential biological control agent for the weed *Solanum sisymbriifolium* Lamarck (Solanaceae) in South Africa. *Biological Control* 5: 345–352. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, GRATIANA
- HILL, M.P. & HULLEY, P.E. 1996. Suitability of *Metriona elatior* (Klug) (Coleoptera: Chrysomelidae: Cassidinae) as a biological control agent for *Solanum sisymbriifolium* Lam. (Solanaceae). *African Entomology* 4,2: 117–123. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-SELECTION, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, METRIONA
- HILL, M.P., HULLEY, P.E., ALSOPP, J. & VAN HARMELEN, G. 1997. Glandular trichomes on the exotic *Solanum sisymbriifolium* Lamarck (Solanaceae): effective deterrents against an indigenous South African herbivore. *African Entomology* 5,1: 41–50. A-WOODY PLANT, MORPHOLOGY, INVASIVENESS, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- HILL, M.P., HULLEY, P.E. & OLCKERS, T. 1993. Insect herbivores on the exotic weeds *Solanum elaeagnifolium* Cavanilles and *S. sisymbriifolium* Lamarck (Solanaceae) in South Africa. *African Entomology* 1,2: 175–182. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- HILL, R.L., GORDON, A.J. & NESER, S. 2000. The potential role of *Bruchophagus acaciae* (Cameron) (Hymenoptera: Eurytomidae) in the integrated control of *Acacia* species in South Africa. In N.R. Spencer (ed.), *Proceedings of the Tenth International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds, 4–14 July 1999, Montana State University Bozeman, Montana, USA*, pp. 919–929. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, ACACIA
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 1988. An early assessment of *Trichapion lativentre* (Coleoptera: Apionidae) for biological control of the weed *Sesbania punicea* (Fabaceae) in South Africa. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 51: 265–273. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA, TRICHAPION
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 1990. Interactions between three weevil species in the biocontrol of *Sesbania punicea* (Fabaceae): the role of simulation models in evaluation. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 32: 77–87. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, MODELLING, EVALUATION, SESBANIA
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 2001. Golden wattle loses its lustre: biological control of Australian acacias in South Africa. *Veld & Flora* 87: 56. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, TRICHILOGASTER
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 2001. Seed-feeding mesquite beetles (*Algarobius prosopis* and *Neltumius arizonensis*). A natural enemy of mesquite (*Prosopis* species) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 11. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PROSOPIS, ALGAROBIOUS, NELTUMIUS
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 2001. The golden wattle bud galling wasp (*Trichilogaster* sp.). A natural enemy of golden wattle (*Acacia pycnantha*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 13. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, TRICHILOGASTER
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 2001. The long-leaved wattle bud galling wasp (*Trichilogaster acaciaelongifoliae*). A natural enemy of long-leaved wattle (*Acacia longifolia*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 14. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, TRICHILOGASTER
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 2001. The sesbania flower-feeding weevil (*Trichapion lativentre*). A natural enemy of sesbania (*Sesbania punicea*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 15. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA, TRICHAPION
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 2001. The sesbania seed-feeding weevil (*Rhyssomatus marginatus*). A natural enemy of sesbania (*Sesbania punicea*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 16. A-WOODY PLANT,

## MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA, RHYSSOMATUS

- HOFFMANN, J.H. 2001. The sesbania stem-boring weevil (*Neodiplogrammus quadrivittatus*). A natural enemy of sesbania (*Sesbania punicea*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 17. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA, NEODIPLOGRAMMUS
- HOFFMANN, J.H., IMPSON, F.A.C. & MORAN, V.C. 1993. Biological control of mesquite weeds in South Africa using a seed-feeding bruchid, *Algarobius prosopis*: initial levels of interference by native parasitoids. *Biological Control* 3: 17–21. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, BIOCONTROL, PROSOPIS, ALGAROBIOUS, BRUCHIDAE
- HOFFMANN, J.H., IMPSON, F.A.C. & MORAN, V.C. 1993. Competitive interactions between two bruchid species (*Algarobius* spp.) introduced into South Africa for biological control of mesquite weeds (*Prosopis* spp.). *Biological Control* 3: 215–220. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PROSOPIS, ALGAROBIOUS, BRUCHIDAE, COMPETITION
- HOFFMANN, J.H., IMPSON, F.A.C., MORAN, V.C. & DONNELLY, D. 2002. *Trichilogaster* gall wasps (Pteromalidae) and biological control of invasive golden wattle trees (*Acacia pycnantha*) in South Africa. *Biological Control* 25: 64–73. A-WOODY PLANT, SEED-SET, GROWTH, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, TRICHILOGASTER
- HOFFMANN, J.H. & MORAN, V.C. 1988. The invasive weed *Sesbania punicea* in South Africa and prospects for its biological control. *Trees in South Africa* 40: 22–26. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA
- HOFFMANN, J.H. & MORAN, V.C. 1988. The invasive weed *Sesbania punicea* in South Africa and prospects for its biological control. *South African Journal of Science* 84: 740–742. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA
- HOFFMANN, J.H. & MORAN, V.C. 1989. Novel graphs for depicting herbivore damage on plants: the biocontrol of *Sesbania punicea* (Fabaceae) by an introduced weevil. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 26: 353–360. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA, TRICHAPION
- HOFFMANN, J.H. & MORAN, V.C. 1991. Biocontrol of a perennial legume, *Sesbania punicea*, using a florivorous weevil, *Trichapion lativentre*: weed population dynamics with a scarcity of seeds. *Oecologia* 88: 574–576. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA, TRICHAPION
- HOFFMANN, J.H. & MORAN, V.C. 1991. Biological control of *Sesbania punicea* (Fabaceae) in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 157–173. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA
- HOFFMANN, J.H. & MORAN, V.C. 1992. Oviposition patterns and the supplementary role, of a seed-feeding weevil *Rhyssomatus marginatus* (Coleoptera: Curculionidae), in the biological control of a perennial leguminous weed, *Sesbania punicea*. *Bulletin of Entomological Research* 82: 343–347. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA, RHYSSOMATUS
- HOFFMANN, J.H. & MORAN, V.C. 1992. The influence of host-plant location on the incidence and impact of *Trichapion lativentre* (Coleoptera: Apionidae), a biocontrol agent of *Sesbania punicea* (Fabaceae). *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 55: 285–287. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA, RHYSSOMATUS
- HOFFMANN, J.H. & MORAN, V.C. 1995. Localized failure of a weed biological control agent attributed to insecticide drift. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 52: 197–204. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA
- HOFFMANN, J.H. & MORAN, V.C. 1998. The population dynamics of an introduced tree, *Sesbania punicea*, in South Africa, in response to long-term damage caused by different combinations of three species of biological control agents. *Oecologia* 114: 343–348. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION, SESBANIA
- HOFFMANN, J.H. & MORAN, V.C. 1999. A review of the agents and factors that have contributed to the successful biological control of *Sesbania punicea* (Cav.) Benth. (Papilionaceae) in South Africa. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 75–79. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION, SESBANIA
- HOFFMANN, J.H., MORAN, V.C. & IMPSON, F.A.C. 1998. Promising results from the first biological control programme against a solanaceous weed (*Solanum elaeagnifolium*). *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 70: 145–150. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION, GROWTH, BIOMASS, FRUIT-PRODUCTION, SOLANUM, LEPTINOTARSA
- HOFFMANN, J.H., MORAN, V.C. & UNDERHILL, L.G. 1990. Relationships between the history of colonization and abundance of *Trichapion lativentre* (Coleoptera: Apionidae) in the suppression of growth and reproduction of a weed, *Sesbania punicea* (Fabaceae). *Environmental Entomology* 19: 1866–1872. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, GROWTH, REPRODUCTION, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA, TRICHAPION
- HOFFMANN, J.H., ROQUES, A., ROUX-MORABITO, G. & LENNOX, C. 2004. Prospects for biological control of wilding pines in South Africa: are we barking up the wrong tree? In R.L. Hill, S.M. Zydenbos & C.M. Bezar (eds), *Managing wilding conifers in New Zealand: present and future, August 2003, Christchurch, New Zealand*, pp. 113–122. New Zealand Plant Protection Society. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, PINUS
- HOLMES, P.M. 1988. Implications of alien *Acacia* seed bank viability and germination for clearing. *South African Journal of Botany* 54: 281–284. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, REGENERATION, MANAGEMENT, SEED-BANK, STRATEGIC, ACACIA
- HOLMES, P.M. 1989. *A comparative study of the seed bank dynamics of two congeneric alien invasive species*. Ph.D. thesis, Botany Department, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, REGENERATION, MANAGEMENT, SEED-BANK, ACACIA
- HOLMES, P.M. 1989. Decay rates in buried alien *Acacia* seed populations of different density. *South African Journal of Botany* 55: 299–303. A-WOODY PLANT,

- ECOLOGY, INVASION, REGENERATION, SEED-BANK, DORMANCY, LONGEVITY, MODELLING, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, ACACIA
- HOLMES, P.M. 1989. The effect of different clearing treatments on the seed bank dynamics of an invasive Australian shrub *Acacia cyclops* in the south-western Cape, South Africa. *Forest Ecology & Management* 28: 33–46. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, REGENERATION, MANAGEMENT, SEED-BANK, FIRE-INTENSITY, SOIL-TEMPERATURE, SEED-MORTALITY, SEEDLING-RECRUITMENT, ACACIA
- HOLMES, P.M. 1990. Dispersal and predation in alien *Acacia*. *Oecologia* 83: 288–290. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, REGENERATION, MANAGEMENT, SEED-BANK, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, MYRMECOCHORY, N-RODENT, ACACIA
- HOLMES, P.M. 1990. Dispersal and predation of alien *Acacia* seeds: effects of season and invading stand density. *South African Journal of Botany* 56: 428–434. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, REGENERATION, MANAGEMENT, SEED-BANK, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, MYRMECOCHORY, N-RODENT, ACACIA
- HOLMES, P.M. 1996. Alien clearing: Pandora's box or treasure chest? Fynbos survival and restoration potential after years of dense alien infestation. *Veld & Flora* 82: 24, 25. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, SEED-BANK, DORMANCY, FIRE
- HOLMES, P.M. 1996. Is alien-invaded fynbos vegetation of any conservation value and can it be restored? *Sappex News*. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, SEED-BANK, STRATEGIC, CONSERVATION
- HOLMES, P.M. 1998. Fynbos Biome. In F. van der Heyden (ed.), *Rehabilitation following clearing of invasive alien vegetation in South African ecosystems: a preliminary review of best management practices*. Unpublished report CSIR, Stellenbosch. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, SEED-BANK, STRATEGIC
- HOLMES, P.M. 1999. Best management options for restoring fynbos vegetation after alien clearing. *Sappex News*. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, SEED-BANK, STRATEGIC, RE-INTRODUCTION
- HOLMES, P.M. 2000. *Guidelines for indigenous vegetation restoration following invasion by alien plants*. Report no. ENV-S-C 2000-144, Environmentek, CSIR, Stellenbosch. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, SEED-BANK, STRATEGIC
- HOLMES, P.M. 2000. Restoring Fynbos the ecological way. *Veld & Flora* 86: 79. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, SEED-BANK, STRATEGIC, RE-INTRODUCTION
- HOLMES, P.M. 2000. Restoring native vegetation following alien plant invasion and mining—an ecological approach. *Earthyear*. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, SEED-BANK, STRATEGIC, RE-INTRODUCTION
- HOLMES, P.M. 2001. A comparison of the impacts of winter versus summer burning of slash fuel in alien-invaded fynbos areas in the Western Cape. *Southern African Forestry Journal* 192: 41–50. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT FIRE, SOIL-DAMAGE, SEED-BANK, SEEDLING-RECRUITMENT, ACACIA, PINUS
- HOLMES, P.M. 2001. Shrubland restoration following woody alien invasion and mining: effects of topsoil depth, seed source and fertilizer addition. *Restoration Ecology* 9: 71–84. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, PINUS, EUCALYPTUS, HAKEA, ACACIA, SEED-BANK, SEEDLING-RECRUITMENT
- HOLMES, P.M. 2003. Reintroducing Fynbos after the aliens are gone. *Farmers Weekly* 30 May 2003: 47. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, RESTORATION
- HOLMES, P.M. & ALLSOPP, N. 2000. Rehabilitation recommendations in the Western Cape. In P.L. Campbell (ed.), *Rehabilitation recommendations after alien plant control*, pp. 89–91. Plant Protection Research Unit, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, RESTORATION
- HOLMES, P.M., DALLAS, J. & PHILLIPS, T. 1987. Control of *Acacia saligna* in the SW Cape—are the clearing treatments effective? *Veld & Flora* 73: 98–100. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, REGENERATION, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, SEED-BANK, ACACIA
- HOLMES, P.M. & FODEN, W.B. 2001. The effectiveness of post-fire scarification in promoting fynbos seedling recruitment and restoration after alien clearing. *South African Journal of Botany* 67,4: 533–539. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, FIRE-INTENSITY, SEEDLING-RECRUITMENT, SEED-BANK
- HOLMES, P.M., MACDONALD, I.A.W. & JURITZ, J. 1987. Effects of clearing treatment on seed banks of the invasive alien shrubs *Acacia saligna* and *Acacia cyclops* in the southern and southwestern Cape, South Africa. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 24: 1045–1051. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, FIRE, SEED-BANK, HARD-SEEDEDNESS, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA
- HOLMES, P.M., MARAIS, C. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2007. Costs and benefits of restoring natural capital following alien plant invasions in fynbos ecosystems, South Africa. In J. Aronson & S.J. Milton (eds), *Restoring natural capital* (in press). A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, STRATEGIC, RESTORATION, ECONOMICS, MANAGEMENT
- HOLMES, P.M. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1999. Protocols for restoration based on knowledge of recruitment dynamics, community structure and ecosystem function: a case study from South African fynbos. *Restoration Ecology* 7: 215–230. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, STRATEGIC, SEED-BANK
- HOLMES, P.M., RICHARDSON, D.M., VAN WILGEN, B.W. & GELDERBLOM, C. 2000. The recovery of South African fynbos vegetation following woody alien plant clearing and fire: implications for restoration. *Austral Ecology* 25: 631–639. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, FIRE, STRATEGIC, COMMUNITY STRUCTURE
- IMPSON, F.A.C. 2001. The acacia seed weevils (*Melanterius* species). Natural enemies for some

- Australian *Acacia* species (wattle) and stink bean (*Paraserianthes lophantha*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 7. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, MELANTERIUS, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA)
- IMPSON, F.A.C. 2005. Biological control of *Acacia cyclops* in South Africa: the role of an introduced seed-feeding weevil, *Melanterius servulus* (Coleoptera: Curculionidae), together with indigenous seed-sucking bugs and birds. M.Sc. thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town, 91 pp. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIRD, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, MELANTERIUS
- IMPSON, F.A.C. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1998. Competitive interactions between larvae of three bruchid species (Coleoptera) in mesquite seeds (*Prosopis* spp.) under laboratory conditions. *African Entomology* 6: 376–378. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PROSOPIS, BRUCHIDAE, SEED-FEEDER, COMPETITION
- IMPSON, F.A.C. & MORAN, V.C. 2004. Thirty years of exploration for and selection of a succession of *Melanterius* weevil species for biological control of invasive Australian acacias in South Africa: should we have done anything differently? In J.M. Cullen, D.T. Briesse, D.J. Kriticos, W.M. Lonsdale, L. Morin & J.K. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of the Eleventh International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds, 27 April–2 May 2003*, pp. 127–134. CSIRO Entomology, Canberra, Australia. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, MELANTERIUS, AGENT-SELECTION, SEED-FEEDER, HISTORY, EVALUATION
- IMPSON, F.A.C., MORAN, V.C. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1999. A review of the effectiveness of seed-feeding bruchid beetles in the biological control of mesquite, *Prosopis* species (Fabaceae), in South Africa. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 81–88. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PROSOPIS, BRUCHIDAE, SEED-FEEDER, INVASIVENESS, COMPETITION, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, EVALUATION
- IMPSON, F.A.C., MORAN, V.C. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 2004. Biological control of an alien tree, *Acacia cyclops*, in South Africa: impact and dispersal of a seed-feeding weevil, *Melanterius servulus*. *Biological Control* 29: 375–381. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, MELANTERIUS, SEED-FEEDER, PHENOLOGY
- IMPSON, F.A.C., MORAN, V.C., HOFFMANN, J.H., DONNELLY, D. & STEWART, K. 2000. Recent developments in the biological control of invasive acacias in South Africa: *Melanterius servulus* (Coleoptera: Curculionidae) against *Acacia cyclops*. In N.R. Spencer (ed.), *Proceedings of the Tenth International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds, 4–14 July, 1999, Montana State University, Bozeman, Montana*, pp. 729–734. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, MELANTERIUS, SEED-FEEDER
- JEFFERY, D.J., HOLMES, P.M. & REBELO, A.G. 1988. Effects of dry heat on seed germination in selected indigenous and alien legume species in South Africa. *South African Journal of Botany* 54: 28–34. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, REGENERATION, ACACIA, DORMANCY, LETHAL-TEMPERATURE, MANAGEMENT, FIRE
- JOOSTE, J.V.D.W. 1965. Experiments on the control of *Acacia mearnsii* de Willd. *South African Journal of Agricultural Science* 8: 1165, 1166. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA
- JOOSTE, J.V. D.W. 1967. Die bestryding van *Hakea*. *Tydskrif vir Natuurwetenskappe* 7: 315–318. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, HAKEA
- JORDAAN, L. & VAN ZYL, D. 1976. Maak plan met die boom. *Die Landbouweekblad* 15: 19–23. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. *Prosopis/mesquite (Prosopis species)*. *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 3.1: 1, 2. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PROSOPIS
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. *Prosopis seed beetles (Algarobius prosopis and Neltumius arizonensis)*. *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 3.2: 1–3. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PROSOPIS, ALGAROBIOUS, NELTUMIUS
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. *Silverleaf nightshade/satansbos (Solanum elaeagnifolium)*. *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 4.1: 1, 2. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. *The satansbos leaf beetles (Leptinotarsa texana and Leptinotarsa defecta)*. *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 4.2: 1–3. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, LEPTINOTARSA
- KLUGE, R.L. 1982. The biological control of hakea. In S.B. Fugler (ed.), *Hakea manual*. Department of Forestry. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA
- KLUGE, R.L. 1982. *The hakea fruit weevil, Erytenna consputa and the biological control of Hakea sericea in South Africa*. Unpublished Ph.D. thesis submitted 1982. Rhodes University, Grahamstown. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, ERYTENNA
- KLUGE, R.L. 1990. Prospects for the biological control of trifid weed, *Chromolaena odorata*, in southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 86: 229, 230. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- KLUGE, R.L. 1990. The seed-attacking wasp *Bruchophagus* sp. (Hymenoptera: Eurytomidae) and its potential for biological control of *Acacia longifolia* in South Africa. In E.S. Delfosse (ed.), *Proceedings of the Seventh International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, 6–11 March 1988, Rome, Italy. 1st Sper. Patol. Veg. (MAF)*, pp. 349–356. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, BRUCHOPHAGUS
- KLUGE, R.L. 1991. Biological control of trifid weed, *Chromolaena odorata* (Asteraceae), in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 193–198. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- KLUGE, R.L. 1994. Ant predation and the establishment of *Paracheutes pseudoinculata* Reggo Barros (Lepidoptera: Arctiidae) for biological control of trifid weed, *Chromolaena odorata* (L.) King & Robinson,

- in South Africa. *African Entomology* 2: 71, 72. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA, PAREUCHAETES
- KLUGE, R.L. & CALDWELL, P.M. 1992. Phytophagous insects and mites on *Chromolaena odorata* (Compositae: Eupatoreae) in southern Africa. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 55,1: 159–161. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- KLUGE, R.L. & CALDWELL, P.M. 1993. The biology and host specificity of *Pareuchaetes aurata aurata* (Lepidoptera: Arctiidae), a 'new association' biological control agent for *Chromolaena odorata* (Compositae). *Bulletin of Entomological Research* 83: 87–94. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- KLUGE, R.L. & ERASMUS, D.J. 1991. An approach towards promoting progress with the control of woody alien invasive plants in Natal. *South African Forestry Journal* 157: 86–90. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- KLUGE, R.L. & GORDON, A.G. 1981. *Application for the release of Aphis chloris Koch (Hemiptera: Aphididae) for the biological control of St John's wort or Johannesburgskruid, Hypericum perforatum L., in the south-western Cape*. Department of Agriculture report, Plant Protection Research Institute, 5 pp. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HYPERICUM, APHIS
- KLUGE, R.L. & GORDON, A.J. 2004. The fixed plot survey method for determining the host range of the flowerbud-feeding weevil *Dicomada rufa*, a candidate for the biological control of *Hakea sericea* in South Africa. *BioControl* 49: 341–355. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, DICOMADA
- KLUGE, R.L., MARSHALL, C.R. & SIEBERT, M.W. 1987. Tebuthiuron as a selective herbicide for the control of *Hakea gibbosa* (Proteaceae) in mountain fynbos vegetation. *South African Forestry Journal* 140: 35–38. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, HAKEA
- KLUGE, R.L. & NESER, S. 1991. Biological control of *Hakea sericea* (Proteaceae) in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 91–113. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA
- KLUGE, R.L. & SIEBERT, M.W. 1979. *Application for permission to release the shoot-boring weevil, Cydmaea binotata Lea on Hakea sericea and H. gibbosa in South Africa*. Department of Agriculture report, Plant Protection Research Institute, 9 pp. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, CYDMAEA
- KLUGE, R.L. & SIEBERT, M.W. 1985. *Erytenna consputa* (Coleoptera: Curculionidae) as the main mortality factor of developing fruits of the weed, *Hakea sericea* Schrader, in South Africa. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 48: 241–245. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, ERYTENNA
- KRAAIJ, T. 2006. Natural recovery of southern Cape dune fynbos after 40 years of afforestation with pine. Poster Presentation: Fynbos Forum 2006. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, PINUS
- KRUGER, F.J. 1977. Invasive woody plants in the Cape fynbos with special reference to the biology and control of *Pinus pinaster*. *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Stellenbosch, 1977*, pp. 57–74. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, PINUS
- KRUGER, F.J. 1981. Conservation: South African heathlands. In R.L. Specht (ed.), *Ecosystems of the world 9B. Heathlands and related shrublands: analytical studies*, pp. 231–234. Elsevier, New York. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- LARSEN, E.J., MARAIS, C. & GÖRGENS, A.H.M. 2001. Water resources planning with recognition of alien vegetation eradication. *Proceedings of the Ninth South African Hydrology Symposium*. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC
- LE MAITRE, D.C., VAN WILGEN, B.W., CHAPMAN, R.A. & MCKELLY, D.H. 1996. Invasive plants in the Western Cape, South Africa: modelling the consequences of a lack of management. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 33: 161–172. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, HYDROLOGY, MODELLING, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- LE MAITRE, D.C., VAN WILGEN, B.W., GELDERBLOM, C.M., BAILEY, C., CHAPMAN, R.A. & NEL, J.A. 2002. Invasive alien trees and water resources in South Africa: Case studies of the costs and benefits of management. *Forest Ecology and Management* 160: 143–159. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, MANAGEMENT, MODELLING, HISTORY
- LE MAITRE, D.C., VAN WILGEN, B.W. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1993. A computer system for catchment management: Background, concepts and development. *Journal of Environmental Management* 39: 121–142. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, MANAGEMENT, MODELLING, CONCEPT
- LE ROUX, P.J. 1980. The control of encroaching plant species on state forests: a management approach. *Proceedings of the Third National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Pretoria, 1979*, pp. 187–194. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, SYLVICULTURE, ACACIA, EUCALYPTUS, CHROMOLAENA, HAKEA, LANTANA, PERESKIA, PINUS, RUBUS, SOLANUM
- LOTTER, W.D. 2003. Establishment of the lace bug *Gargaphia decoris* released against the invasive tree *Solanum mauritianum* in South Africa. Eleventh International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, Canberra—Australia—April 28 to May 2. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, GARGAPHIA
- LOTTER, W.D. 2003. *Removal of exotic woody vegetation from a riparian area: results from a short-term management trial*. ICFR Bulletin 04/2003, Institute for Commercial Forestry Research, Pietermaritzburg, South Africa. A-WOODY PLANT, RIPARIAN, MANAGEMENT, EVALUATION
- LOTTER, W.D. 2004. Possible non-target feeding by the bugweed lace bug *Gargaphia decoris* (Tingidae) in South Africa: field evaluations support predictions of laboratory host-specificity tests. *African Entomology* 12,2: 283–285. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT,



AGENT-SELECTION, TECHNIQUE, BIOCONTROL,  
SOLANUM, GARGAPHIAMANAGEMENT, MODELLING, ECONOMICS,  
ACACIA

- LOTTER, W.D. 2004. *The establishment and ecological impact of the leaf-sucking lace bug Gargaphia decoris on Solanum mauritanum in KwaZulu-Natal*. M.Tech.: Nature Conservation thesis, Technikon Pretoria, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, GARGAPHIA
- LOTTER, W.D. & ZACHARIADES, C. 2003. Working for Water-funded research produces a new agent for chromolaena. *Prickly Pear Newsletter* 6,5: 2, 3. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- LOTTER, W.D. & ZACHARIADES, C. 2003. Working for Water-funded research produces a new agent for chromolaena. *The Guineafowl (KZN Conservancies Association)* 2: 8, 9. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- LUCKOFF, H.A. 1977. Comment on A.C.A.C.I.A. *South African Forestry Journal* 102: 15, 16. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, ACACIA
- LUCKOFF, H.A. 1980. The control of alien vegetation in the Cape fynbos. *Veld & Flora* 66,4: 114–116. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA, HAKEA, LEPTOSPERMUM, PINUS
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1978. *A survey of the extent and nature of alien plant infestations in the Central Complex (Feb–May, 1978) with recommendations for their future control*. Roneod report, 42 pp. & 16 figs. Natal Parks Board, Hluhluwe Game Reserve. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, SURVEY, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1985. Die 'superboom' word bitter moeilik gestuit. *Custos* 14,6: 33, 34. A-WOODY PLANT, KAROO, SAVANNA, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, PROSOPIS
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1985. Mesquite—a 'bomb' ready to explode. *Custos* 14,6: 35–39. A-WOODY PLANT, KAROO, SAVANNA, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, PROSOPIS
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1991. Are we 'hacking' towards a warmer planet? *Veld & Flora* 77: 36–38. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, IMPACT, GLOBAL-CHANGE
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1991. Chopping out aliens with a computer. *Farmers Weekly* December 27, 1991: 42–46. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, MODELLING, ECONOMICS
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., CLARK, D.L. & TAYLOR, H.C. 1989. The history and effects of alien plant control in the Cape of Good Hope Nature Reserve, 1941–1987. *South African Journal of Botany* 55: 56–75. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, HISTORY, EVALUATION, ACACIA, EUCALYPTUS
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. & COWLING, R.M. 1996. Biodiversity and conservation on Table Mountain and the Cape Peninsula. *Biodiversity & Conservation* 5: 525, 526. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. & WISSEL, C. 1989. Costing the initial clearance of alien *Acacia* species invading fynbos vegetation. *South African Journal of Plant and Soil* 6: 39–45. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS,
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. & WISSEL, C. 1992. Determining optimal clearing treatments for the alien invasive shrub *Acacia saligna* in the southwestern Cape, South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 39: 169–186. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, MODELLING, ECONOMICS, ACACIA
- MALAN, G. & MARAIS, A.V.N. 2002. Guidelines for the design and management of artificial raptor perches and exotic nest-tree sites on forestry estates. *Southern African Forestry Journal* 196: 49–54. A-WOODY PLANT, SYLVICULTURAL-AREA, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, MANAGEMENT
- MALAN, G. & ROBINSON, E.R. 2001. Nest-site selection by Black Sparrowhawks *Accipiter melanoleucus*: implications for managing exotic pulpwood and sawlog forests in South Africa. *Environmental Management* 28: 195–207. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, MANAGEMENT, SYLVICULTURE
- MANONGI, F.S. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1995. The incidence of parasitism in *Trichilogaster acaciaelongifoliae* (Froggatt) (Hymenoptera: Pteromalidae), a gall-forming biological control agent of *Acacia longifolia* (Andr.) Wild. (Fabaceae), in South Africa. *African Entomology* 3: 147–151. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, ACACIA, TRICHOLOGASTER
- MARAIS, C. 2000. Developing an ecological catchment management model to generate expected cost streams for the economic assessment of invading alien plant control programmes for Fynbos catchments. *Proceedings of the Water Institute of Southern Africa Biennial Conference 28 May–1 June 2000*. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, MODELLING
- MARAIS, C., ECKERT, J.B. & GREEN, C.N. 2000. Utilization of invading alien plants for secondary industries. In G. Preston, G. Brown & E. van Wyk (eds), *Best management practices for preventing and controlling invasive alien species*. The Working for Water Programme, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION
- MARAIS, C. & RICHARDSON, D.M. (eds) 1993. *Monitoring requirements for fynbos management*. FRD Programme Report Series 11. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, EVALUATION, MONITORING
- MARAIS, J. 1979. Kirstenbosch Gardens and 'a magnificent obsession'. *Veld & Flora* 65,1: 26–29. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, FOREST, INVASION, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), EUCALYPTUS, LANTANA, LEPTOSPERMUM, PINUS, POPULUS, RUBUS, SOLANUM
- MAREE, H.B. 1982. The economics of the control of invader plants in forestry. *Proceedings of the Fourth National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Pretoria, 1981*, pp. 145–154. A-WOODY PLANT, SYLVICULTURAL-AREA, ECONOMICS, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, EUCALYPTUS, SOLANUM

- MARR, R.S. 1964. Get rid of lantana. *Farming in South Africa* 39,11: 42–45. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- MCLACHLAN, D. & MOLL, E.J. 1977. *Pines on Devil's Peak—a report to the Table Mountain Preservation Board on the Forestry Department's Clearing Programme*. Department of Botany, UCT, 8 pp. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, PINUS
- MEYER, T.C. & RICHTER, C.G.F. 2000. Die *Prosopis* bedreiging in die ariede gebiede van Suid-Afrika. *Noorwes Fokus*. WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, PROSOPIS
- MILTON, S.J. 1997. *Lantana camara*—dietary supplement or dietary toxin. *Agroforestry Today* 9,3:3. A-WOODY PLANT, IMPACT, GRAZING, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, MANAGEMENT, LANTANA
- MILTON, S.J., POWELL, J. & ANDERSON, M.D. 2001. Incentives for camelthorn clearing in the Kalahari. *Arid Zone Ecology Forum meeting, Calitzdorp (September 2001)*. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, FUELWOOD, PROSOPIS
- MOLL, E.J. 1977. Conservation of the Cape Peninsula Mountain Chain. *Jaycee Newlands News* 5, 6. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- MOLL, E.J. 1992. The vegetation of Signal Hill and Lion's Head. In B. Oberholtzer (ed.), *A guide plan to the development of Lion's Head and Signal Hill*, 27 pp. Cape Town City Council. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT
- MOLL, E.J. & CAMPBELL, B.M. 1976. *The ecological status of Table Mountain—a report on the present conservation status with recommendations for the future management of the National Monument*, 59 pp + 28 maps + Appendix 147 pp. Department of Botany, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION, MAPPING-PROJECT
- MOLL, E.J. & MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1991. *An investigation of the regeneration and control of alien plant populations at Pella*. Final report. FRD, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA, PINUS
- MOLL, E.J., MCKENZIE, B. & MCLACHLAN, D. 1977. Present management problems and strategies on Table Mountain South Africa. In E. Contrad & H.A. Mooney (eds), *Proceedings of a Symposium on Environmental Consequences of Fire and Fuel Management in Mediterranean Ecosystems, California*, pp. 470–475. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, FIRE, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- MOLL, E.J., MCKENZIE, B., MCLACHLAN, D. & CAMPBELL, B.M. 1978. A mountain in a city—the need to plan the human usage of the Table Mountain National Monument, South Africa. *Biological Conservation* 13,2: 117–131. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, FIRE, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- MOLL, E.J. & MCLACHLAN, D. 1980. A conservation/recreation plan for the Western Table of Table Mountain, South Africa. *South African Journal of Research in Sport, Physical Education & Recreation* 3,2: 95–104. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- MOLL, E.J. & TRINDER-SMITH, T. 1992. Invasion and control of alien woody plants on the Cape Peninsula mountains, South Africa—30 years on. *Biological Conservation* 60: 135–143. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT
- MORAN, V.C. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1989. The effects of herbivory by a weevil species, acting alone and unrestrained by natural enemies, on growth and phenology of the weed *Sesbania punicea*. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 26: 967–977. A-WOODY PLANT, GROWTH, PHENOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA, TRICHAPION
- MORAN, V.C., HOFFMANN, J.H., DONNELLY, D., ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & VAN WILGEN, B. 2000. Biological control of alien, invasive pine trees (*Pinus* species) in South Africa. In N.R. Spencer (ed.), *Proceedings of the Tenth International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds, 4–14 July, 1999, Montana State University, Bozeman, Montana, USA*, pp. 941–953. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PINUS
- MORAN, V.C., HOFFMANN, J.H. & OLCKERS, T. 2004. Politics and ecology in the management of alien invasive woody trees: the pivotal role of biological control agents that diminish seed-production. In J.M. Cullen, D.T. Briesse, D.J. Kritikos, W.M. Lonsdale, L. Morin & J.K. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of the Eleventh International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds*, pp. 434–439. CSIRO Entomology, Canberra, Australia. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, SEED-PRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, REGENERATION, UTILISATION, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, CONCEPT
- MORAN, V.C., HOFFMANN, J.H. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1993. Objectives, constraints, and tactics in the biological control of mesquite weeds (*Prosopis*) in South Africa. *Biological Control* 3: 80–83. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, PROSOPIS
- MORRIS, M.J. 1982. Gummosis and die-back of *Hakea sericea* in South Africa. *Proceedings of the Fourth National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Pretoria, 1981*, pp. 51–54. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, COLLETOTRICHUM
- MORRIS, M.J. 1982. Biological control of *Hakea* by a fungus. *Veld & Flora* 68,2: 51, 52. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, COLLETOTRICHUM
- MORRIS, M.J. 1987. Biology of the *Acacia* gall rust, *Uromycladium tepperianum*. *Plant Pathology* 36: 100–106. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, UROMYCLADIUM
- MORRIS, M.J. 1989. A method for controlling *Hakea sericea* Schrad. seedlings using the fungus *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* (Penz.) Sacc. *Weed Research* 29: 449–454. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, COLLETOTRICHUM
- MORRIS, M.J. 1997. Impact of the gall-forming rust fungus *Uromycladium tepperianum* on the invasive tree *Acacia saligna* in South Africa. *Biological Control* 10: 75–82. A-WOODY PLANT,

## MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PLANT-PATHOGEN, ACACIA, UROMYCLADIUM

- MORRIS, M.J. 1999. The contribution of the gall-forming rust fungus *Uromycladium tepperianum* (Sacc.) McAlp. to the biological control of *Acacia saligna* (Labill.) Wendl. (Fabaceae) in South Africa. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999). *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 125–128. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PLANT-PATHOGEN, ACACIA, UROMYCLADIUM
- MORZE, J. 1971. Chemical control of *Eucalyptus* species. *Forestry in South Africa* 12: 49–53. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, EUCALYPTUS
- MUNDELL, Z. 1973. Imported insects will be used to control hakea. *Farmers Weekly* 10.10.1973: 48–50. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA
- MUNDELL, L. 1977. Goats 'bulldoze' their way through bush. *Farmers Weekly* 6.6.1977: 22–25. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, A-MAMMAL, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA
- MUNNIK, V. 1992. Port Jackson: naturalized resource or alien invader? *New Ground* 9: 22–25. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA
- NAUDE, C.P. & SERFONTEIN, J. 1956. Eradication of lantana and thorn trees. *Farming in South Africa* 31: 209, 210. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LANTANA
- NESER, S. 1968. *Studies on some potentially useful insect enemies of the needle-bush (Hakea spp. — Proteaceae)*. Unpublished Ph.D. thesis, Australian National University, Canberra. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-SELECTION, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA
- NESER, S. 1974. Biological control of hakea. *Unpublished duplicated papers presented at the First National Weeds Conference 13–14 August 1974*, pp. 55–57. National Programme for Environmental Sciences, CSIR Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA
- NESER, S. 1974. The control of St John's wort (*Hypericum perforatum*) in South Africa. *Unpublished duplicated papers presented at the First National Weeds Conference 13–14 August 1974*, pp. 169–173. National Programme for Environmental Sciences, CSTR Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HYPERICUM
- NESER, S. 1974. Insek-immigrante gaan hakea kortvat. *Die Landbouweekblad* 12.3.1974. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA
- NESER, S. 1976. Goggas los probleme op. *Forestry News* 1/76: 7, 8. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA
- NESER, S. 1976. Hakea in the Eastern Cape: attempts at biological control. *The Eastern Cape Naturalist* 57: 2–5. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA
- NESER, S. 1984. Insect enemies of *Hakea sericea* (Proteaceae) in Australia. In *Medecos IV: Proceedings of the Fourth International Conference on Mediterranean Ecosystems, Perth*, pp. 126, 127. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA
- NESER, S. 1984. Natural enemies of *Acacia* species in Australia. In *Medecos IV: Proceedings of the Fourth International Conference on Mediterranean Ecosystems, Perth*, pp. 126, 127. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA
- NESER, S. 1986. A most promising bud-galling wasp, *Trichilogaster acaciaelongifoliae* (Pteromalidae) established against *Acacia longifolia* in South Africa. In E.S. Delfosse (ed.), *Proceedings of the Sixth International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, 19–25 August 1984, Vancouver, Canada*, pp. 797–803. Agriculture Canada, Ottawa. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, TRICHILOGASTER
- NESER, S. & CILLIERS, C.J. 1990. Work towards biological control of *Lantana camara*: perspectives. In E.S. Delfosse (ed.), *Proceedings of the Seventh International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, 6–11 March 1988, Rome, Italy. 1st Sper. Patol. Veg. (MAF)*, pp. 363–369. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- NESER, S. & KLUGE, R.L. 1986. A seed-feeding insect showing promise in the control of a woody, invasive plant: the weevil *Erytenna consputa* on *Hakea sericea* (Proteaceae) in South Africa. In E.S. Delfosse (ed.), *Proceedings of the Sixth International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, 19–25 August 1984, Vancouver, Canada*, pp. 805–809. Agriculture Canada, Ottawa. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, ERYTENNA
- NESER, S., ZIMMERMANN, H.G., ERB, H.E. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1990. Progress and prospects for the biological control of *Solanum* weeds in South Africa. In E.S. Delfosse (ed.), *Proceedings of the Seventh International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, 6–11 March 1988, Rome, Italy. 1st Sper. Patol. Veg. (MAF)*, pp. 371–381. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- NICHOLSON, R.M. 1948. Dangerous weed checked—discovery of it's susceptibility to hormone killer allays fears. *Farmers Weekly* 18.8.1948: 109. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, HYPERICUM
- OLCKERS, T. 1990. Insects of solanums in South Africa. *Plant Protection News* 22: 4, 5. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. 1994. Entomologists capture South American insects for weed biocontrol. *Cedara News* May 18, 1994: 15. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- OLCKERS, T. 1994. Recent progress on biological control of three *Solanum* weeds in South Africa. *Plant Protection News* 38: 2–4. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. 1995. Indigenous parasitoids inhibit the establishment of a gall-forming moth imported for the biological control of *Solanum elaeagnifolium* Cavanilles (Solanaceae) in South Africa. *African Entomology* 3,1: 85–87. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. 1995. Quarantine testing of South American insects imported for biological control of bugweed. *Cedara News* April 1995: 15. A-



- WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, QUARANTINE, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. 1996. Improved prospects for biological control of three solanum weeds in South Africa. In V.C. Moran & J.H. Hoffmann (eds), *Proceedings of the Ninth International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds*, 19–26 January 1996, Stellenbosch, South Africa, pp. 307–312. University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. 1997. Bugweed (*Solanum mauritianum*): a new biocontrol agent on this weed in South Africa. *Plant Protection News* 48: 12–14. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. 1997. *Solanum elaeagnifolium* (silverleaf nightshade, satansbos): biological and integrated control of this weed in South Africa. *Plant Protection News* 49: 2–4. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. 1998. Biology and host range of *Platyphora semiviridis*, a leaf beetle evaluated as a potential biological control agent for *Solanum mauritianum* in South Africa. *BioControl* 43: 225–239. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, PLATYPHORA
- OLCKERS, T. 1999. Biological control of *Solanum mauritianum* Scopoli (Solanaceae) in South Africa: a review of candidate agents, progress and future prospects. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1998)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 65–73. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-SELECTION, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. 2000. Biology, host specificity and risk assessment of *Gargaphia decoris*, the first agent to be released in South Africa for the biological control of the invasive tree *Solanum mauritianum*. *BioControl* 45: 373–388. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-SELECTION, RISK-ASSESSMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, GARGAPHIA
- OLCKERS, T. 2000. Biology and physiological host range of four species of *Platyphora* Gistel (Coleoptera: Chrysomelidae) associated with *Solanum mauritianum* Scop. (Solanaceae) in South Africa. *The Coleopterists Bulletin* 54,4: 497–510. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, PLATYPHORA
- OLCKERS, T. 2000. A new agent released in South Africa for the biological control of bugweed. *Plant Protection News* 56: 7–9. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. 2001. The bugweed lace bug (*Gargaphia decoris*). A natural enemy of bugweed (*Solanum mauritianum*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 4. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, GARGAPHIA
- OLCKERS, T. 2001. Biological control of bugweed: research and implementation. *Prickly Pear* 2,3: 2, 3. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. 2002. The flowerbud weevil, *Anthonomus santacruzi*: a possible new agent for the biological control of bugweed in South Africa. *Plant Protection News* 60: 3, 4. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, ANTHONOMUS
- OLCKERS, T. 2003. Assessing the risks associated with the release of a flowerbud weevil, *Anthonomus santacruzi*, against the invasive tree *Solanum mauritianum* in South Africa. *Biological Control* 28: 302–312. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, ANTHONOMUS
- OLCKERS, T. 2004. Biology, host specificity and risk assessment of the leaf-mining flea beetle, *Acallepitrax* sp. nov., a candidate agent for the biological control of the invasive tree *Solanum mauritianum* in South Africa. *BioControl* 49: 323–339. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, ACALLEPITRIX
- OLCKERS, T. & HARDING, G.B. 1989. Spread of *Algarobius prosopis* in mesquite infestations. *Plant Protection News* 18: 8. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PROSOPIS, ALGAROBIOUS
- OLCKERS, T., HOFFMAN, J.H., MORAN, V.C., IMPSON, F.A.C. & HILL, M.P. 1999. The initiation of biological control programmes against *Solanum elaeagnifolium* Cavanilles and *S. sisymbriifolium* Lamarck (Solanaceae) in South Africa. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 55–63. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, GRATIANA, LEPTINOTARSA
- OLCKERS, T. & HULLEY, P.E. 1989. Insect herbivore diversity on the exotic weed *Solanum mauritianum* Scop. and three other *Solanum* species in the eastern Cape. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 52: 81–93. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, INVASIVENESS, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. & HULLEY, P.E. 1989. Seasonality and biology of common insect herbivores attacking *Solanum* species in the eastern Cape Province. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 52: 109–118. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. & HULLEY, P.E. 1989. On the biology and *Solanum* host range of *Conchyloctenia tigrina* Oliv. (Chrysomelidae: Cassidinae). *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 52,2: 191–199. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, CONCHYLOCTENIA
- OLCKERS, T. & HULLEY, P.E. 1991. Impoverished insect herbivore faunas on the exotic bugweed *Solanum mauritianum* Scop. relative to indigenous *Solanum* species in Natal-KwaZulu and the Transkei. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 54: 39–50. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, INVASIVENESS, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. & HULLEY, P.E. 1991. Notes on some insect galls associated with *Solanum* plants in South Africa. *South African Journal of Zoology* 26: 55–61. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. & HULLEY, P.E. 1991. Seed damage by three local *Heteroptera* species on the exotic weed *Solanum elaeagnifolium* Cav. (Solanaceae). *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 54: 269, 270. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT,

- N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. & HULLEY, P.E. 1994. Resolving ambiguous results of host-specificity tests: the case of two *Leptinotarsa* species (Coleoptera: Chrysomelidae) for biological control of *Solanum elaeagnifolium* Cavanilles (Solanaceae) in South Africa. *African Entomology* 2: 137–144. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, LEPTINOTARSA
- OLCKERS, T. & HULLEY, P.E. 1995. Importance of preintroduction surveys in the biological control of *Solanum* weeds in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 52: 179–185. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, TECHNIQUE, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T., HULLEY, P.E. & HILL, M.P. 1995. Insect herbivores associated with indigenous species of *Solanum* (Solanaceae) in the Transvaal, South Africa and in Namibia. *African Entomology* 3: 49–57. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-SELECTION, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. & LOTTER, W.D. 2004. Possible non-target feeding by the bugweed lace bug *Gargaphia decoris* (Tingidae) in South Africa: field evaluations support predictions of laboratory host-specificity tests. *African Entomology* 12: 283–285. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, TECHNIQUE, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, GARGAPHIA
- OLCKERS, T., MEDAL, J.C. & GANDOLFO, D.E. 2002. Insect herbivores associated with species of *Solanum* (Solanaceae) in northeastern Argentina and southeastern Paraguay, with reference to biological control of weeds in South Africa and the United States of America. *Florida Entomologist* 85: 254–260. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-SELECTION, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1991. Biological control of silverleaf nightshade, *Solanum elaeagnifolium*, and bugweed, *Solanum mauritanum* (Solanaceae) in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 137–155. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1995. Biological control of 'Satans's bush' (*Solanum elaeagnifolium*): a leap of faith. In E.S. Delfosse & R.R. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of the Eighth International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds*, 2–7 February 1992. Lincoln University, Canterbury, New Zealand, pp. 425–429. DSIR/CSIRO, Melbourne. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- OLCKERS, T., ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1995. Interpreting ambiguous results of host-specificity tests in biological control of weeds: assessment of two *Leptinotarsa* species (Chrysomelidae) for the control of *Solanum elaeagnifolium* (Solanaceae) in South Africa. *Biological Control* 5: 336–344. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, TECHNIQUE, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, LEPTINOTARSA
- OLCKERS, T., ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1998. Integrating biological control into the management of alien invasive weeds in South Africa. *Pesticide Outlook* 9,6: 9–16. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, INTEGRATED-CONTROL
- OOSTHUIZEN, M.J. 1964. The biological control of *Lantana camara* L. in Natal. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 27: 3–16. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- PARKER, F. 2002. *The impacts of different methods of alien plant control on the recovery of fynbos ecosystems*. Unpublished M.Sc. thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, IMPACT, N-PLANT, RESTORATION
- PARKER-ALLIE, F., RICHARDSON, D.M. & HOLMES, P.M. 2005. The effects of past management practices for invasive alien plant control on subsequent recovery of fynbos on the Cape Peninsula, South Africa. *South African Journal of Botany* 70: 804–815. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, ACACIA, RESTORATION, COMMUNITY STRUCTURE
- PAUW, A. & JOHNSON, S. 1999. *Table Mountain: a natural history*. Fernwood Press, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, FOREST, RIVER, FIRE, POLLINATION, MUTUALISM, CONSERVATION
- PEDROSA-MACEDO, J.H., OLCKERS, T., VITORINO, M.D. & CAXAMBU, M.G. 2003. Phytophagous Arthropods Associated with *Solanum mauritanum* Scopoli (Solanaceae) in the First Plateau of Paraná, Brazil: A Cooperative Project on Biological Control of Weeds between Brazil and South Africa. *Neotropical Entomology* 32,3: 519–522. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CO-OPERATION, AGENT-SELECTION, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- PICKWORTH, G. 1976. Some thoughts on invader weeds in Natal. *Monograph, Department of Agricultural Technical Services, Natal Region*, 24.5.1976: 1. A-WOODY PLANT, ACACIA
- PIENAAR, A.J. 1950. The American bramble, a menace to pastures. Control with chemical weed killers. *Farming in South Africa* 25: 79, 80. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, RUBUS
- PIETERSE, P.J. & BOUCHER, C. 1997. Is burning a standing population of invasive legumes a viable control method? Effects of a wildfire on an *Acacia mearnsii* population. *Southern African Forestry Journal* 180: 15–21. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, FIRE, REGENERATION, ACACIA
- PONS, J.J. 1978. Dig it out now! *Natal Wildlife* 19,5: 3. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, CHROMOLAENA
- PRINS, N., HOLMES, P.M. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2004. A reference framework for the restoration of riparian vegetation in the Western Cape, South Africa, degraded by invasive Australian acacias. *South African Journal of Botany* 70: 767–776. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, RIPARIAN, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, ACACIA
- PRINSLOO, F.W. & SCOTT, D.F. 1999. Streamflow responses to the clearing of alien invasive trees from riparian zones at three sites in the Western Cape Province. *Southern African Forestry Journal* 185: 1–7. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, MANAGEMENT, RIPARIAN
- PRYKE, S.R. & SAMWAYS, M.J. 2001. Width of grassland linkages for the conservation of butterflies in South African afforested areas. *Biological Conservation* 101: 85–96. A-WOODY PLANT,

- GRASSLAND, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 1985. *Methods for the eradication of invasive plants in the Fynbos*. Forestry Department, Pamphlet, March 1985. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM89-343). A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, TECHNIQUE
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 1985. *Studies on aspects of the integrated control of Hakea sericea in the southwestern Cape Province, South Africa*. M.Sc. thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, HAKEA
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 1994. The hakea saga: the continuing chronicle of an Australian invader. *Journal of the Mountain Club of South Africa* 95: 64–70. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, HAKEA
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 1996. Forestry trees as alien invaders: the current situation and prospects for the future. In O.T. Sandlund, P.J. Schei & A. Viken (eds), *UN/Norway Conference on Alien Species*, pp. 127–134. Norwegian Ministry of Environment, Trondheim. A-WOODY PLANT, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 1998. Commercial forestry and agroforestry as sources of invasive alien trees and shrubs. In J. Schei & O.T. Sandlund (eds), *Invasive species and biodiversity management*, pp. 237–257. Chapman & Hall, London. A-WOODY PLANT, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, AGROFORESTRY, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 1998. Forestry trees as invasive aliens. *Conservation Biology* 12: 18–26. A-WOODY PLANT, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 1998. Invasive alien trees: the price of forestry. In *Invaders from planet earth*. *World conservation Double Issue* 4/97–1/98, pp. 14, 15. IUCN, Gland, Switzerland. A-WOODY PLANT, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS
- RICHARDSON, D.M., BINGGELI, P. & SCHROTH, G. 2004. Invasive agroforestry trees: problems and solutions. In G. Schroth, G.A.B. de Fonseca, C.A. Harvey, C. Gascon, H. Vasconcelos & A.-M.N. Izac (eds), *Agroforestry and biodiversity conservation in tropical landscapes*, pp. 371–396. Island Press, Washington, D.C. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, MANAGEMENT, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, UTILISATION, AGROFORESTRY
- RICHARDSON, D.M., COWLING, R.M. & LAMONT, B.B. 1996. Non-linearities, synergisms and plant extinctions in South African fynbos and Australian kwongan. *Biodiversity and Conservation* 5: 1035–1046. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVADABILITY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & MANDERS, P.T. 1985. Predicting pathogen induced mortality in *Hakea sericea* (Proteaceae), an aggressive alien plant invader in South Africa. *Annals of Applied Biology* 106: 243–254. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, IMPACT, N-PLANT-PATHOGEN, HAKEA, COLLETOTRICHUM
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & VAN WILGEN, B.W. 1986. The effects of fire in felled *Hakea sericea* and natural fynbos and implications for weed control in mountain catchments. *South African Forestry Journal* 139: 4–14. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, FIRE, HAKEA
- RICHARDSON, D.M., VAN WILGEN, B.W., LE MAITRE, D.C., HIGGINS, K.B. & FORSYTH, G.G. 1994. A computer-based system for fire management in the mountains of the Cape Province, South Africa. *International Journal of Wildland Fire* 4: 17–32. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, FIRE, MANAGEMENT, MODELLING, TECHNIQUE
- ROBERTSON, C.C. 1914. The mesquite or algarba tree, and *Prosopis pubescens*, the screw bean. *Department of Agriculture Journal* 67. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, FUELWOOD, GRAZING, PROSOPIS
- ROETS, W. 2005. *The importance of healthy river banks and flood plains in maintaining healthy river ecosystems*. Internal report for CapeNature. A-WOODY PLANTS, RIVER, RIPARIAN, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- ROQUES, A., ROUX-MORABITO, G., HOFFMANN, J.H., KLEINHENTZ, M. & GOUROV, A. 2004. Determining the suitability of a European cone weevil, *Pissodes validirostris*, for biological control of invasive pines in South Africa. In J.M. Cullen, D.T. Briesse, D.J. Kritikos, W.M. Lonsdale, L. Morin & J.K. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of the Eleventh International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds*, pp. 315–321. CSIRO Entomology, Canberra, Australia. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, AGENT-SELECTION, SEED-FEEDER, BIOCONTROL, PINUS, PISSODES
- SCHMIDT, F., HOFFMANN, J.H. & DONNELLY, D. 1999. Levels of damage caused by *Melanterius servulus* Pascoe (Coleoptera: Curculionidae), a seed-feeding weevil introduced into South Africa for biological control of *Paraserianthes lophantha* (Fabaceae). *African Entomology* 7,1: 107–112. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA)
- SCHUTTE, K.H. 1953. *Hakea* eradication by means of new herbicides. *The Journal of the South African Forestry Association* 23: 30–36. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, HAKEA
- SENOGLES, J. 1978. *Eupatorium* eradication. *Natal Wildlife* 19,6: 7. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, CHROMOLAENA
- SERDANI, M. 2001. The *Acacia* gall rust (*Uromycladium tepperianum*). A fungal pathogen of port jackson (*Acacia saligna*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 9. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PLANT-PATHOGEN, ACACIA, UROMYCLADIUM
- SERFONTEIN, J. 1974. Die omvang van en vordering met die onkruidbeheerprogramme van die Departement Landbou-Tegniese Dienste. *Unpublished duplicated papers presented at the First National Weeds Conference* 13–14 August 1974, pp. 15–20. National Programme

- for Environmental Sciences. A-WOODY PLANT, A-SUCCULENT PLANT, MANAGEMENT, EVALUATION, HAKEA, HYPERICUM, OPUNTIA, SOLANUM
- SIEBERT, M.W. 1977. Candidates for the biological control of *Solanum elaeagnifolium* Cav., in South Africa. 2. Laboratory studies on the biology of *Arvelius albopunctatus* (De Geer) (Hemiptera: Pentatomidae). *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 140: 165–170. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-SELECTION, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM, ARVELIUS
- SIMELANE, D.O. 2001. The lantana herringbone leafminer (*Ophiomyia camarae*). A natural enemy of lantana (*Lantana camara*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 22. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA, OPHIOMYIA
- SIMELANE, D.O. 2002. Biology and host range of *Ophiomyia camarae*, a biological control agent for *Lantana camara* in South Africa. *BioControl* 47: 575–585. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA, OPHIOMYIA
- SPARKS, H.E. 1999. The initiation of a biological control programme against *Macfadyena unguis-cati* (L.) Gentry (Bignoniaceae) in South Africa. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 153–157. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, MACFADYENA
- STIRTON, C.H. 1977. Some thoughts on the polyploid complex *Lantana camara* L. (Verbenaceae). *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Stellenbosch, 1977*, pp. 321–340. A-WOODY PLANT, TAXONOMY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- STIRTON, C.H. 1978. Tick berries on the march. *Veld & Flora* 624: 8–11. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- STRATHIE, L.W. 2003. Natural insect enemies for the control of *Chromolaena odorata*. In *Proceedings of the South African Sugar Technologists' Association* 77: 196–199. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- STRATHIE, L.W. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1993. Pre-winter settling by prepupae of a seed-feeding weevil *Rhyssomatus marginatus* Fähræus (Coleoptera: Curculionidae), a biocontrol agent of *Sesbania punicea* (Cav.) Benth. (Fabaceae) in South Africa. *African Entomology* 1: 141–144. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA, RHYSSOMATUS
- STRATHIE, L.W., PARASRAM, W., MUIR, M. & ZACHARIADES, C. 2004. Determining optimal strategies for the establishment of *Pareuchaetes insulata* (Walker) (Lepidoptera: Arctiidae) on *Chromolaena odorata* (L.) King & Robinson (Asteraceae) in South Africa. ABSTRACT. In J.M. Cullen, D.T. Briese, D.J. Kriticos, W.M. Lonsdale, L. Morin & J.K. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of the Eleventh International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds, April 2003*, p. 480. CSIRO Entomology, Canberra. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA, PAREUCHAETES
- STRATHIE, L.W. & ZACHARIADES, C. 2002. Biological control of *Chromolaena odorata* in South Africa: developments in research and implementation. In C. Zachariades, R. Muniappan & L.W. Strathie (eds), *Proceedings of the Fifth International Workshop on Biological Control and Management of Chromolaena odorata, October 2000*, pp. 74–79. ARC-PPRI, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- STRATHIE, L.W. & ZACHARIADES, C. 2004. Insects for the biological control of *Chromolaena odorata*: surveys in the northern Caribbean and efforts undertaken in South Africa. In M.D. Day & R.E.C. McFadyen (eds), *Proceedings of the Sixth International Workshop on Biological Control and Management of Chromolaena, May 2003*. ACIAR Technical Reports 55: 45–52. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- STRATHIE, L.W. & ZACHARIADES, C. 2005. Management of the invasive plant *Chromolaena odorata* in the Greater St Lucia Wetland Park: the role of biological control. In D. Scott, F. Ellery & G. Fakude (eds), *Proceedings of the Conference on Environment of the St Lucia Wetland: Processes of Change, Cape Vidal, September, 2003* (in press). A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- STRATHIE, L.W., ZACHARIADES, C., DEN BREEYEN, A., SISHUBA, N. & GAREEB, M. 2004. Biological control of *Chromolaena odorata*, a major weed of the developing world. Abstract. *Fourth International Weeds Science Congress, Durban, South Africa, June 2004*. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- STRATHIE-KORRÛBEL, L. 2001. Biological control of *Chromolaena odorata* (trifid weed). *Southern Africa Weed Science Society Newsletter* 62: 7, 8. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- STRATHIE-KORRÛBEL, L.W. 2000. The South African programme on the biological control of *Chromolaena odorata* (trifid weed) and its global significance. *Plant Protection News* 57: 4–7. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- STRATHIE-KORRÛBEL, L.W. & ZACHARIADES, C. 2001. Fifth International Workshop on Biological Control and Management of *Chromolaena odorata*. *Plant Protection News* 58: 5–7. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- STUBBINGS, J.A. 1977. A case against controlling introduced acacias. *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Stellenbosch, 1977*, pp. 89–107. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, ACACIA
- TAYLOR, H.C. 1974. Combat and control of hakea. *Fruit and Fruit Technology Research Institute, Stellenbosch, Information Bulletin* 2614. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, HAKEA
- TAYLOR, H.C. 1978. Capensis. In M.J.A. Werger (ed.), *Biogeography and ecology of southern Africa*, pp. 171–229. Junk, The Hague. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), HAKEA, LANTANA, LEPTOSPERMUM, PINUS, PITTOSPORUM, SESBANIA
- TAYLOR, H.C., MACDONALD, S.A. & MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1985. Invasive alien woody plants in the Cape of Good Hope Nature Reserve. II. Results of

- a second survey from 1976 to 1980. *South African Journal of Botany* 51: 21–29. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT
- THERON, J.M. 1976. Studies of hakea. *Bosforus*, pp. 19–21. Faculty of Forestry, University of Stellenbosch, Stellenbosch. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, HAKEA
- THERON, J.M. 1978. Proewe met Round-up op hakea. *Bosforus*, pp. 50–53. Faculty of Forestry, University of Stellenbosch, Stellenbosch. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, HAKEA
- THERON, J.M. 1979. Round-up control of *Hakea sericea*. *Bosforus*, p. 45. Faculty of Forestry, University of Stellenbosch, Stellenbosch. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, HAKEA
- TIMBILLA, J.A., ZACHARIADES, C. & BRAIMAH, H. 2003. Biological control and management of the alien invasive shrub *Chromolaena odorata* in Africa. In P. Neuenschwander, C. Borgemeister & J. Langewald (eds), *Biological control in IPM systems in Africa*, pp. 145–160. CABI. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- URBAN, A.J., DAY, M.D., EVANS, H. & DEN BREEËN, A. 2001. Global lantana biocontrol initiative. *Biocontrol News and Information* 22,3: 56N–58N. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- VAN DEN BERG, M.A. 1977. Natural enemies of certain acacias in Australia. *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Stellenbosch, 1977*, pp. 75–82. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA
- VAN DEN BERG, M.A. 1980. *Trichilogaster acaciaelongifoliae* (Froggatt) (Hymenoptera Pteromalidae): a potential agent for the biological control of *Acacia longifolia* Willd. in South Africa. *Proceedings of the Third National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Pretoria, 1979*, pp. 61–64. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, TRICHILOGASTER
- VAN DEN BERG, M.A. 1980. Natural enemies of *Acacia cyclops* A. Cunn. ex G. Don and *Acacia saligna* (Labill.) Wendl. in Western Australia. I. Lepidoptera. *Phytophylactica* 12: 165–167. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, LEPIDOPTERA
- VAN DEN BERG, M.A. 1980. Natural enemies of *Acacia cyclops* A. Cunn. ex G. Don and *Acacia saligna* (Labill.) Wendl. in Western Australia. II. Coleoptera. *Phytophylactica* 12: 169–171. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, COLEOPTERA
- VAN DEN BERG, M.A. 1980. Natural enemies of *Acacia cyclops* A. Cunn. ex G. Don and *Acacia saligna* (Labill.) Wendl. in Western Australia. III. Hemiptera. *Phytophylactica* 12: 223–226. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, HEMIPTERA
- VAN DEN BERG, M.A. 1981. A rearing method for *Rhyssomatus marginatus* Fahr. (Coleoptera Curculionidae), introduced into South Africa for the possible biocontrol of *Sesbania punicea* (Cav.) Benth. *Phytophylactica* 13,2: 109–111. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SESBANIA, RHYSSOMATUS
- VAN DER MERWE, C.R. 1978. Gee muskietboom regmatige plek. *Die Landbouweekblad* 22.9.1978: 44, 45. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, FUELWOOD, GRAZING, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, PROSOPIS
- VAN DER MERWE, I. DU T. 1987. *Die muskietboom (Prosopis spp.) in perspektief*. Boeredag: Humansdam, Vanwyksvlei: 12 Maart 1987. WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, PROSOPIS
- VAN DER VENTER, H.A. 1981. Biological control of alien trees in South Africa. *Journal of Dendrology* 1,1/2: 34, 35. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- VAN SCHALKWYK, W. 1977. Lantana invasion of Tzaneen. *Farmers Weekly* 23 November 1977: 14, 15. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA
- VAN VUUREN, C. 1997. Clear catchments and streams of 'thirsty' alien invasive plants. *Farmers Weekly* 5 December 1997: 26, 27 (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM98-0011). A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, MANAGEMENT
- VAN WILGEN, B.W., BOND, W.J. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1992. Ecosystem management. In R.M. Cowling (ed.), *The ecology of fynbos: nutrients, fire and diversity*, pp. 345–371. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT
- VAN WILGEN, B.W. & HOLMES, P.M. 1986. *Fire behaviour and soil temperatures during fire in Acacia cyclops at Walker Bay State Forest*. Report No. J6/86. Jonkershoek Forestry Research Centre, Stellenbosch. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, IMPACT, FIRE, FIRE-INTENSITY, BIOMASS, SOIL-TEMPERATURE, ACACIA
- VAN WILGEN, B.W., LARSEN, E.J., MARAIS, C., GÖRGENS, A.H.M., CHAPMAN, R.A., WILLEMS, T. & LITTLE, P.R. 1999. The importance of alien plant invasions for Water Resource Planning in the Fynbos Catchment Areas of the Western and Eastern Cape. *Proceedings of the Ninth South African Hydrology Symposium: 29–30 November 1999*. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC
- VAN WILGEN, B.W., LITTLE, P.R., CHAPMAN, R.A., GÖRGENS, A.H.M., WILLEMS, T. & MARAIS, C. 1997. The sustainable development of water resources: History, costs and benefits of alien plant control programmes. *South African Journal of Science* 93: 404–411. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, HISTORY
- VAN WILGEN, B.W., RICHARDSON, D.M. & SEYDACK, A.H.W. 1994. Managing fynbos for biodiversity: constraints and options in a fire-prone environment. *South African Journal of Science* 90: 322–329. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, FIRE, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, CONSERVATION
- VAN ZYL, D. 1977. Hou die vriend onder die duim. *Die Landbouweekblad* 4.3.1977: 40–43. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, FUELWOOD, GRAZING, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, PROSOPIS



- VILJOEN, B.D., ERASMUS, D.J. & COETZER, R.L.J. 1996. Efficacy of candidate herbicides applied to stumps of beefwood, *Casuarina equisetifolia*. *Applied Plant Science* 10,1: 26–29. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, CASUARINA
- VILJOEN, B.D. & WASSERMANN, V.D. 2004. Suppression of silver-leaf bitter apple (*Solanum elaeagnifolium* Cav.) by cultivated pasture crops under dry-land conditions: a preliminary study. *South African Journal of Plant and Soil* 21,1: 63–66. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, SOLANUM
- VISSER, N. 2000. Biologie en ekologie van *Prosopis*, met spesifieke verwysing na die ariede en semi-ariëde dele van die Karoo: n' literatuuroorsig. *Eisenburg Joernaal* 2000: 59–63. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, UTILISATION, GRAZING, PROSOPIS
- WASSERMANN, V.D., ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & NESER, S. 1988. The weed silver-leaf bitter apple (satansbos) (*Solanum elaeagnifolium* Cav.) with special reference to its status in South Africa. *Department of Agriculture and Water Supply, Technical Communication* 214: 1–10. Pretoria, Republic of South Africa. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, SOLANUM
- WICHT, C.L. 1945. *Report of the committee on the preservation of the vegetation of the South-Western Cape*. Special publication of the Royal Society of South Africa, Cape Town, 56 pp. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, CONSERVATION, ACACIA, MANAGEMENT
- WILLIAMS, H. 2001. The cat's claw creeper golden spotted tortoise beetle (*Charidotis auroguttata*). A natural enemy of cat's claw creeper (*Macfadyena unguis-cati*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 5. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, MACFADYENA, CHARIDOTIS
- WILLIAMS, H.E. 2002. Life history and laboratory host range of *Charidotis auroguttata* (Boheman) (Coleoptera: Chrysomelidae), the first natural enemy released against *Macfadyena unguis-cati* (L.) Gentry (Bignoniaceae) in South Africa. *The Coleopterists Bulletin* 56,2: 299–307. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, MACFADYENA, CHARIDOTIS
- WILLIAMS, H.E. 2004. Unsuitability of *Charidotis pygmaea* for biocontrol of *Lantana camara* in Africa. *BioControl* 49,2: 211–223. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, LANTANA, CHARIDOTIS
- WOODS, D.H. 1961. The menace of alien vegetation—a plea for urgent research and biological action. *Cape Wildlife* 17: 1, 2. A-WOODY PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, RESEARCH, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA
- WOODS, D.H. 1977. Conservation problems—mesquite—tough enemy alien. *Veld & Flora* 63,1: 3. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, CONSERVATION, PROSOPIS
- WOODS, D.H. 1977. Conservation problems—alien vegetation in South African National Parks, Game Reserves and Nature Reserves. *Veld & Flora* 63,2: 2. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION, ACACIA, NERIUM, OPUNTIA, PROSOPIS, MANAGEMENT
- WOODS, D.H. 1977. Once more: mesquite. *Veld & Flora* 63,3: 7. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, PROSOPIS
- YELENIK, S., RICHARDSON, D.M. & STOCK, W.D. 2002. Fertilizing the fynbos. How does one restore the over-fertilized soils of newly cleared areas for regenerating fynbos species? *Veld & Flora* 88,4: 164, 165. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, SOIL, NITROGEN, NUTRIENT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION
- ZACHARIADES, C. 2001. Report on the Fifth Chromolaena Workshop. *Biocontrol News & Information* 22,1: 16N, 17N. CABI. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- ZACHARIADES, C. 2003. Biotype matching of chromolaena for more successful biological control. In *Proceedings of the South African Sugar Technologists' Association* 77: 216–219. A-WOODY PLANT, TAXONOMY, ORIGIN, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- ZACHARIADES, C., GAREEB, M. & KLUGE, R.L. 2004. Pre-release studies on *Lixus aemulus*, a new biocontrol agent on *Chromolaena odorata*: biology, host range and impact. Abstract. In J.M. Cullen, D.T. Briesse, D.J. Kriticos, W.M. Lonsdale, L. Morin & J.K. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of the Eleventh International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds, April 2003*, pp. 358. CSIRO Entomology, Canberra. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA, LIXUS
- ZACHARIADES, C. & GOODALL, J.M. 2002. Distribution, impact and management of *Chromolaena odorata* in southern Africa. In C. Zachariades, R. Muniappan & L.W. Strathie (eds), *Proceedings of the Fifth International Workshop on Biological Control and Management of Chromolaena odorata*, pp. 34–39. ARC-PPRI, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, CHROMOLAENA
- ZACHARIADES, C., GOODALL, J.[M.] & STRATHIE, L.W. 2005. *Invasive alien plants on the Wild Coast: report for the PDF-B Period of the GEF Wild Coast Project*. Unpublished PPRI report, 174 pp. A-WOODY PLANT, FOREST, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, CHROMOLAENA, LANTANA
- ZACHARIADES, C., KLUGE, R.L., NESER, S. & STRATHIE, L.W. 1998. Promising new candidates for the biocontrol of *Chromolaena odorata*. In P. Ferrar, R. Muniappan & K.P. Jayanthi (eds), *Proceedings of the Fourth International Workshop on Biological Control and Management of Chromolaena odorata*, pp. 73–79. Agricultural Experiment Station, University of Guam. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- ZACHARIADES, C., MUNIAPPAN, R. & STRATHIE, L.W. (eds) 2002. *Proceedings of the Fifth International Workshop on Biological Control and Management of Chromolaena odorata, Durban, October 2000*. ARC-PPRI, Pretoria, 186 pp. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA

- ZACHARIADES, C. & STRATHIE, L.W. 1996. New developments announced in South Africa. *Chromolaena odorata Newsletter* 11: 2. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- ZACHARIADES, C., STRATHIE, L.W., GAREEB, M. & MUIR, D. 2004. Two insect agents established on chromolaena in the field in South Africa. *Chromolaena odorata Newsletter* 6: 3–5. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- ZACHARIADES, C., STRATHIE, L.W. & KLUGE, R.L. 2002. Biology, host-specificity and effectiveness of insects for the biocontrol of *Chromolaena odorata* in South Africa. In C. Zachariades, R. Muniappan & L.W. Strathie (eds), *Proceedings of the Fifth International Workshop on Biological Control and Management of Chromolaena odorata, Durban, South Africa, 23–25 October 2000*, pp. 160–166. ARC-PPRI, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- ZACHARIADES, C., STRATHIE, L.W. & PARASRAM, W.A. 2001. The chromolaena leaf-feeding moths (*Pareuchaetes insulata* and *Pareuchaetes pseudoinsulata*). A natural enemy of trifid weed (*Chromolaena odorata*) in South Africa. *Dossiers on Biological Control Agents available to aid Alien Plant Control* 10. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA, PAREUCHAETES
- ZACHARIADES, C. & STRATHIE-KORRÛBEL, L.W. 1999. Insects for the biological control of *Chromolaena odorata* in South Africa: recent research and implementation. *Chromolaena odorata Newsletter* 13: 3, 4. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- ZACHARIADES, C., STRATHIE-KORRÛBEL, L.W. & DEN BREEYEN, A. 2000. Selection of natural enemies for the biological control of *Chromolaena odorata* in South Africa. In N.R. Spencer (ed.), *Proceedings of the Tenth Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds, July 1999*, pp. 249. United States Department of Agriculture, Agricultural Research Services, Sidney, Montana and Montana State University, Bozeman, Montana. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, AGENT-SELECTION, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- ZACHARIADES, C., STRATHIE-KORRÛBEL, L.W. & KLUGE, R.L. 1999. The South African programme on the biological control of *Chromolaena odorata* (L.) King & Robinson (Asteraceae) using insects. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 89–102. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- ZACHARIADES, C., VON SENGEL, I. & BARKER, N.P. 2004. Evidence for a northern Caribbean origin for the southern African biotype of *Chromolaena odorata*. In M.D. Day & R.E.C. McFadyen (eds), *Proceedings of the Sixth International Workshop on Biological Control and Management of Chromolaena, May 2003. ACIAR Technical Reports* 55: 25–27. A-WOODY PLANT, TAXONOMY, ORIGIN, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CHROMOLAENA
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1974. Preliminary work on the biological control of satansbos, *Solanum elaeagnifolium* Cay. *Unpublished duplicated papers presented at the First National Weeds Conference 13–14 August 1974*, pp. 151–168. National Programme for Environmental Sciences, CSIR. Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SOLANUM
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1991. Biological control of mesquite, *Prosopis* spp. in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 175–186. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, PROSOPIS

## 8.5 Alien Plants—Nonspecific Life Form (307)

- ALLSOPP, J.C.N., BOND, W.J., MIDGLEY, G.F. & RUTHERFORD, M.C. 1998. Global climate change and the South African flora: past, present and future. *PAGES (Past Global Changes, News of the International Paleoscience Community)* 6: 19. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, GLOBAL-CHANGE
- BARKER, N.P., VON SENGEL, I., HOWIS, S., ZACHARIADES, C. & RIPLEY, B.S. 2005. Plant phylogeography based on rDNA ITS sequence data: two examples from the Asteraceae. In: F.T. Bakker, L.W. Chatrou, B. Gravendeel & P.B. Pelser (eds), *Plant species-level systematics: new perspectives on patterns and process. Regnum Vegetabile* 142: 217–244. Gantner Verlag, Ruggell. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, ORIGIN
- COWLING, R.M., RICHARDSON, D.M. & PIERCE, S.M. (eds) 1997. *Vegetation of southern Africa*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT
- DEAN, W.R.J., MILTON, S.J. & SIEGFRIED, W.R. 1990. Dispersal of seeds as nest material by birds in semi-arid Karoo shrubland. *Ecology* 71: 1299–1306. A-PLANT, KAROO, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, SEED-DISPERSAL
- DEAN[née MILTON], S.J., HOLMES, P.M. & WEISS, P.W. 1986. Seed biology of invasive alien plants in South Africa and South West Africa/Namibia. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 157–170. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, REGENERATION, SEED-SIZE, DIASPORE TYPE, SEED-BANK, DORMANCY
- EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W. 1995. *Environmental and dynamic determinants of vegetation distribution in the Kouga and Baviaanskloof Mountains, Eastern Cape*. M.Sc. thesis, Botany Department, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-PLANT, INVASION, GLOBAL-CHANGE, ECOLOGY, BIOMES, DATA
- JOUBERT, L. 2004. New research body aims to throw light on proliferation of alien vegetation in Cape. *Cape Times* 02 July 2004. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2004-0152) A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, FYNBOS, RESEARCH
- KNIGHT, R.S. 1986. Fruit displays of indigenous and invasive alien plants in the South Western Cape. *South African Journal of Botany* 52,3: 249–255. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, AVIAN-FRUGIVORY, MUTUALISM
- RICHARDSON, D.M., ROUGET, M., RALSTON, S.J., COWLING, R.M., VAN RENSBURG, B.J. & THUILLER, W. 2005. Species richness of alien plants in South Africa: environmental correlates and the relationship with indigenous plant species



- richness. *Ecoscience* 12: 391–402. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVADABILITY, N-BIODIVERSITY, SPECIES-MODELLING, GIS
- RUTHERFORD, M.C., PRESSINGER, F.M. & MUSIL, C.F. 1986. Standing crops, growth rates and resource use efficiency in alien invaded ecosystems. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 189–199. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, BIOMASS, NUTRIENT, HYDROLOGY
- ADAMSON, R.S. & SALTER, T.M. (eds) 1950. *Flora of the Cape Peninsula*, 889 pp. Juta, Cape Town. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), EICHHORNIA, HAKEA, HYPERICUM, LANTANA, LEPTOSPERMUM, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- ANDERSON, T.A. 2000. *Alien plant directory for the Northern Cape Province*, 12 pp. Working for Water Programme, Botany Department, McGregor Museum. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION
- ANONYMOUS 1983. Identifying invasive aliens. *Veld & Flora* 69,4: 133. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION
- ANONYMOUS 2004. Identifying invaders [*Argemone ochroleuca* and *Acacia podalyriifolia*]: Mexican poppy and pearl acacia. *Urban Green File* 9,2: 8. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ACACIA, ARGEMONE
- ANONYMOUS 2004. Identifying invaders [*Hedychium gardnerianum* and *Cardiospermum grandiflorum*]: Kahili ginger lily and balloon vine. *Urban Green File* 9,1: 11. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, CARDIOSPERMUM, HEDYCHUM
- ANONYMOUS 2004. The grey and white poplars and the moth catcher [*Populus X canescens* and *Populus alba* and *Araujia sericifera*]: identifying invaders. *Urban Green File* 9,1: 10, 11. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ARAUJIA, POPULUS
- ANONYMOUS 2004. *Lantana camara* (tick berry, cherry pie) [category one invader and must be removed immediately]. *Gardener* December 2004/January 2005: 5. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, LANTANA
- BOUCHER, C. 1977. A provisional check list of flowering plants and ferns in the Cape Hangklip area. *Journal of South African Botany* 43: 57–80. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), EUCALYPTUS, HAKEA, LANTANA, LEPTOSPERMUM, PINUS
- BROMILOW, C. 1995. *Problem plants of South Africa*. Briza, Pretoria. (Revised Edition published in 2001) A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, MANAGEMENT
- BURTT-DAVY, J. 1926. *A manual of the flowering plants and ferns of the Transvaal with Swaziland, South Africa*. Part 1. Pteridophyta to Bombaceae Volume 1, pp. 232–237. Longmans, Green, London. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, OPUNTIA
- CALDWELL, P. 1992. *Catchment action: 28 alien plant invaders in Natal, 1st Edition*. Howick, Sharenet. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM93-0270) A-PLANT, FOREST, GRASSLAND, SAVANNA, IDENTIFICATION, MANAGEMENT
- CUTHBERT, J. 2003. Invasive alien plants. *Gardener* 48,4: 55–57. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION
- FOXCROFT, L.C., HENDERSON, L., NICHOLS, G.R. & MARTIN, B.M. 2003. A revised list of alien plants for the Kruger National Park. *Koedoe* 46,2: 21–44. A-PLANT, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, INTRODUCTION, IDENTIFICATION
- HENDERSON, L. 1995. *Plant invaders of southern Africa*. Plant Protection Research Institute Handbook No. 5, Plant Protection Research Institute, Agricultural Research Council, Pretoria, 177 pp. A-PLANT, FIELD-GUIDE, IDENTIFICATION
- HENDERSON, L. 2001. *Alien weeds and invasive plants*. Plant Protection Research Institute Handbook No. 12, 300 pp. Agricultural Research Council, Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, FIELD-GUIDE, IDENTIFICATION, LEGISLATION
- HENDERSON, L. 2001. Invasive alien plants in southern Africa. Part 1: terminology and overview of species. *SABONET News* 6,2: 84, 85. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, HISTORY, CONCEPT
- HENDERSON, L. 2001. Invasive alien plants in southern Africa. Part 2: the legumes (Fabaceae). *SABONET News* 6,3: 192–195. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, HISTORY, IDENTIFICATION
- HENDERSON, L. 2002. Invasive alien plants in southern Africa. Part 3: the daisies (Asteraceae). *SABONET News* 7,1: 32–35. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, HISTORY, IDENTIFICATION
- HENDERSON, L. & MUSIL, K.J. 1987. *Plant invaders of the Transvaal*. Bulletin 412, Department of Agriculture and Water Supply, Pretoria, 71 pp. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IDENTIFICATION, MANAGEMENT
- HENDERSON, M. & ANDERSON, J.G. 1966. Common weeds in South Africa. *Memoirs of the Botanical Survey of South Africa* No. 37: 1–440. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, MANAGEMENT, EICHHORNIA, HAKEA, HYPERICUM, SALVINIA
- HENDERSON, M., FOURIE, D.M.C. & WELLS, M.J. 1987. Verklaarde onkruid en uitheemse indringerplante in Suid-Afrika: Declared weeds and alien invader plants in South Africa. *Department of Agriculture & Water Supply Bulletin* 413. Government Printer, Pretoria. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION
- KLEIN, H. & GOODALL, J.M. 2001. Module 1: legislation and weed identification. In J. Goodall (ed.), *Environmental weed control course for pest control operators*, pp. 2.1–2.28. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION
- LANSDALL, K.A. 1925. *Weeds of South Africa*. Part III. Department of Agriculture Union of South Africa Reprint No. 4. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, MANAGEMENT, EICHHORNIA, OPUNTIA, XANTHIUM
- PHILLIPS, E.P. 1938. *The weeds of South Africa*. Department of Agriculture of the Union of South Africa, Bulletin 195. *Division of Botany Series* No. 41, 229 pp. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, AMARANTHUS, CARDUUS, EICHHORNIA, HAKEA, LANTANA, OPUNTIA, RUBUS, SOLANUM, XANTHIUM
- POWRIE, F.J. & MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1985. *A taxonomic listing of the invasive alien plants*

- of southern Africa, 53 pp. FitzPatrick Institute, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-PLANT, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, TAXONOMY
- PYŠEK, P., RICHARDSON, D.M., REJMÁNEK, M., WEBSTER, G.L., WILLIAMSON, M. & KIRSCHNER, J. 2004. Alien plants in checklists and floras: towards better communication between taxonomists and ecologists. *Taxon* 53: 131–143. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, TAXONOMY, BIOGEOGRAPHY
- SMITH, C.A. 1966. Common names of South African plants. *Memoirs of the Botanical Survey of South Africa* No. 35. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), CHROMOLAENA, EICHHORNIA, HAKEA, HYPERICUM, LANTANA, NERIUM, PISTIA, PROSOPIS, SOLANUM
- STIRTON, C.H. 1979. Taxonomic problems associated with invasive alien trees and shrubs in South Africa. In G. Kunkel (ed.), *Proceedings of the Ninth Plenary Meeting of A.E.T.F.A.T., Las Palmas, Gran Canaria*, pp. 218–229. A-PLANT, TAXONOMY, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), CAESALPINIA, CANNA, CASSIA, CHROMOLAENA, EUCALYPTUS, HAKEA, LANTANA, LEPTOSPERMUM, MELIA, NERIUM, NICOTIANA, OPUNTIA, PINUS, PITTOSPORUM, POPULUS, PSIDIUM, RUBUS, SESBANIA, SOLANUM, IDENTIFICATION
- VAN ZYL, J.J. 1967. The proclaimed weeds in South Africa. *Farmers Weekly* 18.10.1967: 49–51. A-PLANT, IDENTIFICATION, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, CIRSIUM, EICHHORNIA, HAKEA, HYPERICUM, LANTANA, MYRIOPHYLLUM, OPUNTIA, RUBUS, SALVINIA, SOLANUM
- ANONYMOUS 1977. Weeds, they cause crop losses amounting to R120 million. *Shell Farmer* 56: 4–6. A-PLANT, IMPACT, AGRICULTURE, ECONOMICS, CHROMOLAENA, HAKEA, OPUNTIA, PERESKIA, SOLANUM, STIPA
- ANONYMOUS 1978. Mooi tuinstruik bedreig weiding oor groot gebiede. *Environment RSA* 5,11: 7. A-PLANT, IMPACT, AGRICULTURE, GRAZING, SESBANIA
- ANONYMOUS 1984. Alien invader is threat to veld and forest. *Farmers Weekly* October 1984. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM89-1089) A-PLANT, SAVANNA, FOREST, IMPACT
- ANONYMOUS 2000. *Catastrophy of invasive species*. Working for Water Programme Pamphlet. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2000-0057) A-PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT
- ANONYMOUS 2000. *The environmental impacts of invading alien plants in South Africa*. Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, Pretoria. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2001-69) A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT
- BROOKS, M.L., D'ANTONIO, C.M., RICHARDSON, D.M., GRACE, J.B., KEELEY, J.E., DI TOMASO, J.M., HOBBS, R.J., PELLANT, M. & PYKE, D. 2004. Effects of invasive alien plants on fire regimes. *BioScience* 54: 677–688. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, FIRE
- CAMBRAY, J.A., DE MOOR, F.C. & BARBER-JAMES, H.M. 1995. *Influence of alien invasive vegetation on the distribution and status of fish and aquatic invertebrates of the Baviaanskloof wilderness complex*. Internal report, Albany Museum, 75 pp. A-PLANT, INVASION, ECOLOGY, RIVER, IMPACT, N-FISH, N-INVERTEBRATE, HABITAT-DEGRADATION
- EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W. 2000. *The influence of vegetation type and fire severity on catchment stability after fire: a case study from the Cape Peninsula, South Africa*. Fynbos Working for Water Programme, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, August 2000. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, RESEARCH, SOIL-EROSION, SAND, WATER-REPELLENT SOILS, RAINFALL
- FLACH, T. 1985. Alien invaders: the water wasters. *FBC News* 10. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM89-1344) A-PLANT, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY
- FOURIE, S.P. 1978. Green Cancer. *Fauna & Flora* 34: 20. A-PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, ACACIA, EUCALYPTUS, LANTANA, OPUNTIA, PINUS, RUBUS, SOLANUM
- GORGENS, A.H.M. & VAN WILGEN, B.W. 2004. Invasive alien plants and water resources in South Africa: current understanding, predictive ability and research challenges. *South African Journal of Science* 100,1/2: 27–33. A-PLANT, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, RESEARCH
- LATIMER, A.M., SILANDER, J.A., GELFAND, A.E., REBELO, A.G. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2004. A method for quantifying the magnitude of threat to plant biodiversity from alien plant invasions and other anthropogenic factors—a case study in the Cape Floristic Region, South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 100: 81–86. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MODELLING, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1983. How serious is the alien plant threat to nature conservation in South Africa. *African Wildlife* 37,2: 69, 70. A-PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1987. Banana poka in the Knysna Forest. *Veld & Flora* 73: 133, 134. A-PLANT, FOREST, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, PASSIFLORA
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1987. Invasive alien plants in private nature reserves. *Effective Farming* 2: 344, 345. A-PLANT, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1988. Problems of alien invader species—an overview. In W. van Warmelo & E.J. Moll (eds), *Rational biomass utilization in the greater Cape Town area*, pp. 4–6. The Botanical Society of South Africa, Kirstenbosch. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, IMPACT
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1989. Man's role in changing the face of southern Africa. In B.J. Huntley (ed.), *Biotic diversity in southern Africa*, pp. 51–77. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, DISTURBANCE
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1990. Cape Sugarbird feeding in sisal plants during summer. *Promerops* 193: 9. A-PLANT, IMPACT, N-BIRD
- MIDGLEY, G.F., RUTHERFORD, M.C. & BOND, W.J. 2001. *The heat is on—impacts of climate change on plant diversity in South Africa*. National Botanical Institute, Cape Town. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, INVASION, GLOBAL-CHANGE
- OLCKERS, T. 2004. Alien invasive plants in grasslands and rangelands: is the worst yet to come?

*Proceedings of a Prestige Grazing Symposium (Grassland Management in South Africa: Yesterday, Today, Tomorrow)*, University of KwaZulu-Natal, Pietermaritzburg, 10 March 2004, pp. 1–3. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, GRAZING, GLOBAL-CHANGE

- PIAGET, J. & SCHLIEMANN, G. 1973. Weeds choking Western Cape rivers—appearance of *Myriophyllum* spp. in the Boland. *The Deciduous Fruit Grower* 23: 176–179. A-AQUATIC, RIVER, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, PLANT, MYRIOPHYLLUM
- REBELO, A.G. 1992. Red data book species in the Cape Floristic region, threats, priorities and target species. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa* 48: 55–86. A-INVERTEBRATE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, MYRMECOCHORY, N-INVERTEBRATE, N-PLANT, PRIORITY, CONSERVATION, LINEPITHEMA
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & VAN WILGEN, B.W. 2004. Invasive alien plants in South Africa: how well do we understand the ecological impacts? *South African Journal of Science* 100: 45–52. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, CONCEPT
- STEYTLER, H. VAN B. 1960. Beware of weeds in the veld. *Farming in South Africa* 36: 22–26. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, GRAZING, CIRSIUM, OPUNTIA
- TURPIE, J., WINKLER, H., SPALDING-FECHER, R. & MIDGLEY, G.F. 2001. *Economic impacts of climate change in South Africa: a preliminary analysis of unmitigated damage costs*. Research report sponsored by USAID and administered by the Joint Centre for Political and Economic Studies Inc., under a subcontract agreement from Nathan Associates Inc. Southern Waters Ecological Research and Consulting, and Energy Development Research Centre, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-PLANT, ECONOMICS, IMPACT, GLOBAL-CHANGE
- VAN WILGEN, B.W. & VAN WYK, E. 1999. Invading alien plants in South Africa: impacts and solutions. In *People and rangelands: building the future. Proceedings of the VI International Rangeland Congress, Townsville, Queensland, Australia, 19–23 July, 1999. Volumes 1 and 2.*, International Rangeland Congress, Inc., Aitkenvale Australia. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, STRATEGIC
- WADE, M. 1995. Alien invaders: trials and tribulations of a gardening greenhorn. *SA Garden & Home* October 1995: 174. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM96-0419) A-PLANT, UTILISATION, HORTICULTURE, LEGISLATION, IMPACT
- BROWN-ROSSOUW, R. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2000. *The role of nurseries in distributing invasive alien plants in the Western Cape, South Africa*. CSIR Report No. ENV-S-S 2000-021. CSIR Division of Water, Environment and Forestry Technology, Stellenbosch. A-PLANT, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, HORTICULTURE
- CALDWELL, P.M. & KLUGE, R.L. 1993. Introducing alien plants: where does the responsibility rest? *SA Nurseryman* 12,1: 32, 33. A-PLANT, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, HORTICULTURE
- IVEY, P. & HEYDENRYCH, B. (eds) 1994. *Invasive alien plants in nurseries: record of a meeting held at Kirstenbosch on 20 July 1994*. Botanical Society of South Africa, Cape Town. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM96-0456). A-PLANT, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, HORTICULTURE
- ACOCKS, J.P.H. 1975. Veld types of South Africa. *Memoirs of the Botanical Survey of South Africa* No. 40. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), OPUNTIA
- ADAMSON, R.S. 1941. Weeds: the 'new' Cape flora. *Journal of the Botanical Society of South Africa* 27: 7, 8. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT, ACACIA, EICHHORNIA, HAKEA, LEPTOSPERMUM, PINUS, SOLANUM, XANTHIUM
- ANONYMOUS 1968–1969. Alien vegetation at the National Botanic Gardens of South Africa, Kirstenbosch. *Habitat* 8: 21. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION
- BURTT-DAVY, J. 1904. *Alien plants spontaneous in the Transvaal*. Report of the South Africa Association for the Advancement of Science, pp. 252–299. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, AMARANTHUS, EUCALYPTUS, LANTANA, OPUNTIA, SOLANUM
- DEACON, J. 1986. Human settlement in South Africa and archaeological evidence for alien plants and animals. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 3–19. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-MAMMAL, A-PLANT, TERRESTRIAL, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, GRAZING, AGRICULTURE, RATTUS, MEDICAGO, RICINUS
- EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W. 1992. *The indigenous forests of the Cape Peninsula*. Unpublished report, Parks and Forests, City Engineers Department, Cape Town Municipality. A-PLANT, FOREST, SPREAD, GIS, MAPPING, DATA, INVASION
- EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W. 1995. *Vegetation mapping in the Kouga and Baviaanskloof Mountains, Eastern Cape*. Report to Cape Nature Conservation, Eastern Cape. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, GIS, DATA
- FOXCROFT, L.C. 2006. Kruger Park invaded: a revised list of alien plants for the Kruger National Park. *Africa Geographic* (in press). A-PLANT, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, INTRODUCTION
- GREMMEN, N.J.M. 1975. The distribution of alien vascular plants on Marion and Prince Edward Islands. *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 5: 25–30. A-PLANT, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD
- HALL, A.V. 1979. Invasive weeds. In J. Day, W.R. Siegfried, G.N. Louw & M.L. Jarman (eds), *Fynbos ecology: a preliminary synthesis*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 40: 133–147. CSIR, Pretoria. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-PLANT
- HENDERSON, L. 1998. Southern African plant invaders atlas (SAPIA). *Applied Plant Sciences* 12,1: 31, 32. A-PLANT, MAPPING-PROJECT, COMPUTERISED-DATABASE
- HENDERSON, L. 1998. New, unexpected and perplexing invaders. *Veld & Flora* 84,1: 12, 13. A-PLANT, INVASION

- HENDERSON, L. 1999. The Southern African Plant Invaders Atlas (SAPIA) and its contribution to biological weed control. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 159–163. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, EARLY-WARNING, HISTORY, MAPPING-PROJECT, COMPUTERISED-DATABASE
- HENDERSON, L. 1999. SAPIA—The Southern African Plant Invaders Atlas. In J. Timberlake & S. Kativu (eds), *African plants: biodiversity, taxonomy and uses, Proceedings of the 1997 AETFAT Congress, Harare, Zimbabwe*. Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, London. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, EARLY-WARNING, HISTORY, MAPPING-PROJECT, COMPUTERISED-DATABASE
- HENDERSON, L. 2002. Southern African Plant Invaders Atlas (SAPIA) with particular reference to invasive Australian species. *Proceedings of the 13th Australian Weeds Conference, Perth, September 2002*. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, EARLY-WARNING, HISTORY
- HENDERSON, L. 2004. *Survey of invasive and potentially invasive alien plants in the Hluhluwe-Imfolozi Game Reserve, KwaZulu-Natal, 22–23 April 2004*. Unpublished report submitted to Hluhluwe-Imfolozi, 13 pp. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ROADSIDE-SURVEY, MANAGEMENT
- HENDERSON, L. & WELLS, M.J. 1986. Alien plant invasions in the grassland and savanna biomes. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 109–118. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, GRASSLAND, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, HISTORY, MANAGEMENT
- HIGGINS, S.I. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1996. A review of models of alien plant spread. *Ecological Modelling* 87: 249–265. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MODELLING, CONCEPT
- HIGGINS, S.I. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1999. Predicting plant migration rates in a changing world: the role of long-distance dispersal. *American Naturalist* 153: 464–475. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, MODELLING, GLOBAL-CHANGE
- HIGGINS, S.I., RICHARDSON, D.M. & COWLING, R.M. 1996. Modelling invasive plant spread: the roles of plant-environment interactions and model structure. *Ecology* 77: 2043–2054. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, MODELLING, CONCEPT
- HIGGINS, S.I., RICHARDSON, D.M., COWLING, R.M. 2000. Validation of a spatial simulation model of a spreading alien plant population. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 38: 571–584. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, MODELLING, CONCEPT
- HIGGINS, S.I., RICHARDSON, D.M., COWLING, R.M. & TRINDER-SMITH, T.H. 1999. Predicting the landscape scale distribution of alien plants and their threat to plant diversity. *Conservation Biology* 13: 303–313. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, MODELLING, CONCEPT
- HOLM, L.C., PLUCKNETT, D.L., PANCHO, J.V. & HERBERGER, J.P. 1977. *The world's worst weeds, distribution and biology*. The University Press of Hawaii. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, INVASIVENESS, AMARANTHUS, CHROMOLAENA, CIRSIUM, LANTANA, PISTIA, SALVINIA, XANTHIUM
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Weeds, alien plants and invasive plants. *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol* 1.1: 1–4. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, CONCEPT
- KRUGER, F.J., BREYTENBACH, G.J., MACDONALD, I.A.W. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1989. Characteristics of invaded mediterranean-type regions. In J. Drake, F. Di Castri, R. Groves, F.J. Kruger, H.A. Mooney, M. Rejmánek & M. Williamson (eds), *Biological invasions: a global synthesis*, pp. 181–213. Wiley, Chichester. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, FYNBOS, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT
- KRUGER, F.J., RICHARDSON, D.M. & VAN WILGEN, B.W. 1986. Processes of invasion by alien plants. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 145–155. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CONCEPT
- LE MAITRE, D.C., RICHARDSON, D.M. & CHAPMAN, R.A. 2004. Alien plant invasions in South Africa: driving forces and the human dimension. *South African Journal of Science* 100: 103–112. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, INTRODUCTION, CONCEPT
- LONSDALE, M. & MILTON, S. 2002. People and plant invasions of the rangelands. In A.C. Grice (ed.), *Global rangelands: progress and prospects*, pp. 101–116. CABI Publishing. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASIONS, IMPACT, GRAZING
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1983. *A list of the invasive alien plants of southern Africa: being a list accompanying the questionnaire survey of invasive alien plants in southern African protected areas*. Photostat report, 101 pp. University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-PLANT, INVASION, CONSERVATION, SURVEY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1983. *Inventory, classification and evaluation of alien plant invasions in South Africa—an outline of the proposed research project*. Photostat report, 15 pp. University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, SURVEY, PRIORITY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1983. *National survey of invasive alien plants in conserved areas—a questionnaire*. Photostat report, 11 pp. University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, SURVEY, PRIORITY, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1983. *Questionnaire survey of invasive alien plants in southern African protected areas—a parallel document*. Photostat report, 23 pp. University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, SURVEY, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1983. *Some thoughts on invasive alien plants in the southern Cape*. Photostat report, 6 pp. University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, SURVEY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1985. *Invasive biota in southern African protected areas: South African National Parks section*. Research Report 1984/85, pp. 321, 322. National Parks Board of South Africa, Skukuza. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, SURVEY, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1985. The Australian contribution to southern Africa's invasive alien flora: an ecological analysis. *Proceedings of the Ecological Society of Australia* 14: 225–236. A-PLANT, BIOGEOGRAPHY, ECOLOGY, INVASION

- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1986. *Invasive biota in southern African protected areas: South African National Parks section*. Research Report 1985/86, pp. 297–304. National Parks Board of South Africa, Skukuza. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, SURVEY, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1986. *Report on a rapid survey of invasive alien organisms in the Wolkberg Wilderness Area, north-eastern Transvaal*. Photostat report, 7 pp. University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-PLANT, FOREST, GRASSLAND, INVASION, SPREAD, SURVEY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1987. *Advances in our understanding of alien invasions in the Fynbos Biome: 1980–1985*. CSIR Ecosystems Programmes Occasional Report 19: 1–16. CSIR, Pretoria. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, FYNBOS, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PRIORITY, BIBLIOGRAPHY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., CLARK, D.L. & TAYLOR, H.C. 1987. The alien flora of the Cape of Good Hope Nature Reserve. *South African Journal of Botany* 53: 398–404. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, HISTORY, INVASION, INTRODUCTION-RATE
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. & FRAME, G.W. 1988. The invasion of introduced species into nature reserves in tropical savannas and dry woodlands. *Biological Conservation* 44: 67–93. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. & GERTENBACH, W.P.D. 1988. A list of alien plants in the Kruger National Park. *Koedoe* 31: 137–150. A-PLANT, SAVANNA, INVASION, HISTORY, INTRODUCTION-RATE
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., GRABER, D.M., DEBENEDETTI, S., GROVES, R.H. & FUENTES, E.R. 1988. Introduced species in nature reserves in Mediterranean-type climate regions of the world. *Biological Conservation* 44: 37–66. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, INTRODUCTION-RATE
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. & JARMAN, M.L. (eds) 1984. *Invasive alien organisms in the terrestrial ecosystems of the Fynbos Biome, South Africa*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 85: 1–72. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. & JARMAN, M.L. (eds) 1985. *Invasive alien plants in the terrestrial ecosystems of Natal, South Africa*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 118: 1–88. A-PLANT, FOREST, GRASSLAND, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. & MACDONALD, S.A. 1984. *A rapid survey of invasive alien plants in the Kruger National Park: 27 June to 2 July 1984*. Photostat report, 13 pp. University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-PLANT, SAVANNA, SURVEY, INVASION, SPREAD
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., MACDONALD, S.A., NOTT, T. & CUNLIFFE, R.N. 1987. *Plant collections made during field surveys of invasive alien plants in southern Africa: 1983–1985*. Photostat report, 36 pp. FitzPatrick Institute, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, SURVEY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., POWRIE, F.J. & SIEGFRIED, W.R. 1986. The differential invasion of southern Africa's biomes and ecosystems by alien plants and animals. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 209–225. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, FOREST, FRESHWATER, FYNBOS, GRASSLAND, KAROO, SAVANNA, BIOGEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, INVADABILITY, RATTUS, MUS
- MIDGLEY, G.F. 2002. Monitoring vegetation: a science in flux? *Journal of Biogeography* 29: 971–973. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MONITORING
- MILTON, S.J. 1986. As ye sow, so shall ye reap: the seeds of invasive alien plants. *Veld & Flora* 72: 26–30. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SEED, GERMINATION, REGENERATION
- MILTON, S.J. 2003. 'Emerging ecosystems'—a washing stone for ecologists, economists and sociologists? *South African Journal of Science* 99: 404–406. A-PLANT, INVASION, IMPACTS, ECONOMICS, SOCIAL
- MILTON, S.J. & DEAN, W.R.J. 1998. Alien plant assemblages near roads in arid and semi-arid South Africa. *Diversity and Distributions* 4: 175–188. A-PLANT, KAROO, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, SEED-DISPERSAL, ROAD RESERVE
- MORAN, V.C. & MORAN, P.M. 1982. *Alien invasive vascular plants in South African natural and semi-natural environments: bibliography from 1830*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 65: 1–42. A-PLANT, BIBLIOGRAPHY, INVASION
- PARKER, R.N. 1953. Alien plants growing without cultivation in the Somerset West neighbourhood. *Journal of South African Botany* 19,4: 161–176. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, FYNBOS
- PHILLIPSON, P.B. 1990. New records of alien weeds in the Eastern Cape. *South African Journal of Botany* 56,6: 645–647. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD
- PYŠEK, P., RICHARDSON, D.M. & WILLIAMSON, M. 2004. Predicting and explaining plant invasions through analysis of source area floras: some critical considerations. *Diversity and Distributions* 10: 179–187. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, RISK-ASSESSMENT, BIOGEOGRAPHY
- REJMÁNEK, M. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1996. What attributes make some plant species more invasive? *Ecology* 77: 1655–1661. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVASIVENESS, CONCEPT
- REJMÁNEK, M. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2003. Invasiveness of conifers: extent and possible mechanisms. *Acta Horticulturae* 615: 375–380. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVASIVENESS, CONCEPT
- REJMÁNEK, M., RICHARDSON, D.M., HIGGINS, S.I., PITCAIRN, M.J. & GROTKOPP, E. 2005. Ecology of invasive plants—state of the art. In H.A. Mooney, R.N. Mack, J.A. Mc Neely, L. Neville, P.J. Schei & J. Waage (eds), *Invasive alien species: a new synthesis*, pp. 104–161. Island Press, Washington, D.C. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVADABILITY, INVASION, INVASIVENESS, CONCEPT
- REJMÁNEK, M., RICHARDSON, D.M. & PYŠEK, P. 2004. Plant invasions and invasibility of plant communities. In E. van der Maarel (ed.), *Vegetation ecology*, pp. 332–355. Blackwell Publishers, Oxford.



- A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVADABILITY, CONCEPT
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 2001. Plant invasions. In S. Levin (ed.), *Encyclopedia of biodiversity*, Volume 4: 677–688. Academic Press, San Diego. A-PLANT, INVASION, ECOLOGY, CONCEPT
- RICHARDSON, D.M., ALLSOPP, N., D'ANTONIO, C.M., MILTON, S.J. & REJMÁNEK, M. 2000. Plant invasions—the role of mutualisms. *Biological Reviews* 75: 65–93. A-PLANT, INVASION, ECOLOGY, MYCORRHIZA, POLLINATION, NITROGEN-FIXATION, SEED-DISPERSAL, MUTUALISM
- RICHARDSON, D.M., MACDONALD, I.A.W., HOFFMANN, J.H. & HENDERSON, L. 1997. Alien plant invasions. In R.M. Cowling, D.M. Richardson & S.M. Pierce (eds), *Vegetation of southern Africa*, pp. 535–570. Cambridge University Press, United Kingdom. A-PLANT, FOREST, FRESHWATER, FYNBOS, GRASSLAND, KAROO, SAVANNA, BIOGEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, MAJOR INVADERS
- RICHARDSON, D.M., PYŠEK, P., REJMÁNEK, M., BARBOUR, M.G., PANETTA, D.F. & WEST, C.J. 2000. Naturalization and invasion of alien plants—concepts and definitions *Diversity and Distributions* 6: 93–107. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, CONCEPT
- RICHARDSON, D.M., ROUGET, M., HENDERSON, L. & NEL, J.L. 2004. Invasive alien plants in South Africa: macroecological patterns, with special emphasis on the Cape Floristic Region. In M. Arianoutsou & V. Papanastasis (eds), *Proceedings 10th MEDECOS Conference, April 25–May 1, Rhodes, Greece*. Millpress, Rotterdam. [10-page paper published on CD-ROM.] A-PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, ECOLOGY
- ROBERTSON, M.P., VILLET, M.H. & PALMER, A.R. 2004. A fuzzy classification technique for predicting species' distributions: applications using invasive alien plants and indigenous insects. *Diversity and Distributions* 10: 461–474. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, INVASIVENESS, MODELLING, RISK-ASSESSMENT
- ROSS, J.H. 1972. The flora of Natal. *Memoirs of the Botanical Survey of South Africa* No. 39: 1–418. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ACACIA, EICHHORNIA, HAKEA, HYPERICUM, LANTANA, OPUNTIA, STIPA
- ROUGET, M. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2003. Inferring process from pattern in alien plant invasions: a semimechanistic model incorporating propagule pressure and environmental factors. *American Naturalist* 164: 713–724. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, SPECIES-MODELLING, GIS
- ROUGET, M. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2003. Understanding patterns of plant invasion at different spatial scales: quantifying the roles of environment and propagule pressure. In L.E. Child, J.H. Brock, G. Brundu, K. Prach, P. Pyšek, P.M. Wade & M. Williamson (eds.), *Plant invasions: ecological threats and management solutions*, pp. 3–15. Backhuys Publishers, Leiden, The Netherlands. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, SPECIES-MODELLING, GIS
- ROUGET, M., RICHARDSON, D.M., NEL, J., LE MAITRE, D.C., EGOH, B. & MGIDI, T. 2004. Mapping the potential ranges of major plant invaders in South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland using climatic suitability. *Diversity and Distributions* 10: 475–484. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, SPECIES-MODELLING, GIS, MAPPING-PROJECT, CLIMATE
- STIRTON, C.H. (ed.) 1995. *Weeds in a changing world. Proceedings of a symposium, Brighton, UK, 20 November 1995*. Farnham UK, British Crop Protection Council. A-PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, GLOBAL-CHANGE, CONCEPT
- TAYLOR, H.C. 1969. Pesplante en natuurbewaring. *Bosbou in Suid Afrika* 10: 41–46. A-PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, N-BIODIVERSITY, ACACIA, EICHHORNIA, HAKEA, LEPTOSPERMUM, OPUNTIA, PINUS, SALVINIA
- TAYLOR, H.C. 1969. Pest-plants and nature conservation in the winter rainfall region. *Journal of the Botanical Society of South Africa* 55: 32–38. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, KAROO, INVASION, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, N-BIODIVERSITY, ACACIA, EICHHORNIA, HAKEA, OPUNTIA, SALVINIA
- TAYLOR, H.C. 1980. Weed research and veld conservation. *Veld & Flora* 66: 85, 86. A-PLANT, RESEARCH, CONSERVATION, ACACIA, HAKEA, MYRIOPHYLLUM, OPUNTIA, SESBANIA, STIPA
- VAN DYK, E. & NESER, S. 2000. The spread of weeds into sensitive areas by seeds in horse faeces. *Journal of the South African Veterinary Association* 71,3: 173, 174. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, SEED-DISPERSAL, CONSERVATION, A-MAMMAL
- VAN SITTERT, L. 2002. 'Our irrepressible fellow-colonist': the biological invasion of prickly pear (*Opuntia ficus-indica*) in the eastern Cape c. 1890–c.1910. *Journal of Historical Geography* 28,3: 397–419. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2004-0127) A-PLANT, INVASION, HISTORY, OPUNTIA
- VLOK, J.H.J. & EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W. 2002. *Report by Biological Survey Component for conservation planning for biodiversity in the Thicket Biome* (GEF-MSP grant 023504). A-PLANT, THICKET, INVASION, SPREAD, GIS, COMPUTERISED-DATABASE, HABITATS, CONSERVATION
- VLOK, J.H.J., EUSTON-BROWN, D.I.W. & COWLING, R.M. 2003. Acocks's Valley Bushveld 50 years on: new perspectives on the delimitation, characterisation and origin of subtropical thicket vegetation. *South African Journal of Botany* 69,1: 27–51. A-PLANT, THICKET, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MAPPING, MOSAICS, SUCCULENTS, CLIMATE
- WELLS, M.J. 1978. What is a weed? *Environment RSA* 5,11: 6. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, CONCEPT, ACACIA, HAKEA, STIPA, SESBANIA
- WELLS, M.J., BALSINHAS, A.A., JOFFE, H., ENGELBRECHT, V.M., HARDING, G.B. & STIRTON, C.H., 1986. A catalogue of problem plants in southern Africa. *Memoirs of the Botanical Survey of South Africa* No. 53: 1–658. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION
- WELLS, M.J., ENGELBRECHT, V.M. & BALSINHAS, A.A. 1982. A preliminary analysis of South Africa's weed flora. *Proceedings of the Fourth National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Pretoria, 1981*, pp. 1–6. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, BIOGEOGRAPHY, TAXONOMY, ACACIA, OPUNTIA, SOLANUM
- WELLS, M.J., POYNTON, R.J., BALSINHAS, A.A., MUSIL, K.J., JOFFE, H., VAN HOOPEN, E. & ABBOTT, S.K. 1986. The history of introduction

- of invasive alien plants to South Africa. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 21–35. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, BIOGEOGRAPHY, HISTORY
- YELD, J. 2001. Report red-cards alien plants: global warming warning. *Cape Argus* 12 Feb 2001. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2001-125) A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, GLOBAL-CHANGE
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 1997. Desertification and invasive plants. *Plant Protection News* 49: 5–7. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, CLIMATE, LAND-USE
- ADAIR, R.J. & NESER, S. 1996. The potential for biological control of the South African weed, *Polygala myrtifolia*. In R.C.H. Shepherd (ed.), *Proceedings: Eleventh Australian Weeds Conference, Melbourne, Australia 30 Sept–3 Oct 1996*, pp. 438, 439. Weed Science Society of Victoria Inc., Frankston. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- ALEXANDER, M. 2001. Alien invaders: controversy and confusion reign among gardeners over the recent amendments to the Conservation of Agriculture Resources Act. *SA Garden & Home* July 2001: 96, 97. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2003-0066) A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, UTILISATION, HORTICULTURE
- ALEXANDER, M. 2002. Go wild: as the goal of creating a truly South African garden and the drive to eradicate alien species continues, Marianne Alexander offers more indigenous gardening ideas to inspire gardeners. *SA Garden & Home* October 2002: 120, 121. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2003-0074) A-PLANT, HORTICULTURE, N-ALTERNATIVE, MANAGEMENT
- ALTONA, B.E. & HATTINGH, E.R. 1953. Weed control in veld and pastures. *South African Journal of Science* 49,10: 317–319. A-PLANT, RANGELAND, PASTURE, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA, PINUS, PROSOPIS
- ANNECKE, D.P. & NESER, S. 1977. On the biological control of some Cape pest plants. *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Stellenbosch, 1977*, pp. 303–319. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), HAKEA, HYPERICUM, OPUNTIA
- ANONYMOUS 1946. Weed control—a national problem. *Farming in South Africa* 21: 647, 648. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LANTANA
- ANONYMOUS 1983. Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act No. 43 of 1983) [includes list of declared alien plant invaders]: regulations: amendment. *Government Gazette* 22166: 29–62. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2001-161) A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION
- ANONYMOUS 1991. Two-pronged attack on alien plants. *Farmers Weekly* 5 April 1991: 17–19. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM92-0040) A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC
- ANONYMOUS 1999. Appendix. Releases of introduced biological control agents against weeds in South Africa. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 175–182. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- ANONYMOUS 2000. *The Kirstenbosch declaration: South Africa/United States of America Bi-national Commission Symposium on Best Management Practices for Preventing and Controlling Invasive Alien Species, 24 February 2000, Cape Town*. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2004-0214) A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC
- ANONYMOUS 2001. Invasive plants and the law: useful reference for landowners. *South African Sugar Journal* 85,4: 107, 108. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION
- ANONYMOUS 2002. Solutions for invasive plants. *South African Gardening* Feb 2002: 32–35. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT
- ANONYMOUS 2003. Biological control of alien invaders: excerpts from Working for Water's Research Symposium. *Urban Green File* 8,4: 18–21. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- ANONYMOUS 2003. You, invasive alien plants and the law [*Acacia cyclops*, *Leptospermum laevigatum*, *Hakea* spp.]. *Cape Argus* 10 September 2003. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2003-0320) A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, ACACIA, HAKEA, LEPTOSPERMUM
- ANONYMOUS 2004. Alien watch [*Solanum mauritianum*]: a category one invader and must be removed immediately. *Gardener* September 2004: 3. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, SOLANUM
- ANONYMOUS 2004. *Invasive alien species: a challenge to NEPAD*, 12 pp. National Botanical Institute and Global Invasive Species Programme, Kirstenbosch, South Africa. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, FOREST, FRESHWATER, FYNBOS, GRASSLAND, KAROO, SAVANNA, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, PREVENTION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CO-OPERATION
- ANONYMOUS 2004. You, invasive alien plants and the law: Ukuvuka editorial. *Veld & Flora* 90,1: 8, 9. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION
- ANONYMOUS 2005. Invasive plants [category one invasive plants in your area]. *South African Gardening* February 2005: 38, 39. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION
- BONTHUYS, J. 2004. Alle indringerplante moet uit om SA water te bespaar. *Die Burger* 22 May 2004. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library Pamphlet 2004-0119) A-PLANT, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION
- BROWN-ROSSOUW, R., VAN WILGEN, B., RICHARDSON, D.M. & BURNS, K. 2000. *A survey of potentially invasive plants currently sold by plant nurseries, with recommendations on future policy options for the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry*. Report ENV-S-S 2000-085, Working for Water Programme, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, Cape Town. A-PLANT, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, HORTICULTURE, MANAGEMENT
- CAMPBELL, P.L. (compiler) 2000. *Grab-a-grass for KwaZulu-Natal: guidelines for rehabilitation after alien plant control*. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION



- CAMPBELL, P.L. (compiler) 2000. *Grab-a-grass for Mpumalanga and the Northern Province: guidelines for rehabilitation after alien plant control*. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION
- CAMPBELL, P.L. (compiler) 2000. *Grab-a-grass for the Free State, Northern Cape, North West and Gauteng: guidelines for rehabilitation after alien plant control*. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION
- CAMPBELL, P.L. 2000. *Rehabilitation recommendations after alien plant control*. Handbook No. 11. Plant Protection Research Institute, Hilton. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION
- CONNANT, R.A., FREEMAN, D., MACDONALD, I.A.W., PORTER, R., SCOTCHER, J., SMALL, W., WARD, M., WILLIS, A.J., WYATT, J. & ZALOUMIS, G. 1985. The management of invasive alien plants in the various components of the Natal landscape: the nature conservation estate. In I.A.W. Macdonald & M.L. Jarman (eds), *Invasive alien plants in the terrestrial ecosystems of Natal, South Africa*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 118: 44–50. A-PLANT, FOREST, GRASSLAND, SAVANNA, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY, CONSERVATION
- CONNANT, R.A., GROBBLER, R., LIGGITT, B., MACDONALD, I.A.W. & SMITHERS, C. 1985. Zonation as an aid to the management of invasive alien plants in Natal: Wind-dispersed species. In I.A.W. Macdonald & M.L. Jarman (eds), *Invasive alien plants in the terrestrial ecosystems of Natal, South Africa*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 118: 57–64. A-PLANT, FOREST, GRASSLAND, SAVANNA, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, CHROMOLAENA
- CONTROL OF ALIEN VEGETATION COMMITTEE, KIRSTENBOSCH 1959. *The green cancers in South Africa—the menace of alien vegetation*, 18 pp. Citadel Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), HAKEA, OPUNTIA, LEPTOSPERMUM, PINUS, RUBUS, SOLANUM
- CRAEMER, C., NESER, S. & SMITH MEYER, M.K.P. 1996. Eriophyid-myte (Acari: Eriophyoidea: Eriophyidae) as moontlike beheeragente van ongewenste uitheemse plante in Suid-Afrika. *Suid-Afrikaanse Tydskrif vir Natuurwetenskap en Tegnologie* 15,3: 99–109. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- DENNILL, G.B. & MORAN, V.C. 1989. On insect-plant associations in agriculture and the selection of agents for weed biocontrol. *Annals of Applied Biology* 114: 157–166. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- DENNILL, G.B. & MORAN, V.C. 1990. The possible role of directed mobility in the recruitment onto novel plant species and host plant specificity of herbivorous insects and mites. *South African Journal of Science* 86: 116–118. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- DERWENT, S. 1997. WWF South Africa focus: stopping the big four's silent march. *Africa Environment and Wildlife* 5,4: 20, 21. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT
- DOLD, A.P. & COCKS, M.L. 2000. The medicinal use of some weeds, problem and alien plants in the Grahamstown and Peddie Districts of the Eastern Cape, South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 96,9/10: 467–473. A-PLANT, UTILISATION, MEDICINAL, MANAGEMENT
- DOLD, A.P. & COCKS, M.L. 2001. One man's meat is another man's poison: the medicinal use of some weeds, invaders and alien plants in the Grahamstown district. *Plant Life* 25: 22–25. A-PLANT, UTILISATION, MEDICINAL, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, MANAGEMENT
- DU TOIT, R. 1950. A resume of the 'Weeds Act', and the relative proclamations and regulations. *Farming in South Africa* 25: 373. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, CIRSIIUM, HAKEA, OPUNTIA, SOLANUM, XANTHIUM
- FINDLAY, J.B.R. 1988. The control of weeds in pastures. *Paper presented at the International Pasture Symposium, Sandton, August 1988*. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, GRAZING
- FOXCROFT, L.C. 1999–2005. Approximately 36 articles in the 'Prickly Pear'. Standing article space in each issue. 'Prickly Pear' is a bi-monthly publication of the Alien Invader Task Group of the SANParks honorary rangers. A-PLANT, SAVANNA, INVASION, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- FOXCROFT, L.C. 2001. A case study of the human dimensions in invasion and control of alien plants in the personnel villages of Kruger National Park. In J.A. McNeely (ed.), *The great reshuffling: human dimensions of invasive alien species*, pp. 127–134. IUCN, Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, UK. A-PLANT, SAVANNA, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, UTILISATION, HORTICULTURE, MANAGEMENT, SOCIAL
- FOXCROFT, L.C. 2001. *Invasive alien plant research programme proposal: assessing the biology and ecology of invading alien plants for optimising control strategies in the Kruger National Park*. SANParks Report 03/01. A-PLANT, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT, RESEARCH
- FOXCROFT, L.C. 2001. The Kruger National Park increases its efforts to control alien invasive plants. *Aliens* (Newsletter of the Invasive Species Specialist Group of the IUCN Species Survival Commission) 13: 14, 15. A-PLANT, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- FOXCROFT, L.C. 2004. Ornamental plants spread and become pests. *Kruger Park Times* September 8, 2004. A-PLANT, SAVANNA, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, UTILISATION, HORTICULTURE, MANAGEMENT
- FOXCROFT, L.C. 2004. An adaptive management framework for linking science and management of invasive alien plants. *Weed Technology* 18: 1275–1277. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, RESEARCH, TECHNIQUE
- FOXCROFT, L.C. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 2003. Biological control in managing alien plants in Kruger. In J.T. du Toit, K.H. Rogers & H.C. Biggs (eds), *The Kruger experience: ecology and management of savanna heterogeneity*, Box 19.1, pp. 410, 411. Island Press, Washington. A-PLANT, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HISTORY
- FOXCROFT, L.C. & FREITAG-RONALDSON, S. 2006. Seven decades of institutional learning: managing alien plant invasions in the Kruger National Park, South Africa. *Journal of Environmental Management* (submitted). A-PLANT, SAVANNA, INVASION,

## IMPACT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT, HISTORY

## PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, HYPERICUM, LANTANA, OPUNTIA, XANTHIUM

- FOXCROFT, L.C. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2003. Managing alien plant invasions in the Kruger National Park, South Africa. In L. Child, J.H. Brock, G. Brundu, K. Prach, P. Pysek, P.M. Wade & M. Williamson (eds), *Plant invasions: ecological threats and management solutions*, pp. 385–403. Backhuys Publishers, Leiden, The Netherlands. A-PLANT, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HISTORY
- FREITAG-RONALDSON, S. & FOXCROFT, L.C. 2003. Anthropogenic ecosystem influences in the Kruger National Park. In J. du Toit, K.H. Rogers & H.C. Biggs (eds), *The Kruger experience: ecology and management of savanna heterogeneity*, pp. 391–421. Island Press, Washington. A-PLANT, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, HORTICULTURE, HISTORY
- FULTON, E.F. 1952. Weed control. *Farming in South Africa* 27: 33–36. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CIRSIUM, HYPERICUM, LANTANA, OPUNTIA, SOLANUM, XANTHIUM
- GELDENHUYS, C.J. 2004. Concepts and process to control invader plants in and around natural evergreen forest in South Africa. Proceedings of the IPINAMS Invasive Weed Symposium, November 3–7, 2003, Wyndham Bonaventure Resort, Ft. Lauderdale, FL. *Weed Technology* 18: 1386–1391. A-PLANT, FOREST, MANAGEMENT, CONCEPT
- GELDENHUYS, C.J., LE ROUX, P.J. & COOPER, K.H. 1986. Alien invasions in indigenous evergreen forest. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 119–131. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, AMMAMMAL, FOREST, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, HISTORY
- GILLESPIE, P., KLEIN, H. & HILL, M.P. 2004. Establishment of a weed biocontrol implementation programme in South Africa. In J.M. Cullen, D.T. Briesse, D.J. Kriticos, W.M. Lonsdale, L. Morin & J.K. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of the Eleventh International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds*, pp. 400–406. CSIRO Entomology, Canberra, Australia. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- GITTENS, C. 1998. Cattle keep alien invaders at bay: effective grazing strategies go a long way towards controlling unwanted alien vegetation. *Farmers Weekly* 88016: 6–10. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, GRAZING, CHROMOLAENA, EUCALYPTUS, LANTANA, MELIA, SOLANUM
- GOODALL, J.M. & KLEIN, H. 2000. Invader plant control in forestry. In N. van Rensburg (section ed.), *Timber plantation protection*, in D. Owen (chief ed.), *South African Forestry Handbook*, edn. 4, pp. 253–261. South African Forestry Institute, Pretoria. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, SYLVICULTURAL-AREA
- GOODALL, J.M. & NAUDÉ, D.C. 1998. An ecosystem approach for planning sustainable management of environmental weeds in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems & Environment* 68: 109–123. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, CONCEPT
- GREATHEAD, D.J. 1971. A review of biological control in the Ethiopian Region. *Commonwealth Agricultural Bureaux, Technical Communication* 5. Commonwealth Institute of Biological Control. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HAKEA, HYPERICUM, LANTANA, OPUNTIA, XANTHIUM
- HARDCASTLE, P. 1995. *Application of the ACRU Model to determine the impact of alien vegetation on streamflow; and the consequences of these infestations for conservation and management*. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM98-0062) A-PLANT, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, N-BIODIVERSITY, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- HATTINGH, I.D. & SWANEPOEL, L. 1980. *List of registered herbicides and plant growth regulators*, edn 5. Department of Agriculture and Fisheries, Republic of South Africa, 72 pp. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), EUCALYPTUS, LANTANA, OPUNTIA, RUBUS, SOLANUM, STIPA
- HENDERSON, L. 1992. Alien plant species in municipal areas: declared weeds and invaders and other problem species. *Parks and Recreation Management* 50,2: 12–14. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, URBAN, LEGISLATION
- HIGGINS, S.I. 1995. Progress on the invasive plant problem: Computer Models point the way in alien plant management. *Veld & Flora* 81,2: 35. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, MODELLING
- HIGGINS, S.I., AZORIN, E.J., COWLING, R.M. & MORRIS, M.J. 1997. A dynamic ecological-economic model as a tool for conflict resolution in an invasive-alien-plant, biological control and native-plant scenario. *Ecological Economics* 22: 141–154. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, MODELLING
- HIGGINS, S.I., RICHARDSON, D.M. & COWLING, R.M. 2000. Using a dynamic landscape model for planning the management of alien plant invasions. *Ecological Applications* 10: 1833–1848. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, MODELLING, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC
- HILL, M.P. & HULLEY, P.E. 1995. Host range extension by native parasitoids to weed biocontrol agents introduced to South Africa. *Biological Control* 5: 297–302. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGENT-INTERFERENCE
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 1995. Biological control of weeds: the way forward, a South African perspective. In *Weeds in a Changing World, British Crop Protection Council, Symposium Proceedings No. 64, 20 November 1995, Brighton, UK*, pp. 77–89. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONCEPT
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 1997. Biological control of weeds in Africa. In H.G. Robertson (ed.), *Insects in African economy and environment*, pp. 131, 132. Entomological Society of Southern Africa, Pretoria. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HISTORY
- HOFFMANN, J.H. 2000. Complications in the implementation of weed biological control. In N.R. Spencer (ed.), *Proceedings of the Tenth International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds, 4–14 July, 1999, Montana State University, Bozeman, Montana*, pp. 885. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGENT-INTERFERENCE, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, CONCEPT
- IMPSON, F.A.C. 2003. *Alien vegetation control*. In River Health Programme. State-of-Rivers Report: Diep, Hout Bay, Lourens and Palmiet River Systems.

- Department of Water Affairs and Forestry. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, RIVER, RIPARIAN, MANAGEMENT
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1974. *Vegetation: technical data report*. In Environmental Study of the Swartkops River Basin, Vol. 3,2, 82 pp. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA, DATURA, EICHHORNIA, NICOTIANA, OPUNTIA.
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, A. 1979. *Report to the Lakes Area Development Board, George, on invasive weed species in the area of the Wilderness lakes*. Rhodes University Institute for Fresh Water Studies, Special Report 79/3: 1–20. A-PLANT, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA, PARASERIANTHES (ALBIZIA), DATURA, LANTANA, LEPTOSPERMUM, OPUNTIA, PINUS, SALVINIA, SESBANIA
- JARMAN, M.L., MOLL, E.J. & MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1988. Conclusions and recommendations for future activities at the site. In M.L. Jarman (ed.), *A description of the Fynbos Biome Project intensive study site at Pella*. CSIR Ecosystems Programmes Occasional Report 33: 77–85. CSIR, Pretoria. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, ACACIA
- JULIEN, M.H. (ed.) 1982. *Biological control of weeds. A world catalogue of agents and their target weeds*, 108 pp. Commonwealth Institute of Biological Control, Commonwealth Agricultural Bureaux, Slough. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EICHHORNIA, HAKEA, HYPERICUM, LANTANA, LEPTOSPERMUM, OPUNTIA, SALVINIA, SOLANUM
- KLEIN, H. (Compiler) 1999. *Biocontrol agents against alien invasive plants in fynbos*. Handbook No. 10, Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria, 52 pp. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL-AGENT
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Contact persons for biological weed control. *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol 1.4: 1*. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CO-OPERATION
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Legislation regarding harmful plants in South Africa. *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol 1.2: 1–4*. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-PLANT, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION
- KLEIN, H. (compiler) 2002. Principles of biological control. *PPRI Leaflet Series: Weeds Biocontrol 1.3: 1–4*. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONCEPT
- KLUGE, R.L., ZIMMERMANN, H.G., CILLIERS, C.J. & HARDING, G.B. 1986. Integrated control for invasive alien weeds. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 295–304. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL
- KRAAIJ, T. 1995. Out of the dead land. Alien infested land is not necessarily wasteland. *Veld & Flora* 91,4: 188–190. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT
- LAROS, M.T. 1991. *Attitudes of nursery managers of Cape Town towards the sale and use of invasive alien plants*. Report to the Botanical Society of South Africa (Flora Conservation Committee). (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM93-0172) A-PLANT, INTRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, HORTICULTURE, PREVENTION, CO-OPERATION
- LOTTER, W.D. 1997. Status of alien plants in the KNP and current control efforts. In *Proceedings of the Kruger National Park Research Symposium, Skukuza*. A-PLANT, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT
- LOTTER, W.D. 1997. Unsung heroes: alien plant control. *Kiewiet*. National Parks Board. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT
- LOTTER, W.D. 1998. Control of alien vegetation. *Custos* March 1998: 38, 39. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT
- LOTTER, W.D. 1999. The Working for Water programme in South Africa. *Aliens* 9. Newsletter of the Invasive Species Specialist Group of the IUCN Species Survival Commission. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, ECONOMICS, SOCIAL
- LOTTER, W.D. 1999. *Working for Water in the Kruger National Park*. Documentary Video, Nick Chevallier Productions, Cape Town. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT
- LOTTER, W.D. 2000. *Guidelines for planning effective alien weed control programmes on Sappi plantations*. Strategic procedure document, Sappi Forests, Cascades. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC
- LOTTER, W.D. 2000. Integrated alien weed control planning. *Third International Weed Science Congress, Foz do Iguassu—Brazil—June 6 to 11*. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, STRATEGIC
- LOTTER, W.D. 2001. Are we tackling the invasive alien plant problem effectively in South Africa? *Newsletter of the Southern African Weed Science Society* 62, Pretoria. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, EVALUATION
- LOTTER, W.D. 2003. *The role of herbicide in the control of weeds and the strategy to minimise its use in Sappi forests*. Risk management document, Sappi Forests. Revised April 2004. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, STRATEGIC, SYLVICULTURE
- LOTTER, W.D. 2006. *Alien plant control plan for Hluhluwe-iMfolozi Park, KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa* (in prep.). A-PLANT, SAVANNA, FOREST, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC
- LOTTER, W.D. & OLCKERS, T. 2006. *The role and relevance of the Code of Best Practices for Classical Biological Control of Weeds* (in prep.). A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONCEPT
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1983. How you can help our flora to survive. *Veld & Flora* 69,3: 77. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CO-OPERATION, VOLUNTEERS
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1983. Monitoring alien plant control operations. *Veld & Flora* 69,4: 134, 135. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, MONITORING, EVALUATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1984. Points of interest to conservation ecologists from the Sixth National Weeds Conference, July-1984. *Terrestrial Ecosystems Newsletter* 36: 12–16. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1985. *A pragmatic approach to the control of alien species invading areas of natural vegetation*. Photostat report, 6 pp. University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, CONCEPT

- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1988. Invasive alien plants and nature conservation in southern Africa. *African Wildlife* 42: 333–335. A-PLANT, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1988. Invasive alien plants and their control in southern African nature reserves. In L.K. Thomas (ed.), *Proceedings of the Conference on Science in the National Parks, Fort Collins, July 1986*, Volume 5: 63–79. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, FOREST, GRASSLAND, KAROO, SAVANNA, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1988. More on banana poka or, is it possible to nip a plant invasion in the bud? *Veld & Flora* 74: 88, 89. A-PLANT, FOREST, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, PREVENTION, MANAGEMENT, PASSIFLORA
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1988. The history, impacts and control of introduced species in the Kruger National Park, South Africa. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa* 46: 251–276. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, HISTORY, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1989. Conservation priorities in the prevention and management of biological invasions in South Africa. In *Proceedings of the National Conference on Conservation Priorities*, pp. 37–42. Wildlife Society of Southern Africa, September-1988, Durban, South Africa. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, PREVENTION, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1989. Invasions of alien species and development: Inescapable consequence or management challenge? In *Proceedings of the World Environment Day Symposium on Invasive Biota, Randburg, June 1989*, pp. 1–5. Environmental Planning Professions Interdisciplinary Committee (EPPIC), Johannesburg, South Africa. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, PREVENTION, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY, DISTURBANCE, INTRODUCTION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1992. Global change and alien invasions: implications for biodiversity and protected area management. In O.T. Solbrig, H.M. van Emden, P.G.W.J. van Oordt (eds), *Biodiversity and global change*. IUBS Monograph No. 8: 197–207. International Union of Biological Sciences, Paris [reprinted in 1994 by CAB International, Wallingford, Oxon, UK, pp. 199–209]. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, ECOLOGY, INVADABILITY, INVASION, SPREAD, PHOTOSYNTHESIS, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, GLOBAL-CHANGE, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 2002. Keynote Address: *Chromolaena* at the cutting edge, or Why the battle to control *Chromolaena* is a flagship battle for the New Millennium. In C. Zacariades, R. Muniappan & L.W. Strathie (eds), *Proceedings of the Fifth International Workshop on Biological Control and Management of Chromolaena odorata, Durban, South Africa, October 2000*, pp. 9–11. ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute, Pretoria, South Africa. A-PLANT, INVASION, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PRIORITY, CHROMOLAENA
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 2004. Recent research on alien plant invasions and their management in South Africa: a review of the inaugural research symposium of the Working for Water programme. *South African Journal of Science* 100: 21–26. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, SOCIAL, RESEARCH, PREVENTION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 2004. *Workplan and terms of reference for Phase 1 of the CAPE Programme on Invasive Alien Species. July 2004*. Final report to the Western Cape Nature Conservation Board. A-PLANT, A-FISH, FRESHWATER, FYNBOS, RESEARCH, PREVENTION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONSERVATION, EXPERTISE
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 2005. *A new strategy and action plan for research within the Working for Water Programme*. Final report to the Working for Water Programme, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, 23 pp. + 14 Appendices. A-PLANT, RESEARCH, PREVENTION, MANAGEMENT, ECONOMICS, BIOCONTROL, EXPERTISE
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., ASHTON, E.R., BERENS, N., KNIGHT, R., LESLEY, R., LINGER, M. & MALAN, C. 1985. The role of the volunteer group. In I.A.W. Macdonald, M.L. Jarman & P.M. Beeston (eds), *Management of invasive alien plants in the Fynbos Biome*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 111: 117–119. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, CO-OPERATION, VOLUNTEERS
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., JARMAN, M.L. & BEESTON, P.M. (eds) 1985. *Management of invasive alien plants in the Fynbos Biome*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 111: 1–140. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., SCOTCHER, J., WARD, M., WYATT, J., ZALOUMIS, G. & FREEMAN, D. 1985. Ranking the species according to their importance: the nature conservation estate. In I.A.W. Macdonald & M.L. Jarman (eds), *Invasive alien plants in the terrestrial ecosystems of Natal, South Africa*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 118: 20–34. A-PLANT, FOREST, GRASSLAND, SAVANNA, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY, CONSERVATION
- MARAIS, C. 1999. The National Working For Water Programme (WfW) in South Africa—linking invading alien plant clearing programmes with economic and social empowerment and development in South Africa. *ICEPE Workshop on Invasive Species in East Africa, Nairobi Kenya*. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, IMPACT, ECONOMICS, SOCIAL
- MARAIS, C. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1997. The fynbos Working for Water Program: an environmental project that combines social and environmental benefits. *Aliens* 5: 9, 10. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, N-BIODIVERSITY, ECONOMICS, SOCIAL
- MARAIS, C., VAN HENSBERGEN, H.J., ECKERT, J.B. & BOND, W.J. 1997. Controlling invasive alien plants in Fynbos—linking biodiversity concerns with economic empowerment and social upliftment. In *Proceedings of the Medecos Conference, San Diego, California, USA*. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, N-BIODIVERSITY, ECONOMICS, SOCIAL
- MARAIS, C., VAN WILGEN, B.W. & STEVENS, D. 2004. The clearing of invasive alien plants in South Africa: a preliminary assessment of costs and progress. *South African Journal of Science* 100: 97–103. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, N-BIODIVERSITY, ECONOMICS, SOCIAL, EVALUATION

- MARAIS, C., WILLEMS, T. & HANKS, K. 1999. The National Working for Water programme (Working for Water) in South Africa—linking invading alien plant clearing programmes with economic and social empowerment and development in South Africa. *ICEPE workshop on invasive species in East Africa, Nairobi, Kenya*. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, N-BIODIVERSITY, ECONOMICS, SOCIAL, EVALUATION
- MILLS, A.J., TURPIE, J., COWLING, R.M., MARAIS, C., KERLEY, G.I.H., LECHMERE-OERTEL, R.G., SIGWELA, A.M. & POWELL, M. 2006. Assessing costs, benefits and feasibility of subtropical thicket restoration in the Eastern Cape, South Africa. In: J. Aronson, S.J. Milton & J. Blignaut (eds), *Restoring natural capital. Science, business and practice*. Island Press, Washington DC (in press). A-PLANT, THICKET, IMPACT, ECONOMICS, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION
- MILTON, S.J. 2001 Rethinking ecological rehabilitation in arid and winter rainfall southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 97: 47, 48. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, KAROO, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION
- MILTON, S.J., DEAN, W.R.J. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2003. Economic incentives for restoring natural capital in southern African rangelands. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment* 1,5: 247–254. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESTORATION, ECONOMICS, GRAZING
- MILTON, S.J., ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1999. Alien plant invaders of the Karoo: attributes, impacts and control. In R.J. Dean & S.J. Milton (eds), *The Karoo, ecological patterns and processes*, pp. 274–287. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge. A-PLANT, KAROO, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT
- MONTGOMERY, K. 2003. War on weeds: confusion, ignorance and hostility has dogged the passing of legislation to deal with invasive alien plants in South Africa, many of them garden ornamentals. *Veld & Flora* 89,3: 116, 117. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, HORTICULTURE
- MONTGOMERY, K. 2003. War on weeds [South African legislation on invasive alien plants] *Garden RHS* 128,1: 30, 31. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, HORTICULTURE
- MORAN, V.C. 1985. The Silwood International Project on the biological control of weeds. *Proceedings of the Sixth International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, Vancouver, Canada, 1984*, pp. 65–68. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- MORAN, V.C. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1995. Symposium discussion topic: should agents that attack native or other non-target plants be used for biological weed control? In E.S. Delfosse & R.R. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of Eighth International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds, 2–7 February 1992, Lincoln University, Canterbury, New Zealand*, pp. 13–15. DSIR/CSIRO, Melbourne. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, IMPACT, N-PLANT, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, CONCEPT
- MORAN, V.C., HOFFMANN, J.H. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 2005. Biological control of invasive alien plants in South Africa: necessity, circumspection, and success. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment* 3: 77–83. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION
- MORAN, V.C., NESER, S. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1986. The potential of insect herbivores for the biological control of invasive plants in South Africa. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 261–268. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION
- MORRIS, J., VAN RENSBURG, J.B.J., HOFFMANN, J.H. & LAZARUS, P. 2005. Good regulatory practices for developing countries—lessons learned in South Africa from an Appeal under the GMO Act. *9th International Conference on Agricultural Biotechnology: Ten Years Later. Ravello (Italy)*, 6–10 July, 2005. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION, CONCEPT
- NEL, J.L., RICHARDSON, D.M., ROUGET, M., MGIDI, T.N., MDZEKE, N., LE MAITRE, D.C., VAN WILGEN, B.W., SCHONEVOGEL, L., HENDERSON, L. & NESER, S. 2004. A proposed classification of alien invasive plant species in South Africa: towards prioritizing species and areas for management action. *South African Journal of Science* 100: 53–64. A-PLANT, PRIORITY, CLASSIFICATION, INVASION
- NESER, S. & ANNECKE, D.P. 1973. Biological control of weeds in South Africa. *Department of Agricultural Technical Services, Republic of South Africa, Entomology Memoir* 28: 1–27. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, ACACIA, HAKEA, HYPERICUM, MYRIOPHYLLUM, LANTANA, OPUNTIA, SOLANUM
- NESER, S. & KLUGE, R.L. 1986. The importance of seed-attacking agents in the biological control of invasive plants. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 285–294. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, SEED-PRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SEED-FEEDER, REGENERATION, UTILISATION, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, CONCEPT
- NESER, S. & MORAN, V.C. 1985. Tactics for evading conflicts in the biological control of South African weeds. In E.S. Delfosse (ed.), *Proceedings of the Sixth International Symposium on the Biological Control of Weeds, 19–25 August 1984, Vancouver, Canada*, pp. 359–363. Agriculture Canada, Ottawa. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, SEED-PRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, REGENERATION, UTILISATION, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, CONCEPT
- OLCKERS, T. 1999. Introduction. In T. Olckers, & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1998)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 1, 2. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HISTORY, EVALUATION
- OLCKERS, T. 2000. Implementing biological control technology into the management of alien invasive weeds: South African experiences and challenges. In L.G. Copping (ed.), *2000 British Crop Protection Council Symposium Proceedings No. 74: Predicting Field Performance in Crop Protection, 10–12 September 2000, University of Kent, Canterbury, United Kingdom*, pp. 111–122. British Crop Protection Council, Farnham. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, INTEGRATED-CONTROL, EVALUATION
- OLCKERS, T. 2003. Targeting 'emerging weeds' for biological control: South Africa leads the



- way. *Plant Protection News* 62: 4, 5. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PRE-EMPTIVE
- OLCKERS, T. 2004. Targeting 'emerging weeds' for biological control in South Africa: the benefits of halting the spread of alien plants at an early stage of their invasion. *South African Journal of Science* 100: 64–68. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PRE-EMPTIVE
- OLCKERS, T. & HILL, M.P. (eds) 1999. Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1998). *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HISTORY, EVALUATION
- OLCKERS, T. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 1995. Eighty years of biological weed control in South Africa: how far have we come? *Veld & Flora* 81: 110–114. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HISTORY, EVALUATION
- OLCKERS, T. & HULLEY, P.E. 1994. Host specificity tests on leaf-feeding insects: aberrations from the use of excised leaves. *African Entomology* 2,1: 68–70. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, TECHNIQUE
- OOSTERBROEK, C. 2003. Alien invasions: here's how to fight back. *Farmers Weekly* 4 April 2003: 38, 39. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2004-0031) A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT
- RICHARDSON, D.M., MORAN, V.C., LE MAITRE, D.C., ROUGET, M. & FOXCROFT, L.C. 2004. Recent developments in the science and management of invasive alien plants: connecting the dots of research knowledge, and linking disciplinary boxes. *South African Journal of Science* 100: 126–128. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, RESEARCH, CONCEPT
- ROBERTSON, M.P., VILLET, M.H., FAIRBANKS, D.H.K., HENDERSON, L., HIGGINS, S.I., HOFFMANN, J.H., LE MAITRE, D.C., PALMER, A.R., RIGGS, I., SHACKLETON, C.M. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 2003. A proposed prioritization system for the management of invasive alien plants in South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 99: 37–43. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY
- SHEPPARD, A.W., HILL, R., DECLERCK-FLOATE, R.A., MCCLAY, A., OLCKERS, T., QUIMBY, P.C. JR & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 2003. A global review of risk-benefit-cost analysis for the introduction of classical biological control agents against weeds: a crisis in the making? *Biocontrol News and Information* 24,4: 91N–108N. A-PLANT, AGENT-SELECTION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, RISK-ASSESSMENT, ECONOMICS, CONCEPT
- SYRETT, P., BRIESE, D.T. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 2000. Measures of success in biological control: terrestrial weeds. In G. Gurr & S. Wratten (eds), *Measures of success in biological control*, pp. 189–230. Kluwer Academic Publishers. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION, TECHNIQUE
- TRAINOR, H.M. 1977. *Battle over the years to save the Cape Flora from the invasive plants*. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM89-1068) A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, VOLUNTEERS, CO-OPERATION, CONSERVATION
- TUCKER, K.C. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1995. An expert system for screening potentially invasive alien plants in fynbos. *Journal of Environmental Management* 44: 309–338. A-PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, PREVENTION, RISK-ASSESSMENT, TECHNIQUE
- TURPIE, J. 2004. The role of resource economics in the control of invasive alien plants in South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 100,1/2: 87–93. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, ECONOMICS
- VAN KLINKEN, R.D., KRITIKOS, D., WILSON, J. & HOFFMANN, J.H. 2004. Agents that reduce seed production—essential ingredient or fools folly? In J.M. Cullen, D.T. Briese, D.J. Kritikos, W.M. Lonsdale, L. Morin & J.K. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of the Eleventh International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds*, pp. 621, 622. CSIRO Entomology, Canberra, Australia. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, SEED-PRODUCTION, SEED-FEEDER, REGENERATION
- VAN WILGEN, B.W. 2004. Scientific challenges in the field of invasive alien plant management. *South African Journal of Science* 100,1/2: 19, 20. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, RESEARCH
- VAN WILGEN, B.W., DE WIT, M.P., ANDERSON, H.J., LE MAITRE, D.C., KOTZE, I.M., NDALA, S., BROWN, B. & RAPHOLO, M.B. 2004. Costs and benefits of biological control of invasive alien plants: case studies from South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 100: 113–122. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, EVALUATION
- VAN WILGEN, B.W., MARAIS, C., MAGADLELA, D., JEZILE, N. & STEVENS, D. 2002. *Promoting biodiversity conservation through the control of invasive alien plants—South Africa's Working For Water Programme*. GEF—World Bank. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION, ECONOMICS, SOCIAL
- VAN WILGEN, B.W., RICHARDSON, D.M. & HIGGINS, S.I. 2000. Integrated control of invasive alien plants in terrestrial ecosystems. In G. Preston, G. Brown & E. van Wyk (eds), *Best management practices for preventing and controlling invasive alien species*. Symposium proceedings, pp. 118–128. The South Africa—United States of America Bi-National Commission/Working for Water Programme, Cape Town. [[available online](#)] A-PLANT, TERRESTRIAL, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL
- VAN WILGEN, B.W., RICHARDSON, D.M., LE MAITRE, D.C., MARAIS, C. & MAGADLELA, D. 2001. The economic consequences of alien plant invasions: Examples of impacts and approaches to sustainable management in South Africa. *Environment, Development and Sustainability* 3: 145–168. A-PLANT, ECONOMICS, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, HISTORY, EVALUATION
- VAN WILGEN, B.W., RICHARDSON, D.M., LE MAITRE, D.C., MARAIS, C. & MAGADLELA, D. 2002. The economic consequences of alien plant invasions: Examples of impacts and approaches to sustainable management in South Africa. In D. Pimentel (ed.), *Biological invasions: economic and environmental costs of alien plant, animal, and microbe species*, pp. 243–265. CRC Press, Boca Raton, USA. A-PLANT, ECONOMICS, IMPACT, HYDROLOGY, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, HISTORY, EVALUATION
- VAN WILGEN, B.W., VAN DER HEYDEN, F., ZIMMERMANN, H.G., MAGADLELA, D. & WILLEMS, T. 2000. Big returns from small organisms: developing a strategy for the biological control of invasive alien plants in South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 96: 148–152. A-PLANT,

- MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, STRATEGIC, ECONOMICS
- WITTENBERG, R. & COCK, M.J.W. (eds) 2001. *Invasive alien species: a toolkit of best prevention and management practices*. Global Invasive Species Programme (GISP). Wallingford, CABI. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, INVASION, PREVENTION, MANAGEMENT, TECHNIQUE
- YELD, J. 2003. Betty's Bay hack still waging war on invasive aliens 40 years on. *Cape Argus* 17 Feb 2003. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2003-0118) A-PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, VOLUNTEERS, HISTORY
- YELD, J. 2004. First court action over invasive aliens: category 1 plants declared prohibited. *Cape Argus* 20 Jan 2004. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2004-0066) A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION
- YELD, J. 2004. Still awake and fighting the alien invaders [UKUVUKA]. *Cape Argus* 15 July 2004. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2004-0158) A-PLANT, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, CO-OPERATION
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G., MORAN, V.C. & HOFFMAN, J.H. 2004. Biological control in the management of alien invasive plants in South Africa, and the role of the Working for Water Programme. *South African Journal of Science* 100: 34–40. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HISTORY, EVALUATION
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & NESER, S. 1999. Trends and prospects for biological control of weeds in South Africa. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 165–173. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HISTORY, EVALUATION
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. & OLCKERS, T. 2003. Biological control of alien plant invaders in southern Africa. In P. Neuenschwander, C. Borgemeister & J. Langewald (eds), *Biological Control in IPM Systems in Africa*, pp. 27–44. CABI Publishing, CAB International, Wallingford. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HISTORY, EVALUATION
- ZWÖLFER, H. & ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 2004. The potential of phytophagous insects in restoring invaded ecosystems: examples from biological weed control. In W.W. Weisser & E. Siemann (eds.), *Insects and ecosystem function. Ecological studies*, Volume 173, pp. 135–153. Springer-Verlag Berlin. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, RESTORATION, HISTORY, EVALUATION
- press). A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, UTILISATION, PINUS
- ROUX, J., KEMP, G.H.J. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 1996. Diseases of black wattle in South Africa—a review. *South African Forestry Journal* 174: 35–40. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, ACACIA, ECOLOGY
- ROUX, J. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 1996. Survey and evaluation of fungi associated with diseased *Acacia mearnsii* in South Africa. In *Proceedings of the 34th Congress of the Southern African Society for Plant Pathology, Stellenbosch, 14–17 January 1996*. *South African Journal of Science* 92: xiii. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, ACACIA, ECOLOGY
- ROUX, J. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 1997. Survey and virulence of fungi occurring on diseased *Acacia mearnsii* in South Africa. *Forest Ecology and Management* 99: 327–336. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, ACACIA, ECOLOGY
- SWART, W.J., CONRADIE, E. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 1991. *Cryphonectria cubensis*, a potential pathogen of *Psidium guajava* in South Africa. *European Journal of Forest Pathology* 21: 424–429. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, PSIDIUM, CRYPHONECTRIA, ECOLOGY
- WINGFIELD, M.J. 1986. Diseases of pines, eucalypts and wattles. In K. von Gadow *et al.*, *Forestry handbook*, edn 2, pp 153–164. South African Forestry Institute, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, ACACIA, EUCALYPTUS, PINUS, ECOLOGY
- WINGFIELD, M.J. 1990. Current status and future prospects of forest pathology in South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 86: 60–62. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, ECOLOGY
- WINGFIELD, M.J., COUTINHO, T.A., ROUX, J.A. & WINGFIELD, B.D. 2002. The future of exotic plantation forestry in the tropics and southern hemisphere. Lessons from pitch canker. *Southern African Forestry Journal* 195: 79–82. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, ECOLOGY
- WINGFIELD, M.J. & HARRINGTON, T.C. 1998. Diseases and the ecology of indigenous and exotic pines. In D.M. Richardson (ed.), *Ecology and biogeography of Pinus*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, PINUS, ECOLOGY
- WINGFIELD, M.J. & KEMP, G.H.J. 1994. Diseases of pines, eucalypts and wattle. *Forestry Handbook*, edn 3. South African Forestry Institute, Pretoria. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, ACACIA, EUCALYPTUS, PINUS, ECOLOGY
- WINGFIELD, M.J. & ROBISON, D.J. 2004. Diseases and insect pests on *Gmelina arborea*: real threats and real opportunities. *New Forests* 28,2–3: 227–243. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, GMELINA, ECOLOGY
- BURGESS, T., WINGFIELD, M.J. & WINGFIELD, B.D. 2001. Comparison of genotypic diversity in native and introduced populations of *Sphaeropsis sapinea* isolated from *Pinus radiata*. *Mycological Research* 105: 1331–1339. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, PINUS, SPHAEROPSIS, ECOLOGY
- ROUX, J., EISENBERG, B., KANZLER, A., NEL, A., COETZEE, V., KIETZKA, E. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 2006. Testing of selected South African *Pinus* hybrids and families for tolerance to the pitch cancer pathogen *Fusarium circinatum*. *New Forests* (in
- LINDE, C., KEMP, G.H.J. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 1998. Variation in pathogenicity among South African *Phytophthora cinnamomi* isolates. 36th Congress

## 8.6 Alien Plant Pathogens (36)



- of the Southern African Society for Plant Pathology, Champagne Castle, Drakensberg, South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 94: xi. A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, PHYTOPHTHORA
- LINDE, C., KEMP, G.H.J. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 1999. Variation in pathogenicity among South African *Phytophthora cinnamomi* isolates. *European Journal of Forest Pathology* 105: 231–239. A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, PHYTOPHTHORA
- MORRIS, M.J. & CROUS, P.C. 1994. New and interesting records of South African fungi XIV. Cercosporoid fungi from weeds. *South African Journal of Botany* 60: 325–332. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT-PATHOGEN
- MORRIS, M.J., WINGFIELD, M.J. & DE BEER, C. 1993. Gummosis and wilt of *Acacia mearnsii* in South Africa caused by *Ceratocystis fimbriata*. *Plant Pathology* 42: 814–817. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, PLANT-PATHOGEN, ACACIA, CERATOCYSTIS
- WINGFIELD, M.J., VON BROEMBSSEN, S.L. & MANDERS, P.T. 1988. A preliminary assessment of the threat of diseases and pests to *Widdringtonia cedarbergensis*. *South African Forestry Journal* 147: 32–34. A-INSECT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-PLANT, RISK-ASSESSMENT
- COETZEE, M.P.A., WINGFIELD, B.D., HARRINGTON, T.C., STEIMEL, J., COUTINHO, T.A. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 2001. The root rot fungus *Armillaria mellea* introduced into South Africa by early Dutch settlers. *Molecular Ecology* 10: 387–396. A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ARMILLARIA
- COETZEE, M.P.A., WINGFIELD, B.D., ROUX, J., CROUS, P.W., DENMAN, S. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 2003. Discovery of two northern hemisphere *Armillaria* species on Proteaceae in South Africa. *Plant Pathology* 52: 604–613. A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, ARMILLARIA, INTRODUCTION
- LINDE, C., DRENTH, A., KEMP, G.H.J. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 1997. *Phytophthora cinnamomi*, an introduced pathogen to South Africa. 35th Congress of the Southern African Society for Plant Pathology, Badplaas, South Africa, January 19th to 22nd. *South African Journal of Science* 93: vii. A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, INTRODUCTION, PHYTOPHTHORA
- LINDE, C., DRENTH, A., KEMP, G.H.J., WINGFIELD, M.J. & VON BROEMBSSEN, S.L. 1997. Population structure of *Phytophthora cinnamomi* in South Africa. *Phytopathology* 87: 822–827. A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, INTRODUCTION, ORIGIN, GENETICS, PHYTOPHTHORA
- LINDE, C., DRENTH, A. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 1999. Gene and genotypic diversity of *Phytophthora cinnamomi* in South Africa and Australia revealed by DNA polymorphisms. *European Journal of Forest Pathology* 105: 1–14. A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, INTRODUCTION, ORIGIN, GENETICS, PHYTOPHTHORA
- MORRIS, M.J., WINGFIELD, M.J. & WALKER, J. 1988. First record of a rust on *Acacia mearnsii* in southern Africa. *Transactions of the British Mycological Society* 90: 324–327. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, PLANT-PATHOGEN, ACACIA, INTRODUCTION
- ROUX, J., DUNLOP, R. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 2000. Development of disease tolerant *Acacia mearnsii*. In *Proceedings of the IUFRO Symposium on Forest Genetics and Tree Improvement, Durban, October 2000*. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, ACACIA, INTRODUCTION
- SLIPPERS, B., WINGFIELD, M.J., WINGFIELD, B.D. & COUTINHO, T.A. 2001. Population structure and possible origin of *Amylostereum areolatum* in South Africa. *Plant Pathology* 50: 206–210. A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, INTRODUCTION, ORIGIN, AMYLOSTEREUM
- WINGFIELD, M.J., SLIPPERS, B., ROUX, J. & WINGFIELD, B.D. 2001. Worldwide movement of exotic forest fungi especially in the tropics and southern hemisphere. *Bioscience* 51: 134–140. A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE
- VAN STADEN, V., ERASMUS, B.E., ROUX, J., WINGFIELD, M.J. & VAN JAARSVELD, A.S. 2004. Modelling the special distribution of two important South African forestry pathogens. *Forest Ecology and Management* 187: 61–73. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, INVASION, SPREAD, MODELLING, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE
- WINGFIELD, M.J. 2003. Increasing threat of diseases to exotic plantation forests in the southern hemisphere: lessons from *Cryphonectria* canker. *Australasian Plant Pathology* 32: 133–139. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, CRYPHONECTRIA, INVASION
- WOOD, A.R. & SCHOLLER, M. 2002. *Puccinia abrupta* var. *parthenicola* on *Parthenium hysterophorus* in southern Africa. *Plant Disease* 86,3: 327. A-HERBACEOUS PLANT, PLANT-PATHOGEN, PARTHENIUM, PUCCINIA, INVASION
- BURGESS, T. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 2001. Exotic pine forestry in the southern hemisphere: a brief history of establishment and quarantine practices. *South African Forestry Journal* 192: 79–83. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, UTILISATION, SYLVICULTURE, MANAGEMENT, QUARANTINE
- BURGESS, T. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 2002. Quarantine is important in restricting the spread of exotic seed-borne tree pathogens in the southern hemisphere. *International Forestry Review* 4: 56–65. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, MANAGEMENT, QUARANTINE
- BURGESS, T., WINGFIELD, B.D., HARDY, G.E. ST J. & WINGFIELD, M.J. 2000. Efficacy of quarantine in restricting the spread of forest tree pathogens. *Proceedings of the Southern African Society for Plant Pathology, Grahamstown 27–28 January 2000*. *South African Journal of Science* 97: (x). A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, MANAGEMENT, QUARANTINE
- KLUGE, R.L. & CALDWELL, P.M. 1992. Microsporidian diseases and biological weed control agents:

to release or not to release? *Biocontrol News and Information* 13,3: 43N–47N. A-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN

MORRIS, M.J. 1991. The use of plant pathogens for biological weed control in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 37: 239–255. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PLANT-PATHOGEN, EVALUATION

MORRIS, M.J., WOOD, A. & DEN BREEËN, A. 1999. Plant pathogens and biological control of weeds in South Africa: a review of projects and progress during the last decade. In T. Olckers & M.P. Hill (eds), *Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1999)*. *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1: 129–137. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PLANT-PATHOGEN, EVALUATION

WINGFIELD, M.J. & SWART, W.J. 1994. Integrated management of forest tree diseases in South Africa. *Forest Ecology and Management* 65: 11–16. A-WOODY PLANT, A-PLANT-PATHOGEN, MANAGEMENT, INTEGRATED-CONTROL

## 8.7 Alien Biota—Nonspecific Life Form (100)

BRUTON, M.N. 1980. An outline of the ecology of the Mgobezeleni lake system at Sodwana, with emphasis on the mangrove community. In M.N. Bruton & K.H. Cooper (eds), *Studies on the ecology of Maputaland*, pp. 408–426. Rhodes University, Grahamstown, and the Natal Branch of the Wildlife Society of Southern Africa, Durban. A-MOLLUSC, ESTUARY, LYMNAEA, ECOLOGY

BRUTON, M.N. & APPLETON, C.C. 1975. Survey of Mgobezeleni lake-system in Zululand, with a note on the effect of a bridge on the mangrove swamp. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa* 41: 282–294. A-MOLLUSC, ESTUARY, LYMNAEA, ECOLOGY

CHOWN, S.L. 2000. Functional ecosystems: The Prince Edward Islands. In B.D. Durham & J.C. Pauw (eds), *Summary marine biodiversity status report for South Africa*, pp. 30, 31. National Research Foundation, Pretoria. A-BIOTA, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY

DAVIS, G.D. & RICHARDSON, D.M. (eds) 1995. *Mediterranean-type ecosystems: the function of biodiversity*. Ecological Studies 109. Springer-Verlag, Berlin. A-BIOTA, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY

DAVIS, G.D., RICHARDSON, D.M., KEELEY, J.E. & HOBBS, R.J. 1996. Mediterranean-type ecosystems: the influence of biodiversity on their functioning. In H.A. Mooney, J.H. Cushman, E. Medina, O.E. Sala & E-D. Schulze (eds), *Functional roles of biodiversity: global perspectives*, pp. 151–183. Wiley, Chichester. A-BIOTA, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY

DEAN (née MILTON), S.J. 1986. Ecology of biological invasions. *South African Journal of Science* 82: 610–612. A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY

DE MOOR, F.C., DE MOOR, I.J. & SKELTON, P.H. 1998. Freshwater ecology. In R.A. Lubke & I.J. de Moor, (eds), *A field guide to the Eastern and southern Cape coasts*, pp. 281–286. UCT Press,

Cape Town. A-BIOTA, FRESHWATER, ECOLOGY, FIELD-GUIDE

FOXCROFT, L.C., CADENASSO, M.L. & PICKETT, S.T.A. 2006. Beyond filling the gaps: advancing the science of invasion ecology using a new conceptual framework. *Ecological Monographs* (submitted). A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, RESEARCH, CONCEPT

GREVE, M., GREMMEN, N.J.M., GASTON, K.J. & CHOWN, S.L. 2005. Nestedness of Southern Ocean Island biotas: ecological perspectives on a biogeographic conundrum. *Journal of Biogeography* 32: 155–168. A-BIOTA, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY

HORTSTMAN, D.A., MCGIBBON, S., PITCHER, G.C., CALSER, D., HUTCHINGS, L. & WILLIAMS, P. 1991. Red tides in False Bay, 1959–1989, with particular reference to recent blooms of *Gymnodinium* sp. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa* 47,4 & 5: 611–628. A-PHYTOPLANKTON, ECOLOGY, MARINE, INVASION, SPREAD, HISTORY, INTRODUCTION, BALLAST-WATER, GYMNODINIUM

MACDONALD, I.A.W., CRAWFORD, R.J.M., SIEGFRIED, W.R. & HUNTLEY, B.J. 1988. Long-term environmental change in and around southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 84: 483, 486. ECOLOGY, INVASION, GLOBAL-CHANGE

PITCHER, G.C. 1998. *Harmful algal blooms of the Benguela Current*, 20 pp. National Book Printers, Cape Town, South Africa. A-PHYTOPLANKTON, MARINE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, INTRODUCTION, BALLAST-WATER

PITCHER, G.C., BERNARD, S. & PIENAAR, R.N. 1999. Brown tides on the west coast. *Harmful Algal News* 18: 8–10. A-PHYTOPLANKTON, MARINE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, INTRODUCTION, BALLAST-WATER

LUBKE, R.A. & DE MOOR, I.J. (eds) 1998. *A field guide to the Eastern and southern Cape coasts*, 550 pp. UCT Press, Cape Town. A-BIOTA, IDENTIFICATION, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, HISTORY, FIELD-GUIDE

BREYTENBACH, G.J., BREYTENBACH, W. & VLOK, J. 1984. Ecological disruption in Fynbos. In B. Dell (ed.), *MEDECOS IV: Proceedings of the Fourth International Conference on Mediterranean Ecosystems*, pp. 16, 17. Botany Department University of Western Australia, Nedlands. A-BIOTA, FYNBOS, IMPACT

DE MOOR, I.J. & BRUTON, M.N. 1998. Conservation. In R.A. Lubke & I.J. de Moor (eds), *A field guide to the Eastern and southern Cape coasts*, pp. 459–470. UCT Press, Cape Town. A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, FIELD-GUIDE

FOXCROFT, L.C. 2004. Impacts of invasive alien species on biodiversity. *The Game Ranger* (Official magazine of the Game Rangers Association of Africa) 2: 12–14. A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT

GRIFFITHS, C.L., GRIFFITHS, M.H., HUTCHINGS, K., JERARDINO, A., KRUGER, N., LAMBETH, S.J.,

- LESLIE, R.W., MELVILLE-SMITH, R., TARR, R., VAN DER LINGEN, C.D., VAN SITTERT, L., BEST, P.B., BROWN, A.C., CLARK, B.M., COOK, P.A., CRAWFORD, R.J.M., DAVIES, J.H.M. & DAVIES, B.R. 2004. Human impacts on marine animal life in the Benguela—a historical overview. *Oceanography and Marine Biology: an Annual Review* 42: 303–392. A-BIOTA, MARINE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-ANIMAL, INTRODUCTION
- MARTENS, K. & DE MOOR, F.C. 1995. The fate of the Rhino Ridge pool at Thomas Baines Nature Reserve: a cautionary tale for nature conservationists. *South African Journal of Science* 91: 385–387. A-BIOTA, RIVER, IMPACT, CONSERVATION
- NIEMELÄ, J., KOTZE, J., ASHWORTH, A., BRANDMAYR, P., DESENDER, K., NEW, T., PENEV, L., SAMWAYS, M.J. & SPENCE, J. 2000. The search for common anthropogenic impacts on biodiversity: a global network. *Journal of Insect Conservation* 4: 3–9. A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION, CO-OPERATION
- O'KEEFFE, J.H. & DE MOOR, F.C. 1988. Changes in the physico-chemistry and benthic invertebrates of the Great Fish River, South Africa, following an interbasin transfer of water. *Regulated Rivers: Research and Management* 2: 39–55. A-BIOTA, T-BIOTA, RIVER, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INTER-BASIN TRANSFER
- PROBYN, T., PITCHER, G., PIENAAR, R. & NUZZI, R. 2001. Brown tides and mariculture in Saldanha Bay. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* 42,5: 405–408. A-PHYTOPLANKTON, MARINE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, AQUACULTURE, INTRODUCTION, BALLAST-WATER
- REAVELL, P.E. & MENNE, W. 1998. Lake Msingazi: a treasure under threat. *African Wildlife* 52,4: 40–42. A-BIOTA, WETLAND, IMPACT, CONSERVATION
- CHOWN, S.L. & GASTON, K.J. 2000. Island-hopping invaders hitch a ride with tourists in the Southern Ocean. *Nature* 408: 637. A-BIOTA, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, INTRODUCTION, INTRODUCTION-RATE
- CHOWN, S.L., GASTON, K.J. & GREMMEN, N.J.M. 2000. Including the Antarctic: insights for ecologists everywhere. In W. Davison, C. Howard-Williams & P. Broady (eds), *Antarctic ecosystems: models for wider ecological understanding*, pp. 1–15. New Zealand Natural Sciences, Christchurch N.Z. A-BIOTA, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, INTRODUCTION
- EWEL, J.J., O'DOWD, D.J., BERGELSON, J., DAEHLER, C.C., D'ANTONIO, C.M., GOMEZ, L.D., GORDON, D.R., HOBBS, R.J., HOLT, A., HOPPER, K.R., HUGHES, C.E., LAHART, M., LEAKEY, R.R.B., WONG, W.G., LOOPE, L.L., LORENCE, D.H., LOUDA, S.M., LUGO, A.E., MCEVOY, P.B., RICHARDSON, D.M. & VITOUSEK, P.M. 1999. Deliberate introductions of species: Research needs. *BioScience* 49: 619–630. A-BIOTA, INTRODUCTION, RISK-ASSESSMENT, RESEARCH
- GASTON, K.J., JONES, A.G., HANEL, C. & CHOWN, S.L. 2003. Rates of species introduction to a remote oceanic island. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B* 270: 1091–1098. A-BIOTA, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, INTRODUCTION-RATE
- HARRISON, A.C. 1957. *A preliminary account of the fauna and flora of the Provincial Wildlife Farm De Hoop: De Hoop Lake*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 14: 57–60. A-ARTHROPOD, A-FISH, PAN, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, ABUNDANCE, DAPHNIA, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS
- INVASION (30)**
- ANONYMOUS 2004. *Africa invaded: the growing danger of invasive alien species*. Global Invasive Species Programme (GISP), Cape Town. A-BIOTA, INVASION, IMPACT
- BERGSTROM, D. & CHOWN, S.L. 1999. Life at the front: history, ecology and change on southern ocean islands. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution* 14: 472–477. A-BIOTA, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, HISTORY
- BETTS, R. & MIDGLEY, G.F. 2003. Models and Methods. In L. Hannah & T. Lovejoy (eds), *Climate change and biodiversity: synergistic impacts, advances in Applied Biodiversity Science* 4. Chapter 1. Centre for Applied Biodiversity Science, Conservation International: Washington, DC. A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MODELLING, GLOBAL-CHANGE
- BROOKE, R.K. & PRINS, A.J. 1986. Review of alien species on South African offshore islands. *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 16,3: 102–109. A-BIOTA, ISLAND-COASTAL, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-VERTEBRATE
- CASSEY, P., BLACKBURN, T.M., DUNCAN, R.P. & CHOWN, S.L. 2005. Concerning invasive species: reply to Brown and Sax. *Austral Ecology* 30: 475–480. A-BIOTA, INVASION, CONCEPT
- CHOWN, S.L., HULL, B. & GASTON, K.J. 2005. Human impacts, energy availability, and invasion across Southern Ocean Islands. *Global Ecology and Biogeography* 14: 521–528. A-BIOTA, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, INVASION
- FOXCROFT, L.C. 2004. A review of biological invasions in protected areas. *Aliens* (Newsletter of the Invasive Species Specialist Group of the IUCN Species Survival Commission) 19 & 20: 7, 8. (Special issue for World Conservation Congress-Bangkok) A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- FRENOT, Y., CHOWN, S.L., WHINAN, J., SELKIRK, P.M., CONVEY, P., SKOTNICI, M. & BERGSTROM, D.M. 2005. Biological invasions in the Antarctic: extent, impacts and implications. *Biological Reviews* 80: 45–72. A-BIOTA, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, INTRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT
- GRIFFITHS, C.L. 2000. Overview of current problems and future risks. In G. Preston, G. Brown & E. van Wyk (eds), *Best management practices for preventing and controlling invasive alien species*, pp. 235–241. Working for Water Programme, Cape Town. A-BIOTA, MARINE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, RISK-ASSESSMENT
- GRIFFITHS, C.L., HOCKEY, P.A.R., VAN ERKOM SCHURINK, C. & LE ROUX, P.J. 1992. Marine

- invasive aliens on South African shores—implications for community structure and trophic functioning. *South African Journal of Marine Science* 12: 713–722. A-BIOTA, MARINE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, RISK-ASSESSMENT
- GUREVITCH, J. & PADILLA, D.K. 2004. Are invasive species a major cause of extinctions? *Trends in Ecology and Evolution* 19,9: 470–474. A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION
- HECHT, T. & BRITZ, P.J. 1992. The current status, future prospects and environmental implications of mariculture in South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 88: 335–342. A-BIOTA, MARINE, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, RISK-ASSESSMENT, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE
- HOBBS, R.J. 1988. The nature and effects of disturbance relative to invasions. In J.A. Drake, H.A. Mooney, F. di Castri, R.H. Groves, F.J. Kruger, M. Rejmánek & M. Williamson (eds), *Biological invasions. A global perspective. SCOPE* 37, pp. 389–406. John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, UK. A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, DISTURBANCE, CONCEPT
- HOBBS, R.J., RICHARDSON, D.M. & DAVIS, G.W. 1995. Mediterranean-type ecosystems: advantages and constraints for studying the function of biodiversity. In G.D. Davis & D.M. Richardson (eds), *Mediterranean-type ecosystems. The functions of biodiversity, ecological studies* 109, pp. 1–42. Springer-Verlag, Berlin A-BIOTA, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, DISTURBANCE, INVADABILITY
- MANGOLD, S.J. & DE MOOR, F.C. 1996. Further applications of the Albany Museum's National Collection of Freshwater Invertebrates. *South African Waterbulletin* 22,2: 16–19. A-BIOTA, FRESHWATER, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, DATA
- MARTIN, B.W. & FOXCROFT, L.C. 2002. *First atlas of maps for invasive alien species within the Kruger National Park as in 2001*. SANParks Report 01/02. A-BIOTA, SAVANNA, , INVASION, SPREAD, MAPPING-PROJECT
- MATTHEWS, S. 2000. Alien invasion. *African Wildlife* 54,4: 12, 13. A-BIOTA, INVASION, CONSERVATION
- NOBLE, I.R. 1988. Attributes of invaders and the invading process. In J.A. Drake, H.A. Mooney, F. di Castri, R.H. Groves, F.J. Kruger, M. Rejmánek & M. Williamson (eds), *Biological invasions. A global perspective. SCOPE* 37, pp. 315–328. Wiley, Chichester, UK. A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVASIVENESS, INVADABILITY, CONCEPT
- PAKHOMOV, E. & CHOWN, S.L. 2003. The Prince Edward Islands: Southern Ocean oasis. *Ocean Yearbook* 17: 348–379. A-BIOTA, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, INVASION
- RICHARDSON, D.M., BOND, W.J., DEAN, W.R.J., HIGGINS, S.I., MIDGLEY, G.F., MILTON, S.J., POWRIE, L.W., RUTHERFORD, M.C., SAMWAYS, M.J. & SCHULZE, R.E. 2000. Invasive alien species and global change: a South African perspective. In H.A. Mooney & R.J. Hobbs (eds), *Invasive species in a changing world*, pp. 303–350. Island Press, Washington, D.C. A-BIRD, A-INVERTEBRATE, A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, GLOBAL-CHANGE, LAND-USE
- RICHARDSON, D.M., MACDONALD, I.A.W., HOLMES, P.M. & COWLING, R.M. 1992. Plant and animal invasions. In R.M. Cowling (ed.), *The ecology of fynbos: nutrients, fire and diversity*, pp. 271–308. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, FYNBOS, BIOGEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVADABILITY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, MANAGEMENT
- RICHARDSON, D.M. & PYŠEK, P. 2004. *What is an invasive species?* Library document in: Crop Protection Compendium, 2004 edition. CAB International, Wallingford, UK. Available on CD-ROM and the Internet at <http://www.cabicompendium.org/cpc>. A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, CONCEPT
- ROBERTSON, M.P., CAITHNESS, N. & VILLET, M.H. 2001. A PCA-based modelling technique for predicting environmental suitability for organisms from presence records. *Diversity and Distributions* 7: 15–27. A-BIOTA, INVASIVENESS, MODELLING, RISK-ASSESSMENT
- ROBINSON, T. & GRIFFITHS, C.L. 2004 Marine invasive aliens in the West Coast National Park—status and impacts. *Koedoe* 47: 79–87. A-BIOTA, MARINE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-BIOTA, CONSERVATION, MYTILUS
- ROBINSON, T., GRIFFITHS, C.L., MCQUAID, C.D. & RUIS, M. 2005. Marine alien species in South Africa—status and impacts. *African Journal of Marine Science* 27,1: 297–306. A-BIOTA, MARINE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-BIOTA, CONSERVATION
- ROUGET, M., RICHARDSON, D.M. & COWLING, R.M. 2003 The current configuration of protected areas in the Cape Floristic Region, South Africa—reservation bias and representation of biodiversity patterns and processes. *Biological Conservation* 112: 129–145. A-BIOTA, FYNBOS, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION
- ROUGET, M., RICHARDSON, D.M., COWLING, R.M., LLOYD, J.W. & LOMBARD, A.T. 2003. Current patterns of habitat transformation and future threats to biodiversity in the Cape Floristic Region, South Africa. *Biological Conservation* 112: 63–85. A-BIOTA, FYNBOS, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION, SPECIES-MODELLING, GIS
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 1997. Dragonfly response to river disturbance in the Kruger National Park. *Custos* July 1997: 24. A-BIOTA, RIVER, RIPARIAN, ECOLOGY, INVASION, DISTURBANCE, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, CONSERVATION
- SIEGFRIED, W.R., MACDONALD, I.A.W., BUCHER, E., BUDD, B. & BANAGE, W. 1989. Southern hemisphere environments and change in global climate. In B.H. Walker & R.G. Dickson (eds), *Southern hemisphere perspectives of global change: scientific issues, research needs and proposed activities*, pp. 1–7. IGBP Report No. 9. Stockholm, Sweden. A-BIOTA, INVASION, IMPACT, GLOBAL-CHANGE
- STEWART, D. & SAMWAYS, M.J. 1993. Delicate detectors of riverine disturbance. *Conserva* 8: 6, 7. A-BIOTA, RIVER, RIPARIAN, ECOLOGY, INVASION, DISTURBANCE, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE
- AWAD, A. 2003. Addressing marine IAS globally and regionally—the IMO Globallast programme. In

- I.A.W. Macdonald, J.K. Reaser, C. Bright, L.E. Neville, G.W. Howard, S.J. Murphy & G. Preston (eds), *Prevention and management of invasive alien species: proceedings of a workshop on forging cooperation throughout southern Africa*, 10–12 June 2002, Lusaka, Zambia, pp. 80–82. Global Invasive Species Programme, Cape Town, South Africa. A-BIOTA, MARINE, INTRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT, PREVENTION, BALLAST-WATER, CO-OPERATION
- AWAD, A. 2003. Introduced marine species across southern Africa. In I.A.W. Macdonald, J.K. Reaser, C. Bright, L.E. Neville, G.W. Howard, S.J. Murphy & G. Preston (eds), *Invasive alien species in southern Africa: national reports and directory of resources*, pp. 86–90. Global Invasive Species Programme, Cape Town, South Africa. A-BIOTA, MARINE, INTRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT, PREVENTION, BALLAST-WATER, CO-OPERATION, EXPERTISE, BIBLIOGRAPHY
- BROWN, C.J. & GUBB, A.A. 1986. Invasive alien organisms in the Namib Desert, Upper Karoo and the arid and semi-arid savannas of western southern Africa. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 93–108. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, A-BIRD, A-FISH, A-MAMMAL, A-MAMMAL-PARASITE, T-MAMMAL, NAMA-KAROO, SAVANNA, IMPOUNDMENT, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, INTER-BASIN TRANSFER, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVASIVENESS, SPREAD, IMPACT, HYBRIDIZATION, PARASITISM, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY, LEGISLATION
- BRUTON, M.N. & VAN AS, J.G. 1986. Faunal invasions of aquatic ecosystems in southern Africa, with suggestions for their management. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 47–61. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, A-FISH, T-FISH, A-FISH-PARASITE, A-MOLLUSC, A-REPTILE, FRESHWATER, MARINE, INTRODUCTION, INTER-BASIN TRANSFER, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-FISH, HYBRIDIZATION, PARASITISM, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, AQUARIUM-TRADE, MANAGEMENT, PREVENTION, RISK-ASSESSMENT
- BYRNE, M.J., COETZEE, J., MCCONNACHIE, A.J., PARASRAM, W. & HILL, M.P. 2004. Predicting climate compatibility of biological control agents in their region of introduction. In J.M. Cullen, D.T. Briesse, D.J. Kriticos, W.M. Lonsdale, L. Morin & J.K. Scott (eds), *Proceedings of the Eleventh International Symposium on Biological Control of Weeds*, pp. 28–35. CSIRO Entomology, Canberra, Australia. A-BIOTA, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, AGENT-SELECTION, CLIMATE-MATCHING
- CHAPMAN, R.A., LE MAITRE, D.C. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2000. Scenario planning: understanding and managing biological invasions in South Africa. In J.A. McNeely (ed.), *The great reshuffling: human dimensions of invasive alien species*, pp. 195–208. IUCN, The World Conservation Union, Gland, Switzerland. A-BIOTA, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, CONSERVATION
- CHOWN, S.L., BLOCK, W., VERNON, P. & GREENSLADE, P. 1997. Priorities for terrestrial Antarctic research. *Polar Record* 33: 187,
188. A-BIOTA, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, CONSERVATION, PRIORITY, MANAGEMENT
- CHOWN, S.L., GREMMEN, N.J.M. & GASTON, K.J. 1998. Ecological biogeography of Southern Ocean Islands: species-area relationships, human impacts, and conservation. *American Naturalist* 152: 562–575. A-BIOTA, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, INTRODUCTION, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- CHOWN, S.L., RODRIGUES, A.S.L., GREMMEN, N.J.M. & GASTON, K.J. 2001. World Heritage status and the conservation of Southern Ocean Islands. *Conservation Biology* 15: 550–557. A-BIOTA, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, CONSERVATION
- COOPER, J. & BROOKE, R.K. 1986. Alien plants and animals on South African continental and oceanic islands: species richness, ecological impacts and management. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 133–142. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, ISLAND-COASTAL, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, INTRODUCTION, N-BIODIVERSITY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVADABILITY, IMPACT, GRAZING, PREDATION, N-BIRD, N-INVERTEBRATE, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PREVENTION, FELIS, MUS, RATTUS
- DEAN, W.R.J. 1998. Space invaders: modelling the distribution, impacts and control of alien organisms. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution* 13,7: 256–258. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, SEED-DISPERSAL, MODELLING
- FOXCROFT, L.C. 2003. Invasive alien species and biodiversity conservation—the anomaly. *Aliens* (Newsletter of the Invasive Species Specialist Group of the IUCN Species Survival Commission) (Special issue for World Parks Congress-Durban) A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- IMPSON, F.A.C. 2001. Natural control of alien species. *African Wildlife* 55,3: 8, 9. A-BIOTA, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- KING, J.M., DE MOOR, F.C. & CHUTTER, F.M. 1992. Alternative ways of classifying rivers in southern Africa. In P.J. Boon, P. Calow & G.E. Pletts (eds), *River conservation and management*, pp. 213–228. Wiley, Chichester. A-BIOTA, CONSERVATION, RIVER, MANAGEMENT
- LEE, G. & MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1997. Foreword. In C.D.A. Rubec & G.O. Lee (compilers), *Conserving vitality and diversity: Proceedings of the World Conservation Congress Workshop on Alien Invasive Species*, pp. v–vi. IUCN Species Survival Commission & the North American Wetlands Conservation Council (Canada). Canadian Wildlife Service, Environment Canada. Ottawa, Canada. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM97-0153) A-BIOTA, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1989. A southern hemisphere contribution to the IGBP. *South African Journal of Science* 85: 356. A-BIOTA, INVASION, IMPACT, GLOBAL-CHANGE, MANAGEMENT
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1989. Report on the IGBP Southern Hemisphere Workshop, Mbabane, Swaziland, December 1988. *Global Change Newsletter* 2: 2–6. A-BIOTA, INVASION, IMPACT, GLOBAL-CHANGE, MANAGEMENT



- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1989. Report on the IGBP Southern Hemisphere Workshop, Mbabane, Swaziland, December 1988. *SA Council for Natural Scientists* 4: 3. A-BIOTA, INVASION, IMPACT, GLOBAL-CHANGE, MANAGEMENT
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1990. Conservation challenges for the last decade of the Twentieth Century. *Wildlife Management Association of Southern Africa Newsletter* September 1990: 1, 2. [reprinted in *South African Institute of Ecologists Bulletin* 9,3: 2–5.] A-BIOTA, INVASION, IMPACT, GLOBAL-CHANGE, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1991. *Conservation implications of the invasion of southern Africa by alien organisms*. Ph.D. thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. 3 Volumes, 808 pp. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, FOREST, FRESHWATER, FYNBOS, GRASSLAND, KAROO, SAVANNA, BIOGEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVADABILITY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1997. Invasive species: prevention is the cure. *World Conservation* 1–2/97: 43. vi. A-BIOTA, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, MANAGEMENT, PREVENTION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 2000. Concluding Address: reflections on the Workshop. Pages 283, 284. In G. Preston, G. Brown & E. van Wyk (eds), *Best management practices for preventing and controlling invasive alien species*. The Working for Water Programme, Cape Town. A-BIOTA, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 2003. An overview of mechanisms and opportunities for international cooperation on invasive species issues. In I.A.W. Macdonald, J.K. Reaser, C. Bright, L.E. Neville, G.W. Howard, S.J. Murphy & G. Preston (eds), *Prevention and management of invasive alien species: Proceedings of a Workshop on Forging Cooperation throughout Southern Africa, Lusaka, Zambia, June 2003*, pp. 71–75. Global Invasive Species Programme, Kirstenbosch, South Africa. A-BIOTA, RESEARCH, PREVENTION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CO-OPERATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 2004. *Report on a consultancy to the Southern Africa Biodiversity Support Programme to assess User Needs for Databases, Standards and Guidelines on Invasive Alien Species within the Republic of South Africa. April 2004*. Final report to the National Botanical Institute, Kirstenbosch, 36 pp. + 7 Annexes. A-BIOTA, RESEARCH, PREVENTION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CO-OPERATION, EXPERTISE
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. & COOPER, J. 1995. Insular lessons for global biodiversity conservation with particular reference to alien invasions. In P. Vitousek, L.L. Loope & H. Adersen (eds), *Islands: biological diversity and ecosystem function*, pp. 89–203. Springer-Verlag, Berlin. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, ISLAND, INVADABILITY, GLOBAL-CHANGE, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., KRUGER, F.J. & FERRAR, A.A. (eds) 1986. *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, 324 pp. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, FOREST, FRESHWATER, FYNBOS, GRASSLAND, KAROO, SAVANNA, BIOGEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., LOOPE, L.L., USHER, M.B., & HAMMAN, O. 1989. Wildlife Conservation and the invasion of Nature Reserves by introduced species: a global perspective. In J.A. Drake & H.A. Mooney (eds), *Biological invasions: a global perspective*, pp. 215–255. Wiley, New York. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, FOREST, FRESHWATER, FYNBOS, GRASSLAND, KAROO, SAVANNA, BIOGEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, PREVENTION, CONSERVATION, INTRODUCTION-RATE
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., REASER, J.K., BRIGHT, C., NEVILLE, L.E., HOWARD, G.W., MURPHY, S.T. & PRESTON, G. (eds) 2003. *Prevention and management of invasive alien species: Proceedings of a Workshop on Forging Cooperation throughout Southern Africa, Lusaka, Zambia, June 2003*, 89 pp. The Global Invasive Species Programme, Kirstenbosch, South Africa. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, FOREST, FRESHWATER, FYNBOS, GRASSLAND, KAROO, SAVANNA, BIOGEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, PREVENTION, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CO-OPERATION
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., REASER, J.K., BRIGHT, C., NEVILLE, L.E., HOWARD, G.W., MURPHY, S.T. & PRESTON, G. (eds) 2003. *Invasive alien species in southern Africa: national reports and directory of resources*, 125 pp. The Global Invasive Species Programme, Kirstenbosch, South Africa. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, FOREST, FRESHWATER, FYNBOS, GRASSLAND, KAROO, SAVANNA, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, PREVENTION, MANAGEMENT, EXPERTISE, BIBLIOGRAPHY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1986. Alien species in terrestrial ecosystems of the Fynbos Biome. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 77–91. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, FYNBOS, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, PRIORITY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., VAN WILGEN, B.W. & MGIDI, T.N. 2004. *Towards a national strategy for dealing with invasive alien species. March 2004*. Final report to the Working for Water Programme, CSIR Report No. ENV-S-C 2004-030, 70 pp. Environmentek, CSIR, Stellenbosch. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, A-MICROBE, FOREST, FRESHWATER, FYNBOS, GRASSLAND, KAROO, SAVANNA, IMPACT, PREVENTION, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, CO-OPERATION, EXPERTISE
- MARTIN, B.W. & FOXCROFT, L.C. 2001. *A catalogue of biological control interventions: Kruger National Park*. SANParks Report 04/01. A-BIOTA, SAVANNA, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, HISTORY
- O'KEEFE, J.H. (ed.) 1986. *The conservation of South African rivers*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 131. Pretoria: CSIR. A-BIOTA, RIVER, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- PRESTON, G., BROWN, G. & VAN WYK, E. (eds) 2000. *Best management practices for preventing and controlling invasive alien species*. The Working for Water Programme, Cape Town. A-BIOTA, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, MANAGEMENT, PRIORITY

- ROUGET, M., COWLING, R.M., PRESSEY, R.L. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2003. Identifying spatial components of ecological and evolutionary processes for regional conservation planning in the Cape Floristic Region, South Africa. *Diversity and Distributions* 9: 191–210. A-BIOTA, FYNBOS, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 1981. *Biological control of pests and weeds*. Arnold, London. A-BIOTA, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 1997. Classical biological control and biodiversity: What risks are we prepared to accept? *Biodiversity and Conservation* 6: 1309–1316. A-BIOTA, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, RISK-ASSESSMENT
- SCOTNEY, D.M., AUCAMP, A.J., DE WAAL, N., DREYER, J., DU PISANI, A.L., ELOFF, J.F., KOCH, B.H., MACDONALD, I.A.W., SCHOLES, R.J. & SCHULZE, R.E. 1996. Chapter 3: Task group report, Section 3.2 The terrestrial environment. In L.Y. Shackleton, S.J. Lennon & G.R. Tosen (eds), *Global climate change and South Africa*, pp. 21–28. Environmental Scientific Association, Cleveland, R.S.A. A-PLANT, A-ANIMAL, INVADABILITY, GLOBAL-CHANGE, MANAGEMENT
- TRAKHTENBROT, A., NATHAN, R., PERRY, G. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 2005. The importance of long-distance dispersal in biodiversity conservation. *Diversity and Distributions* 11: 173–181. A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, DISPERSAL, CONSERVATION, CONCEPT, MANAGEMENT
- WATKINS, B.P. & COOPER, J. 1986. Introduction, present status and control of alien species at the Prince Edward Islands, subantarctic. *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 16,3: 86–94. A-BIOTA, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT
- WHITING, M.J. 1997. Emotion prevails over science. *African Wildlife* 51,5: 18, 19. A-BIOTA, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 2003. South Africa. In I.A.W. Macdonald, J.K. Reaser, C. Bright, L.E. Neville, G.W. Howard, S.J. Murphy & G. Preston (eds), *Invasive alien species in southern Africa: national reports and directory of resources*, pp. 45–69, 109–125. Global Invasive Species Programme, Cape Town, South Africa. A-BIOTA, TERRESTRIAL, AQUATIC, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, PREVENTION, CO-OPERATION, PRIORITY, EXPERTISE, BIBLIOGRAPHY
- BROWN, D.S. 1978. Freshwater molluscs. In M.J.A. Werger & A.C. van Bruggen (eds), *Biogeography and ecology of southern Africa*, pp. 1153–1180. Junk, The Hague. A-MOLLUSC, FRESHWATER, HELISOMA, LYMNAEA, PHYSA, ECOLOGY
- DE MOOR, F.C. 1987. Altricial Precocial life history styles in Simuliidae, are they adaptations or exaptations? Oral paper, p. 24. In *Alternative life history styles of fishes and other organisms*. Conference Abstracts, 100 pp. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, ECOLOGY, INVASIVENESS
- DE MOOR, F.C. 1988. Factors influencing the successful establishment of invader species with case histories of aquatic insects. Oral paper 1 pg. In *Aquatic Invasives Symposium, Grahamstown 12–13 September 1988*. Final program and abstracts. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, INVASIVENESS
- DE MOOR, F.C. 1989. Alternative life-history styles in Simuliidae (Insecta, Diptera). In M.N. Bruton (ed.), *Alternative life-history styles of animals*, pp. 293–316. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, INVASIVENESS
- DE MOOR, F.C. 1989. Factors influencing the successful establishment of invader species with case histories of aquatic insects. (Abstract only) In I.J. de Moor & M.N. Bruton (eds), *The management of invasive aquatic animals in southern Africa*. CSIR Ecosystems Programmes Occasional Report 44: 85. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, INVASIVENESS
- DE MOOR, F.C. 1992. Factors influencing the establishment of aquatic insect invaders. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa* 48,1: 141–158. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, INVASIVENESS
- DONNELLY, D. & GILIOME, J.H. 1985. Community structure of epigeic ants (Hymenoptera: Formicidae) in fynbos vegetation in the Jonkershoek Valley. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 48: 247–257. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, LINEPITHEMA
- HARRISON, A.C. & AGNEW, J.D. 1962. The distribution of invertebrates endemic to acid streams in the western and southern Cape Province. *Annals of the Cape Provincial Museums* 2: 273–291. A-MOLLUSC, SPREAD, LYMNAEA, ECOLOGY
- KOEN, J.H. 1988. Ant species richness of fynbos and forest ecosystems in the southern Cape. *South African Journal of Zoology* 23: 184–188. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, FOREST, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, LINEPITHEMA
- MALLY, C.W. 1918. Natural enemies of the Argentine ant, *Iridomyrmex humilis* Mayr. *South African Journal of Science* 14: 244–247. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, LINEPITHEMA
- MARKUS, M.B. & OOSTHUIZEN, J.H. 1972. Pathogenicity of *Haemoproteus columbae*. *Transactions of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene* 66: 186, 187. A-BIRD, DISEASE, COLUMBA, ECOLOGY
- MERCER, R.D., GABRIEL, A.G.A., BARENDSE, J., MARSHALL, D.J. & CHOWN, S.L. 2001. Invertebrate body sizes from Marion Island.

## 8.8 Alien Invertebrates (138)

- BARNARD, K.H. 1955. South African parasitic Copepoda. *Annals of the South African Museum* 41,5: 223–312. A-COPEPOD, ECOLOGY, ACHTHERES, LERNAEA
- BARENDSE, J. & CHOWN, S.L. 2001. Abundance and seasonality of mid-altitude fellfield arthropods from Marion Island. *Polar Biology* 24: 73–82. A-INVERTEBRATE, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY



- Antarctic Science* 13: 135–143. A-INVERTEBRATE, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, INVASION
- MORAN, V.C. 1983. The phytophagous insects and mites of cultivated plants in South Africa: patterns and pest status. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 20: 439–450. A-PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, N-INVERTEBRATE
- RAYNER, N.A. 1981. *Studies on the zooplankton of Lake Midmar*. M.Sc. thesis, University of Natal, Pietermaritzburg. A-JELLYFISH, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CRASPEDACUSTA
- SAMWAYS, M.J., CALDWELL, P.M. & OSBORN, R. 1996. Ground-living invertebrate assemblages in native, planted and invasive vegetation in South Africa. *Agriculture, Ecosystems & Environment* 59: 19–32. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE
- VAN ERKOM SCHURINK, C. & GRIFFITHS, C.L. 1992. Physiological energetics of four South African mussel species in relation to body size, ration and temperature. *Comp. Biochemistry and Physiology* 101: 779–789. A-MOLLUSC, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY
- VAN ERKOM SCHURINK, C. & GRIFFITHS, C.L. 1993. Factors affecting relative rates of growth in four South African mussel species. *Aquaculture* 109: 257–273. A-MOLLUSC, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH
- WITT, A.B.R. & GILIOME, J.H. 1999. Soil-surface temperatures at which six species of ants (Hymenoptera: Formicidae) are active. *African Entomology* 7,1: 161–164. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, ECOPHYSIOLOGY, SOIL-TEMPERATURE, LINEPITHEMA
- APPLETON, C.C. 1974. A check-list of the flora and fauna of the Gladdespruit, Nelspruit district, eastern Transvaal. *Newsletter of the Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 22: 49–58. A-MOLLUSC, LYMNAEA, IDENTIFICATION
- APPLETON, C.C. 1977. The exotic fresh-water snail *Helisoma duryi* (Weatherby 1879) (Planorbidae) in southern Africa. *Zoologische Mededelingen* 52: 125–135. A-MOLLUSC, HELISOMA, IDENTIFICATION
- APPLETON, C.C. 1977. The fresh-water mollusca of Tongaland, with a note on molluscan distribution in Lake Sibaya. *Annals of the Natal Museum* 23: 129–144. A-MOLLUSC, PAN, LYMNAEA, IDENTIFICATION
- APPLETON, C.C. 1980. Non-marine molluscs and schistosomiasis in Maputaland. In M.N. Bruton & K.H. Cooper (eds), *Studies on the ecology of Maputaland*, pp. 123–143. Rhodes University, Grahamstown, and the Natal Branch of the Wildlife Society of Southern Africa, Durban. A-MOLLUSC, DISEASE-VECTOR, LYMNAEA, IDENTIFICATION
- BARNARD, K.H. 1951. *A beginner's guide to South African shells*. Maskew Miller, Cape Town. A-MOLLUSC, IDENTIFICATION, LYMNAEA
- BRANCH, G. & BRANCH, M. 1981. *The living shores of southern Africa*, 272 pp. Struik, Cape Town. A-MOLLUSC, FIELD-GUIDE, IDENTIFICATION, UROSALPINX
- BROWN, D.S. 1967. A review of the freshwater Mollusca of Natal and their distribution. *Annals of the Natal Museum* 18: 477–494. A-MOLLUSC, FRESHWATER, SPREAD, HELISOMA, LYMNAEA, PHYSA, IDENTIFICATION
- BROWN, D.S. 1980. *Freshwater snails of Africa and their medical importance*. Taylor and Francis, London. A-MOLLUSC, FRESHWATER, HELISOMA, LYMNAEA, PHYSA, IDENTIFICATION
- DE LOTTO, G. 1974. On the status and identity of the cochineal insects (Homoptera Coccoidea Dactylopiidae). *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 37: 167–193. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, MANAGEMENT, IDENTIFICATION, BIOCONTROL, OPUNTIA, DACTYLOPIUS
- GRANT, W.S. & CHERRY, M.I. 1985. *Mytilus galloprovincialis* Lmk. In southern Africa. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 90: 179–191. A-MOLLUSC, MARINE, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MYTILUS
- GRANT, W.S., CHERRY, M.I. & LOMBARD, A.T. 1984. A cryptic species of *Mytilus* (Mollusca: Bivalvia) on the West Coast of South Africa. *South African Journal of Marine Science* 2: 149–162. A-MOLLUSC, MARINE, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MYTILUS
- DAY, J.A. (Series Editor) & DE MOOR, I.J. (ed.) 2002. *Guides to the freshwater invertebrates of southern Africa*. Vol 5: Non-Arthropods (Protozoans: Porifera, Cnidaria, Platyhelminthes, Nemertea, Rotifera, Nematoda, Nematomorpha, Gastrotrichia, Bryozoa, Tardigrada, Polychaeta, Oligochaeta & Hirudinea). Report TT 167/02, 292 pp. Water Research Commission, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD
- DAY, J.A. (Series Editor) & DE MOOR, I.J. (ed.) 2002. *Guides to the freshwater invertebrates of southern Africa*. Vol. 6: Molluscs and Arachnids. Report TT 182/02, 141pp. Water Research Commission, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD
- DAY, J.A. (Series Editor), HARRISON, A.D. & DE MOOR, I.J. (eds) 2003. *Guides to the freshwater invertebrates of southern Africa*. Vol. 9: Diptera. Report TT 201/02, 200 pp. Water Research Commission, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD
- DAY, J.A. (Series Editor), STEWART, B.A., DE MOOR, I.J. & LOUW, A.E. (eds) 1999. *Guides to the freshwater invertebrates of southern Africa*. Vol. 2: Crustacea I (Notostraca, Anostraca, Conchostraca & Cladocera). Report TT 121/00, 126 pp. Water Research Commission, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD
- DAY, J.A. (Series Editor), STEWART, B.A., DE MOOR, I.J. & LOUW, A.E. (eds) 2001. *Guides to the freshwater invertebrates of southern Africa*. Vol. 3: Crustacea II (Ostracoda, Copepoda & Branchiura). Report TT 148/01, 177 pp. Water Research Commission, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD
- DAY, J.A. (Series Editor), STEWART, B.A., DE MOOR, I.J. & LOUW, A.E. (eds) 2001. *Guides to the*

- freshwater invertebrates of southern Africa*. Vol. 4: Crustacea III (Bathynellacea, Amphipoda, Isopoda, Speleogriphacea, Tanaidacea & Decapoda). Report TT 141/01, 141 pp. Water Research Commission, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD
- DE MOOR, F.C. 1997. The importance of voucher specimens. *South African Journal of Aquatic Sciences* 22: 117, 118. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, IDENTIFICATION, TAXONOMY
- DE MOOR, I.J. & DAY, J.A. (eds) 2002. *Guides to the freshwater invertebrates of southern Africa*, Vol. 6: Arachnida & Mollusca (Araneae, Water Mites & Mollusca), 141 pp. Water Research Commission, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, A-MOLLUSC, FRESHWATER, IDENTIFICATION
- DE MOOR, I.J. (ed.), DAY, J.A. (Series editor) & DE MOOR, F.C. (ed.) 2003. *Guides to the freshwater invertebrates of southern Africa*, Vol. 7: Insecta II (Ephemeroptera, Odonata & Plecoptera). Report TT 207/03, 288 pp. Water Research Commission, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, FRESHWATER, IDENTIFICATION
- DE MOOR, I.J. (ed.), DAY, J.A. (Series editor) & DE MOOR, F.C. (ed.) 2003. *Guides to the freshwater invertebrates of southern Africa*, Vol. 8: Insecta III (Hemiptera, Megaloptera, Neuroptera, Trichoptera & Lepidoptera). Report TT 214/03, 209 pp. Water Research Commission, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, FRESHWATER, IDENTIFICATION
- KILBURN, H. & RIPPEY, E. 1982. *Sea shells of southern Africa*. Macmillan, Johannesburg, 249 pp. A-MOLLUSC, MARINE, THAIS, IDENTIFICATION
- MCKENZIE, K.G. 1971. Species list of South African freshwater Ostracoda with an appendix listing museum collections and some further determinations. *Annals of the South African Museum* 57,9: 157–213. IDENTIFICATION, A-OSTRACODA, CANDONOCYPRIS, CYPRIS, HEMICYPRIS, STENOCYPRIS
- MONNIOT, C., MONNIOT, F., GRIFFITHS, C.L. & SCHLEYER, M. 2001. South African ascidians. *Annals of the South African Museum* 108,1: 1–141. A-ASCIDIAN, MARINE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IDENTIFICATION
- OVERHOLZER, O. & VAN EEDEN, J.A. 1967. The freshwater mollusca of the Kruger National Park. *Koedoe* 10: 1–42. A-MOLLUSC, LYMNAEA, IDENTIFICATION
- VAN EEDEN, J.A. 1960. Key to the genera of South African freshwater and estuarine gastropods (Mollusca). *Annals of the Transvaal Museum* 24: 1–17. A-MOLLUSC, FRESHWATER, ESTUARY, IDENTIFICATION, LYMNAEA, PHYSA
- ATTRIDGE, A.J. 1923. *Beekeeping in South Africa*. Speciality Press South Africa, Cape Town, Johannesburg. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, APICULTURE, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, LINEPITHEMA
- BOND, W.J. & BREYTENBACH, G.J. 1985. Ants, rodents and seed predation in Proteaceae. *South African Journal of Zoology* 20: 150–154. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, N-PLANT, MYRMECOCHORY, LINEPITHEMA
- BOND, W.J. & SLINGSBY, P. 1984. Collapse of an ant-plant mutualism: the Argentine ant (*Iridomyrmex humilis*) and myrmecochorous Proteaceae. *Ecology* 65: 1031–1037. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, MUTUALISM, MYRMECOCHORY, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, N-PLANT, LINEPITHEMA
- BOND, W.J. & SLINGSBY, P. 1984. Proteas, ants and invaders: disruption of a delicate dependence. *South African Journal of Science* 80: 201. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, MYRMECOCHORY, N-INVERTEBRATE, N-PLANT, LINEPITHEMA
- BOURQUIN, O., PIKE, T., JOHNSON, D., ROWE-ROWE, D. & APPLETON, C.C. 1984. *Alien animal species*. Internal report of the Natal Parks, Game and Fish Preservation Board, Pietermaritzburg, 36 pp. A-ANIMAL, T-ANIMAL, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION, ARTEMIA, BIOMPHALARIA, CHERAX, HELISOMA, LYMNAEA, MACROBRACHIUM, PACIFASTACUS, PHYSA, PILA, PROCAMBARUS, THAIS, BEDEVA, ANGUILLA, ARISTICHTHYS, CARASSIUS, CLARIAS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, ESOX, GAMBUSIA, HYPOPHthalmichthys, IDUS, LABEO, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, MUGIL, MYLOPHARYNGODON, OREOCHROMIS, PERCA, RUTILUS, SALMO, SALVELINUS, SCARDINIUS, SERRANOCHROMIS, TILAPIA, TINCA, XENOPUS, ANAS, CYGNUS, TADORNA, MYOCASTOR
- BUYS, B. 1987. Competition for nectar between Argentine ants (*Iridomyrmex humilis*) and honeybees (*Apis mellifera*) on black ironbark (*Eucalyptus sideroxylon*). *South African Journal of Zoology* 22: 173, 174. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, APICULTURE, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, LINEPITHEMA, EUCALYPTUS
- BUYS, B. 1990. Relationships between Argentine ants and honeybees in South Africa. In R.K. vander Meer, K. Jaffe & A. Cedeno (eds), *Applied myrmecology, a world perspective*, pp. 519–524. Westview Press, Boulder, CO. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, APICULTURE, N-INVERTEBRATE, LINEPITHEMA
- DE KOCK, A.E. 1990. Interactions between the introduced Argentine ant, *Iridomyrmex humilis* Mayr, and two indigenous fynbos ant species. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 53: 107, 108. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, LINEPITHEMA
- DE KOCK, A.E., GILIOMEE, J.H., PRINGLE, K.L. & MAJER, J.D. 1992. The influence of fire, vegetation age and Argentine ants (*Iridomyrmex humilis*) on ant communities in Swartboskloof. In B.W. van Wilgen, D.M. Richardson, F.J. Kruger & H.J. van Hensbergen (eds), *Fire in South African fynbos: ecosystem, community, and species response at Swartboskloof*, pp. 203–215. Springer-Verlag, Berlin. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, LINEPITHEMA
- DE MOOR, F.C. 1988. Pristine River systems and Caddis-flies in South Africa. *The Naturalist* 32,2: 30–38. A-BIOTA, RIVER, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE
- DE MOOR, F.C. 2004. *The Salt River and its unique Gondwanan invertebrates*. Oral Powerpoint presentation delivered at Plettenberg Bay Trout

- Angling Club 13 July 2004. A-FISH, RIVER, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, RISK-ASSESSMENT
- DE MOOR, F.C. 2004. *Freshwater Biophysical Diversity Conservation strategy; priorities for aquatic macroinvertebrates*. Oral Powerpoint presentation delivered at Frontier Country Hotel, Grahamstown 18 August 2004: A-FISH, RIVER, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, RISK-ASSESSMENT, CONSERVATION
- DE MOOR, F.C. 2004. *Executive summary report for the three surveys of the Salt River (August and November 2000, and April 2004) conducted to assess the macroinvertebrate diversity and uniqueness to consider future conservation measures*. Albany Museum Executive Summary Report, 7 pp. A-FISH, RIVER, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, RISK-ASSESSMENT, CONSERVATION
- DE MOOR, F.C. 2005. *The Salt River—a sanctuary for freshwater invertebrates in the southern Cape*. Invited guest speaker at the WESSA AGM 30 March 2005: oral presentation, Albany Museum, Grahamstown. A-FISH, RIVER, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, RISK-ASSESSMENT
- DE MOOR, F.C. & BARBER-JAMES, H.M. 2001. *Executive summary report for the two surveys of the Salt River (August and November 2000) for assessment of the macroinvertebrate diversity and uniqueness following a proposal to stock the river with trout*. Albany Museum Executive Summary Report, 6 pp. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, SALMO
- DE MOOR, F.C. & BARBER-JAMES, H.M. 2001. *Report on the second survey of the macroinvertebrates to assess the potential impact of trout stocking in the upper Salt River, The Craggs*. Albany Museum Environmental Impact Assessment Report, 32 pp. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, SALMO
- DE MOOR, F.C., DE MOOR, I.J., JAMES, N.P.E. & BARBER-JAMES, H.M. 2004. *An autumn survey of the freshwater macroinvertebrates in the Salt River, southern Cape*. Albany Museum Investigational Contract Report for Nature's Valley Trust, 74 pp. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, SALMO
- DE MOOR, I.J. 2002. Potential impacts of alien freshwater crayfish in southern Africa. *African Journal of Aquatic Science* 27,2: 125–140. A-CRUSTACEAN, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE
- HANEL, C. & CHOWN, S.L. 1998. The impact of a small, alien macro-invertebrate on a subantarctic terrestrial ecosystem: *Limnophyes minimus* Meigen (Diptera, Chironomidae) at Marion Island. *Polar Biology* 20: 99–106. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, LIMNOPHYES
- HART, R.C. 1983. Some considerations on the introduction of exotic species. *Journal of the Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 9,1: 49–51. A-CRUSTACEAN, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CHERAX, PROCAMBARUS
- LACH, L., PICKER, M.D., ALLSOPP, M., COLVILLE, J., & GRIFFITHS, C.L. 2002. Alien invertebrate animals in South Africa. In D. Pimental (ed.), *Biological invasions. Economic and environmental costs of alien plant, animal and microbe species*. CRC Press, Florida. A-INVERTEBRATE, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, IMPACT
- LE ROUX, P.J., BRANCH, G.M. & JOSKA, M.A.P. 1990. On the distribution, diet and possible impact of the invasive European shore-crab *Carcinus maenas* (L.) along the South African coast. *South African Journal of Marine Science* 9: 85–93. A-CRUSTACEAN, MARINE, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, PREDATION, N-BIODIVERSITY, CARCINUS
- MATILYA, G. 2003. Does the African ant *Lepisiota incisa* displace the introduced invasive Argentine ant, *Linepithema humile* (Mayr) in the urban environment of Cape Town, South Africa? Unpublished M.Sc. (Conservation Biology) thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, CARDIOCONDYLA, LEPSIOTA, LINEPITHEMA, PARATRECHINA, TECHNOMYRMEX
- ROBINSON, T. & GRIFFITHS, C.L. 2002. Invasion of Langebaan Lagoon by *Mytilus galloprovincialis*—effects on natural communities. *African Zoology* 37: 151–158. A-MOLLUSC, MARINE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-BIOTA, MYTILUS
- ROBINSON, T.B. 2000. Colonisation of a lagoon habitat by an invasive alien mussel *Mytilus galloprovincialis*—effects on biomass and community structure. B.Sc.(Hons), thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-MOLLUSC, MARINE, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-BIOTA, BIOMASS, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MYTILUS
- RUCK, K. 1990. *Aspects of the interaction between the mussel Mytilus galloprovincialis and the barnacle Notomegabalanus algalicola*. B.Sc.(Hons) thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-MOLLUSC, MARINE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-MOLLUSC, COMPETITION, MYTILUS
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 1994. Damsels in distress: the threatened synlestid damselflies of South Africa. *Africa: Environment and Wildlife* 2,5: 86, 87. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, CONSERVATION
- SLINGSBY, P. 1982. The Argentine ant—how much of a threat? *Veld & Flora* 68: 102–104. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, MYRMECOCHORY, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, N-PLANT, CONSERVATION, LINEPITHEMA
- VISSER, D., WRIGHT, M.G. & GILIOMEE, J.H. 1996. The effect of the Argentine ant, *Linepithema humile* (Mayr) (Hymenoptera: Formicidae), on flower-visiting insects of *Protea nitida* Mill. (Proteaceae). *African Entomology* 4: 285–287. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, POLLINATION, N-INVERTEBRATE, N-PLANT, LINEPITHEMA
- WITT, A.B.R., GEERTSEMA, H. & GILIOMEE, J.H. 2004. The impact of an invasive ant, *Linepithema humile* (Mayr) (Hymenoptera: Formicidae) on the dispersal of the elaiosome-bearing seeds of six plant species. *African Entomology* 12,2: 223–230. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, SEED-DISPERSAL, MYRMECOCHORY, LINEPITHEMA

- WITT, A.B.R. & GILIOMEE, J.H. 2004. The impact of an invasive ant, *Linepithema humile* (Mayr) (Hymenoptera: Formicidae) on the dispersal of *Phytolacca pubescens* Aiton seeds in South Africa. *African Entomology* 12,2: 179–185. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, SEED-DISPERSAL, MYRMECOCHORY, LINEPITHEMA
- WITT, A.B.R. & GILIOMEE, J.H. 2005. Dispersal of the elaiosome-bearing seeds of six plant species by native species of ants and the introduced invasive ant, *Linepithema humile* (Mayr) (Hymenoptera: Formicidae) in the Western Cape Province, South Africa. *African Plant Protection* 11: 1–7. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-PLANT, SEED-DISPERSAL, MYRMECOCHORY, LINEPITHEMA
- WITT, A.B.R. & SAMWAYS, M.J. 2004. Influence of agricultural land transformation and pest management practices on the arthropod diversity of a biodiversity hotspot, the Cape Floristic Kingdom, South Africa. *African Entomology* 12,1: 89–95. A-INVERTEBRATE, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, DISTURBANCE, MANAGEMENT, LINEPITHEMA
- APPLETON, C.C. 1983. *Introduced aquatic and terrestrial molluscs in Natal*. Report to the Natal Parks Board, 4 pp. A-MOLLUSC, BIOMPHALARIA, HELISOMA, LYMNAEA, PHYSA, PILA, INTRODUCTION
- CHOWN, S.L. & LANGUAGE, K. 1994. Recently established Diptera and Lepidoptera on sub-Antarctic Marion Island. *African Entomology* 2: 57–60. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, INTRODUCTION
- CRAFFORD, J.E. & CHOWN, S.L. 1990. The introduction and establishment of the diamondback moth (*Plutella xylostella* L., Plutellidae) on Marion Island. In K.R. Kerry & G. Hempel (eds), *Antarctic ecosystems ecological change and conservation*, pp. 354–358. Springer-Verlag, Berlin. A-INVERTEBRATE, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, PLUTELLA
- GRIFFITHS, C.L., KRUGER, L.M. & EWART SMITH, C. 1996. First record of the sea anemone *Metridium senile* from South Africa. *South African Journal of Zoology* 31: 157, 158. A-ANEMONE, MARINE, INTRODUCTION, METRIDIMUM
- HERBERT, D.G. & SIRGEL, W.F. 2001. The recent introduction of two potentially pestiferous alien snails into South Africa and the outcomes of different pest management practices: an eradication and a colonization. *South African Journal of Science* 97: 301–304. A-MOLLUSC, INTRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT, EVALUATION
- RAYNER, N.A. 1988. First record of *Craspedacusta sowerbyi* Lankester (Cnidaria: Limnomedusae) from Africa. *Hydrobiologia* 162: 73–77. A-JELLYFISH, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CRASPEDACUSTA
- SLABBER, S. & CHOWN, S.L. 2002. The first record of a terrestrial crustacean, *Porcellio scaber* (Isopoda, Porcellionidae), from subantarctic Marion Island. *Polar Biology* 25: 855–858. A-CRUSTACEAN, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, PORCELLIO
- ANONYMOUS 1995. Alien on the wing (cabbage white—large white butterfly—*Pieris brassicae* invading the Cape). *EPM* 6,6: 37. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, INVASION, FYNBOS, PIERIS
- CHOWN, S.L. & AVENANT, N. 1992. Status of *Plutella xylostella* at Marion Island six years after its colonization. *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 22: 37–40. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, PLUTELLA
- CRAFFORD, J.E. & CHOWN, S.L. 1987. *Plutella xylostella* L. (Lepidoptera: Plutellidae) on Marion Island. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 50: 259, 260. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, PLUTELLA
- DE KOCK, A.E. & GILIOMEE, J.H. 1989. A survey of the Argentine ant, *Iridomyrmex humilis* (Mayr), (Hymenoptera: Formicidae) in South African fynbos. *Journal of the Entomological Society of Southern Africa* 52: 157–164. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, LINEPITHEMA
- GABRIEL, A.G.A., CHOWN, S.L., BARENDSE, J., MARSHALL, D.J., MERCER, R.D., PUGH, P.J.A. & SMITH, V.R. 2001. Biological invasions on Southern Ocean Islands: the Collembola of Marion Island as a test of generalities. *Ecography* 24: 421–430. A-INVERTEBRATE, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CONCEPT
- HAMILTON-ATTWELL, V.L., DE KOCK, K.N. & VAN EEDEN, J.A. 1970. The occurrence and distribution of *Physa acuta* Draparnaud in the Republic of South Africa. *Scientific Contributions of Potchefstroom University for CHO, Series B: Natural Sciences* 26: 1–11. A-MOLLUSC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, PHYSA
- HANEKOM, N. & NEL, P. 2002. Invasion of sandflats in Langebaan Lagoon, South Africa, by the alien mussel *Mytilus galloprovincialis*: size, composition and decline of populations. *African Zoology* 37,2: 197–208. A-MOLLUSC, MARINE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, POPULATION SIZE, TEMPORAL CHANGE, COMPETITION, MORTALITY, SEDIMENTATION, MYTILUS
- HANEL, C., CHOWN, S.L. & DAVIES, L. 1998. Records of alien insect species from sub-Antarctic Marion and South Georgia Islands. *African Entomology* 6: 366–369. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, INTRODUCTION
- HOCKEY, P.A.R. & VAN ERKOM SCHURINK, C. 1992. The invasive biology of the mussel *Mytilus galloprovincialis* on the southern African coast. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa* 48,1: 123–139. A-MOLLUSC, MARINE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MYTILUS
- JOSKA, M.A.P. & BRANCH, G.M. 1986. The European shore-crab—another alien invader? *African Wildlife* 40,2: 63–65. A-CRUSTACEAN, MARINE, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, CARCINUS

- PRETORIUS, S.J., DE KOCK, K.N., JOUBERT, P.H., RYKE, P.A.J. JR & VAN EEDEN, J.A. 1980. Varswatermolluske in die Olifantsrivierbekken. I: die bekken stroomopwaarts vanaf die Marble Hall-omgewing. *Scientific Contributions of Potchefstroom University for CHO, Series B: Natural Sciences* 100: 1–50. A-MOLLUSC, RIVER, INVASION, SPREAD, LYMNAEA
- PRETORIUS, S.J., JENNINGS, A.C., COERTZE, D.J. & VAN EEDEN, J.A. 1975. Aspects of the freshwater Mollusca of the Pongolo River floodplain pans. *South African Journal of Science* 71: 208–212. A-MOLLUSC, PAN, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, LYMNAEA
- PRINS, A.J., ROBERTSON, H.G. & PRINS, A. 1990. Pest ants in urban and agricultural areas of southern Africa. In R.K. vander Meer (ed.), *Applied myrmecology: a world perspective*, pp. 25–33. Westview Press, Boulder, Colorado. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, URBAN, AGRICULTURAL-AREA, INVASION, SPREAD, ANOPLOLEPIS, CAMPONOTUS, CARDIOCONDYLA, LINEPITHEMA, MONOMORIUM, PARATRECHINA, PLAGIOLEPIS, SOLENOPSIS, TECHNOMYRMEX, TETRAMORIUM
- ROBINSON, T.B., GRIFFITHS, C.L., TONIN, A., BLOOMER, P. & HARE, M.P. 2005. Naturalized populations of oysters, *Crassostrea gigas* along the South African coast: Distribution, abundance and population structure. *Journal of Shellfish Research* 24,2: 443–450. A-MOLLUSC, MARINE, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE
- SAMWAYS, M.J., OSBORN, R., HASTINGS, H. & HATTINGH, V. 1999. Global climate change and accuracy of prediction of species' geographical ranges: establishment success of introduced ladybirds (Coccinellidae, *Chilocorus* spp.) worldwide. *Journal of Biogeography* 26: 795–812. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, GLOBAL-CHANGE
- SCHUTTE, C.H.J. & FRANK, O.H. 1964. Observations on the distribution of freshwater mollusca and chemistry of the natural waters in the southeastern Transvaal and adjacent northern Swaziland. *Bulletin of the World Health Organization* 30: 389–400. A-MOLLUSC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, WATER-QUALITY, LYMNAEA
- TRIBE, G.D. & RICHARDSON, D.M. 1994. The European wasp, *Vespula germanica* (Fabricus) (Hymenoptera: Vespidae) in southern Africa, and its potential distribution in southern Africa as predicted by ecoclimatic matching. *African Entomology* 2: 1–6. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CLIMATE, MODELLING, RISK-ASSESSMENT, VESPULA
- VAN BRUGGEN, A.C. 1964. The distribution of introduced mollusc species in southern Africa. *Beaufortia* 11: 161–169. A-MOLLUSC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, LYMNAEA
- VAN BRUGGEN, A.C. 1966. *Physa acuta*, an introduced mollusc species in southern Africa. *Journal of Conchology* 26: 49, 50. A-MOLLUSC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, PHYSA
- VAN EEDEN, J.A. & BROWN, D.S. 1966. Colonisation of fresh waters in the Republic of South Africa by *Lymnaea columella* Say (Mollusca: Gastropoda). *Nature* 210: 1172, 1173. A-MOLLUSC, FRESHWATER, LYMNAEA, INVASION
- VAN EEDEN, J.A. & DE KOCK, K.N., PRETORIUS, S.J., JOUBERT, P.H. & RYKE, P.A.J. JR 1980. Die voorkoms en verspreiding van varswatermolluske in die Mfodzizirivierbekken. *Scientific Contributions of Potchefstroom University for C H O, Series B: Natural Sciences* 99: 1–27. A-MOLLUSC, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, LYMNAEA, PHYSA
- BLOMMAERT, K.L.J. 1945. *The culture of the giant water flea, Daphnia magna*. Inland Fisheries Department, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 2: 11–13. A-ARTHROPOD, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, DAPHNIA
- BLOMMAERT, K.L.J. 1945. *pH and oxygen content fluctuation of the water in Daphnia culture*. Inland Fisheries Department, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 2: 13–16. A-ARTHROPOD, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, WATER-QUALITY, DAPHNIA
- CAPE PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION 1945. *Inland Fisheries Department*. Report No. 1. ARTHROPOD, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, DAPHNIA
- CAPE PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION 1960. *Department of Nature Conservation*. Report No. 17. A-ARTHROPOD, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, DAPHNIA
- CAPE PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION 1962. *Department of Nature Conservation*. Report No. 19. A-ARTHROPOD, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, DAPHNIA
- CAULTON, M.S. 1982. Practical implications of new techniques for aquaculture in warm water. *Aquaculture Conference, Pretoria, 6 May 1982: Constraints and Opportunities*, pp. 14–16. A-CRUSTACEAN, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, TECHNIQUE, MACROBRACHIUM
- CHOWN, S.L., MCGEOCH, M.A. & MARSHALL, D.J. 2002. Diversity and conservation of invertebrates on the sub-Antarctic Prince Edward Islands. *African Entomology* 10: 67–82. A-INVERTEBRATE, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, INTRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- CLARKE, B.M. 1996. *The impact of fish predation on the cultured mussel Mytilus galloprovincialis in the seafarm dam, Saldanha*. B.Sc.(Hons) thesis, University of Cape Town, Cape Town. A-MOLLUSC, MARINE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, PREDATION, N-FISH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MYTILUS
- COOKE, D. 1980. Notes on the breeding, larval rearing and culture potential of the giant freshwater prawn *Macrobrachium rosenbergi*. *Fish Farmer* 31: 10, 11. A-CRUSTACEAN, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MACROBRACHIUM
- CUBITT, G.H. 1985. Candidate species in aquaculture: freshwater crayfish. In T. Hecht, M.N. Bruton & O. Safriel (eds), *Aquaculture in South Africa*. CSIR Ecosystems Programmes Occasional Report 1: 30–32. CSIR, Pretoria. A-CRUSTACEAN, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CHERAX
- DE MOOR, I.J. & HOLDEN, K. 1997. *Literature study on the exotic freshwater crayfish species of the genera Cherax and Procambarus which are of*



- aquacultural significance*. Consultancy report to the Agricultural Research Council. A-CRUSTACEAN, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CHERAX, PROCAMBARUS
- DE MOOR, I.J. & JAMES, N.P.E. 1993. *The advisability of allowing the introduction of two species of Australian crayfish for the purpose of aquaculture to two sites in the Transvaal*. Private consultancy report submitted to the Transvaal Department of Nature Conservation, 63 pp. A-CRUSTACEAN, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, RISK-ASSESSMENT, CHERAX, PROCAMBARUS
- GASTON, K.J., NEW, T.R. & SAMWAYS, M.J. (eds) 1993. *Perspectives on insect conservation*, 250 pp. Intercept Press, London. A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- KINVIG, R. & SAMWAYS, M.J. 2000. Conserving dragonflies (Odonata) along streams running through commercial forestry. *Odonatologica* 29: 195–208. A-WOODY PLANT, SYLVICULTURAL-AREA, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, CONSERVATION
- PRINSLOO, G.L. & SAMWAYS, M.J. 2000. Host specificity among introduced chalcidoid biological control agents in South Africa. In M. Purcell, F. Howarth & J. Lockwood (eds), *Environmental risks of introduced biological control agents*, pp. 31–40. Thomas Say Publications in Entomology, Entomological Society of America, Lanham, Maryland. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, MANAGEMENT, BIOCONTROL, CONCEPT, AGENT-SELECTION
- READ, G. 1985. A possible aquaculture crustacean with temperate growth requirements. In T. Hecht, M.N. Bruton & O. Safriel (eds), *Aquaculture in South Africa*. CSIR Ecosystem Programmes Occasional Report 1: 26–29. CSIR, Pretoria. A-CRUSTACEAN, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CHERAX
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 1994. *Insect Conservation Biology*, 358 pp. Chapman and Hall, London. A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 1995. Conservation of the threatened endemic dragonflies of South Africa. In P.S. Corbet, S.W. Dunkle & H. Ubukata (eds), *Proceedings of the International Symposium on the Conservation of Dragonflies and their Habitats*, pp. 8–15 + 4 plates. Japanese Society for Preservation of Birds, Kushiro, Japan. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, CONSERVATION
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 1995. Southern hemisphere insects: their variety and the environmental pressures upon them. In N.E. Stork & R. Harrington (eds), *Insects in the Changing Environment, Proceedings of the Sixteenth Symposium of the Royal Entomological Society*, pp. 297–320 + 2 plates. Academic Press, London. A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 1996. Managing insect invasions by watching other countries. In O.T. Sandlund, P.J. Schei & A. Viken (eds), *Proceedings of the Norway/UN Conference on Alien Species*, pp. 69–73. Directorate for Nature Management, Norwegian Institute for Nature Research, Trondheim, Norway.
- A-BIOTA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, CO-OPERATION
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 1998. Insect population changes and conservation in the disturbed landscapes of mediterranean-type ecosystems. In P.W. Rundel (ed.), *Landscape disturbance and biodiversity in Mediterranean-type ecosystems*, pp. 313–331. Springer, New York. A-BIOTA, FYNBOS, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, CONSERVATION, DISTURBANCE, MANAGEMENT
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 1998. The awful experiment. *African Wildlife* 51: 20, 21. A-BIOTA, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 1999. Diversity and conservation status of South African dragonflies (Odonata) *Odonatologica* 28: 13–62. A-BIOTA, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 1999. Landscape triage for conserving biodiversity. In W. Ponder & D. Lunney (eds), *The other 99%: the conservation and biodiversity of invertebrates*, pp. 269–273. The Royal Zoological Society of New South Wales, Mosman, Australia. A-BIOTA, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, MANAGEMENT, STRATEGIC, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 2005. *Insect diversity conservation*. Cambridge University Press. A-BIOTA, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- SCHOLTZ, C.H. & CHOWN, S.L. 1993. Insect conservation and extensive agriculture: the savanna of southern Africa. In K. Gaston, T.R. New & M.J. Samways (eds), *Perspectives on insect conservation*, pp. 75–95. Intercept, Andover. A-BIOTA, SAVANNA, AGRICULTURAL-AREA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION, MANAGEMENT
- STEWART, D.A.B. & SAMWAYS, M.J. 1998. Conserving dragonfly (Odonata) assemblages relative to river dynamics in an African savanna game reserve. *Conservation Biology* 12,3: 683–692. A-BIOTA, SAVANNA, RIVER, RIPARIAN, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, MANAGEMENT
- ULLYETT, G.C. 1938. Ants and beneficial insects. *Farming in South Africa* 13: 120. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, AGRICULTURE, BIOCONTROL, LINEPITHEMA
- VAN DRIESCHE, R.G. 1994. Classical biological control of environmental pests. *Florida Entomologist* 77: 20–33. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, BIOCONTROL, LINEPITHEMA
- WALMSLEY, R.D. 1988. Status of marron farming in Australia and South Africa. In R.D. Walmsley (ed.), *An overview of marron farming and its potential in South Africa*. CSIR Ecosystems Programmes Occasional Report 29. CSIR, Pretoria. A-CRUSTACEAN, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE
- WHITEHEAD, V.B. 1958. Nuwe lig op Argentynse mier en witluis. *Die Sagtevrugteboer* April 1958: 1–3. A-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, AGRICULTURE, BIOCONTROL, LINEPITHEMA



## 8.9 Alien Fish (509)

### 8.9.1 A-Fish—Ecology (1)

- ALLETSON, D.J. 1985. Observations on some piscivorous birds in a trout fishing area of Natal. *Lammergeyer* 35: 41–46. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1951. Rapid growth of American eastern brook trout at the Jonkershoek hatchery. *Piscator* 17: 16. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, UTILISATION, SALVELINUS
- ANONYMOUS 1981. The early history of trout acclimation in South Africa. *Piscator* 108: 7–9. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- BARROW, I. 1971. Freshwater fish. In *The Swartkops estuary: an ecological survey*, pp. 33, 34. The Swartkops Trust, Port Elizabeth. A-FISH, ESTUARY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- BASSON, L., VAN AS, J.G. & PAPERNA, I. 1983. Trichodinid ectoparasites of cichlid and cyprinid fishes in South Africa and Israel. *Systematic Parasitology* 5: 245–257. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, PARASITISM, BARBUS, CARASSIUS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHTHALMICHTHYS, OREOCHROMIS, TILAPIA, TRICHODINA
- BATCHELOR, G.R. 1974. *An ecological investigation of the Doorndraai Dam, Sterk River, Transvaal, with special reference to fish management*. M.Sc. thesis, Rand Afrikaans University, Johannesburg, 131 pp. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS
- BEGG, G.W. 1976. Some notes on the Sandvlei fish fauna, Muizenberg, Cape. *Piscator* 96: 5–14. A-FISH, ESTUARY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CYPRINUS, OREOCHROMIS
- BOOMKER, J., HUCHZERMEYER, F.W. & NAUDE, T.W. 1980. Bothriocephalosis in the common carp in the eastern Transvaal. *Journal of the South African Veterinary Association* 51: 263, 264. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, PARASITISM, CYPRINUS
- BOURQUIN, O. & MATHIAS, I. 1984. The vertebrates of Oribi Gorge Nature Reserve: 1. *Lammergeyer* 33: 35–44. A-FISH, RIVER, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, LEPOMIS
- BOURQUIN, O. & SOWLER, S.G. 1980. The vertebrates of Vernon Crookes Nature Reserve: 1. *Lammergeyer* 28: 20–32. A-FISH, SPREAD, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS
- BOURQUIN, O. & VAN RENSBURG, J. 1984. Vertebrates of Vernon Crookes Nature Reserve: additional and confirming records. *Lammergeyer* 34: 59–61. A-FISH, SPREAD, LEPOMIS
- BRAACK, H.H. 1981. Lower vertebrates of the Bontebok National Park. *Koedoe* 24: 67–77. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, SANDELIA, TINCA
- BRAND, D.J. 1954. *A comparison between the diets of Tilapia sparrmanii and the bluegill sunfish, Lepomis macrochirus*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration. Investigational Report 11: 55–58. A-FISH, T-FISH, ECOLOGY, LEPOMIS, TILAPIA
- BRANDT, F. DE W. & SCHOONBEE, H.J. 1980. Further observations on the induced spawning of the phytophagous Chinese carp species *Ctenopharyngodon idella* (Val.) and *Hypophthalmichthys molitrix* (Val.). *Water SA* 6,1: 27–30. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, MANAGEMENT, CTENOPHARYNGODON, HYPOPHTHALMICHTHYS
- BRITZ, J., VAN AS, J.O. & SAAYMAN, J.E. 1985. Occurrence and distribution of *Clinostomium tilapiae* Ukoli, 1966 and *Euclinostomum heterostomum* (Rudolphi, 1809) metacercarial infections of freshwater fish in Venda and Lebowa, southern Africa. *Journal of Fish Biology* 26: 21–28. A-FISH, A-PARASITE, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, PARASITISM, CLINOSTOMUM, CYPRINUS, EUCLINOSTOMUM
- BRUTON, M.N. 1979. The fishes of Lake Sibaya. In B.R. Allanson (ed.), *Lake Sibaya*, pp. 162–245. Junk, The Hague. A-FISH, PAN, ECOLOGY, MICROPTERUS
- BRUTON, M.N. 1980. An outline of the ecology of Lake Sibaya, with emphasis on the vertebrate community. In M.N. Bruton & K.H. Cooper (eds), *Studies on the ecology of Maputaland*, pp. 382–407. Rhodes University, Grahamstown, and the Natal Branch of the Wildlife Society of Southern Africa, Durban. A-FISH, PAN, ECOLOGY, MICROPTERUS
- BRUTON, M.N. & DE MOOR, I.J. 1989. The aquatic invasives problem in South Africa: a review. In I.J. de Moor & M.N. Bruton (eds), *The management of invasive aquatic animals in southern Africa. Proceedings of a Symposium and Workshop organised by the Foundation for Research Development in collaboration with the JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown 12–13 September 1988*. CSIR Ecosystems Programmes Occasional Report 44: 83. (abstract only). A-FISH, T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, PARASITISM, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT
- BRUTON, M.N. & KOK, H.M. 1980. The freshwater fishes of Maputaland. In M.N. Bruton & K.H. Cooper (eds), *Studies on the ecology of Maputaland*, pp. 210–244. Rhodes University, Grahamstown, and the Natal Branch of the Wildlife Society of Southern Africa, Durban. A-FISH, T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, BARBUS, MICROPTERUS, TILAPIA
- BRUTON, M.N. & VAN AS, J.G. 1986. The life history styles of invasive fishes in southern Africa. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 201–208. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-FISH, T-FISH, FRESHWATER, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVASIVENESS, ADAPTATION, LIFE-HISTORY-STYLE, REPRODUCTION, RISK-ASSESSMENT, CONCEPT
- CAMBRAY, J.A. & DE MOOR, F.C. 1994. Historical changes in inland aquatic fauna as reflected by the Albany Museum's Natural History Collections. *South African Museums Association Bulletin* 20: 20–23. A-FISH, T-FISH, DATA, ECOLOGY
- CAMBRAY, J.A. & HAHNDIEK, S. 1980. *The juvenile and minnow populations in the marginal areas of the PK le Roux impoundment, Orange River, South Africa*. Internal report, Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation, Cape Provincial

- Administration, 38 pp. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, TILAPIA, ECOLOGY
- CAMBRAY, J.A., HAHNDIEK, S. & HAHNDIEK, Q. 1977. *A survey of fishes in Grassridge Dam*. Research report, Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, pp. 107–124. T-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, BARBUS, LABEO
- CAMBRAY, J.A. & STUART, C. 1985. Aspects of the biology of a rare redfin minnow *Barbus burchelli* (Pisces: Cyprinidae) from South Africa. *South African Journal of Zoology* 20: 155–165. A-FISH, RIVER, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, SALMO
- CAPE PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION 1965. *Department of Nature Conservation*. Report No. 22. A-FISH-PATHOGEN, MYXOSOMA, ECOLOGY
- CAPE PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION 1967–1968. *Department of Nature Conservation*. Report No. 24. A-ARTHROPOD, A-FISH-PATHOGEN, DAPHNIA, MYXOSOMA, ECOLOGY
- CLAY, D. 1976. An investigation into the distribution of fish in Swaziland. *Revue de Zoologie Africaine* 90,2: 547, 548. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- COCHRANE, K.L. 1983. Hartbeespoort Dam: are the fish surviving. *Tight Lines* August 1983: 32, 33, 35, 36. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS
- COCHRANE, K.L. 1986. Distribution of the three major species of fish in the Hartbeespoort Dam in relation to some environmental factors. *South African Journal of Zoology* 21: 177–182. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS
- CRASS, R.S. 1946. A preliminary report on the food of trout in Natal. *Journal of the Natal University College Scientific Society* 5: 13–22. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, N-BIODIVERSITY, SALMO
- CRASS, R.S. 1947–1948. Notes on food, growth-rates and condition factors of Natal trout. *Journal of the Natal University College Scientific Society* 6: 9–17. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, PHYSIOLOGY, SALMO
- CRASS, R.S. 1955. Notes on the biology of Natal trout. In *Proceedings of the third inter-provincial inland fisheries technical conference*, Lydenburg, pp. 59–67. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, SALMO
- CRASS, R.S. 1956. Biology of trout in Natal. *Scientific Council for Africa South of the Sahara Publication* 25: 101, 102. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, SALMO
- CRASS, R.S. 1969. The effects of land use on freshwater fish in South Africa, with particular reference to Natal. *Hydrobiologia* 34,1: 38–56. A-FISH, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, HABITAT-DEGRADATION, LAND-USE, BARBUS, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO
- CRONJE, L.J., PRINSLOO, J.F. & SCHOONBEE, H.J. 1980. Investigations into the effects of low water temperatures on the growth performance of the European and Chinese carps used in polyculture in manured fish ponds with and without pelleted feeds. In *Proceedings of the Symposium on Aquaculture in Wastewater*, 24–26 November 1980, 2 pp. National Institute for Water Research, CSIR, Pretoria. A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, AQUACULTURE, ARISTICHTHYS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHthalmichthys
- DAY, L.A. 1933. Growth of trout and influencing factors. *Farmer (Natal)* 3 February 1933: 20. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, SALMO
- DU PLESSIS, S.S. 1951. Summer trout. *Fauna and Flora* 2: 5–15. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, SALMO
- DU PLESSIS, S.S. 1952. Fish diseases in Transvaal. *Symposium on African Hydrobiology and Inland Fisheries*. Publication No. 6, pp. 128–130. A-FISH, A-FISH-PARASITE, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH
- ENSLIN, J.M.M. 1966. 'n Vergelykende studie van die voedingsgewoontes van sekere varswatervisse in Barberspan, wes-Transvaal. M.Sc. thesis, Potchefstroom University, Potchefstroom. A-FISH, PAN, ECOLOGY, CYPRINUS
- FOURIE, L.B. & HATTINGH, J. 1976. A seasonal study of the haematology of carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) from a locality in the Transvaal, South Africa. *Zoologica Africana* 11,1: 75–80. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, CYPRINUS
- FOURIE, L.B. & VAN VUUREN, J.H.J. 1976. A seasonal study on the haemoglobins of carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) and yellowfish (*Barbus holubi*) in South Africa. *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology* 55,4B: 523–525. A-FISH, T-FISH, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, BARBUS, CYPRINUS
- FRYER, G. 1968. The parasitic Crustacea of African freshwater fishes, their biology and distribution. *Journal of Zoology, London* 156: 45–95. A-FISH-PARASITE, FRESHWATER, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACHTHERES, ARGULUS, LERNAEA
- GAIGHER, I.G. 1975. The ecology of a minnow, *Barbus trevelyani* (Pisces, Cyprinidae) in the Tyume River, Eastern Cape. *Annals of the Cape Provincial Museums* 11,1: 1–19. A-FISH, T-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, LEPOMIS, SALMO, TILAPIA
- GOLDNER, H.J. 1967. 'n Populasie studie van varswatervisse in Barberspan, wes-Transvaal. M.Sc. thesis, Potchefstroom University for CHO, Potchefstroom. A-FISH, PAN, ECOLOGY, INVASION, ABUNDANCE, CYPRINUS
- GOLDNER, H.J., SCHOONBEE, H.J. & VERMEULEN, J. 1972. 'n Vergelyking van merktugvangskattingsmetodes vir visbevolkings in Loskopdam, Oos-Transvaal. *Tydskrif vir Natuurwetenskappe* June 1972: 88–103. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, ABUNDANCE, CYPRINUS
- GROENEWALD, A.A. VAN J. 1957. *The results of a survey of the fish populations of the Vaal River during the period April–December 1956*. Internal report, Provincial Fisheries Institute, Transvaal Nature Conservation Division, 86 pp. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, SURVEY, CYPRINUS
- HAMMAN, K.C.D. 1980. Post-impoundment trends in the fish populations of the Hendrik Verwoerd Dam, South Africa. *Journal of the Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 6,2: 101–108. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, HISTORY, ABUNDANCE, CYPRINUS, SALMO

- HARRISON, A.C. 1940. The acclimation of freshwater game fish in the Cape Province and its relation to forest areas. *Journal of the South African Forestry Association* 4: 5–14. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1946. *Report on the causes of the deterioration of the trout fishing in the Division of Maclear, Cape Province (1945–1946), with notes on conditions at Mount Fletcher and Matatiele, East Griqualand*. Inland Fisheries Department, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 3: 18–27. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1950. The story of an old label. *Piscator* 14: 50. A-FISH, MICROPTERUS, ECOLOGY
- HARRISON, A.C. 1958. *Growth of rainbow trout in Wemmershoek reservoir*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 15: 113–115. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1965–1966. Slow-growing smallmouth bass in Steenbras Reservoir. *Piscator* 65: 117–119. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1969. Wemmershoek Reservoir: fluctuations in the yield of rainbow trout. *Piscator* 75: 36–43. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, HISTORY, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- HEARD, H.W. & KING, M. 1981. *A report on the fish populations and ecology of the Baakens River*. Internal report, Cape Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation, 9 pp. A-FISH, T-FISH, RIVER, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, TILAPIA
- HEARD, H.W. & KING, M. 1982. The fish populations and ecology of the Baakens River. *The Naturalist* 27,1: 21–24. A-FISH, T-FISH, RIVER, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, TILAPIA
- HEY, D. 1940. A preliminary report on the reproduction of trout in the Steenbras Reservoir. *Cape Piscatorial Society, Freshwater Fisheries Circular* 35. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, SALMO
- HEY, D. & HARRISON, A.C. 1946. *Investigations of the sudden mortality of carp in the Bot River Vlei*. Inland Fisheries Department, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 2: 20. A-FISH, ESTUARY, ECOLOGY, CYPRINUS
- HOFFMAN, G.L. 1970. Intercontinental and transcontinental dissemination and transfaunation of fish parasites with emphasis on whirling disease. In S.F. Snieszko (ed.), *A symposium on diseases of fishes and shellfishes. American Fisheries Society Special Publication* 5: 69–81. A-FISH-PATHOGEN, MYXOSOMA, ECOLOGY
- JUBB, R.A. 1966. Some notes on *Labeo* or mudsuckers. *Piscator* 66: 25–29. T-FISH, ECOLOGY, LABEO
- JUBB, R.A. 1972. Disappearing river fishes. *African Wildlife* 26,2: 48–52. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- JUBB, R.A. 1972. The Hendrik Verwoerd Dam and Orange River fishes. *Piscator* 84: 22–26. A-FISH, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, TILAPIA
- KING, N.J. & BOK, A.H. 1984. *Report on the ichthyofauna and ecology of the Baakens River*. Internal report, Cape Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation, 9 pp. A-FISH, T-FISH, RIVER, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, MUGIL, TILAPIA
- KLEYNHANS, C.J. 1982. *Die ekologie van skaars en moontlik bedreigde vissoorte van Transvaal*. Final report to the Nature Conservation Division, Transvaal Provincial Administration, Lydenburg, 247 pp. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, CONSERVATION, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHthalmichthys, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, SALVELINUS
- KOCH, B.S. & SCHOONBEE, H.J. 1980. A fish mark-recapture study in Boskop Dam, Western Transvaal. *Water SA* 6,3: 149–155. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS
- KRUGER, E.J. 1971. *'n Onderzoek na die ekologiese voedselstruktuur van sekere visspesies in Loskopdam*. D.Sc. thesis, Potchefstroom University for CHO, Potchefstroom, 131 pp. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, CYPRINUS
- KRUGER, I., VAN AS, J.G. & SAAYMAN, J.E. 1983. Observations on the occurrence of the fish louse *Argulus japonicus* Thiele, 1900, in the western Transvaal. *South African Journal of Zoology* 18: 408–410. A-FISH, A-FISH-PARASITE, INVASION, SPREAD, PARASITISM, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, ARGULUS, BARBUS, CLARIAS, CYPRINUS, LABEO, TILAPIA
- LE ROUX, P. 1963. Notes on the growth and longevity of the Vaal River yellowfish, (*Barbus holubi*). *Fauna and Flora* 14: 40, 41. T-FISH, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, BARBUS
- LOMBARD, G.L. 1968. A survey of fish diseases and parasites encountered in Transvaal. *Limnological Society of Southern Africa Newsletter* 11: 23–29. A-FISH-PARASITE, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-FISH, PARASITISM
- MULDER, P.F.S. 1971. *'n Ekologiese studie van die hengeltvis fauna in die Vaalrivier sisteem met spesiale verwysing na Barbus kimberleyensis Gilchrist and Thompson*. Ph.D. thesis, Rand Afrikaans University, Johannesburg, 118 pp. T-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, BARBUS
- NATAL PARKS BOARD 1977. Successful breeding of Chinese carp. *Environment RSA* 4,8: 4, 5. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, CTENOPHARYNGODON
- NOBLE, R.G. & HEMENS, J. 1978. *Inland water ecosystems in South Africa: review of research needs*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 314: 1–150. A-FISH, RESEARCH, ARISTICHTHYS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHthalmichthys, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA

- ORTLEPP, R.J. 1935. On the metacercaria and adult of *Clinostomum van der horsti* sp. n., a trematode parasite of fish and herons. *Onderstepoort Journal of Veterinary Science Animal Index* 5: 51–58. A-FISH-PARASITE, IDENTIFICATION, CLINOSTOMUM
- PAPERNA, I. 1980. Parasites, infections and diseases of fish in Africa. *CIFA Technical Paper* 7: 1–216. A-FISH-PARASITE, ACHTHERES, ARGULUS, DACTYLOGYRUS, ICHTHYOPHTHIRIUS, LERNAEA, PSEUDACOLPENTERON
- PAPERNA, I. & VAN AS, J.G. 1983. Epizootology and pathology of *Chilodonella hexasticha* (Kiernik, 1909) (Protozoa, Ciliata) infections in cultured cichlid fishes. *Journal of Fish Biology* 23: 441–450. A-FISH-PARASITE, CHILODONELLA
- PHILIPPART, J.-C.L. & RUWET, J.-C.L. 1982. Ecology and distribution of tilapias. In R.S.V. Pullin & R.H. Lowe-McConnell (eds), *The biology and culture of tilapias. Proceedings of the international conference on the biology and culture of tilapias, 2–5 September 1980, Bellagio, Italy*, pp. 15–59. ICLARM, Manila. A-FISH, T-FISH, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, OREOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- PIKE, T. 1983. *Oreochromis mossambicus* in Natal. Natural distribution and growth studies. In L. Fishelson & Z. Yaron (eds), *Proceedings of the International Symposium on Tilapia in Aquaculture*. Tel Aviv University, Tel Aviv. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, HISTORY, SPREAD, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, OREOCHROMIS
- POTGIETER, F.J. 1974. 'n *Ekologiese studie van die rooibors kurper Tilapia melanopleura Dumeril (1859) (Pisces: Cichlidae) in Transvaal met verwysing na geassosieerde varswatervissoorte*. M.Sc. thesis, Rand Afrikaans University, Johannesburg, 150 pp. T-FISH, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, MICROPTERUS
- PRINSLOO, J.F. & SCHOONBEE, H.J. 1980. Freshwater fish research in Transkei. In *Proceedings of the sixth biennial meeting of the Transkei and Ciskei Research Society, Umtata, Transkei, 7–9 March 1980*, pp. 145–154. Communities and their resources. A-FISH, FRESHWATER, RESEARCH, ARISTICHTHYS, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHthalmichthys, MICROPTERUS
- PRUDHOE, S. & HUSSEY, C.G. 1977. Some parasitic worms in freshwater fishes and fish predators from the Transvaal, South Africa. *Zoologica Africana* 12: 113–148. A-FISH-PARASITE, FRESHWATER, CLINOSTOMUM, EUCLINOSTOMUM
- RUSSELL, I.A. 1997. Spatial variation in the structure of fish assemblages in the Vaalbos National Park. *Koedoe* 40,1: 113–124. A-FISH, RIVER, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY
- SASCAR 1981. *South African Antarctic Biological Research Programme*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 50: 1–57. A-FISH, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, SALMO
- VAN AS, J.G. 1985. Parasites and diseases of freshwater fish in South Africa: an ecological approach. In T. Hecht, M.N. Bruton & O. Safriel (eds), *Aquaculture in South Africa*. CSIR Ecosystem Programmes Occasional Report 1: 118–127. CSIR, Pretoria. A-FISH, A-FISH-PARASITE, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, PARASITISM, DISEASE, APIOsOMA, ARGULUS, BOTHRIOCEPHALUS, CHILODONELLA, ICHTHYOBODO, TRICHODINA, TRICHODINELLA, CYPRINUS, SALMO
- VAN AS, J.G., SCHOONBEE, H.J. & BRANDT, F. DE W. 1981. Further records of the occurrence of *Bothriocephalus* (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidae) in the Transvaal. *South African Journal of Science* 77: 343. A-FISH-PARASITE, INVASION, SPREAD, BOTHRIOCEPHALUS
- VAN DER MERWE, C.V. 1970. *A short description of the Goukamma Nature Reserve*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Investigational Report 16: 1–16. A-FISH, GAMBUSIA, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS
- VAN RENSBURG, K.J. 1966. *Growth of Tilapia mossambica (Peters) in De Hoop Vlei and Zeekoe Vlei*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Investigational Report 9: 1–7. T-FISH, PAN, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, OREOCHROMIS
- VAN SCHOOR, D.J. 1968. Survey of the fishes in the Orange and Vaal Rivers from Aliwal North to Douglas. *News Bulletin of the Zoological Society of South Africa* 9,2: 8, 9. A-FISH, RIVER, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, CYPRINUS, SALMO
- VAN SCHOOR, D.J. 1969. *The growth of the largemouth bass Micropterus salmoides at Jonkershoek Fish Hatchery without benefit of forage fish*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Investigational Report 11. A-FISH, T-FISH, FISH-POND, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS
- VAN SCHOOR, D.J. 1969. *An economical method of holding fish that are sensitive to low temperatures in heated water during the winter*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Investigational Report 14: 1–6. T-FISH, FISH-POND, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, ECONOMICS, PHYSIOLOGY, TECHNIQUE, OREOCHROMIS
- VILJOEN, S. & VAN AS, J.G. 1985. Sessile peritrichs (Ciliophora: Peritricha) from freshwater fish in the Transvaal, South Africa. *South African Journal of Zoology* 20: 79–96. A-FISH, A-FISH-PARASITE, CYPRINUS
- WHITFIELD, A.K. & BLABER, S.J.M. 1976. The effects of temperature and salinity on *Tilapia rendalli* Boulenger–1896. *Journal of Fish Biology* 9,2: 99–104. T-FISH, PHYSIOLOGY, TILAPIA
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1971. *An introduction to animal ecology in southern Africa*, 68 pp. Maskew Miller, Cape Town. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, CYPRINUS, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1913. *Official illustrated guide to trout fishing in South Africa*. South African Railways, Johannesburg. A-FISH, IDENTIFICATION, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- BARNARD, K.H. 1943. Revision of the indigenous freshwater fishes of the S W Cape region. *Annals of the South African Museum* 36: 101–262. A-FISH, T-FISH, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, GAMBUSIA, LABEO, OREOCHROMIS
- BARNARD, K.H. 1947. *A pictorial guide to South African fishes: marine and freshwater*. Maskew Miller, Cape Town. A-FISH, IDENTIFICATION,

- INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, GAMBUSIA, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA
- BARNARD, K.H. 1948. *Revision of the South African Cichlidae*. Inland Fisheries Department, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 5: 48–61. A-FISH, T-FISH, IDENTIFICATION, TAXONOMY, TILAPIA
- BRUTON, M.N., JACKSON, P.B.N. & SKELTON, P.H. 1962. *Pocket guide to the freshwater fishes of southern Africa*. Centaur, Cape Town. A-FISH, T-FISH, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, BARBUS, CLARIAS, LABEO, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, TILAPIA
- CRASS, R.S. 1964. *Freshwater fishes of Natal*. Shuter and Shooter, Pietermaritzburg. A-FISH, IDENTIFICATION, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, BARBUS, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, TILAPIA
- DU PLESSIS, S.S. 1963. A revision of the genus *Labeo* (Pisces: Cyprinidae) in the Transvaal, with a description of a new species. *Annals of the Transvaal Museum* 24,4: 327–337. T-FISH, TAXONOMY, LABEO, IDENTIFICATION
- DU PLESSIS, S.S. & GROENEWALD, A.A. 1953. The kurper of Transvaal. *Fauna and Flora* 3: 35–43. A-FISH, IDENTIFICATION, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, OREOCHROMIS, SERRANOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- FRYER, G. 1982. The parasitic Copepoda and Branchiura of British freshwater fishes. A handbook and key. *Freshwater Biological Association Scientific Publication* 46: 1–87. A-FISH-PARASITE, FRESHWATER, IDENTIFICATION, ARGULUS
- GREENWOOD, P.H. & JUBB, B.A. 1967. The generic identity of *Labeo quathlambae* Barnard (Pisces, Cyprinidae). *Annals of the Cape Provincial Museums* 6,2: 17–37. A-FISH, SALMO IDENTIFICATION
- HARRISON, A.C. 1949. *Freshwater fishing in the Cape south-western districts, South Africa*, edn 2. Cape Peninsula Publicity Association and the Cape Piscatorial Society, Cape Town. A-FISH, IDENTIFICATION, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA
- HARRISON, A.C. 1952. The Cape kurper. *Piscator* 23: 82–91. A-FISH, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, ANGLING, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, TINCA, IDENTIFICATION
- HARRISON, A.C. 1952. Cape minnows. *Piscator* 24: 117–128. A-FISH, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, ANGLING, BARBUS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, IDENTIFICATION
- HARRISON, A.C. 1952. *Freshwater fish of the Cape*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 9: 45–52. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, SALVELINUS, TINCA, IDENTIFICATION
- HARRISON, A.C. 1960–1961. Tiger trout (*Salmo trutta* female X *Salvelinus fontinalis* male). *Piscator* 50: 85–93. A-FISH, SALMO, SALVELINUS, IDENTIFICATION
- HARRISON, A.C. 1964–1965. Spotted bass. *Piscator* 62: 127, 128. A-FISH, MICROPTERUS, IDENTIFICATION
- HARRISON, A.C., SHORT-SMITH, K.E., YATES, J.H., JUBB, R.A., RUSHBY, G. & FLAMWELL, C.T. 1963. *Fresh-water fish and fishing in Africa*, 210 pp. Thomas Nelson, Johannesburg. A-FISH, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, PERCA, SALMO, SALVELINUS, TILAPIA, TINCA
- HOCUTT, C.H. & SKELTON, P.H. 1983. Fishes of the Sak River, South Africa, with comments on the nomenclature of the smallmouth yellowfish, *Barbus aeneus* (Burchell, 1822). *JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology Special Publication* 32: 1–11. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, BARBUS, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS
- JACKSON, P.B.N. 1973. Eels and other fish of Eastern Cape rivers. *The Eastern Cape Naturalist* 50: 18–23. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- JUBB, R.A. 1959. The plump redfin (rooivlerk) *Barbus asper* Boulenger, 1911. *Piscator* 45: 34, 35. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, IDENTIFICATION
- JUBB, R.A. 1959. Carp, mud-mullet and eels in Eastern Cape Rivers. *Piscator* 46: 56–60. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, IDENTIFICATION
- JUBB, R.A. 1961. The cyprinids of the south-western Cape. *Piscator* 51: 4–7. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, TILAPIA, IDENTIFICATION
- JUBB, R.A. 1961–1962. Yellowfishes of the Orange-Vaal River system. *Piscator* 53: 107–109. T-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, BARBUS, IDENTIFICATION
- JUBB, R.A. 1966. *Labeo quathlambae*, a rare freshwater fish now feared to be extinct. *Piscator* 66: 78–80. A-FISH, RIVER, IDENTIFICATION, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, SALMO
- JUBB, R.A. 1967. *Freshwater fishes of southern Africa*. Balkema, Cape Town. A-FISH, T-FISH, IDENTIFICATION, TAXONOMY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, BARBUS, CYPRINUS, GAMBUSIA, LABEO, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCHA, SALMO, SALVELINUS, TILAPIA, TINCA
- JUBB, R.A. 1968. The *Barbus* and *Varicorhinus* species (Pisces: Cyprinidae) of the Transvaal. *Annals of the Transvaal Museum* 26,4: 79–97. T-FISH, IDENTIFICATION, TAXONOMY, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, BARBUS
- JUBB, R.A. 1971. Freshwater fishes. In P.C. du Plessis, D.J. Potgieter & S.H. Skaife (compilers), *Animal life in southern Africa*, pp. 256–261. NASAU, Cape Town. A-FISH, T-FISH, IDENTIFICATION, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, BARBUS, CYPRINUS,



- GAMBUSIA, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, TILAPIA
- JUBB, R.A. 1971. Some interesting Eastern Cape freshwater fishes. *The Eastern Cape Naturalist* 43: 7–9. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, IDENTIFICATION
- KLEYNHANS, C.J. 1983. A checklist of the fish species of the Mogol and Palala Rivers (Limpopo System) of the Transvaal. *Journal of the Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 9,1: 29–32. A-FISH, SPREAD, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, IDENTIFICATION
- LE ROUX, P. & STEYN, L. 1968. *Fishes of the Transvaal*, 108 pp. South African Breweries, Johannesburg. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, SALVELINUS, IDENTIFICATION
- PIENAAR, U. DE V. 1978. *The freshwater fishes of the Kruger National Park*, 91 pp. National Parks Board of South Africa, Pretoria. T-FISH, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, PAN, IDENTIFICATION, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, SPREAD, ASTATOTILAPIA, NOTHOBRANCHIUS, SERRANOCHROMIS
- POTT, R. MC C. 1981. The Treur River barb: a rare fish in good company. *African Wildlife* 35,6: 29–31. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, IDENTIFICATION
- RUSSELL, I.A. 1999. Freshwater fish of the Addo Elephant National Park. *South African Journal of Aquatic Sciences* 24,1/2: 57–70. A-FISH, RIVER, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION
- RUSSELL, I.A. 1999. Freshwater fish of the Wilderness National Park. *Koedoe* 42,1: 73–78. A-FISH, ESTUARY, RIVER, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION
- RUSSELL, I.A. 2001. Freshwater fish of Bontebok National Park. *Koedoe* 44,2: 71–77. A-FISH, RIVER, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION
- RUSSELL, I.A. 2002. Freshwater fish of Tsitsikamma National Park. *Koedoe* 45,2: 13–17. A-FISH, ESTUARY, RIVER, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION
- RUSSELL, I.A. & SKELTON, P.H. 2005. Freshwater fish of Golden Gate Highlands National Park. *Koedoe* 48,1: 87–94. A-FISH, RIVER, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION
- SKELTON, P.H. & CAMBRAY, J.A. 1981. The freshwater fishes of the middle and lower Orange River. *Koedoe* 24: 51–66. A-FISH, T-FISH, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, CYPRINUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO
- SKELTON, P.H., JUBB, R.A. & BRUTON, M.N. 1980. Additions to the checklist and recent changes to the scientific names of southern African freshwater fishes. *Journal of the Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 6,2: 109–112. A-FISH, T-FISH, FRESHWATER, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, TAXONOMY, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, GAMBUSIA, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, PERCA, PHALLOCEROS, POECILIA, SALMO, SALVELINUS, TINCA, XIPHOPHORUS
- SMITH, J.L.B. 1937. Freshwater fishes of the eastern Cape Province. In *A guide to the vertebrate fauna of the Eastern Cape Province, South Africa. Part II: reptiles, amphibians and freshwater fishes*, pp. 119–141. Albany Museum, Grahamstown. A-FISH, IDENTIFICATION, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- TREWAVAS, E. 1983. *Tilapiine fishes of the genera Sarotherodon, Oreochromis and Danakilia*, 583 pp. British Museum (Natural History), London. T-FISH, TAXONOMY, OREOCHROMIS, IDENTIFICATION
- VAN AS, J.G. & BASSON, L. 1984. Checklist of freshwater fish parasites from southern Africa. *South African Journal of Wildlife Research* 14: 49–61. A-FISH-PARASITE, INTRODUCTION, IDENTIFICATION, HISTORY, ARGULUS, BOTHRIOCEPHALUS, ICHTHYOPHTHIRIUS, LERNAEA, TRICHODINA
- ANONYMOUS 1971. Rare, indigenous South African fish threatened. *African Aquarist* 4,7: 9–11. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- BATCHELOR, G.R. 1978. Aspects of the biology of *Tilapia rendalli* in the Doorndraai Dam, Transvaal. *Journal of the Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 4,1: 65–68. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, TILAPIA
- BRUTON, M.N. 1979. The food and feeding behaviour of *Clarias gariepinus* (Pisces, Clariidae) in Lake Sibaya, South Africa, with emphasis on its role as predator. *Transactions of the Zoological Society of London* 35: 47–114. T-FISH, PAN, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, CLARIAS
- CADIEUX, J. 1980. Freshwater angling in the Transvaal: its environmental and economic impact. *South African Journal of Science* 76: 492, 493. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, HABITAT-DEGRADATION, UTILISATION, ANGLING, ECONOMICS
- CAMBRAY, J.A. 1996. Threatened fishes of the world: *Sandelia bainesii* Castelnau, 1861 (Anabantidae). *Environmental biology of fishes* 45: 150. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH
- CAMBRAY, J.A. 1996. Threatened fishes of the world: *Pseudobarbus quathlambae* (Barnard 1938) (Cyprinidae). *Environmental biology of fishes* 46: 308. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH
- CAMBRAY, J.A. 1996. Threatened fishes of the world: *Barbus trevelyani* Günther 1877 (Cyprinidae). *Environmental biology of fishes* 47: 202. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH
- CAMBRAY, J.A. 1997. Freshwater Fish—a global biodiversity crisis. *Hydrobiologia* 353: 199–202. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH
- CAMBRAY, J.A. 1999. Threatened fishes of the world: *Barbus capensis* A. Smith 1841 (Cyprinidae). *Environmental biology of fishes* 54: 150. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH
- CAMBRAY, J.A. 2000. 'Threatened fishes of the world' series, an update. *Environmental biology of fishes* 59: 353–357 (guest editorial). A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH



- CAMBRAY, J.A. 2003. Alien trout species and their impact on South African aquatic species with reference to the global impact of introduced trout species. *African Journal of Aquatic Sciences* 28,1: 61–67. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, ONCORHYNCHUS, SALMO
- CAMBRAY, J.A. 2003. The need for research and monitoring of the impacts of translocated sharptooth catfish, *Clarias gariepinus*, in South Africa. *African Journal of Aquatic Sciences* 28,2: 191–195. T-FISH, RESEARCH, MONITORING, INTER-BASIN TRANSFER, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, HABITAT-DEGRADATION
- CAMBRAY, J.A. 2003. Impact on indigenous species biodiversity caused by the globalisation of recreational fisheries. *Hydrobiologia* 500: 217–230. A-FISH, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, ONCORHYNCHUS, SALMO
- CAMBRAY, J.A. & BIANCO, P.G. 1998. Freshwater fish crisis: a blue planet perspective. *Italian Journal of Zoology* 65 (Supplement): 345–356. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH
- DE MOOR, I.J. 1987. Exotic fish in South Africa—an asset or a liability? *Ichthos Newsletter* 15: 9. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT
- FREAN, R.H. 1967. Tilapia solves mosquito problem. *Farmers Weekly* February 15, 1967: 27. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-INVERTEBRATE, INSECT, UTILISATION, BIOCONTROL, GAMBUSIA, OREOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- GAIGHER, C.M. 1973. The Clanwilliam River: it is not yet too late? *Piscator* 88: 75–78. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- GAIGHER, C.M. 1981. Tiny jewels of the Cederberg. *African Wildlife* 35,3: 25–29. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- GAIGHER, I.G. 1978. *The distribution, status and factors affecting the survival of indigenous freshwater fishes in the Cape Province*. Internal report of the Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, 56 pp. A-FISH, T-FISH, ESTUARY, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-FISH, CONSERVATION, BARBUS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- GAIGHER, I.G. 1979. Overgrazing endangers fish species. *African Wildlife* 33,1: 41. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, HABITAT-DEGRADATION, SALMO
- GAIGHER, I.G. 1983. Fish farming: a threat to fish conservation? *The Naturalist* 27,3: 224–228. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-FISH, HABITAT-DEGRADATION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION, ARISTICHTHYS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHthalmichthys, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO
- GAIGHER, I.G., HAMMAN, K.C.D. & THORN, S.C. 1980. The distribution, conservation status and factors affecting the survival of indigenous freshwater fishes in the Cape Province. *Koedoe* 23: 57–88. A-FISH, T-FISH, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-FISH, CONSERVATION, BARBUS, CLARIAS, LABEO, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- HARRISON, A.C. 1959. Editorial: the menace of carp. *Piscator* 46: 46. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, IMPACT, N-FISH, HABITAT-DEGRADATION, CYPRINUS
- JACKSON, P.B.N. 1960. On the desirability or otherwise of introducing fishes to waters that are foreign to them. In the third symposium on hydrobiology and inland fisheries problems of major lakes, Lusaka, Zambia, 18–24 August 1960. *Scientific Council for Africa South of the Sahara, Publication* 63: 157–164. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, BARBUS, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA
- JUBB, R.A. 1963. Transportation of Orange/Vaal yellowfish and the proposed eel fishery. *Piscator* 57: 22. T-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, BARBUS
- JUBB, R.A. 1964. Freshwater fishes and drainage basins in southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 60,1: 17–21. T-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, LABEO
- JUBB, R.A. 1964–1965. *Gambusia*, the fish destroyer. *Piscator* 62: 119, 120. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, GAMBUSIA
- JUBB, R.A. 1973. Notes on exotic fishes introduced into South African inland waters. *Piscator* 87: 9–12. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS
- JUBB, R.A. 1973. Notes on exotic fishes introduced into South African inland waters: cyprinids. *Piscator* 88: 62–64. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS
- JUBB, R.A. 1976–1977. Notes on exotic fishes introduced into South African waters. Part II: live-bearing sharptooth carps. *Piscator* 98: 132–134. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, GAMBUSIA, XIPHOPHORUS
- JUBB, R.A. 1979. Some endangered freshwater fish species. *The Eastern Cape Naturalist* 68: 24–26. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- KLEYNHANS, C.J. 1984. *Die verspreiding en status van sekere seldsame vissoorte van die Transvaal en die ekologie van sommige spesies*. D.Sc. thesis, University of Pretoria, Pretoria. A-FISH, T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, CTENOPHARYNGODON, KNERIA, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- PAXTON, B.R., CLARK, B.M. & BROWN, C.A. 2002. *An assessment of the effects of habitat degradation and exotic fish species invasions on the distribution of three endemic cyprinids*: *Barbus capensis*, *Barbus*

- serra and Labeo seeberi in the Olifants and Doring Rivers, Western Cape. DWAf Report No. PB E000-00-1302, 53 pp. Report prepared for the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, HABITAT-DEGRADATION, IMPACT, N-FISH, CONSERVATION
- PIKE, T. 1983. A review of freshwater fish and invertebrates which have been used for food production or angling purposes throughout the world, and some effects caused by exotics on indigenous populations. Internal report of the Natal Parks, Game and Fish Preservation Board, Pietermaritzburg. A-CRUSTACEAN, A-FISH, T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, ARTEMIA, CHERAX, MACROBRACHIUM, PACIFASTACUS, PROCAMBARUS, ARISTICHTHYS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHthalmichthys, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, MYLOPHARYNGODON, OREOCHROMIS, PERCA, SALMO, SERRANOCHROMIS, TILAPIA, TINCA
- PURCHASE, H.C., DE MOOR, I.J. & BRUTON, M.N. 1989. An expert system to assess probable impacts of the introduction of alien fish into southern Africa. In I.J. de Moor & M.N. Bruton (eds), The management of invasive aquatic animals in southern Africa. *Proceedings of a Symposium and Workshop organised by the Foundation for Research Development in collaboration with the JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown 12–13 September 1988*. CSIR Ecosystems Programmes Occasional Report 44: 94, 95. (Poster Presentation: abstract only) A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, MANAGEMENT
- REED, C., BUTHELEZI, S. & ROETS, W. 2004. Fishes under serious threats. *George Herald*, Thursday 19 February 2004. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, HABITAT INTEGRITY, FLOW MODIFICATION, CONSERVATION
- THORNE, S.C. & HAMMAN, K.C.D. 1980. Exotic fish species: a problem. *The Cape Angler* 10: 10–12. A-FISH, T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, TILAPIA
- WAGER, V.A. & ROWE-ROWE, D.T. 1972. The effects of *Tilapia rendalli* and *T. mossambica* on aquatic macrophytes and fauna in five ponds. *South African Journal of Science* 68: 257–260. A-FISH, T-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, N-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, OREOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- ACKERMAN, H.J. 1951. Brook trout on 'the staircase'. *Piscator* 18: 78, 79. A-FISH, SALVELINUS, INTRODUCTION
- ANONYMOUS 1890. Acclimation of trout. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 3,13: 99. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1891. Importation of trout ova. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 3,21: 201. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1893. Acclimation of trout. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 6,6: 110. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1893. Acclimation of trout in the Colony. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 6,7: 124, 125. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1894. Stocking reservoirs with trout. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 7,13: 307. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1894. Acclimation of trout. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 7,15: 355, 356. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1896. Trout on the frontier. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 13,3: 655. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1950. Sixty years ago: the first of a series of extracts from the old records of trout pioneering in the Eastern Province of the Cape of Good Hope. No. 1: the prologue of J D Ellis, June 1890. *Piscator* 14: 44–46. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1950. Trout pioneering in the Eastern Cape. No. 2: the work of Ernst Latour, 1894–1896. *Piscator* 15: 76–79. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1950. Trout pioneering in the Eastern Cape. No. 3: the debut of A.N. Stenning, 1896. *Piscator* 16: 117–120. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, CYPRINUS, SALMO, TINCA
- ANONYMOUS 1951. Trout pioneering in the Eastern Province. No. 4: a flashback. The experiment of the Naturalists Society, 1891. *Piscator* 18: 55–64. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1951. Trout pioneering in the Eastern Province. No. 5: more light on Latour, 1894. *Piscator* 19: 92–96. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1951. Complete list of first distributions of brook trout in the western Province, August–November, 1951. *Piscator* 20: 103. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, SALVELINUS
- ANONYMOUS 1952. Should other types of fish be planted in South African waters? *The South African Angler* 7,3: 11–25. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1952. It is illegal in Transvaal to transfer fish from one water to another. *The South African Angler* 7,6: 15. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA
- ANONYMOUS 1952. Trout pioneering in the Eastern Province. No. 6: more light on Latour in 1895. *Piscator* 21: 27–32. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1953. Introducing trout into Swaziland. *The South African Angler* 8,4: 21. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1955. The carp. In *Proceedings of the third inter-provincial inland fisheries technical conference, Lydenburg*, pp. 101, 102. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, CYPRINUS

- ANONYMOUS 1956. The large Harrismith brown trout were not taken by angling. *Piscator* 36: 25. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1956. Rainbow trout in the headwaters of the Umtata River. *Piscator* 36: 33. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1958. Large carp caught in Liesbeek Lake. *Piscator* 43: 80. A-FISH, CYPRINUS, INTRODUCTION
- ANONYMOUS 1959–1960. Sea-run rainbow trout, lower Eerste River. *Piscator* 47: 93. A-FISH, ESTUARY, MARINE, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, HISTORY, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1960. *Tilapia mossambica* in Seekoevlei, Cape Peninsula. *Piscator* 49: 57. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, HISTORY, OREOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- ANONYMOUS 1961. Trout in South Africa. *Piscator* 51: 30–35. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, HISTORY, SALMO, SALVELINUS
- ANONYMOUS 1961–1962. Trout airlifted to the upper Elandspad. *Piscator* 53: 95–99. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1962–1963. From the Cape Agricultural Journal, July 26, 1894: Acclimation of trout. *Piscator* 56: 109, 110. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, HISTORY, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1966. Tiger trout in Steenbras Reservoir. *Piscator* 66: 32, 33. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, HISTORY, SALMO, SALVELINUS
- ANONYMOUS 1968–1969. Introduction of smallmouth bass: an American report. *Piscator* 74: 121, 122. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, HISTORY, MICROPTERUS
- ANONYMOUS 1973. The rainbow trout: its development in this district. *Barkly East Reporter*, Wednesday, May 2, 1973: Supplement, 2 pp. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1984. Yellowfish available for farm dams. *Farmers Weekly*, January 20, 1984: 94. T-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, BARBUS
- ATKINSON, S.A.M. 1952. Stocking tributaries of the Little Brak River with trout. *Piscator* 24: 114, 115. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- BELL R. 1961–1962. Stocking the Kleinkliphuis River. *Piscator* 53: 124–127. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- BELL R. 1962–1963. Stocking of the Ratels River. *Piscator* 56: 93, 94. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- BICKELL, D.L. 1958. Stocking rivers around Port Elizabeth with trout and bass. *The Eastern Cape Naturalist* 4: 10, 11. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- BICKELL, D.L. 1959. Eastern Province Freshwater Fish Conservancy: transporting fingerlings by oxygen-charged bag method. *The Eastern Cape Naturalist* 6: 5–7. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- BOK, A.H. 1977. *Report on the transport of juvenile mullet (Myxus capensis) from the Kowie River, Eastern Cape, to Zeekoevlei*. Internal report, Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, 2 pp. T-FISH, PAN, INTRODUCTION, MYXUS
- BUSH, S.F. 1933. The establishment and well-being of trout in Natal waters: an ecological problem. *South African Journal of Science* 30: 366–387. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- CAMBRAY, J.A. 1979. Next stop: the Great Fish River system or: how to introduce fish in style. *The Cape Angler* 5: 1. T-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, INTER-BASIN TRANSFER, INVASION, IMPACT, N-FISH, BARBUS, CLARIAS, LABEO
- CAMBRAY, J.A. & JUBB, R.A. 1977. Dispersal of fishes via the Orange-Fish Tunnel, South Africa. *Journal of the Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 3: 33–35. T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, INTER-BASIN TRANSFER, BARBUS, CLARIAS, LABEO
- CAMBRAY, J.A. & JUBB, R.A. 1977. The Orange-Fish tunnel. *Piscator* 99: 4–6. T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, INTER-BASIN TRANSFER, BARBUS, CLARIAS, LABEO
- CIFA 1985. *Introduction of species and conservation of genetic resources*. Report of the Committee for Inland Fisheries of Africa 85/13: 1–18. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, N-BIODIVERSITY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, CONSERVATION
- CLAY, D. 1972. Introduction of exotic fish to Swaziland. *Piscator* 85: 74–77. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- COETZEE, P.W. 1977. The history and distribution of freshwater fish in Albany: largemouth bass. *Albany Freshwater Angling Association Newsletter* 32: 3, 4. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS
- COETZEE, P.W. 1978. The history and distribution of freshwater fish in Albany: smallmouth yellowfish. *Albany Freshwater Angling Association Newsletter* 36: 3, 4. T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, BARBUS
- CRASS, R.S. 1960. Biological notes on the acclimation of trout in Natal. *South African Journal of Science* 56: 147–151. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, ECOLOGY, SALMO
- CRASS, R.S. 1968. Kamloops trout in Natal. *Piscator* 72: 14–18. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, ECOLOGY, SALMO
- CRASS, R.S. 1968. *Trout in the Bushmans River*. Unpublished report of the Natal Parks, Game and Fish Preservation Board, Pietermaritzburg, 27 pp. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, SALMO
- CRASS, R.S. 1969. Trout in the Bushmans River. *Limnological Society of Southern Africa Newsletter* 12: 17–20. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, SALMO
- CRASS, R.S. 1970. Danish rainbow trout in Natal. *Piscator* 79: 92–96. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, SALMO
- CRASS, R.S. 1977. Trout in the Drakensberg. *Journal of the Natal Fly Fisher's Club* 5,1: 11, 12. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, SALMO

- CROESER, P. 1979. What they found when they emptied Grey Dam. *The Eastern Cape Naturalist* 68: 22, 23. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS
- DAY, L.A. 1932. The introduction of Salmonidae into Natal rivers, with special reference to *Salmo irideus*. *South African Journal of Science* 29: 473–479. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- DAY, L.A. 1932. The introduction of trout in Natal. *Salmon and Trout Magazine* 69: 345–352. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- DEATHE, S.H. 1962. *Tilapia mossambica: report on investigational work at De Hoop Vlei, Bredasdorp*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 19: 59–63. A-FISH, T-FISH, PAN, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO
- DE MOOR, I.J. 1988. Alien fish and the aquarium trade. *Ichthos Newsletter* 20: 2, 3. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUARIUM-TRADE, MANAGEMENT, SALMO
- DONNELLY, B.G. 1965. The first record of rainbow trout breeding in the Port Elizabeth area. *Piscator* 64: 91, 92. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, SALMO
- DUNCAN-BROWN, R. 1979. An historical look at fish farming and freshwater trends in South Africa. In *Collected papers from the symposium on fisheries and rural development held at the JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Rhodes University, Grahamstown, 20–21 November 1978*, 13 pp. Environmental and Developmental Agency, Rondebosch. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA
- DU PLESSIS, S.S. 1961. Trout pioneer F C Braun (1875–1959). *Fauna and Flora* 12: 17–23. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- ELLIS, J.D. 1896. Acclimation of trout on Eastern frontier. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 9,15: 394. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- ELLIS, J.D. 1900. Report of the Frontier Acclimation Society. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 17,9: 553. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- FOGARTY, A. 1980. New fish species in eastern Cape waters. *The Eastern Cape Naturalist* 69: 24. T-FISH, INVASION, SPREAD, INTER-BASIN TRANSFER, BARBUS, CLARIAS, LABEO
- GEDDES-PAGE, J.T. 1950. The importation of American eastern brook trout. Paper presented to the second interprovincial inland fisheries conference, Pietermaritzburg, September 1950. *Piscator* 15: 86, 87. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALVELINUS
- GEORGE, T.T. 1976. Introduction and transplantation of cultivable species into Africa. In *Report of the Symposium on Aquaculture in Africa, Accra, Ghana, 30 September–2 October 1975. Reviews and experience papers. CIFA Technical Papers 4 (Supplement 1): 408–*
432. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, SPREAD, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, BARBUS, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, MORONE, PERCA, SALMO, SALVELINUS, SERRANOCHROMIS, TINCA
- GEPHARD, S.R. 1977. Status of trout populations of Lesotho. *Piscator* 100: 71–74. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, SPREAD, SALMO
- GILCHRIST, J.D.F. 1911. *South African Zoology*. Maskew Miller, Cape Town. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, SALMO
- GILCHRIST, J.D.F. 1913. *Introduction of 'millions'*. Province of the Cape of Good Hope Marine Biological Report 1: 67–70. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, POECILIA
- HAMMAN, K.C.D., THORNE, S.C. & SKELTON, P.H. 1984. The discovery of the Cape kurper *Sandelia capensis* (Cuvier in C & V, 1831) in the Olifants River System (western Cape Province). *The Naturalist* 28: 24–26. T-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, SANDELIA
- HARRISON, A.C. 1934. *Black bass in the Cape Province: report of the early history of the acclimation of American largemouth black bass in the Cape Province*. Biological Department of Commerce and Industries, Fisheries and Marine Survey Division, Union of South Africa. Investigational Report 7: 1–92. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1936. *Black bass in the Cape Province: second report on the progress of American largemouth black bass*. Department of Commerce and Industries, Fisheries and Marine Biological Survey Division, Union of South Africa. Investigational Report 9: 1–119. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1937. The importation of American smallmouth bass. *Cape Piscatorial Society, Freshwater Fisheries Circular* 28. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1938. Fish of the rivers of the Langeberge, south-western Cape. *Cape Piscatorial Society, Freshwater Fisheries Circular* 30: 2–5. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1939. The importation of spotted bass. *Cape Piscatorial Society, Freshwater Fisheries Circular* 34. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1948. Brown trout and smallmouth bass in the Steenbras Reservoir. *Piscator* 6: 52–61. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1948. *Report on the rivers of Maclear and East Griqualand, April and May 1948*. Inland Fisheries Department, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 5: 15–29. A-ARTHOPOD, A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, DAPHNIA, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA
- HARRISON, A.C. 1948. Trout in the Liesbeek River. *Piscator* 7: 84–89. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD,

- ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1950. Introduction of exotic fishes to the Cape. Section I: the prelude. *Piscator* 16: 125–128. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1951. Introduction of exotic fishes to the Cape Province. *Paper presented to the first interprovincial inland fisheries conference at Jonkershoek, Stellenbosch, December 1949*. *Piscator* 17: 22–32. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1952. Introduction of exotic fishes to the Cape Province. Section III: black bass and bluegills. *Piscator* 22: 57–64. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1952. Introduction of exotic fishes to the Cape Province. Section III: black bass and bluegills (continued). *Piscator* 23: 92–95. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, LEPOMIS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1953. Trout pioneering in the Eastern Province. No. 7: resuming the Stenning story. *Piscator* 27: 83–88. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1953. Introduction of exotic fishes to the Cape Province. Section III: black bass and bluegills (continued). *Piscator* 25: 12–15. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1953. The acclimatization of smallmouth bass. *Piscator* 27: 89–96. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1953. Trout pioneering in the Eastern Province. No. 8: Atlantic salmon and rainbow trout. *Piscator* 28: 111–117. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1954. The story of Paarde Vlei. Part II: Introduction of non-indigenous fish. *Piscator* 29: 29–32. A-FISH, PAN, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS, PERCA, TINCA
- HARRISON, A.C. 1954. Spotted bass in the Buffalo River. *Piscator* 30: 39, 40. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1954. Trout pioneering in the Eastern Province. No. 9: drought, sea trout and farewell to Stenning. *Piscator* 30: 47–53. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1954. The story of Paarde Vlei. Part III: the change in water conditions. *Piscator* 30: 56–64. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1955. Trout pioneering in the Eastern Province. No. 10: F.G. Chaplin takes over. *Piscator* 35: 40–47. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1956. *Carp from the nature conservation angle*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 13: 75–80. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-FISH, HABITAT-DEGRADATION, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CONSERVATION, CYPRINUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1958. Sea-run trout of the Eerste River. *Piscator* 43: 44–53. A-FISH, MARINE, ESTUARY, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1958–1959. Sea-run rainbow trout of the Eerste River. Part II: further captures in salt water. *Piscator* 44: 83, 84. A-FISH, MARINE, ESTUARY, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1959. Orange River yellowfish introduced into the Gouritz River system. *Piscator* 45: 13–15. T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, ANGLING, BARBUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1959–1960. Editorial: rainbow trout from the sea. *Piscator* 47: 90. A-FISH, MARINE, ESTUARY, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1959–1960. Report on two rainbow trout caught in the sea. *Piscator* 47: 90–93. A-FISH, MARINE, ESTUARY, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1962–1963. Notes on the introduction of smallmouth bass to the Berg River. *Piscator* 56: 81–83. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1962–1963. Silvermine (Muizenberg) Reservoir: an account of an experiment with trout in acid water. *Piscator* 56: 95–105. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, GALAXIAS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1963. The Olifants/Doorn River system and its fishes. *Piscator* 57: 25–39. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, TILAPIA
- HARRISON, A.C. 1963–1964. Attempted introduction of pike. *Piscator* 59: 108. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ESOX
- HARRISON, A.C. 1964. Steenbras Reservoir: trout plantings and recoveries. *Piscator* 60: 29–46. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, SALVELINUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1965. Editorial: Frederick George Chaplin. *Piscator* 64: 50–54. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, GAMBUSIA, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA
- HARRISON, A.C. 1965–1966. Atlantic salmon importation, South African and Australian. *Piscator* 65: 129–133. A-FISH, MARINE, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, AQUACULTURE, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1966. Trout in the peat-stained waters of the southern Cape. *Piscator* 66: 22, 23. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, LEPOMIS, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1966. Early references to carp in the Cape Colony. *Piscator* 66: 23. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, CYPRINUS, PERCA, TINCA



- HARRISON, A.C. 1966. The introduction of *Tilapia sparrmanii* to the Jonkershoek hatchery. *Piscator* 66: 30. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, TILAPIA
- HARRISON, A.C. 1966–1967. Rainbow trout in Wemmershoek Reservoir. *Piscator* 68: 126–134. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1967–1968. Thirty years of smallmouth bass. *Piscator* 71: 125–139. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1970–1971. Steenbras Reservoir: trout plantings and recoveries. *Piscator* 80: 148, 149. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, SALMO, SALVELINUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1971. Brown trout taken from the upper Olifants River, Ceres Division, in 1916. *Piscator* 81: 42–44. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1971. Nineteenth century fish work in the Cape of Good Hope. *Newsletter of the Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 16: 15–19. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1972. Trout in the Wemmer River. *Piscator* 84: 14–17. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1972–1973. Early records of trout stocking in the vleis of the Cape Flats. *Piscator* 86: 114. A-FISH, PAN, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1975. The early transactions of the Cape Piscatorial Society. Part I. *Piscator* 94: 69–75. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1976. The early transactions of the Cape Piscatorial Society. Part II. *Piscator* 96: 15–22. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1976. The early transactions of the Cape Piscatorial Society. Part III. *Piscator* 97: 67–72. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1976–1977. The early transactions of the Cape Piscatorial Society. Part IV. *Piscator* 98: 118–123. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1977. The early transactions of the Cape Piscatorial Society. Part V. *Piscator* 99: 14–18. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1977. The early transactions of the Cape Piscatorial Society. Part VI. *Piscator* 100: 66–68. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1977–1978. The early transactions of the Cape Piscatorial Society. Part VII. *Piscator* 101: 116–121. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1978. Sea-run rainbow trout of the Eerste River. *Piscator* 103: 68–76. A-FISH, MARINE, ESTUARY, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1982. The first bluegills. *Piscator* 109: 8–10. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, LEPOMIS
- HARRISON, A.C. & HEY, D. 1947. Migration of trout in the rivers of False Bay. *Piscator* 2. A-FISH, MARINE, ESTUARY, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, SALMO
- HEWITSON, J.S. 1966. The problem of anadromy in rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*) as it applies to introductions to areas outside its natural range. *Piscator* 67: 63–65. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, SALMO
- HEWITT IVY, R. 1968. Breeding and stocking of fish in Sabasa Territory. *African Wildlife* 9,1: 68–70. A-FISH, T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, UTILISATION, ANGLING, ALESTES, BARBUS, LABEO, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, PERCA, SALMO, TILAPIA
- HEY, D. 1941. The establishment and maintenance of freshwater fish in South Africa. *Journal of the South African Forestry Association* 6: 3–25. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, GAMBUSIA, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, TINCA
- HEY, D. 1948. Can salmon be established in the Cape Province? *Piscator* 6: 42–45. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, SALMO
- JACKSON, P.B.N. 1966. The establishment of fisheries in man-made lakes in the tropics. In R. Lowe-McConnell (ed.), *Man-made lakes. Proceedings of a symposium held at the Royal Geographical Society, London, 30 September and 1 October 1965*, pp. 53–73. Institute of Biology and Academic Press, London. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO
- JACKSON, P.B.N. 1979. Heritage of history: our freshwater fishes. *African Wildlife* 33,3: 36–39. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO
- JACKSON, P.B.N. 1982. Fish in the Buffalo River catchment system. In R.C. Hart (ed.), *Water quality in the Buffalo River catchment: a synthesis*, pp. 119–132. Rhodes University, Grahamstown. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, TILAPIA
- JOUBERT, F. 1952. Die Atlantiese salm kan in Suid-Afrikaanse waters gekweek word. *The South African Angler* 6,10: 24. A-FISH, MARINE, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, SALMO
- JUBB, R.A. 1952. A note on the distribution of *Hydrocyon vittatus*, Castelnau, the well-known tigerfish of the Zambezi and Limpopo Rivers. *South African Journal of Science* 49,2: 50, 51. T-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HYDROCYNUS
- JUBB, R.A. 1971. *Oreodaimon quathlambae* (Labeo quathlanibae Barnard) in the Tsoelikane River, south-east Lesotho. *Piscator* 81: 39–42. A-FISH,



- RIVER, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, INTRODUCTION, N-FISH, SALMO
- JUBB, R.A. 1976. Unintentional introductions of fishes via hydro-electric power stations and centrifugal pumps. *Journal of the Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 2,1: 29, 30. T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HYDROCYNUS, OREOCHROMIS
- JUBB, R.A. 1978. Sharp-tooth catfish, *Clarias gariepinus*, in the Great Fish River, Eastern Cape. *Piscator* 102: 24–27. T-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, INTER-BASIN TRANSFER, CLARIAS
- JUBB, R.A. 1978. The distribution of the common carp, *Cyprinus carpio*, in southern Africa. *Piscator* 103: 63–65. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, CYPRINUS
- KLEYNHANS, C.J. 1979. The distribution and status of *Kneria auriculata* (Pellegrin) (Pisces; Kneriidae) in the Transvaal. *Journal of the Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 5: 27–29. T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, KNERIA
- LATOUR, E. 1893. Trout in the Cape. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 6,17: 329, 330. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- LAURENSEN, L.J.B. 1984. *Colonisation theory and invasive biota: the Great Fish River, a case history*. M.Sc. thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown, 118 pp. A-FISH, T-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, INTER-BASIN TRANSFER, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, AUSTRORGLANIS, BARBUS, CLARIAS, CYPRINUS, LABEO, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, TILAPIA
- LAURENSEN, L.J.B. & HOCUTT, C.H. 1984. The introduction of the rock catfish, *Gephyroglanis sclateri*, into the Great Fish River via the Orange-Fish Tunnel, South Africa. *The Naturalist* 28,1: 12–15. T-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, INTER-BASIN TRANSFER, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, AUSTRORGLANIS
- LAURENSEN, L.J.B. & HOCUTT, C.H. 1986. Colonization theory and invasive biota: the Great Fish River, a case history. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment* 6: 71–90. A-FISH, T-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, INTER-BASIN TRANSFER, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, CONCEPT, AUSTRORGLANIS, BARBUS, CLARIAS, CYPRINUS, LABEO, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, TILAPIA
- LE ROUX, P.J. 1955. Preliminary report on trout in Elands River. *Proceedings of the third inter-provincial inland fisheries conference, Lydenburg*, pp. 69–81. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- LE ROUX, P.J. 1968. Artificial stocking of dams in trout management. *Fauna and Flora* 19: 25–33. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, SALMO
- LIEBENBERG, D.P. 1967–1968. Trout transfer in Lesotho Highlands. *Piscator* 71: 106–112. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, SALMO
- LOMBARD, G.L. 1961. The first importation and production of Aischgrund carp in South Africa. *Fauna and Flora* 12: 79–85. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, CYPRINUS
- LOUW, B.J. 1962. A new importation of American eastern brook trout. *Piscator* 54: 11–13. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, SALMO, SALVELINUS
- LOUW, B.J. 1969–1970. Orange River yellowfish in Gouritz River system. *Piscator* 77: 138–140. T-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, BARBUS
- LOUW, J.J.R. 1979. The Wemmershoek Reservoir. *The Cape Angler* 6: 5, 6. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- MAAR, A. 1960. The introduction of carp in Africa south of the Sahara. In *The Third Symposium on Hydrobiology and Inland Fisheries Problems of Major Lakes, 18–24 August 1960, Lusaka, Zambia*. Scientific Council for Africa South of the Sahara, Publication 63: 204–210. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, CYPRINUS
- MANNING, B. 1962–1963. Stocking of the Upper Dwars River, Banhoek. *Piscator* 56: 92, 93. A-FISH, RIVER, CANAL, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- MOREAU, J. 1979. Introductions d'espèces étrangères dans les eaux continentales Africaines. *Travaux de la société internationale de Limnologie, Nairobi, Décembre 1979*. A-FISH, T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, BARBUS, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, MORONE, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, SERRANOCHROMIS
- PIENAAR, U. DE V. 1978. Rare fish species flourishes in Stolznnek Dam. *Custos* 7,11: 46, 47. T-FISH, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, PAN, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, SPREAD, ASTATOTILAPIA
- PIENAAR, U. DE V. 1978. Undesirable immigrants in the Kruger National Park. *Custos* 7,10: 6, 7, 14, 15. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, TINCA
- PIKE, T. 1970. Rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*) reared successfully at 1600 feet above sea level in Zululand. *Piscator* 79: 77–81. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, SALMO
- PIKE, T. 1981. *The Taiwan red tilapia and their introduction to Natal*. Internal report of the Natal Parks, Game and Fish Preservation Board, Pietermaritzburg. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, OREOCHROMIS
- PIKE, T. & TEDDER, A.J. 1973. Rediscovery of *Oreodaimon quathlambae* (Barnard). *Lammergeyer* 19: 9–15. A-FISH, T-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, CONSERVATION, BARBUS, LABEO, SALMO
- PIKE, T. & WRIGHT, C.W. 1972. Brown and rainbow trout in Highmoor Dam. *Newsletter of the Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 19: 25, 26. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, SALMO, INTRODUCTION
- RAVERET-WATTEL, C. 1903. Sur l'introduction de la truite d'Europe dans la Colonie du Cap. *Bulletin de la Société d'Acclimatation du Paris* 50: 343–345. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- RAVERET-WATTEL, C. 1904. Sur l'introduction de la truite d'Europe dans le sud de l'Afrique. *Bulletin de la Société d'Acclimatation du Paris* 51: 289–291. A-

- FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- REID, A.H. 1921. *Trout and angling*. Speciality Press, Cape Town. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- ROBBINS, W.H. & MACCRIMMON, H.R. 1974. *The black bass in America and overseas*. Biomanagement and Research Enterprises, Sault Ste Marie. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, MICROPTERUS
- ROSS, C. 1903. Trout acclimation in Griqualand East. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 22,3: 300, 301. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- SKELTON, P.H. 1972. Smallmouth yellowfish (*Barbus holubi*) in Settlers Dam, Grahamstown. *Piscator* 84: 27–30. T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, BARBUS
- SKELTON, P.H. & SKEAD, J. 1984. Early reports and paintings of freshwater fishes in the Cape Province. *Africana Notes and Records* 26,1: 29–34. A-FISH, FRESHWATER INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS
- SMITH, J.L.B. 1951. Are there tigerfish at St Lucia? *South African Angler* 5,10: 6. T-FISH, ESTUARY, INTRODUCTION, HYDROCYNUS
- VAN SCHOOR, D.J. 1969. *The introduction of Serranochromis robustus jallae (Boulenger) to the Eerste River Basin, Western Cape Province*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Investigational Report 12. A-FISH, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, SERRANOCHROMIS
- WELCOMME, R.L. 1981. Register of international transfers of inland fish species. *FAO Fisheries Technical Paper* 213: 1–120. FAO Fisheries Department, Rome. A-FISH, FRESHWATER, INTRODUCTION, CARASSIUS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, GAMBUSIA, HYPOPHthalmichthys, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, MORONE, OREOCHROMIS, PERCA, SALMO, SALVELINUS, SERRANOCHROMIS, TINCA, XIPHOPHORUS
- WELCOMME, R.L. 1984. International transfers of inland fish species. In W.R. Courtenay & J.R. Stauffer (eds), *Distribution, biology and management of exotic fishes*, pp. 22–40. Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore. A-FISH, FRESHWATER, INTRODUCTION
- WELCOMME, R.L. 1988. International introductions of inland aquatic species. *FAO Fisheries Technical Paper* 294. FAO Fisheries Department, Rome. A-FISH, FRESHWATER, INTRODUCTION
- ANONYMOUS 1952. Smallmouth bass in the Umtata River. *Piscator* 24: 115. A-FISH, RIVER, INVASION, SPREAD, MICROPTERUS
- ANONYMOUS 1973. Exotic fish in Swaziland. *FAO Aquaculture Bulletin* 6,1: 19. A-FISH, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, INVASION
- ANONYMOUS 1974. 'n Vreemde fonds. *Fauna and Flora* 25: 17. A-FISH, SPREAD, XIPHOPHORUS
- ANONYMOUS 1977. Grass carp in South Africa. *FAO Aquaculture Bulletin* 8,3/4: 20. A-FISH, CTENOPHARYNGODON, INVASION
- ANONYMOUS 1975–1976. Large tench found dead at Paardevlei, Somerset West. *Piscator* 95: 141. A-FISH, SPREAD, TINCA
- BRANDT, F. DE W. 1982. Karp in kanale. *S A Waterbulletin* August 1982: 6–8. A-FISH, CANAL, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, CYPRINUS
- DU PLESSIS, S.S. 1946. *Preliminary survey of the Olifants River*. Inland Fisheries Department, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 2: 19. A-FISH, RIVER, INVASION, SPREAD, MICROPTERUS
- GROENEWALD, A.A. VAN J. & LE ROUX, P.J. 1955. The study of a stunted trout population in Potspruit. *Proceedings of the third interprovincial inland fisheries technical conference, Lydenburg*, pp. 81–85. A-FISH, RIVER, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, PHYSIOLOGY, SALMO
- HARRISON, A.C. 1964–1965. *Tilapia* in Seekoevlei. *Piscator* 62: 129. A-FISH, PAN, INVASION, SPREAD, OREOCHROMIS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1968. Large tench found dead at Paardevlei, Somerset West. *Piscator* 73: 70. A-FISH, PAN, SPREAD, TINCA
- HECHT, T. & SCHOLTZ, A.T.J. 1983. *The fishes of the Limpopo and Olifants River tributaries (Limpopo drainage basin, South Africa). Part IV: annotated checklist of the fishes of the Steelpoort tributary of the Olifants River*. University of the North, Sovenga, Report Series A 28: 1–11. A-FISH, RIVER, SPREAD, MICROPTERUS
- JUBB, R.A. 1966–1967. Notes on the popular angling yellowfishes and distribution outside their native range. *Piscator* 68: 120–125. T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, BARBUS
- JUBB, R.A. 1968. North End Lake: Port Elizabeth. *Piscator* 73: 53–58. T-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, OREOCHROMIS
- JUBB, R.A. 1972. The fishes of the Orange River. *Civil Engineer in South Africa* 14,2: 89–93. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- JUBB, R.A. 1981. Swordtails in a Transvaal River: some distribution problems. *Journal of the American Killifish Association* 14,2: 39–42. A-FISH, RIVER, INVASION, SPREAD, GAMBUSIA, XIPHOPHORUS
- JUBB, R.A. & FARQUHARSON, F.L. 1965. The freshwater fishes of the Orange River drainage basin. *South African Journal of Science* 61,3: 118–125. A-FISH, SPREAD, CYPRINUS, SALMO
- MACCRIMMON, H.R. 1971. World distribution of rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*). *Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada* 28,5: 663–704. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, SALMO
- MACCRIMMON, H.R. 1972. World distribution of rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*): further observations. *Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada* 29,12: 1788–1791. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, SALMO
- MACCRIMMON, H.R. & CAMPBELL, J.S. 1969. World distribution of brook trout, *Salvelinus fontinalis*.

- Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada* 26,7: 1699–1725. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, SALVELINUS
- MACCRIMMON, H.R., GOTS, B.L. & CAMPBELL, J.S. 1971. World distribution of brook trout, *Salvelinus fontinalis*: further observations. *Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada* 28,3: 452–456. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, SALVELINUS
- MACCRIMMON, H.R. & MARSHALL, T.L. 1968. World distribution of brown trout, *Salmo trutta*. *Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada* 25,12: 2527–2546. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, SALMO
- MARSHALL, R.D. 1972. A preliminary fish survey of the Caledon River system. *The Civil Engineer in South Africa* 14,2: 94, 95. A-FISH, RIVER, INVASION, SPREAD, CYPRINUS
- PLUMSTEAD, E.E. 1984. *The occurrence and distribution of fish in selected Transkei estuaries*. Final report to the Department of Cooperation and Development, University of Transkei, Umtata, 161 pp. A-FISH, ESTUARY, INVASION, SPREAD, CYPRINUS
- 3.3.6 A-Fish—Management (1997)
- ALLANSON, B.R. & JACKSON, P.B.N. (eds) 1983. *Limnology and fisheries potential of Lake le Roux*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 77: 1–182. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, UTILISATION, CYPRINUS, MUGIL, SALMO
- ANONYMOUS 1948. Crops from inland waters. *Veld Trust News*, January 1948: 6–9. A-FISH, UTILISATION, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS
- ANONYMOUS 1957. The tilapias and their culture: a second review and bibliography. *FAO Fisheries Bulletin* 10,1: 1–24. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, OREOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- ANONYMOUS 1975. *Trout farming*, 28 pp. Transvaal Nature Conservation Division, Pretoria. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, SALMO, SALVELINUS
- ANONYMOUS 1981. Florida bass breed in Natal. *Tight Lines* 22,2: 10. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS
- ARDEN, R.C. 1979. Fisheries development in Swaziland. *Fish Farmer* 27: 3–5. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS, OREOCHROMIS, SERRANOCHROMIS
- BABICH, T.B. & MULDER, P. 1977. *Angling fishes of the Transvaal*, 31 pp. Everton, Johannesburg. A-FISH, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- BALARIN, J.D. & HATTON, J.P. 1979. *Tilapia: a guide to their biology and culture in Africa*. University of Stirling, Stirling. A-FISH, T-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, FISH-POND, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, OREOCHROMIS, SERRANOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- BENNION, B. 1920. *The trout are rising in England and South Africa*. Lane, London. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- BENNION, B. 1923. *The angler in South Africa*. Hortors, Johannesburg. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA
- BILLETT, R. 1984. Keep carp. *Farmers Weekly*, February 10, 1984: 48, 49, 51. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, AQUACULTURE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS
- BLOMMAERT, K.L.J. 1948. *The plant T.V. as a freshwater fish poison*. Inland Fisheries Department, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 5: 12–14. A-FISH, MANAGEMENT, CHEMICAL, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS
- BOK, A.H. 1980. Production and growth of carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) at Amalinda Fish Station, Eastern Cape. *South African Journal of Wildlife Research* 10: 140–149. A-FISH, GROWTH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS
- BOK, A.H. 1983. *The demography, breeding biology and management of two mullet species (Pisces: Mugilidae) in the Eastern Cape, South Africa*. Ph.D. thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown. T-FISH, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, MUGIL, MYXUS
- BOK, A.H. 1984. Extensive culture of two mullet species in freshwater impoundments in the Eastern Cape. *South African Journal of Zoology* 19: 31–36. T-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, MUGIL, MYXUS
- BOK, A.H. & JONGBLOED, H. 1984. Growth and production of sharptooth catfish, *Clarias gariepinus* (Pisces: Clariidae), in organically fertilized ponds in the Cape Province, South Africa. *Aquaculture* 36: 141–155. A-FISH, T-FISH, ECOLOGY, GROWTH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CLARIAS, CYPRINUS
- BOURQUIN, O. 1985. Conservation aspects related to the development of aquaculture in South Africa. In T. Hecht, M.N. Bruton & O. Safriel (eds), *Aquaculture in South Africa*, pp. 136–142. CSIR Ecosystems Programmes Occasional Report No. 1. CSIR, Pretoria. A-FISH, T-FISH-PATHOGEN, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, PARASITISM, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CONSERVATION, BOTHRIOCEPHALUS, MICROPTERUS, MYXOSOMA, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, TILAPIA
- BOWKER, F.A. 1922. *A trout fisher in South Africa*. Flowers, Cape Town. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- BOWMAKER, A.P., JACKSON, P.B.N. & JUBB, R.A. 1978. Freshwater fishes. In M.J.A. Werger & A.C. van Bruggen (eds), *Biogeography and ecology of southern Africa*, pp. 1207–1230. Junk, The Hague. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, GAMBUSIA, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA, SALMO, SALVELINUS
- BRANDT, F. DE W., EMS, K.H. & SCHOONBEE, H.J. 1979. Investigations into the effects of volume of water flow, quality of feeding and type of feeding on the production of the Aischgrund common carp, *Cyprinus carpio* in circular concrete ponds under high stocking density rates. *Water SA* 5,4: 171–177. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS
- BRANDT, F. DE W., VAN AS, J.G., SCHOONBEE, H.J. & HAMILTON-ATWELL, V.L. 1981. The occurrence and treatment of Bothriocephalosis in the common carp, *Cyprinus carpio* in fish ponds with notes on

- its presence in the largemouth yellowfish, *Barbus kimberleyensis* from the Vaal Dam, Transvaal. *Water SA* 7: 35–42. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PARASITISM, AQUACULTURE, BOTHRIOCEPHALUS, CYPRINUS
- BRUTON, M.N. & SAFRIEL, O. 1965. The selection and improvement of candidate species for aquaculture in South Africa. In T. Hecht, M.N. Bruton & O. Safriel (eds), *Aquaculture in South Africa*. CSIR Ecosystems Programmes Occasional Report 1: 8–16. CSIR, Pretoria. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, ARISTICHTHYS, CARASSIUS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHthalmichthys, ICTALURUS, MYLOPHARYNGODON, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, SCOPHTHALMUS, SOLEA, TILAPIA
- CAMBRAY, J.A. 2002. Conservation needs of *Sandelia bainesii*, an endangered African anabantid. In M.J. Collares-Pereira, M.M. Coelho & I. Cowx (eds), *Conservation of freshwater fishes: options for the future*, pp. 90–97. Blackwell Science, Oxford. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, CONSERVATION, N-FISH
- CAMBRAY, J.A. & DE MOOR, F.C. 1988. The Albany Museum as a source of data on long-term environmental and resource changes. In I.A.W. Macdonald & R.J.M. Crawford (eds), *Long-term data series relating to southern Africa's renewable natural resources*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 157: 155–158. CSIR, Pretoria. A-FISH, T-FISH, DATA, MANAGEMENT
- CAMBRAY, J.A. & PISTER, E.P. 2002. The role of scientists in creating public awareness for the conservation of fish species: African and American case studies. In M.J. Collares-Pereira, M.M. Coelho & I. Cowx (eds), *Conservation of Freshwater Fishes: Options for the Future*, pp. 414–423. Blackwell Science, Oxford. A-FISH, EDUCATION, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, MANAGEMENT, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, CONSERVATION, ONCORHYNCHUS, SALMO
- CAPE PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION 1944–1951. *Inland Fisheries Department*. Reports Nos 1–8. A-FISH, T-FROG, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, ESOX, GAMBUSIA, LEPOMIS, LEUCISCUS, MICROPTERUS, MUGIL, OREOCHROMIS, PERCA, POECILIA, RUTILUS, SALMO, SALVELINUS, SCARDINIUS, TILAPIA, TINCA, XENOPUS
- CAPE PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION 1952–1976. *Department of Nature Conservation*. Reports Nos 9–32. A-FISH, T-FROG, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, BARBUS, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, GAMBUSIA, IDUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, MORONE, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, SALVELINUS, SERRANOCHROMIS, TILAPIA, TINCA, XENOPUS
- CAPE PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION 1976–1983. *Report of the Director of Nature and Environmental Conservation*. Report Nos 33–39. A-FISH, A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, PARASITISM, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS, GAMBUSIA, MICROPTERUS, MUGIL, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, TILAPIA, ANAS
- COCK, M., DAY, R., HERREN, H., HILL, M.P., JULIEN, M.H., NEUENSCHWANDER, P. & OGWANG, J. 2000. Harvesters get that sinking feeling. *Biocontrol News and Information* 21,1: 1N–8N. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION
- COETZEE, P.W. 1979. The smallmouth bass. *Albany Freshwater Angling Association Newsletter* 39: 3, 4. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MICROPTERUS
- CRASS, R.S. 1969. Dam management for trout fishing. *Limnological Society of Southern Africa Newsletter* 12: 25–32. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, CTENOPHARYNGODON, SALMO
- DE MOOR, I.J. 1989. A case study of two invasive alien fish species in southern Africa. In I.J. de Moor & M.N. Bruton (eds), *The management of invasive aquatic animals in southern Africa. Proceedings of a Symposium and Workshop organised by the Foundation for Research Development in collaboration with the JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown 12–13 September 1988*. CSIR Ecosystems Programmes Occasional Report 44: 87, 88 (abstract only). A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT
- DE MOOR, I.J. 1997. Case studies of the invasion by four alien fish species (*Cyprinus carpio*, *Micropterus salmoides*, *Oreochromis macrochir* and *Oreochromis mossambicus*) of freshwater ecosystems in southern African. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa* 51: 233–255. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, EVALUATION, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS
- DU PLESSIS, S.S. & COMBRINCK, P.A. 1947. *The eradication of fish from open waters by means of piscicidal plants*. Inland Fisheries Department, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 4: 13, 14. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, MANAGEMENT, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS
- DU PLESSIS, S.S. & LE ROUX, P.J. 1965. Sport fisheries in river development with reference to the Orange River scheme. *South African Journal of Science* 61,3: 137–146. A-FISH, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS
- FAIRBRIDGE, C.A. 1859. Artificial propagation of fish. *Cape Argus*, 15 September 1859. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, CYPRINUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA, MANAGEMENT
- FERREIRA, J.F. & SCHOONBEE, H.J. 1983. Use of heated sewage effluent from a power station for the culture of *Oreochromis mossambicus* and *Hypophthalmichthys molitrix*. In L. Fishelson & Z. Yaron (eds), *Proceedings of the International Symposium on Tilapia in Aquaculture*. Tel Aviv University, Tel Aviv. A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, AQUACULTURE, CLARIAS, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHthalmichthys, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- FIELDEN, H.W. 1883. Salmon and trout culture in Natal. *Zoologist Series* 3,17: 57–60. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, SALMO, MANAGEMENT

- FROST W.E. & BROWN, M.E. 1967. *The trout*. Collins, London. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- GABIE, V. 1965. Problems associated with the distribution of freshwater fishes in southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 61,11: 383–391. T-FISH, BARBUS
- GAIGHER, I.G. 1974. Eksperimentele ontginning van vis met behulp van spannette in 'n laeveltse opgaardam in Lebowa. *Fort Hare Papers* 6,2: 133–147. A-FISH, T-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, CYPRINUS, LABEO, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- GAIGHER, I.G. 1983. Cage culture of Mozambique tilapia, *Oreochromis mossambicus*, with artificial feeding in waste water in South Africa. In L. Fishelson & Z. Yaron (eds), *Proceedings of the International Symposium on Tilapia in Aquaculture, Tel Aviv University, Tel Aviv*. A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, OREOCHROMIS
- GAIGHER, I.G. 1985. Recent developments in tilapia culture in South Africa. In T. Hecht, M.N. Bruton & O. Safriel (eds), *Aquaculture in South Africa*, pp. 55–59. CSIR Ecosystem Programmes Report No. 1. CSIR, Pretoria. A-FISH, T-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, OREOCHROMIS, SAROTHERODON, TILAPIA
- GAIGHER, I.G. & KRAUSE, J.B. 1983. Growth rates of Mozambique tilapia (*Oreochromis mossambicus*) and silver carp (*Hypophthalmichthys molitrix*) without artificial feeding in floating cages in plankton-rich waste water. *Aquaculture* 31: 361–367. A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, HYPOPHTHALMICHTHYS, OREOCHROMIS
- GROENEWALD, A.A. VAN J. 1961. *A progress report on the culture of Barbus holubi, the Vaal River yellowfish at the Provincial Fisheries Institute, Lydenburg*. Provincial Fisheries Institute research report. T-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, BARBUS
- HAMMAN, K.C.D. & GAIGHER, C.M. 1979. *Freshwater and estuarine fish of the Cape Province*. Unpublished report to the Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, 15 pp. A-FISH, ESTUARY, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, IMPACT, N-FISH, HABITAT-DEGRADATION, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA
- HARRISON, A.C. 1939. *The Jonkershoek Hatchery, Stellenbosch*. Report of the Inland Fisheries Advisory Officer for the year 1938, 18 pp. Province of the Cape of Good Hope. A-ARTHROPOD, A-FISH, T-FROG, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, DAPHNIA, GAMBUSIA, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA, XENOPUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1940. *The Jonkershoek Hatchery, Stellenbosch*. Report of the Inland Fisheries Advisory Officer for the year 1939, pp. 7–15. Province of the Cape of Good Hope. A-ARTHROPOD, A-FISH, T-FROG, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, ASTACUS, DAPHNIA, GAMBUSIA, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA, XENOPUS
- HARRISON, A.C. 1941. *The Jonkershoek Trout Hatchery, Stellenbosch*. Report of the Inland Fisheries Advisory Officer for the year 1940. Province of the Cape of Good Hope. A-ARTHROPOD, A-FISH, T-FISH, T-FROG, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CARASSIUS, DAPHNIA, GAMBUSIA, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, PERCA, PSEUDOCRENILABRUS, SALMO, TINCA, XENOPUS
- HARRISON, A.C. & LEWIS, D.C. 1968–1969. Twenty-one years of trout fishing in Liesbeek. *Piscator* 74: 128–144. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- HECHT, T. 1981. Rearing of sharptooth catfish larvae (*Clarias gariepinus* Burchell, 1822 Clariidae) under controlled conditions. *Aquaculture* 24: 301–308. A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CLARIAS
- HECHT, T. 1985. Recent developments in aquaculture in South Africa: the sharptooth catfish, *Clarias gariepinus*. In T. Hecht, M.N. Bruton & O. Safriel, (eds), *Aquaculture in South Africa*. CSIR Ecosystems Programmes Occasional Report 1: 33–46. CSIR, Pretoria. A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CLARIAS
- HECHT, T., BRUTON, M.N. & SAFRIEL, O. (eds) 1985. *Aquaculture in South Africa*. CSIR Ecosystems Programmes Occasional Report 1: 1–156. CSIR, Pretoria. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, FISH-POND, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, ARISTICHTHYS, CARASSIUS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, EUTROPIUS, HYPOPHTHALMICHTHYS, ICTALURUS, MICROPTERUS, MUGIL, MYLOPHARYNGODON, MYXUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, SCOPHTHALMUS, SOLEA, TILAPIA
- HECHT, T. & DE MOOR, I.J. 1997. *The biology and culture of the African catfish, Clarias gariepinus*. <http://www.hippo.ru.ac.za/courses/T-FISH>, ECOLOGY, FISH-POND, ABUNDANCE, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CLARIAS
- HECHT, T. & DE MOOR, I.J. 1998. *Small scale aquaculture in sub-Saharan Africa*. <http://www.hippo.ru.ac.za/~ankj/ssa/main.htm> A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE
- HECHT, T., SAAYMAN, J.E. & POLLING, L. 1982. Further observations on the induced spawning of the sharptooth catfish *Clarias gariepinus* (Clariidae Pisces). *Water SA* 8,2: 101–107. T-FISH, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CLARIAS
- HEY, D. 1948. The farm dam: saves soil and game, yields fish. *African Wildlife* 2,2: 70–74. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, GAMBUSIA, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA
- HEY, D. 1952. *Trout in the Cape Province*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 9: 41–44. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO



- HEY, D. 1953. *Programme of fish for food*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 10: 51–60. A-FISH, T-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, FISH-POND, INTRODUCTION, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, MUGIL, OREOCHROMIS, PERCA, SALMO, SERRANOCHROMIS, TILAPIA, TINCA
- HEY, D. 1954. Trout culture in the Cape Province. *Scientific Council for Africa South of the Sahara* 6: 97, 98. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, SALMO
- HEY, D. 1971. The culture of freshwater fish for food. In *Papers read at an International Symposium on Proteins and Food Supply in the Republic of South Africa, Bloemfontein, 8–11 April 1968*, pp. 145–150. Balkema, Cape Town. A-FISH, T-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, FISH-POND, INTRODUCTION, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, TILAPIA
- HEY, D. 1971. *Practical freshwater fish culture*. Fourth (revised) edn. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Cape Town. A-FISH, T-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, FISH-POND, INTRODUCTION, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, BARBUS, CYPRINUS, GAMBUSIA, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, MUGIL, OREOCHROMIS, PERCA, SALMO, TILAPIA, TINCA
- HEY, D. 1977. The history and status of nature conservation in South Africa. In A.C. Brown (ed.), *A history of scientific endeavour in South Africa*, pp. 132–163. Royal Society of South Africa, Cape Town. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, CONSERVATION, CYPRINUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA
- HEY, S.A. 1925. *Trout fishing in South Africa*. South African Railroad and Harbours, Johannesburg. A-FISH, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- HEY, S.A. 1925–1926. *Fisheries survey 1925–6: inland waters*. Department of Mines and Industries, Report 1. A-FISH, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA
- HEY, S.A. 1925–1926. *Fisheries survey 1925–6: inland waters*. Department of Mines and Industries, Report 2. A-FISH, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA
- HEY, S.A. 1926–1927. *Fisheries survey 1926–7: inland waters*. Department of Mines and Industries, Report 3. A-FISH, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA
- HEY, S.A. 1957. *The rapture of the river*. Balkema, Cape Town. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- HUTCHINS, D.E. 1904. The domestic carp. *Agriculture Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 1904: 87, 88. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS
- HYDE, R.C. 1956. *Experimental fish farming project: school of agriculture, Tsolo, Transkeian territories*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 14: 99–101. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, FISH-POND, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- IMPSON, N.D., BILLS, I.R. & CAMBRAY, J.A. 2002. A conservation plan for the unique and highly threatened freshwater fishes of the Cape Floral Kingdom. In M.J. Collares-Pereira, M.M. Coelho & I. Cowx (eds), *Conservation of freshwater fishes: options for the future*, pp. 432–440. Blackwell Science, Oxford. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, CONSERVATION
- JACKSON, P.B.N. 1973. *Report on the potential of South African inland waters for commercial fisheries*. Unpublished report to the Water Research Commission, Pretoria. A-FISH, T-FISH, RIVER, CANAL, IMPOUNDMENT, FISH-POND, PAN, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, BARBUS, CLARIAS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, GAMBUSIA, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, PERCA, SALMO, TILAPIA, TINCA
- JACKSON, P.B.N. 1976. Water resources and freshwater fisheries in southern Africa. In G. Baker (ed.), *Resources of southern Africa: today and tomorrow*, pp. 196–207. The Associated Scientific and Technical Societies of South Africa, Johannesburg. A-FISH, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA
- JACKSON, P.B.N. 1980. Attitudes and strategies in wastewater aquaculture. In *Proceedings of the Symposium on Aquaculture in Wastewater, 24–26 November 1980*, 10 pp. National Institute for Water Research, CSIR, Pretoria. A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHTHALMICHTHYS
- JACKSON, P.B.N. 1980. Carp is here to stay: use it and enjoy it. *Albany Freshwater Angling Association Newsletter* 42: 3. A-FISH, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS
- JACKSON, P.B.N. 1980. Waste-water aquaculture. *Farmers Weekly* February 25, 1980: 54–57. A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, ARISTICHTHYS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHTHALMICHTHYS
- JACKSON, P.B.N. 1985. Aquaculture in Africa. In C. Leveque, M.N. Bruton & G. Ssentongo (eds), *The biology and ecology of African freshwater fishes*, 30 pp. A-FISH, T-FISH, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, ARISTICHTHYS, CARASSIUS, CLARIAS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHTHALMICHTHYS, MICROPTERUS, MUGIL, MYXUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, SERRANOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- JOUBERT, F. 1970. *Stywe lyne*. Afrikaanse Pers-Boekhandel, Johannesburg. A-FISH,



INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO

- JUBB, R.A. 1965. Freshwater fishes of the Cape Province. *Annals of the Cape Provincial Museums* 6: 1–72. A-FISH, T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, BARBUS, CYPRINUS, LABEO, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, PERCA, SALMO, SALVELINUS, TILAPIA, TINCA
- KRAUSE, J.B. 1980. Production of fish from piggery wastes. In *Proceedings of the Symposium on Aquaculture in Wastewater, 24–26 November 1980*, 7 pp. National Institute for Water Research, CSIR, Pretoria. A-FISH, FISH-POND, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS
- KRUGER, E.J. 1975. *Introduction to carp farming*, 53 pp. Nature Conservation Division, Transvaal Provincial Administration, Pretoria. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, FISH-POND, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS
- KRUGER, E.J. 1978. Carp culture at increased stocking rates and with improved feeding. *South African Journal of Wildlife Research* 8: 25–27. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, FISH-POND, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS
- KRUGER, E.J. & POLLING, L. 1984. First attempt at artificial breeding and larval rearing of the butter catfish, *Eutropius depressirostris* (Schilbeidae: Pisces). *Water SA* 10,2: 97–104. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, EUTROPIUS
- LE ROUX, P.J. 1968. Artificial culture of the Vaal River yellowfish *Barbus holubi*. *Fauna and Flora* 19: 34–41. T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, BARBUS
- LEVEQUE, C. & BRUTON, M.N. 1981. Fishes. In J.J. Symoens, M. Burgess & J.J. Gaudet (eds), *The ecology and utilization of African Inland Waters*, pp. 69–79. United Nations Environmental Programme, Nairobi. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, SALMO
- LEWIS, S. 1948. *African Angling*, 251 pp. Stewart, Cape Town. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- LOMBARD, G.L. 1959. A preliminary guide to fish-farming in the Transvaal. *Fauna and Flora* 10: 17–60. A-FISH, T-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, TILAPIA
- MACLEAN, L. 1906. The protection of trout. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 28,6: 842–844. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, MANAGEMENT, SALMO
- MANNING, D.W. 1908. Trout fishing in the Cape Colony. *Argus*, Cape Town. A-FISH, UTILISATION, SALMO
- MCVEIGH, S.J. 1979. Bass in farm dams. *The Cape Angler* 5: 6–14. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, MICROPTERUS
- MCVEIGH, S.J. 1979. Trout on the farm. *The Cape Angler* 6: 11–17. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, SALMO
- MCVEIGH, S.J. 1980. Tilapia in farm dams. *The Cape Angler* 9: 8–13. A-FISH, T-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, OREOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- MCVEIGH, S.J. 1980. Trout on the farm. *Farmers Weekly* 26 March 1980: 78–80. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, SALMO
- MCVEIGH, S.J. 1981. Tilapia in the Cape Province. *Tight Lines* 22,12: 52, 53, 56. A-FISH, T-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, OREOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- MESCHKAT, A. 1969. *The status of warm-water fish culture in Africa*. FAO Fisheries Report 44, Vol. 2: 88–122. A-FISH, T-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, FISH-POND, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, BARBUS, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, TILAPIA
- MICHA, J.C. & FRANK, V. 1976. Biologie des principales especes utilisees en pisciculture Africaine. Report of the Symposium on Aquaculture in Africa, 30 September–October 1975, Accra, Ghana. Reviews and experience papers. *CIFA Technical Paper* 14, Supplement 1: 292–364. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS, GAMBUSIA, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- MULDER, P.F.S. 1982. Standaardisering van beheerpraktyke oor visverspreiding in Suid-Afrika. *Aquaculture Conference, Pretoria, 6 May 1982*. Report: constraints and opportunities, pp. 7, 8. T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT, ARISTICHTHYS, KNERIA
- NOBBS, S.E. 1975. The history of Rietvlei Dam. *Piscator* 94: 77–79. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO
- PIKE, T. 1973. Delayed spawning of carp. *Lammergeyer* 19: 32. A-FISH, PHYSIOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, CYPRINUS
- PIKE, T. 1974. *Induced spawning of grass carp* (*Ctenopharyngodon idella*). Internal report of the Natal Parks, Game and Fish Preservation Board, Pietermaritzburg. A-FISH, PHYSIOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, CTENOPHARYNGODON
- PIKE, T. 1980. An historical review of freshwater fish hatcheries in Natal. *Piscator* 106: 49–53. A-FISH, T-FISH, FISH-POND, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, BARBUS, CLARIAS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHthalmichthys, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, MORONE, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, SERRANOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- PIKE, T. 1980. Biological control of weeds in farm dams with grass carp. *Fish Farmer* June/September 1980: 3. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, A-PLANT, N-PLANT, MANAGEMENT, CTENOPHARYNGODON
- PIKE, T. 1980. *Initial investigation of the grazing effects of Ctenopharyngodon idella on submerged aquatics in farm dams in Natal*. Internal report of the Natal Parks, Game and Fish Preservation Board, Pietermaritzburg. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE,

- N-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, MANAGEMENT, CTENOPHARYNGODON
- PIKE, T. 1986. Grass carp for biological control of aquatic plants in farm dams. *Natal Parks Board Research Communication* 55. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, A-AQUATIC MACROPHYTE, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CTENOPHARYNGODON
- PISTOR, D. 1971. The mountain spirit of the Drakensberg rediscovered. *African Aquarist* 4,5: 4–10. A-FISH, T-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, CONSERVATION, SALMO
- PISTOR, D. 1972. Okavango fishes. *African Aquarist* 5,6: 4–7. T-FISH, SPREAD, UTILISATION, AQUARIUM-TRADE, OREOCHROMIS
- POTT, R. MC C. 1979. The history of trout farming in South Africa. *Fish Farmer* 25: 8–10. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, SALMO
- PRINSLOO, J.F. & SCHOONBEE, H.J. 1983. Induced spawning of the Chinese bighead carp *Aristichthys nobilis* Richardson at Umtata Fish Research Centre, Transkei. *South African Journal of Science* 79,5: 229–231. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, ARISTICHTHYS
- PRINSLOO, J.F. & SCHOONBEE, H.J. 1984. Evolution of the relative growth performance of three varieties of the European common carp *Cyprinus carpio* in Transkei. *Water SA* 10,2: 105–107. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, CYPRINUS
- PRINSLOO, J.F. & SCHOONBEE, H.J. 1984. Observations on fish growth in polyculture during the late summer and autumn in fish ponds at the Umtata Dam Research Centre, Transkei. Part I: the use of pig manure with and without pelleted fish feed. *Water SA* 10,1: 15–23. A-FISH, T-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHTHALMICHTHYS, MYLOPHARYNGODON, OREOCHROMIS
- PRINSLOO, J.F. & SCHOONBEE, H.J. 1984. Observations on fish growth in polyculture during the late summer and autumn in fish ponds at the Umtata Dam Fish Research Centre, Transkei. Part II: the use of cattle manure with and without pelleted fish feed. *Water SA* 10,1: 24–29. A-FISH, T-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHTHALMICHTHYS, MYLOPHARYNGODON, OREOCHROMIS
- PRINSLOO, J.F. & SCHOONBEE, H.J. 1984. Observations on fish growth in polyculture during the late summer and autumn in fish ponds at the Umtata Dam Fish Research Centre, Transkei. Part III: the use of chicken manure with and without pelleted fish feed. *Water SA* 10,1: 30–35. A-FISH, T-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHTHALMICHTHYS, MYLOPHARYNGODON, OREOCHROMIS
- ROETS, C.J. 1951. Advances in the propagation of trout in the Transvaal. *The South African Angler* 5,11: 10. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, SALMO
- RONDORF, D.W. 1975. *Progress report on the rare and endangered Oreodaimon quathlambae* (Barnard, 1938). Unpublished report, Fisheries Section, Government of Lesotho, 23 pp. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, CONSERVATION, SALMO
- RONDORF, D.W. 1976. New locations of *Oreodaimon quathlambae* (Barnard) (Pisces, Cyprinidae) populations. *South African Journal of Science* 72,5: 150, 151. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, CONSERVATION, SALMO
- RONDORF, D.W. 1976. *Progress report on the rare and endangered Oreodaimon quathlambae during the period October 1975 to April 1976*. Unpublished report to the Fisheries Section, Government of Lesotho, 41 pp. A-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, CONSERVATION, SALMO
- SAFRIEL, O. & BRUTON, M.N. 1984. *Aquaculture in South Africa: a co-operative research programme*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 89: 1–79. A-CRUSTACEAN, A-FISH, T-FISH, RESEARCH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CHERAX, MACROBRACHIUM, ARISTICHTHYS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHTHALMICHTHYS, ICTALURUS, MYLOPHARYNGODON, OREOCHROMIS, SALMO, SAROTHERODON, SCOPHTHALMUS, TILAPIA
- SALOMON, N.G. 1978. *Freshwater fishing in South Africa*. Van Rensburg, Johannesburg. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- SCHOONBEE, H.J., HECHT, T., POLLING, L. & SAAYMAN, J.E. 1980. Induced spawning of and hatchery procedures with the sharptooth catfish, *Clarias gariepinus*, (Pisces, Clariidae). *South African Journal of Science* 76: 364–367. T-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, CLARIAS
- SCHOONBEE, H.J., NAKANI, V.C. & PRINSLOO, H.J. 1979. The use of cattle manure and supplementary feeding in growth studies of the Chinese silver carp in Transkei. *South African Journal of Science* 75: 489–495. A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, HYPOPHTHALMICHTHYS
- SCHOONBEE, H.J. & PRINSLOO, J.F. 1984. Techniques and hatchery procedures in induced spawning of the European common carp, *Cyprinus carpio* and the Chinese carps *Ctenopharyngodon idella*, *Hypophthalmichthys molitrix* and *Aristichthys nobilis* in Transkei. *Water SA* 10,1: 36–39. A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, ARISTICHTHYS, CTENOPHARYNGODON, CYPRINUS, HYPOPHTHALMICHTHYS
- SCOTT, H.A. 1982. Freshwater fish management in the Cape: past and present. *Cape Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation, Cape Conservation Series* 1. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- SCOTT, H.A. 1982. The Olifants River system: unique habitat for rare Cape fishes. *Cape Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation, Cape Conservation Series* 2. A-FISH, T-FISH, RIVER, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, MANAGEMENT,

- CONSERVATION, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- SCOTT, J.L. 1896. Report on trout culture for 1895. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 9,11: 367. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, SALMO
- SCOTT, J.L. 1899. Trout breeding and stocking of streams. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 14,4: 224–229. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, SALMO
- SCOTT, J.L. 1900. Report of the Marine Biologist for 1899. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 17,9: 551, 552. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, CYPRINUS, PERCA, SALMO
- SCOTT, J.L. 1904. Trout and carp breeding and stocking of streams. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 24,4: 456–463. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, CYPRINUS, SALMO
- SKELTON, P.H. 1977. *South African Red Data Book—fishes*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 14: 1–33. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- SKELTON, P.H. 1983. Perspectives on the conservation of threatened fishes in southern Africa. *The Naturalist* 27,1: 39–12. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION, MICROPTERUS, SALMO
- SKELTON, P.H. 1987. *South African Red Data Book—fishes* (revised edition). South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 137: 1–199. A-FISH, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- SKELTON, P.H. & DAVIES, M.T.T. (eds) 1986. Proceedings of a colloquium: trout in South Africa. *ICHTHOS* Special Edition No. 1: 1–20. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, SALMO
- THOMPSON, W.W. 1913. Trout and other freshwater fishes. In *The sea fisheries of the Cape Colony*. Miller, Cape Town. A-FISH, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, UTILISATION, ANGLING, CYPRINUS, PERCA, SALMO, TINCA
- UYS, W. & HECHT, T. 1985. Evaluation and preparation of an optimal dry feed for the primary nursing of *Clarias gariepinus* larvae (Pisces: Clariidae). *Aquaculture* 47: 173–183. T-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, CLARIAS
- VAN AS, J.G., BASSON, L. & THERON, J. 1984. An experimental evaluation of the use of formalin to control trichodiniasis and other ectoparasitic protozoans on fry of *Cyprinus carpio* L. *South African Journal of Wildlife Research* 14: 42–48. A-FISH, A-FISH-PARASITE, MANAGEMENT, CHILODONELLA, ICHTHYOPHTHIRIUS, TRICHODINA, CYPRINUS
- VAN DER BERG, B.A., GAIGHER, I.G. & LENYAI, S.K. 1975. The use of small farm dams in the Transkei and Ciskei for the production of table-fish using Aischgrund carp. *Journal of the Limnological Society of Southern Africa* 1,1: 11–15. A-FISH, IMPOUNDMENT, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, CYPRINUS
- VAN DER MERWE, F.J. 1981. Induced spawning of the common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) and the largemouth yellowfish (*Barbus kimberleyensis*). *Water SA* 7,2: 107–109. A-FISH, T-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, BARBUS, CYPRINUS
- VAN DER WAAL, B.C.W. 1975. Production and growth of Aischgrund carp at the Lowveld Fisheries Research Station, Transvaal. *Journal of the Southern African Wildlife Management Association* 5: 63–67. A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS
- VAN DER WAAL, B.C.W. 1978. Some breeding and production experiments with *Clarias gariepinus* (Burchell) in the Transvaal. *South African Journal of Wildlife Research* 8,1: 13–17. T-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CLARIAS
- VAN RENSBURG, K.J. 1963. *A review of the status of the Olifants River yellow-fish*, *Barbus capensis*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration Report 20: 73–75. A-FISH, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS, SALMO, TILAPIA
- VAN RENSBURG, K.J. 1966. *Die vis van die Olifantsrivier (weskus) met spesiale verwysing na die geelvis* (*Barbus capensis*) en saagvin (*Barbus serra*). Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Investigational Report 10: 1–14. A-FISH, RIVER, IMPOUNDMENT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, ANGLING, MANAGEMENT, LEPOMIS, MICROPTERUS
- VAN SCHOOR, D.J. 1959. *Controlled experiments in fish production*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 16: 77, 78. A-FISH, T-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS, OREOCHROMIS
- VAN SCHOOR, D.J. 1960. *Comparison of the growth of six species of fish*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 17: 57. A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS, TINCA
- VAN SCHOOR, D.J. 1963. *Two experiments concerning carp growth*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 20: 70–72. A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, GROWTH, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, CYPRINUS
- VAN SCHOOR, D.J. 1966. *Studies on the culture and acclimation of Tilapia in the Western Cape Province*. Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration, Investigational Report 7. A-FISH, T-FISH, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, MANAGEMENT, OREOCHROMIS, TILAPIA
- WRIGHT, C.W. & COKE, M.M. 1975. The artificial propagation of *Barbus natalensis*. 1: induced spawning and artificial fertilisation. *Lammergeyer* 22: 37–41. T-FISH, FISH-POND, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, BARBUS, UTILISATION
- WRIGHT, C.W. & COKE, M.M. 1975. The artificial propagation of *Barbus natalensis*. 2: hatching and early development. *Lammergeyer* 22: 42–48. T-FISH, FISH-POND, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, BARBUS, UTILISATION

YATES, A. 1958–1959. Stocking the upper Elandspad. *Piscator* 44: 85–92. A-FISH, RIVER, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, ANGLING, SALMO

## 8.10 Alien Birds (696)

### *A Birds Ecology (119)*

AINSWORTH, F.D. 1964. Bird life in the City of Durban. *African Wildlife* 18: 248–251. A-BIRD, URBAN, ACRIDOTHERES, ECOLOGY

ANONYMOUS 1974. E. Cape swans happy. *Eastern Province Herald*, 9 April 1974. A-BIRD, CYGNUS, ECOLOGY

BETHAM, R.M. 1929. Some observations on the nesting of birds in the vicinity of Cape Town. *Ibis* Series 12, Volume 5: 71–104. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, FRINGILLA, STURNUS

BROEKHUYSEN, G.J. 1966. *The birds around us*. Timmins, Cape Town. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, STURNUS

BROEKHUYSEN, G.R. & MARTIN, J. 1962. European Starlings joining a flock of waders. *Ostrich* 33,1: 28. A-BIRD, INTERTIDAL-AREA, ECOLOGY, STURNUS

BROOKE, R.K. 1976. Morphological notes on *Acridotheres tristis* in Natal. *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 96: 8–13. A-BIRD, MORPHOLOGY, ACRIDOTHERES, ECOLOGY

BROOKE, R.K. 1981. The breeding birds of Baboon Point cliff. *Promerops* 149: 6, 7. A-BIRD, COLUMBA, STURNUS, ECOLOGY

BROOKE, R.K. 1984. *South African Red Data Book—* *Threats*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 97: 1–213. A-BIRD, INVASION, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, AGAPORNIS

BROOKE, R.K. & CROWE, T.M. 1982. Variation in species richness among the offshore islands of the southwestern Cape. *South African Journal of Zoology* 17: 49–58. A-BIRD, ISLAND-COASTAL, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, STURNUS, PASSER

BUETTICKER, W. 1960. Artificial nesting devices in southern Africa. *Ostrich* 31: 39–48. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, PASSER, STURNUS

CALDER, D.R. 1954. A new Indian Myna roost in Durban. *Natal Bird Club News Letter* 28: 1. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, ACRIDOTHERES

CALDER, D.R. 1955. Roostbound flight behaviour of Indian Mynas. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 38: 1. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, ACRIDOTHERES

CHITTENDEN, H. 1979. Rural Indian Mynas. *Albatross* 253: 2, 3. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, ACRIDOTHERES

COOPER, J. & UNDERHILL, L.G. 1991. Breeding, mass and primary moult of European Starlings *Sturnus vulgaris* at Dassen Island, South Africa. *Ostrich* 62: 1–7. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, STURNUS

CRAIB, C.L. 1971. Breeding of the European Starling at Grahamstown. *Ostrich* 42: 145–246. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, STURNUS

CRAIG, A.J.F.K. 1985. The distribution of the pied starling, and southern African biogeography. *Ostrich* 56: 123–131. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, STURNUS

CRAWFORD, R.J.M. 2003. Population, and size and location, of colonies, of Swift Terns, in South Africa's Western Cape, 1987–2000. *Waterbirds* 26,1: 44–53. A-MAMMAL, ISLAND-COASTAL, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, FELIS

CRAWFORD, R.J.M., BOONSTRA, H.G. VAN D., DYER, B.M. & UPFOLD, L. 1995. Recolonization of Robben Island by African Penguins, 1983–1992. In P. Dann, I. Norman & P. Reilly (eds), *The penguins: ecology and management*, pp. 333–363. Surrey Beatty; Chipping Norton, Australia. A-MAMMAL, A-WOODY PLANT, ISLAND-COASTAL, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, FELIS, ACACIA

CROWE, T.M. & BROOKE, R.K. 1985. Adaptive morphological variation in introduced house sparrows (summary). In L.J. Bunning (ed.), *Proceedings of the Symposium on Birds and Man, Johannesburg 1983*. Witwatersrand Bird Club, Johannesburg, p. 30. A-BIRD, INVASION, ECOLOGY, ADAPTATION, PASSER

CRAWFORD, R.J.M. & UNDERHILL, L.G. 2003. Aspects of breeding, moult, measurements and population trend of Hartlaub's Gull in Western Cape, South Africa. *Waterbirds* 26,2: 139–149. A-MAMMAL, ISLAND-COASTAL, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, FELIS

DE KOCK, J.M. 1955. The cranial morphology of *Sturnus vulgaris vulgaris* Linnaeus. *Annals of the University of Stellenbosch* 31: 153–177. A-BIRD, ANATOMY, STURNUS, ECOLOGY

DEAN, W.R.J. 1971. Breeding data for the birds of Natal and Zululand. *Durban Museum Novitates* 9: 59–91. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER

DEAN, W.R.J. 2000. Alien birds in southern Africa: what factors determine success? *South African Journal of Science* 96: 9–14. A-BIRD, LAND-USE, AVIFAUNA, INVASIVENESS, ECOLOGY

DU TOIT, K. 1983. More about Bald Indian Mynas. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 120: 13. A-BIRD, MORPHOLOGY, ACRIDOTHERES, ECOLOGY

EARLE, R.A. 1984. Huisvossies kry insekte in die stad. *Mirafra* 1,1: 4. A-BIRD, URBAN, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, PASSER

EARLE, R.A. 1985. Predators, parasites and symbionts of the South African Cliff Swallow *Hirundo spilodera* (Aves: Hirundinidae). *Navorsing van die Nasionale Museum Bloemfontein* 5: 1–18. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, PASSER

EVERY, B. 1976. Request for information ... 1. *Bee-eater* 27,4: 3. A-BIRD, CYGNUS, ECOLOGY

EVERY, B. 1978. It might never have happened. *Bee-eater* 29: 16. A-BIRD, STURNUS, ECOLOGY

FARKAS, T. 1981. Bird communities of the False Upper Karoo. *Memoirs van die Nasionale Museum Bloemfontein* 16: 1–160. A-BIRD, KAROO, ECOLOGY, PASSER

FEARE, C. 1984. *The Starling*. Oxford University Press, Oxford. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS

FRASER, M.W. 1985. Movements of House Sparrows (R 801) down the Cape Peninsula. *Promerops* 169: 9. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, PASSER

FREER, J. 1961. House Sparrow in City. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 37: 2. A-BIRD, URBAN, ECOLOGY, PASSER

- FREER, J.S. 1955. Reactions of birds to habitation. *Bokmakierie* 7: 48, 49. A-BIRD, URBAN, ECOLOGY, PASSER
- FREER, J.S. 1966. House Sparrow. *Bokmakierie* 18: 22. A-BIRD, URBAN, ECOLOGY, PASSER
- FRIEDMANN, H. 1964. Evolutionary trends in the avian genus *Clamator*. *Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections* 146,4: 1–127. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PARASITISM, ACRIDOTHERES
- FROST, P.G.H. 1983. Birds and man. *Bokmakierie* 35: 26–32. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, CORVUS, PASSER, STURNUS
- HALL, K.R.L. 1964. A study of the Blacksmith Plover *Hoplopterus armatus* in the Cape Town area. Part II: behaviour. *Ostrich* 35: 3–16. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, STURNUS
- HEYL, C.W. 1979. Capacity of artificially-reared Cape Shovellers (*Anas smithii*) to adjust to natural conditions. *South African Journal of Wildlife Research* 9,3/4: 79–83. T-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INTRODUCTION, ANAS
- HOPPE, E. 1969. Unusual nest of Indian Myna. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 68: 7. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, NESTING, ACRIDOTHERES
- HOSTEN, L. 1976. Partial albino European Starling. *Bee-eater* 27,3: 3, 4. A-BIRD, PHYSIOLOGY, STURNUS, ECOLOGY
- JONES, E.M. 1965. The birds of Salt Vlei, Bathurst Division, C.P. *South African Avifauna Series* 28: 1–34. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- JOUBERT, H.J. 1945. Starlings and others. *Ostrich* 16: 214–216. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS, TURDUS
- JUBB, R.A. 1952. Kromme River's mystery Swans. *Bokmakierie* 4: 13. A-BIRD, CYGNUS, ECOLOGY
- KEMP, A.C. 1974. The distribution and status of the birds of the Kruger National Park. *Koedoe Monograph* No. 2: 1–352. A-BIRD, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- KEMP, A.C. 1975. Ecological studies of four estrildines in the central Transvaal. *Ostrich Supplement* 11: 1–55. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, COMPETITION, PASSER
- KEMP, A.C. & SNELLING, J.C. 1973. Ecology of the Gabar Goshawk in southern Africa. *Ostrich* 44: 154–162. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PREDATION, PASSER
- KEWLEY, C. 1969. Indian Mynas fighting. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 168: 5. A-BIRD, BEHAVIOUR, ACRIDOTHERES, ECOLOGY
- LAWSON, W.J. 1965. Ringing recoveries. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 125: 3, 4. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, BEHAVIOUR, PASSER
- LAWSON, W.J. 1966. Bird ringing. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 133: 4, 5. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, BEHAVIOUR, PASSER
- LEDGER, J.A. 1980. The arthropod parasites of vertebrates in Africa south of the Sahara, Volume 4. Phthiraptera (Insecta). *Publications of the South African Institute for Medical Research* 56: 1–327. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, BIRD-PARASITES, ACRIDOTHERES, COLUMBA, PASSER, STURNUS
- LITTLE, J. DE V. 1964. Notes on the breeding behaviour of the Paradise Flycatcher. *Ostrich* 35: 32–41. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, COMPETITION, PASSER
- LIVERSIDGE, R. 1953. Chaffinch behaviour. *Cape Bird Club News Sheet* 17: 3. A-BIRD, FRINGILLA, ECOLOGY
- LIVERSIDGE, R. 1954. Last Cape record of the Song Thrush? *Cape Bird Club News Sheet* 23: 4, 5. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, TURDUS
- LIVERSIDGE, R. & DARLING, E.M. 1952. Seasonal records of the Chaffinch. *Cape Bird Club News* 8: 3. A-BIRD, FRINGILLA, ECOLOGY
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. & BIRKENSTOCK, P.J. 1980. Birds of the Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Game Reserve complex. *Lammergeyer* 29: 1–56. A-BIRD, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, INVASION, ACRIDOTHERES, CAIRINA, COLUMBA, PASSER, PHASIANUS
- MARKUS, M.B. 1966. Avifaunal community composition in a Pretoria suburb. *Ostrich Supplement* 6: 365–370. A-BIRD, INVASION, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, PASSER
- MARTIN, J. 1955. Albino European Starling. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 31: 1. A-BIRD, PHYSIOLOGY, STURNUS, ECOLOGY
- MEINERTZHAGEN, R. 1919. A preliminary study of the relationship between geographical distribution and migration with special reference to the Palaearctic Region. *Ibis Series* 11 Volume 1: 379–392. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, STURNUS
- MICKEL, R.E.T. 1979. Owl pellet study. *Diaz Diary* 71: 5–8. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PREDATION, ACRIDOTHERES
- MIDDLEMISS, E. 1961. Avian pox in South Africa. *Ostrich* 32: 20–22. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, DISEASE, STURNUS
- NEITZ, W.O. 1965. A check-list and host-list of the zoonoses occurring in mammals and birds in South and South West Africa. *Onderstepoort Journal of Veterinary Research* 32: 189–374. A-BIRD, DISEASE, COLUMBA, ECOLOGY
- NEWMAN, K. (ed.) 1971. *Birdlife in southern Africa*. Purnell, Johannesburg. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS
- NEWMAN, K. (ed.) 1979. *Birdlife in southern Africa*. Macmillan, Johannesburg. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS
- PARKER, V. 1983. Another Bald Indian Myna. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 121: 6. A-BIRD, MORPHOLOGY, ACRIDOTHERES, ECOLOGY
- READ, M.E. 1982. Birds attracted to salt lick. *Bokmakierie* 34: 40. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, PHYSIOLOGY, PASSER, ECOLOGY
- REED, R.A. & HUNTER, C. 1963. Records of bird diets and feeding habits. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 44: 2–4. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, PHYSIOLOGY, PASSER
- REED, R.A. & HUNTER, C. 1963. Bird diet records. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 45: 6, 7. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, PHYSIOLOGY, PASSER
- REED, R.A. & HUNTER, C. 1963. Recent records of bird diet and feeding habits. *Witwatersrand Bird*



- Club News Sheet* 46: 3, 4. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, PHYSIOLOGY, PASSER
- REED, R.A. & HUNTER, C. 1964. Bird diet. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 48: 1, 2. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, PHYSIOLOGY, PASSER
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 1992. Starlings—why have they been so successful? *African Wildlife* 46: 207–210. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, INVASIVENESS, STURNUS
- SADDLER, R. 1985. European Starlings bathing in seawater. *Bee-eater* 36: 20. A-BIRD, INTERTIDAL-AREA, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, STURNUS
- SCHMIDT, R.K. 1956. A Wynberg nest of the Chaffinch. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 33: 4. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, NESTING, FRINGILLA
- SCHWARZENBERGER, A. & DEAN, W.R.J. 2003. The influence of vegetation structure on bird communities in a Karoo village, South Africa. *Ostrich* 74,3 & 4: 209–216. ALIEN-WOODY PLANT, KAROO, URBAN, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD
- SHEWELL, E.L. 1960. Roosting of House Sparrow and Indian Myna at nest sites and in trees. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 65: 2. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- SHEWELL, E.L. & CALDER, D.R. 1960. Roosting behaviour of birds. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 65: 1, 2. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- SIBLEY, C.G. & AHLQUIST, J.E. 1974. The relationships of the African sugarbirds (*Promerops*). *Ostrich* 45: 22–30. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, TAXONOMY, STURNUS
- SIEGFRIED, W.R. 1968. Ecological composition of the avifaunal community in a Stellenbosch suburb. *Ostrich* 39: 105–129. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, URBAN, ECOLOGY, STURNUS
- SINCLAIR, I., MENDELSON, J. & CHITTENDEN, H. 1981. Breeding of the Indian House Crow in South Africa. *Albatross* 262: 8, 9. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, NESTING, CORVUS
- SINCLAIR, J.C. 1981. A myriad of parakeets and other birds. *Bokmakierie* 33: 56–58. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, CORVUS, PSITTACULA
- SKEAD, C.J. 1967. Ecology of birds in the eastern Cape Province. *Ostrich Supplement* 7: 1–103. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, CARDUELIS, FRINGILLA, PASSER, POICEPHALUS, STURNUS
- SKEAD, D.M. 1974. Habitats and feeding preferences of birds on the S.A. Lombard Nature Reserve, Transvaal. *Ostrich* 45: 15–21. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, PHYSIOLOGY, PASSER
- SKEAD, D.M. 1975. Drinking habits of birds in the central Transvaal bushveld. *Ostrich* 46: 139–146. A-BIRD, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, PHYSIOLOGY, PASSERSKEAD, D.M. & DEAN, W.R.J. 1977. Status of the Barberspan avifauna, 1971–1975. *Ostrich Supplement* 12: 3–42. A-BIRD, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, PASSER
- SPERO, C. 1972. The Indian Myna family. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 78: 1. ACRIDOTHERES
- STANFORD, W., FEELY, J., ROBINSON, C. & MCCAUSELAND, D.E. 1952. Present status of the Chaffinch. *Cape Bird Club News Sheet* 9: 2. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, FRINGILLA
- TAYLOR, J.S. 1966. The bathing behaviour of some South African birds. *Ostrich Supplement* 6: 193–196. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, STURNUS
- UNDERHILL, G.D. 1967. Nest record card project: 1966 report. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 84: 4, 5. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- UNDERHILL, G.D. 1967. House Sparrows in the Peninsula. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 85: 3. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, FRINGILLA, PASSER
- UNDERHILL, G.D. 1970. Nest record card project 1969. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 95: 4. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- UNDERHILL, L.G., ERNI, B. & MASHININI, F.X. 1998. Ecological differentiation of canaries (Fringillidae) in the Western Cape. *Durban Museum Novitates* 23: 56–60. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASIVENESS, IMPACT, N-BIRD, FRINGILLA
- UYS, C.J. & MACLEOD, J.G.R. 1967. The birds of the De Hoop Vlei region, Bredasdorp, and the effect of the 1957 inundation over a 10-year period (1957–1966) on the distribution of species, bird numbers and breeding. *Ostrich* 38: 233–254. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- VERNON, C.J. 1973. Avian biomass in a suburb of Pietermaritzburg. *Ostrich* 44: 142–144. A-BIRD, URBAN, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, BIOMASS, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- VINCENT, A.W. 1949. On the breeding habits of some African birds. *Ibis* 91: 313–345. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, STURNUS
- VOS, K. 1953. Possible cooperative breeding in the European Starling. *Cape Bird Club News Sheet* 13: 2, 3. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, STURNUS
- WAANDERS, E.J. 1971. Ongewone nesmateriaal gebruik deur Huisvossies (R784). *Northern Transvaal Ornithological Society Newsletter* 2,1: 6. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, PASSER
- WATTEL, J. 1971. The subspecies of *Fringilla coelebs* L. inhabiting the Cape Peninsula. *Ostrich* 42: 229. A-BIRD, TAXONOMY, ORIGIN, FRINGILLA, ECOLOGY
- WEISSENBACHER, B.K.H. & ALLAN, D. 1985. Roseringed Parakeet breeding attempts in the Transvaal. *Ostrich* 56: 169. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, NESTING, PSITTACULA
- WILSON, G. 1975. Industrial birds. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 232: 1, 2. A-BIRD, URBAN, ECOLOGY, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1952. European Starlings at the Cape. *Ostrich* 23: 220, 221. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1955. Garden birds. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 29: 4, 5. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1957. Visit to the Cape Town foreshore. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 45: 1. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1960. Report on the Cape Bird Club vlei counts, 1952–1958. *Ostrich* 31: 135–168. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS



- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1964. Notes on the wagtails of *Motacilla* southern Africa [sic]. *Ostrich* 35: 129–141. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1964. The migrations and local movements of some South African birds. In D.H.S. Davis (ed.), *Ecological studies in southern Africa*, pp. 233–243. Junk, The Hague. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1965. *The bird and its environment*. Maskew Miller, Cape Town. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1966. Ecological distribution of birds in the indigenous vegetation of the south-west Cape. *Ostrich* 37: 76–91. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1966. Some alien birds in South Africa. *Bokmakierie* 18: 61, 62. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, ALECTORIS, COLINUS, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, LUSCINIA, MELOPSITTACUS, PAROARIA, PASSER, STURNUS, TURDUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1966. The comparative ecology of the birds of some Karoo habitats in the Cape Province. *Ostrich* 37: 109–127. A-BIRD, KAROO, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1967. The birds of three salt-water habitats in the south west Cape. *Ostrich* 38: 148–154. A-BIRD, INTERTIDAL-AREA, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1968. The avifaunas of three agricultural habitats in the south-western Cape. *Ostrich* 39: 51–60. A-BIRD, AGRICULTURAL-AREA, ECOLOGY, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1968. The avifaunas of three freshwater habitats in the south-western Cape. *Ostrich* 39: 130–138. A-BIRD, FRESHWATER, ECOLOGY, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1970. Bird life of our islands. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 94: 1. A-BIRD, ISLAND-COASTAL, ECOLOGY, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1970. The birds of the alien *Acacia* thickets of the south-western Cape. *Zoologica Africana* 5: 49–57. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, AVIFAUNA, ACACIA
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1971. Birds and man. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 96: 2. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, BEHAVIOUR, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1971. *Priest's eggs of southern African birds*. Winchester Press, Johannesburg. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, ACRIDOTHERES, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1972. The ecological distribution of birds in southern Africa. *Monographs of the Percy FitzPatrick Institute of African Ornithology* 1: 1–81. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1978. Birds. In M.J.A. Werger & A.C. van Bruggen (eds), *Biogeography and ecology of southern Africa*, pp. 951–979. Junk, The Hague. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, ALECTORIS, COLUMBA, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, LUSCINIA, MELOPSITTACUS, PASSER, PSITTACULA, STURNUS, TURDUS
- WOODALL, P.F. 1975. On the life history of the Bronze Mannikin. *Ostrich* 46: 55–86. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, PASSER
- ZUMPT, F. 1961. The arthropod parasites of vertebrates in Africa south of the Sahara (Ethiopian Region), Volume (Chelicerata). *Publications of the South African Institute for Medical Research* 9: 1–457. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, PARASITISM, PASSER
- BAKER, M. 1970. A guide to the birds of Loskop Dam. *South African Avifauna Series* 72: 1–33. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- BARON, S.T. 1981. An updated list of birds of the Bontebok National Park. *Koedoe* 24: 79–98. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- BARTIE, W. 1963. List of the birds in the Klerksdorp area. *South African Avifauna Series* 10: 1–9. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- BELCHER, C. 1971. The birds of Kokstad. *South African Avifauna Series* 76: 1–23. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- BERRUTI, A. 1980. Birds of Lake St. Lucia. *Southern Birds* 8: 1–60. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- BODDAM-WHETHAM, A.D. 1965. The birds of Kirklington, Orange Free State. *South African Avifauna Series* 32: 1–35. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- BODDAM-WHETHAM, A.D. 1972. The birds of Franshoek, District Ficksburg, Orange Free State. *South African Avifauna Series* 80: 1–27. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- BODDAM-WHETHAM, D. 1977. Birds of the Royal Port Alfred Golf Links. *Diaz Diary* 46: 4, 5. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- BOLSTER, R.C. 1931. *Land and sea birds of the south-west Cape*. Cape Town, Speciality Press of South Africa. T-BIRD, A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, NUMIDA, STURNUS
- BRANDT, H.D. 1960. Birds of Potchefstroom and District. *Ostrich* 31: 6–19. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- CALDER, D.R. 1954. Birds of the Royal Natal National Park. *Natal Bird Club News Letter* 25: 1. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- CALDER, D.R. 1959. White-browed Sparrow-weaver *Plocepasser mahali*. *Ostrich* 30: 163. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, PASSER
- CAPE BIRD CLUB 1963. *Check list of birds of the south western Cape*. Cape Bird Club, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ANAS
- CAPE BIRD CLUB 1979. *A guide to the birds of the south western Cape*. Cape Bird Club, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ANAS, CYGNUS
- CLANCEY, P.A. 1964. *The birds of Natal and Zululand*. Oliver & Boyd, Edinburgh. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, AGAPORNIS, PASSER

- CLANCEY, P.A. 1965. A catalogue of birds of the South African subregion (Part I: Families Spheniscidae–Burhinidae). *Durban Museum Novitates* 7: 201–304. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ANAS, CYGNUS
- CLANCEY, P.A. 1965. A catalogue of birds of the South African subregion (Part II: Families Glareolidae–Pittidae). *Durban Museum Novitates* 7: 305–388. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, AGAPORNIS
- CLANCEY, P.A. 1966. A catalogue of birds of the South African subregion (Part V: Families Sturnidae–Fringillidae [concluded]). *Durban Museum Novitates* 7: 545–633. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, FULICA, GALLINULA, PASSER, STURNUS, TURDUS
- CLANCEY, P.A. 1967. *Gamebirds of southern Africa*. Purnell, Cape Town. T-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, FRANCOLINUS, NUMIDA
- CLANCEY, P.A. 1972. A catalogue of birds of the South African subregion, Supplement No. 2. *Durban Museum Novitates* 9: 163–200. A-BIRD, TAXONOMY, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, ALECTORIS
- CLANCEY, P.A. 1976. A catalogue of birds of the South African subregion, Supplement No. 3. *Durban Museum Novitates* 11: 25–76. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PSITTACULA, TADORNA
- CLANCEY, P.A. (ed.) 1980. *S.A.O.S. checklist of southern Africa birds*. Southern African Ornithological Society, Johannesburg. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, AGAPORNIS, ANAS, COLUMBA, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, FULICA, GALLINULA, PASSER, PSITTACULA, STREPTOPELIA, STURNUS, TADORNA, TURDUS
- COOKE, C.K. & COOKE, P. 1969. List of the birds of the Qolora River mouth area. *South African Avifauna Series* 63: 7. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- COURTENAY-LATIMER, M. 1964. Checklist of the birds of the East London area. *South African Avifauna Series* 20: 1–76. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, IDENTIFICATION, HISTORY, PASSER
- CULLEN, B. 1984. Checklist of bird species recorded at Zoo Lake, Johannesburg, mainly between 1960 and 1983. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 125: 4–9. A-BIRD, IMPOUNDMENT, URBAN, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, AIX, ANAS, ANSER, COLUMBA, PASSER
- DAY, D.H. 1975. Birds of the Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve. *Southern birds* 1: 1–52. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- EVERY, B. 1979. An annotated list of rare and poorly documented birds recently recorded in the eastern Cape Province XI. *Bee-eater* 30: 24. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- FRANDSEN, J. 1982. *Birds of the southwestern Cape*. Sable Publishers, Sloane Park. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- GARLAND, I. 1967. List of the birds on the farm 'Twinstreams', Mtunzini District, Zululand. *South African Avifauna Series* 46: 1–18. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, ANAS, CYGNUS
- GILL, E.L. 1936. *A first guide to South African birds*. Maskew Miller, Cape Town. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS, TURDUS
- GILL, E.L. & WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1964. *A first guide to South African birds*. Maskew Miller, Cape Town. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS, TURDUS
- GINN, P.J. 1980. List of bird identified on the Langjan expedition. *Wagtail* 19: 14–24. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- GINN, P.J. & MCILLERON, G. 1980. *Garden birds of southern Africa*. Van Rensburg Publications, Johannesburg. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER, STURNUS
- JACOT GUILLARMOD, C. 1963. Catalogue of the birds of Basutoland. *South African Avifauna Series* 8: 1–111. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- JOHNSON, P., SINCLAIR, J. & MENDELSON, J. 1981. *Everyone's guide to South African birds*. Central News Agency, Johannesburg. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, COLUMBA, PASSER, STURNUS
- KEMP, M.I., KEMP, A.C. & TARBOTON, W.R. 1985. *A catalogue of the birds of the Transvaal*. Pretoria, Transvaal Museum & Transvaal Nature Conservation Division. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, IDENTIFICATION, ACRIDOTHERES, AGAPORNIS, AIX, AYTHYA, COLUMBA, MELOPSITTACUS, NYMPHICUS, PAROARIA, PASSER, PLOCEUS, PSITTACULA
- KIESER, J.A. & KIESER, C.A. 1978. Birds of the De Aar District. *Southern Birds* 5: 1–46. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- LAWRIE, M. 1977. Birds of the Schoenmakers Kop shore. *Bee-eater* 28: 31–35. A-BIRD, INTERTIDAL-AREA, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION, STURNUS
- LAWSON, P.C. & EDMONDS, J.A. 1983. Birds of Kangwane (Mswati District). *Southern Birds* 11: 1–84. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- LAWSON, W.J. 1971. Checklist of the birds of Durban. *South African Avifauna Series* 73: 1–80. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PAROARIA, PASSER
- LAYARD, E.L. 1867. *The birds of South Africa*. Juta, Cape Town. A-BIRD, T-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, FRANCOLINUS, NUMIDA, PSITTACULA
- LITTLE, J. DE V. 1973. List of the birds of the Carolina District. *South African Avifauna Series* 11: 1–27. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- LIVERSIDGE, R. 1965. The birds of the Addo National Park. *Koedoe* 8: 41–67. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- LIVERSIDGE, R., BROEKHUYSEN, G.J. & THESEN, A.R. 1958. The birds of Langebaan Lagoon. *Ostrich* 29: 95–106. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, STURNUS

- LOCKWOOD, G. 1981. *Geoff Lockwood's garden birds of southern Africa*. Sable Publishers, Sandton. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER, STURNUS
- LONGRIGG, T.D. 1978. *A guide to the birds of Kirstenbosch*. Cape Bird Club, Cape Town. A-BIRD, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS, IDENTIFICATION
- MACKWORTH-PRAED, C.W. & GRANT, C.H.B. 1962. *Birds of the southern third of Africa, Volume 1*. Longmans, London. T-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, FYNBOS, INVASION, SPREAD, STREPTOPELIA
- MACKWORTH-PRAED, C.W. & GRANT, C.H.B. 1963. *Birds of the southern third of Africa, Volume 2*. Longmans, London. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS
- MACLEAN, G.L. 1957. A summary of the birds of Westminster O.F.S. and surroundings (1953–1955). *Ostrich* 28: 217–232. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MACLEAN, G.L. 1985. *Roberts' birds of southern Africa*. Trustees of the John Voelcker Bird Book Fund, Cape Town. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, COLUMBA, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, PASSER, PSITTACULA, STURNUS
- MACLEOD, J.G.R. 1969. The birds of the Hottentots Holland. *Ostrich* 40: 13–15. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MACLEOD, J.G.R., MURRAY, E.M. & MURRAY, C. 1952. The birds of the Hottentots Holland (part II). *Ostrich* 23: 16–25. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- MARKUS, M.B. 1963. The birds of the Pretoria District. *Biologica* 1: 19–29. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MARKUS, M.B. 1964. An annotated list of the birds of Pretoria City. *South African Avifauna Series* 18: 1–50. A-BIRD, URBAN, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MCLACHLAN, G.R. & LIVERSIDGE, R. 1957. *Roberts birds of South Africa*. Witherby, London. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STREPTOPELIA, STURNUS
- MCLACHLAN, G.R. & LIVERSIDGE, R. 1970. *Roberts birds of South Africa*. Trustees of the John Voelcker Bird Book Fund, Cape Town. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STREPTOPELIA, STURNUS
- MCLACHLAN, G.R. & LIVERSIDGE, R. 1978. *Roberts birds of South Africa*. Trustees of the John Voelcker Bird Book Fund, Cape Town. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, ALECTORIS, CORVUS, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, PASSER, PSITTACULA, STREPTOPELIA, STURNUS
- MIDDLEMISS, E. 1969. The birds of the Cape of Good Hope Nature Reserve. *South African Avifauna Series* 62: 1–34. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MILLS, M.G.L. 1976. A revised check-list of birds in the Kalahari Gemsbok National Park. *Koedoe* 19: 49–62. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MILSTEIN, P. LE S. 1962. Birds of Mineral Range, Groblersdal District. *South African Avifauna Series* 4: 1–36. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- NEWMAN, K. 1967. *Garden birds of South Africa*. Purnell, Johannesburg. A-BIRD, URBAN, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER, STURNUS, IDENTIFICATION
- NEWMAN, K. 1982. Order Anseriformes. In L.H. Brown, E.K. Urban & K. Newman (eds), *The birds of Africa, Volume 1*: 220–293. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, IDENTIFICATION, HYBRIDIZATION, ANAS, CYGNUS, TADORNA
- NEWMAN, K. 1983. *Newman's birds of southern Africa*. Macmillan, Johannesburg. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, COLUMBA, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, PASSER, PSITTACULA, STURNUS, TADORNA
- NORMAN, D.L. undated (c. 1925). *A bird-book for S. African children*. Juta, Cape Town. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- OATLEY, T.B. 1970. House Sparrows mistaken for Great Sparrows. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 187: 1. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, PASSER
- O.F.S. GOLDFIELDS ZONE 1985. *Birds of the Goldfields and Sand River areas of the Orange Free State*, 8 pp. Wildlife Society of Southern Africa. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- PARKER, V. 1983. Birds at Halfway House. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 122: 9, 10. ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER, IDENTIFICATION
- PENZHORN, B.L. & BRONKHORST, P.J.L. 1976. Additions to the check-list of birds of the Mountain Zebra National Park. *Koedoe* 19: 171–174. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, IDENTIFICATION
- PIENAAR, U. DE V. & PROZESKY, O.P.M. 1961. An amended list of the birds of the Kruger National Park. *Koedoe* 4: 117–140. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- PIKE, E.O. 1954. The birds of Blythswood and some notes on birds of the district. *Ostrich* 25: 115–129. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- PIKE, E.O. 1965. The birds of Kobonqaba, Transkei. *South African Avifauna Series* 24: 1–22. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- PLOWES, D.C.H. 1947. The birds of Ladysmith, Natal. *Ostrich* 18: 134–154. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- POOLEY, A.G. & DIXON, J.W.E. 1966. A checklist of the birds occurring in the Ndumu Game Reserve in northern Zululand. *South African Avifauna Series* 39: 1–38. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- PRELLER, I. 1985. Opname van voëls van Nootgedacht, plaas van PU vir CHO. *Hoepheop* 1: 14. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- PRIEST, C.D. 1948. *Eggs of birds breeding in southern Africa*. University Press, Glasgow. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION, PHYSIOLOGY, ACRIDOTHERES, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS

- PROZESKY, O.P.M. 1960. Birds of the Loskop Dam Nature Reserve. *Fauna and Flora* 11: 63–74. A-BIRD, SAVANNA, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- PROZESKY, O.P.M. 1970. *A field guide to the birds of southern Africa*. Collins, London. A-BIRD, SPREAD, FIELD-GUIDE, IDENTIFICATION, ACRIDOTHERES, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS
- PROZESKY, O.P.M. & HAAGNER, C. 1962. A check-list of the birds of the Kalahari Gemsbok Park. *Koedoe* 5: 171–182. A-BIRD, SAVANNA, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- RANDALL, B.M. & RANDALL, R.M. 1984. Land and shore birds at St Croix Island. *Bokmakierie* 36: 51–55. A-BIRD, ISLAND-COASTAL, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- ROBERTS, A. 1940. *The birds of South Africa*. Witherby, London. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, FRINGILLA, PASSER, POICEPHALUS, STURNUS
- ROWAN, M.K. 1983. *The doves, parrots, louries and cuckoos of southern Africa*. Philip, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, IDENTIFICATION, N-BIRD, PARASITISM, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, COLUMBA, PSITTACULA
- SCLATER, W.L. 1905. Check list of the birds of South Africa. *Annals of the South African Museum* 3: 303–387. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS
- SCLATER, W.L. 1906. *The birds of South Africa*, Volume 4. Porter, London. T-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, NUMIDA
- SCLATER, W.L. 1930. *Systema avium aethiopicarum*, Part 2. British Ornithologists' Union, London. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS
- SHEPHARD, J.B. 1962. Checklist of birds of Swartberg District. *South African Avifauna Series* 6: 1–17. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- SHEWELL, L. 1965. *Birds of South Africa*. South African Broadcasting Corporation, Johannesburg. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER, STURNUS
- SIEGFRIED, W.R. 1968. The birds of Jonkershoek, Stellenbosch. *South African Avifauna Series* 54: 1–19. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, ANAS
- SINCLAIR, I. 1984. *Ian Sinclair's field guide to the birds of southern Africa*. Struik, Cape Town. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, FIELD-GUIDE, ACRIDOTHERES, COLUMBA, CORVUS, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, PASSER, PSITTACULA, STURNUS
- SKEAD, C.J. 1964. The birds of King William's Town District. *South African Avifauna Series* 15: 1–70. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- SKEAD, C.J. 1965. Birds of the Albany (Grahamstown) District. *South African Avifauna Series* 30: 1–46. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- SKEAD, D.M. 1965. A revised list of the birds of the Bloemhof District. *South African Avifauna Series* 26: 1–32. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- SKEAD, D.M. 1966. Birds frequenting the intertidal zone of the Cape Peninsula. *Ostrich* 37: 10–16. A-BIRD, INTERTIDAL-AREA, IDENTIFICATION, COLUMBA, STURNUS
- SKEAD, D.M. 1967. Additions and annotations to the list of birds of Weenen County, Natal. *Ostrich* 38: 33–36. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- SKEAD, D.M. 1969. A preliminary list of the birds of the Schweizer-Renecke District, Transvaal. *South African Avifauna Series* 65: 1–18. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- SKEAD, C.J. 1970. King William's Town bird list: additions and amendments. *Ostrich* 41: 264, 265. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS, IDENTIFICATION
- SKEAD, D.M. 1970. A preliminary list of the birds of the Christiana District, Transvaal. *South African Avifauna Series* 67: 1–16. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- SKEAD, D.M. 1970. A preliminary list of the birds of the Wolmaransstad District, Transvaal. *South African Avifauna Series* 69: 1–18. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- SKEAD, C.J. & LIVERSIDGE, R. 1967. Birds of the Tsitsikamma Forest and Coastal National Park, 1966. *Koedoe* 10: 43–62. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- STEYN, P. 1982. *Birds of prey of southern Africa*. Philip, Cape Town. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION, PREDATION, PASSER, STURNUS
- TARBOTON, W.R. 1968. *Checklist of birds of the south central Transvaal*. Johannesburg, Witwatersrand Bird Club. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- TARBOTON, W.R. 1971. Birds of the Mosdene Nature Reserve, Naboomspruit. *South African Avifauna Series* 78: 1–51. A-BIRD, SAVANNA, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- TARBOTON, W.R. 1977. *A checklist of the birds of the Nylsvley Nature Reserve*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 15: 1–14. A-BIRD, SAVANNA, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- TAYLOR, J.S. 1963. The birds of Fort Frederick Port Elizabeth. *Bokmakierie* 15: 15–17. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- TAYLOR, J.S. 1964. The birds of Fort Beaufort and Adelaide, C.P. *South African Avifauna Series* 22: 1–40. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- VAN DER MERWE, N.J. & PIENAAR, D. 1959. A preliminary list of the birds of the Percy Fyfe Nature Reserve. *Ostrich* 30: 130–133. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- VAN DER MERWE, N.J. & WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1959. A list of the birds of the S.A. Lombard Nature Reserve, Bloemhof District. *Ostrich* 30: 73–76. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- VERNON, C.J. 1972. A list of the birds of Bisley Valley, Pietermaritzburg. *South African Avifauna*

- Series 79: 1–23. A-BIRD, SAVANNA, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- VERNON, C.J. 1972. The birds of Scottsville, Pietermaritzburg, Natal. *South African Avifauna Series* 81: 1–22. A-BIRD, URBAN, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- VERNON, C.J. 1972. The birds of Pietermaritzburg, Natal. *South African Avifauna Series* 83: 1–51. A-BIRD, URBAN, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- VON ETZDORF, T.J.R. & WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1967. A list of the birds of Mossel Bay District. *South African Avifauna Series* 44: 1–22. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- VINCENT, J. 1952. *A check list of the birds of South Africa*. South African Ornithological Society, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS
- WEST, O., WRIGHT, F.B. & SYMONS, G. 1964. The birds of Weenen County, Natal. *South African Avifauna Series* 14: 1–50. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1953. *Common birds of the south-east*. Longmans, Cape Town. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1956. Bird list for the De Doorns area from De Wet to the foot of the Hex River Valley. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 37: 4. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1956. Notes on some birds of the cold Bokkeveld, Ceres District. *Ostrich* 27: 18–27. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1957. Birds in the Swellendam area. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 43: 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1962. List of the birds of Swellendam District. *South African Avifauna Series* 5: 1–20. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1962. List of the birds of Worcester District. *South African Avifauna Series* 7: 1–19. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1962. Records from the Hopetown and Carnarvon Districts, Cape. *Ostrich* 33,2: 76, 77. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1962. The birds of Sasmeer Township, Retreat. *Ostrich* 33,2: 43–50. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, URBAN, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1963. A list of the birds of the Clanwilliam District. *South African Avifauna Series* 12: 1–24. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1964. List of the birds of Verkeerdevelei, Touws River. *South African Avifauna Series* 19: 1–11. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1965. A preliminary list of the birds of Hopetown District. *South African Avifauna Series* 27: 1–15. A-BIRD, KAROO, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1965. List of the birds of Robertson District. *South African Avifauna Series* 29: 1–19. A-BIRD, KAROO, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1966. Birds of our islands. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 81: 2. A-BIRD, ISLAND-COASTAL, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1966. List of the birds of Vanrhynsdorp District. *South African Avifauna Series* 35: 1–18. A-BIRD, KAROO, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1966. The birds of the Cape Town Public Gardens. *Ostrich* 37: 130–134. A-BIRD, URBAN, COLUMBA, STURNUS, IDENTIFICATION
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1967. A revised list of the birds of the Bontebok National Park, Swellendam. *Koedoe* 10: 122–131. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1967. *The farmer's birds*. Maskew Miller, Cape Town. A-BIRD, AGRICUTURAL-AREA, IDENTIFICATION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1968. A check list of the land and fresh water birds of the western Cape Province. *Annals of the South African Museum* 53: 1–276. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, FRESHWATER, ECOLOGY, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, FRINGILLA, GALLINULA, NUMIDA, PAROARIA, PASSER, STURNUS, TURDUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. (ed.) 1969. *Check list of the birds of South Africa*. South African Ornithological Society, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1970. A list of the birds of the Richmond District, Cape. *South African Avifauna Series* 68: 1–17. A-BIRD, KAROO, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1970. The birds of the Augrabies Falls National Park. *Koedoe* 13: 171–180. A-BIRD, KAROO, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1972. A list of birds of the Calvinia District. *South African Avifauna Series* 89: 1–20. A-BIRD, KAROO, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1979. *A guide to the birds of the S.W. Cape*. Cape Bird Club, Cape Town. A-BIRD, T-BIRD, FYNBOS, FRESHWATER, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ALECTORIS, ANAS, AYTHYA, CARDUELIS, CYGNUS, EUPLECTES, FRINGILLA, GALLINULA, MELOPSITTACUS, NETTAPUS, NUMIDA, PAROARIA, PASSER, POICEPHALUS, STURNUS, TURDUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1981. *A guide to the birds of the S.W. Cape (revised)*. Cape Bird Club, Cape Town. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, FRESHWATER, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, ALECTORIS, ANAS, AYTHYA, CARDUELIS, CORVUS, CYGNUS, EUPLECTES, FRINGILLA, GALLINULA, MELOPSITTACUS, NETTAPUS, NUMIDA, PAROARIA, PASSER, POICEPHALUS, STURNUS, TURDUS



- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. & COURTENAY-LATIMER, M. 1961. A list of the birds of Little Namaqualand. *South African Avifauna Series 1*: 1–46. A-BIRD, KAROO, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. & COURTENAY-LATIMER, M. 1967. A list of the birds of Little Namaqualand (revised). *South African Avifauna Series 1*: 1–49. A-BIRD, KAROO, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. & UYS, C.J. 1969. *Some birds of the Cape*. Purnell, Cape Town. A-BIRD, IDENTIFICATION, FYNBOS, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. & WINTERBOTTOM, M.C. 1984. Birds of Remhoogte (Prince Albert Division). *Southern birds 12*: 1–32. A-BIRD, KAROO, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WOODWARD, R.B. & WOODWARD, J.D. 1899. *Natal Birds*. Davis, Pietermaritzburg. A-BIRD, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD, AGAPORNIS
- AIRD, R.A. 1982. Redbreasted Wrynecks in the garden. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News 117*: 13, 14. A-BIRD, URBAN, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, ACRIDOTHERES
- ANONYMOUS 1965. House Sparrows and Natal Kingfishers. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet 124*: 3. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, PASSER
- BATEMAN, J.A. 1960. Owl habits from pellets, a review. *Ostrich 31*: 180. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PREDATION, PASSER
- BROOKE, R.K. 1973. The value of introduced birds. *Bokmakierie 25*: 75. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS, ACRIDOTHERES, COLUMBA, CORVUS, STURNUS
- CALDER, D.R. & MCCULLOCH, D. 1962. Birds using other birds' nests. *Natal Bird Club News Letter 85*: 3, 4. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, PASSER
- CAMPBELL, H. 1978. Wattled Plovers mobbed by Indian Mynas. *Albatross 250*: 1, 2. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, ACRIDOTHERES
- CHITTENDEN, H. 1980. Hosts of the Diederik Cuckoo. *Albatross 261*: 6. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PARASITISM, PASSER
- CLANCEY, P.A. 1960. The Indian Myna *Acridotheres tristis* (Linnaeus): is it guilty of driving the indigenous birds away? *Natal Bird Club News Sheet 64*: 1, 2. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, ACRIDOTHERES
- CUNNINGHAM, N. & OATLEY, T.B. 1973. Indian Mynas behaving like Oxpeckers. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet 214*: 1. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, A-MAMMAL, GLEANING, ACRIDOTHERES
- CURTIS, O., MALAN, G., JENKINS, A.R. & MYBURGH, N. 2005. Multiple brooding in birds of prey: South African Black Sparrowhawks extend the boundaries. *Ibis 147*: 11–16. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING
- FARKAS, T. 1966. The birds of Barberspan III. Some structural changes in the avifauna of the Barberspan Nature Reserve. *Ostrich Supplement 6*: 463–491. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, COMPETITION, PASSER
- GILGES, W. & VAN DER SPUIY, A.J. 1945. Indian Mynah responsible for carrying, scabies infection. *Ostrich 16*: 144, 145. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, DISEASE-VECTOR, ACRIDOTHERES
- GRAY, D.A. 1972. Behaviour of Hamerkop and Mynas. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet 78*: 6. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, ACRIDOTHERES
- GRAY, D.A. 1983. Of Barbets, Wrynecks and Mynas. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News 120*: 14. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, ACRIDOTHERES
- HERMANSON, E. 1955. Indian Mynah. Backbackiri Shrike (Bokmakierie). *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet 17*: 4. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, ACRIDOTHERES
- HILL, P. 1985. A swallow, sparrow interlude. *Bee-eater 36*: 15, 16. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, PASSER
- HUNTER, C. 1961. House Sparrow in White-throated Swallow nest. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet 38*: 9. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, PASSER
- LINE, J. 1973. Oxpecking Mynas. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet 215*: 4. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, A-MAMMAL, GLEANING, ACRIDOTHERES
- LIVERSIDGE, R. 1975. Beware the exotic bird. *Bokmakierie 27*: 86. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, ACRIDOTHERES, CORVUS, STURNUS
- MACKENZIE, D. 1980. Two species feeding a Diederik. *Albatross 260*: 3. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PARASITISM, PASSER
- MALHERBE, A. 1962. Birds occupying the nests of others. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet 39*: 6, 7. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, PASSER
- MARTIN, J. 1965. Cliff Swallows and their tenants. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter 79*: 3. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, PASSER
- MASTERSON, A.N.B. 1976. Possible competition of House Sparrow to the detriment of the Cape Wagtail. *Honeyguide 85*: 48. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, COMPETITION, PASSER
- MCCULLOCH, D. 1962. House Sparrow using nests of Lesser Striped Swallow. *Albatross 85*: 4. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, PASSER
- MCCULLOCH, D. 1965. Indian Mynas vs. Black-collared Barbets. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet 127*: 4. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, ACRIDOTHERES
- MILSTEIN, P. LE S. 1979. The evolutionary significance of wild hybridization in South African highveld ducks. *Ostrich Supplement 13*: 1–48. A-BIRD, INVASION, IMPACT, HYBRIDIZATION, ANAS
- MULLARD, F. 1953. House Sparrow taken by Shrike. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet 18*: 1. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PREDATION, PASSER
- PAGE, N. & OATLEY, T.B. 1979. Indian Mynas feeding on ticks. *Lammergeyer 27*: 50. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, A-MAMMAL, GLEANING, ACRIDOTHERES



- PARKER, V. 1985. Little Swifts utilizing Swallow nests. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 131: 2. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, PASSER
- PATTEN, G.H. 1957. House Sparrows occupying Lesser Striped Swallow's nest. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 23: 6. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, PASSER
- PIKE, E.O. 1977. House Sparrow feeding young Grey-headed Sparrow. *Diaz Diary* 43: 10, 11. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PARASITISM, PASSER
- ROUILLARD, A. 1968. Lesser Honeyguide and House Sparrows. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 162: 3. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PARASITISM, PASSER
- SENOGLES, J. & MOWAT, C. 1979. More birds feeding off animals. *Albatross* 255: 2. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, A-MAMMAL, GLEANING, ACRIDOTHERES
- SHARP, A. 1976. Indian Mynas as hosts to Great Spotted Cuckoo. *Albatross* 242: 3. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PARASITISM, ACRIDOTHERES
- SIEGFRIED, W.R. 1967. Indian Mynas on backs of elands. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 150: 6. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-MAMMAL, GLEANING, ACRIDOTHERES
- SISSON, J.J.L. 1952. House Sparrow taken by hawk. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 15: 1. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PREDATION, PASSER
- SKEAD, C.J. 1956. Prey of the Barn Owl. *Ostrich* 27: 148. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PREDATION, PASSER
- STEYN, P. 1968. Mercy killing? *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 63: 5. A-BIRD, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PREDATION, PASSER
- SYMONS, G. 1962. Indian Mynah host to cuckoo. *African Wildlife* 16: 343. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PARASITISM, ACRIDOTHERES
- SYMONS, G. 1978. Great Spotted Cuckoo parasitizing Indian Myna. *Albatross* 249: 2, 3. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, PARASITISM, ACRIDOTHERES
- TALJAARD, F.D. & ANDERSON, M.D. 1994. Violent hailstorm kills 357 Lesser Kestrels. *Gabar* 9,1: 28, 29. A-WOODY PLANT, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, ROOSTING
- VAN DER MERWE, F. 1984. Europese Spreeus verdring Gryskopspegte. *African Wildlife* 38: 152–157. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, STURNUS
- VAN NIEROP, F. 1959. House Sparrows vs. Little Swifts. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 31: 9. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING, PASSER
- ANONYMOUS 1906. Destructive birds. *Transvaal Agricultural Journal* 5: 263. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, STURNUS
- ANONYMOUS 1957. To talk of many things. *Eastern Province Herald*, 10 January 1957: 6. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, CYGNUS
- ANONYMOUS 1959. Mystery Swans an E.P. legend. *Eastern Province Herald*, 17 February 1959: 1. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, CYGNUS
- ANONYMOUS 1968. Thames Swans thrive. *Eastern Province Herald*, 29 November 1968: 12. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, CYGNUS
- BIGALKE, R.C. 1964. Indian Mynas (*Acridotheres tristis*) in Kimberley. *Ostrich* 35: 60. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ACRIDOTHERES
- BLAKE, E. 1975. The European Shelduck first recorded occurrence in the southern hemisphere. *Bokmakierie* 27,2: 15, 16. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, TADORNA
- BOSMAN, A.L. 1985. Introduced birds in the south western Cape. *Junior Promerops* 4: J2, J3. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, PASSER
- BOSMAN, A.L. 1985. Introduced birds in the south western Cape. *Junior Promerops* 3: J3, J4. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INTRODUCTION, STURNUS
- BOWLES. 1966. Wild Budgerigars at Umbogintwini. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 134: 2. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION INVASION, SPREAD, MELOPSITTACUS
- BROOKE, R.K. 1980. A Blue Tit and a Chaffinch reach Cape Town. *Promerops* 146: 4. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, FRINGILLA, PARUS
- BROOKE, R.K. 1981. The feral Pigeon—a 'new' bird for the South African list. *Bokmakierie* 33: 37–40. A-BIRD, INVASION, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, COLUMBA
- BROOKE, R.K. 1984. A history of the Redeyed Dove in the southwestern Cape Province, South Africa. *Ostrich* 55: 12–16. T-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, STREPTOPELIA
- BROOKE, R.K. 1986. An apparent introduction of the Greenrumped Parrotlet to Natal. *Albatross* 285: 14. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, FORPUS
- BUTLER, E.A. 1903. Goldfinch (*Carduelis elegans*) in South Africa. *Zoologist Series* 4 Volume 7: 227, 228. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CARDUELIS
- COURTENAY-LATIMER, M. 1942. Letter to editor on introduced Sparrows at East London. *Ostrich* 13: 181. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, PASSER
- COURTENAY-LATIMER, M. 1955. The English Sparrow at East London. *Bokmakierie* 7: 32. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, PASSER
- D'EVELYN, F. 1908. The English Sparrow question. *Journal of the South African Ornithologists' Union* 4: 131, 132. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, PASSER
- DISTANT, W.L. 1903. Goldfinch (*Carduelis elegans*) in South Africa. *Zoologist Series* 4, Volume 7: 432. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CARDUELIS
- DONNELLY, B.G. 1966. First arrival of the House Sparrow at Port Elizabeth. *Bee-eater* 17,4: 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, PASSER, INTRODUCTION
- FINN, F. 1907. *Ornithological and other oddities*. Lane, London. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CARDUELIS
- FULLER, C. 1909. The English Sparrow. *Natal Agricultural Journal* 7,1: 76–80. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, PASSER
- GODFREY, R. 1934. Alien birds in South Africa. *Blythwood Review* 11: 57, 58. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD,

- ACRIDOTHERES, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS, TURDUS
- HARWIN, R.M. 1952. Birds introduced into the Transvaal. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 3: 1. [Republished in 1984 *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 127: 10.] A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- HOWARD, C.W. 1907. Introduction of English Starling. *Journal of the South African Ornithologists' Union* 3: 140, 141. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, PASSER, STURNUS
- LE SUEUR, G. 1913. *Cecil Rhodes, the man and his work*. Murray, London. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, CORVUS, DROMAIUS, FRINGILLA, LUSCINIA, STURNUS, TURDUS
- LIVERSIDGE, R. 1979. Birds naturalised in South Africa. *Bokmakierie* 31: 43, 44. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, ALECTORIS, ANAS, CORVUS, CYGNUS, PASSER, STURNUS
- LIVERSIDGE, R. 1985. Alien bird species introduced into South Africa. In L.J. Bunning (ed.), *Proceedings of the Symposium on Birds and Man, Johannesburg 1983*, pp. 31–34. Witwatersrand Bird Club, Johannesburg. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, AGAPORNIS, ALECTORIS, AMANDAVA, ANAS, ARATINGA, AYTHYA, CACATUA, CARDUELIS, COLINUS, COLUMBA, CORVUS, CYGNUS, FALCO, FRINGILLA, FULICA, GALLINULA, GALLUS, GEOPHELIA, LOPHURA, LUSCINIA, MELOPSITTACUS, NANDAYUS, NUMIDA, NYMPHICUS, PADDA, PAROARIA, PASSER, PAVO, PHASIANUS, POICEPHALUS, PSITTACULA, STREPTOPELIA, STRUTHIO, STURNUS, TADORNA, TURDUS
- LONG, J.L. 1981. *Introduced birds of the world*, 528 pp. David & Charles, Newton Abbot. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, AGAPORNIS, ALECTORIS, ANAS, CARDUELIS, COLINUS, COLUMBA, CORVUS, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, GALLUS, LOPHORTYX, LUSCINIA, MELOPSITTACUS, NUMIDA, PAROARIA, PASSER, POICEPHALUS, PSITTACULA, STREPTOPELIA, STURNUS, TURDUS
- MEINERTZHAGEN, R. 1952. An historical note on the starling *Sturnus vulgaris* at the Cape of Good Hope. *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 72: 47. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, STURNUS
- PATTEN, G.H. 1983. A new bird for the southern African avifaunal list. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 121: 13, 14. A-BIRD, INVASION, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, AYTHYA
- SINCLAIR, J.C. 1974. Arrival of the House Crow in Natal. *Ostrich* 45: 189. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, CORVUS
- SINCLAIR, J.C. 1980. House Crow in Cape Town. *Promerops* 144: 7, 8. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, URBAN, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, CORVUS
- SKEAD, C.J. 1961. Chaffinch, *Fringilla coelebs* Kenton-on-Sea. *Ostrich* 32: 189. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, FRINGILLA
- SKEAD, C.J. 1962. A study of the Crowned Guinea Fowl *Numida meleagris coronata* Gurney. *Ostrich* 33,2: 51–65. T-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, NUMIDA
- SCHMIDT, R.K. 1964. New birds in our area. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 73: 2, 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, PASSER
- SCHMIDT, R.K. 1965. More European Sparrow records. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 78: 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, PASSER
- SCHMIDT, R.K. 1965. House Sparrow *Passer domesticus* and Little Swift *Apus affinis* in the Cape Peninsula. *Ostrich* 36: 135, 136. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, INVASION, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, PASSER
- VINCENT, J. 1972. A new addition to the list of South African birds. *Ostrich* 43: 234, 235. A-BIRD, INVASION, INTRODUCTION, SPREAD, PSITTACULA
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1956. Goldfinches in the Transvaal? *Bokmakierie* 8: 19. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CARDUELIS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1956. Red-eyed Dove in the western Cape. *Ostrich* 27: 184. T-BIRD, FYNBOS, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, STREPTOPELIA
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1959. Red-eyed Dove in western Cape. *Ostrich* 30: 88. T-BIRD, FYNBOS, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, STREPTOPELIA
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1962. Gough Island Coot in South Africa. *Ostrich* 33,2: 73, 74. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, GALLINULA
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1972. Admission of alien species to the southern African bird list. *Bokmakierie* 24: 24. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, ALECTORIS, COLUMBA, CYGNUS, FRINGILLA, MELOPSITTACUS, PADDA, PASSER, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. & LIVERSIDGE, R. 1954. The European Starling in the south west Cape. *Ostrich* 25: 89–96. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, STURNUS
- WOODWARD, R.B. & WOODWARD, J.D. S 1875. Notes on the natural history of South Africa. *Zoologist Series 2 Volume 10*: 4549–4553. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, FORPUS
- AGAR, B.S. 1977. Parakeets in Durban. *Albatross* 243: 2. A-BIRD, URBAN, INVASION, PSITTACULA
- ANDERSON, N. 1953. Birds seen on the farm Klu Klu, Fort Beaufort. *Bee-eater* 4,2: 7. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- ANONYMOUS 1951. Cape Bird Club. *Bokmakierie* 3: 42–44. A-BIRD, FRINGILLA
- ANONYMOUS 1954. Eastern Cape Wild Birds Society. *Bokmakierie* 6: 21. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- ANONYMOUS 1955. Pretoria Bird Club. *Bokmakierie* 7: 43, 44. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- ANONYMOUS 1972. Where have the Swans gone, they ask. *Eastern Province Herald* 12 June 1972: 4. A-BIRD, CYGNUS, INVASION
- ARNADE, J. 1978. New-comers to Rivonia. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 101: 4. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, MELOPSITTACUS, PAROARIA

- ARNOTT, A. & BROOKE, R.K. 1974. Mynas and their relatives. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 224: 3, 4. A-BIRD, ACRIDOTHERES, STURNUS
- ASHTON, E.H. 1945. Notes on the birds of Hermanus. *Ostrich* 16: 157–168. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- ASHTON, E.H. 1957. Sixth ringing report. *Ostrich* 28: 98–115. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- BENNETT, G. 1973. Indian House Crows. *Bokmakierie* 25: 107. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, CORVUS
- BENNETT, G. 1978. Is the House Crow extinct in the Durban area. *Albatross* 252: 8. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, CORVUS
- BENNETT, J.M. 1974. Moments in the Kruger National Park. *Diaz Diary* 14: 7–11. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- BERRUTI, A. 1973. Recent sightings of Indian House Crows. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 215: 4. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, CORVUS
- BERRUTI, A. 1973. More on the Indian House Crows. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 219: 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, CORVUS
- BERRUTI, A. 1973. Latest on Indian House Crows. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 223: 4. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, CORVUS
- BERRY, G.F. & DAY, D. 1970. House Sparrow (784). *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 72: 14. A-BIRD, PASSER, INVASION
- BIERMAN, G.W. & BROEKHUYSEN, G.J. 1965. More European Sparrow records. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 78: 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- BLEKSLEY, C. 1983. European Starlings and Indian Mynas. *Albatross* 273: 10. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, STURNUS
- BLIGNAUT, J. 1958. European Starling *Sturnus vulgaris* at Uniondale. *Ostrich* 29: 49. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- BOON, R. 1985. Call for help—Indian Mynas. *Albatross* 284: 6. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- BRANDT, H.D. 1953. House Sparrows. *Bokmakierie* 5: 38. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- BRANDT, H.D. 1967. Indian Myna. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 59. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- BROMLEY, F.C. 1952. Short records and notes. *Ostrich* 23: 131, 132. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- BROOKE, R.K. 1959. Avian highlights of a journey across southern Africa. *Ostrich* 30: 82, 83. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- BROOKE, R.K. 1986. *Bibliography of alien birds in southern and south-central Africa*. Ecosystem Programmes Occasional Report 14. CSIR, Pretoria. A-BIRD, BIBLIOGRAPHY, INVASION
- BROOKE, R.K. 1975. Records of non-pelagic birds from Durban to supplement the data in Lawson's 1971 list. *Albatross* 233: 4, 5. A-BIRD, COLUMBA, INVASION
- BROOKE, R.K., COLAHAN, B.D., SKEAD, C.J. & NEVILL, H. 1973. European Starling *Sturnus vulgaris*. In *New Distributional Data*: 4. *Ostrich* 44: 131, 132. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- BROOKE, R.K. & SINCLAIR, J.C. 1976. An American Black Duck in Durban. *Ostrich* 47,1: 67, 68. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ANAS
- BROWN, A.R. 1959. Ringing report. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 53: 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- BROWN, D.M.V. 1969. House Sparrow *Passer domesticus*. In *New Distributional Data*: 2. *Ostrich* 40: 132. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- BULLEN, J. 1983. Vagrants. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 123: 12. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- BUNNING, L.J. 1977. Birds of the Melville Koppies Nature Reserve. *Southern Birds* 3: 1–58. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- BURTON, R. 1938. Bird life at Onrust River, in the District of Caledon, Cape Province. *Ostrich* 9: 1–12. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- CABLE, W.H. 1970. Ring-neck Parakeets. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 70: 16. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PSITTACULA
- CALDER, D.R. 1953. The distribution of the Indian Myna. *Bokmakierie* 5: 4–6. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- CALDER, D.R. 1953. Notes on Natal birds. *Natal Bird Club News Letter* 23: 1. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- CALDER, D.R. 1957. Indian Mynas at Dundee. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 52: 1. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- CALDER, D.R. 1958. *Psittacula krameri* in Durban. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 57: 1. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PSITTACULA
- CAPE PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION 1957–1976. *Department of Nature Conservation*. Report Nos. 14–32. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ANAS, CYGNUS, TADORNA
- CARDWELL, P. 1965. Indian Mynah (R. 734). *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 52: 7. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- CARR, A. 1982. Indian Mynahs. *Laniarius* 17: 10. A-BIRD, ACRIDOTHERES
- CHITTENDEN, H. 1983. A tip for House Sparrows. *Albatross* 272: 4. A-BIRD, INVASION, PASSER
- CLANCEY, P.A. 1963. The House Sparrow on the Atlantic seaboard of the Cape. *Ostrich* 34: 168. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- CLANCEY, P.A. 1966. The Indian Myna (*Acridotheres tristis*). *Bokmakierie* 18: 37. A-BIRD, ACRIDOTHERES, INVASION
- CLANCEY, P.A. 1974. The Indian House Crow in Natal. *Ostrich* 45: 31, 32. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, CORVUS
- CLANCEY, P.A. 1976. Roseringed Parakeet in Natal and Zululand. *Albatross* 241: 5. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PSITTACULA
- CLARK, A. 1977. Review of the records of three Palaearctic ducks in southern Africa. *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 97: 107–114. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ANAS
- CLARK, A. 1983. Mallard at Rondebult. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 122: 18. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ANAS

- CLARK, A. 1985. Wildfowl at Zoo Lake, Johannesburg. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 131: 8. A-BIRD, IMPOUNDMENT, AIX, ANAS, CAIRINA
- CLARKE, M.J. 1964. The Kromme River Swans. *Eastern Cape Naturalist* 22: 28. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, CYGNUS
- CLARKE, M.J. 1967. The Kromme River Swans. *Eastern Cape Naturalist* 30: 23. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, CYGNUS
- CLINNING, M.C. 1955. English House-sparrows breeding at Sandown. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 15: 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- COLE, D.T. 1958. House Sparrows in Mafeking, C.P. *Ostrich* 29: 87. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- COLE, D.T. 1962. House Sparrows in northern Cape and Bechuanaland Protectorate. *Ostrich* 33,3: 54, 55. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- CONNOR, M.A. 1972. House Sparrows and Chaffinches. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 101: 2. A-BIRD, FRINGILLA, PASSER, INVASION
- COOKE, C.K. 1974. Letters. *Bokmakierie* 26: 53. A-BIRD, STURNUS, INVASION
- CORNISH, J. 1981. Indian Myna. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 115: 19. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- COWGILL, R. 1973. Indian House Crows in Pietermaritzburg? *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 221: 1. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, CORVUS, PASSER
- CRAIB, C.L. 1968. Mynas in Bryanston. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 63: 11. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- CRAIB, C.L. 1969. European Starlings in Grahamstown. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 65: 5. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- CROLY, V. 1982. Indian Myna in the eastern Cape. *Diaz Diary* 111: 11. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- CROWE, D.W. 1965. House Sparrow *Passer domesticus* (L.) at Plettenberg Bay. *Ostrich* 36: 99. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- CULLEN, B. 1980. Chinese Mandarins visit Johannesburg's Zoo Lake. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 111: 8, 9. A-BIRD, IMPOUNDMENT, INVASION, SPREAD, AIX
- CULLEN, B. 1981. Chinese Mandarins at Florence Bloom Garden. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 115: 9. A-BIRD, IMPOUNDMENT, INVASION, SPREAD, AIX
- CURRIE, D., PATTEN, G. & SCOTT-SMITH, G. 1955. Migrants who have come to stay. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 15: 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- CUTHBERTSON, M.B. 1952. Meet the Mynahs. *African Wildlife* 6: 64-66. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- CYRUS, D. & MCCOSH, R. 1984. European Starling at Kokstad and Matatiele. *Albatross* 280: 8. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- CYRUS, D. & ROBSON, N. 1980. *Birds atlas of Natal*. University of Natal Press, Pietermaritzburg. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER, PSITTACULA, STURNUS
- CYRUS, D. & ROBSON, N. 1984. Pending invasion into Natal of European Starlings. *Albatross* 275: 4. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- DANEEL, A.B. 1967. Indian Mynas. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 57. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- DANIELS, T.S. 1954. House Sparrow in eastern Cape. *Ostrich* 25: 37, 38. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- DAY, D.H. 1970. Ring-neck Parakeet. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 72: 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PSITTACULA
- DAY, D.H. 1981. Indian Myna: request for information. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 114: 13. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- DAY, D.H. 1983. Indian Myna (R. 734) project. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 123: 7. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- DAY, D.H. 1983. Tufted Duck (R. -) in South Africa. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 123: 11. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, AYTHYA
- DEAN, W.R.J. 1969. A checklist of the birds of Benoni. *South African Avifauna Series* 64: 1-17. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- DONNELLY, B.G. 1974. House Sparrow *Passer domesticus*. In New Distributional Data: 5. *Ostrich* 45: 137, 138. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- DU TOIT, K. 1983. Some observations at Parys. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 122: 17. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- ECKLEY, R. & ECKLEY, J. 1964. House Sparrow (*Passer domesticus*) in Uniondale. *Ostrich* 35: 62. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- ELLIOT, C.C.H. & JARVIS, M.J.F. 1970. Fourteenth ringing report. *Ostrich* 40: 1-117. A-BIRD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- ELLIOT, C.C.H. & JARVIS, M.J.F. 1972. Fifteenth ringing report. Part 1. *Ostrich* 43: 236-239. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- ELLIOT, C.C.H. & JARVIS, M.J.F. 1973. Fifteenth ringing report. Part 2. *Ostrich* 44: 34-78. A-BIRD, INVASION, ACRIDOTHERES, CYGNUS, PASSER, STURNUS
- EVERY, B. 1972. House Sparrows on Bird Island, Algoa Bay. *Ostrich* 43: 131, 132. A-BIRD, ISLAND-COASTAL, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- FARKAS, T. 1962. Contribution to the bird fauna of Barberspan. *Ostrich Supplement* 4: 1-39. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- FERGUSON, W.T. & TONGUE, P. 1968. Chaffinches. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 86: 2. A-BIRD, FRINGILLA
- FITZSIMONS, F.W. 1907. New records from Port Elizabeth. *Journal of the South African Ornithologists' Union* 3: 143. T-BIRD/A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, POICEPHALUS
- FORSYTH, E. 1985. Notes from Melville Koppies. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 130: 2, 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- FRASER, N. 1982. Some birds of Randburg Ridge. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 116: 6. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER

- FRASER, W. 1973. Indian Myna, *Acridotheres tristis* (R 734). *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 82: 4. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- FREER, J. 1956. House Sparrow. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 19: 4. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- FREER, J. 1978. Garden records. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 103: 6. A-BIRD, URBAN, PAROARIA
- FROST, P.G.H. 1967. European Starlings *Sturnus vulgaris* at Beaufort West. *Ostrich* 38,3: 206. A-BIRD, KAROO, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- GEBHARDT, E. 1944. *Passer d. domesticus* in Suedafrika. *Ornithologische Monatsberichte* 52: 54, 55. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- GEBHARDT, E. 1954. Die gegenwaertige Verbreitung von Haussperling, Star und Buchfink im Suedafrika. *Journal fuer Ornithologie* 95: 58–60. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS
- GEBHARDT, E. 1959. Europaeische Voegel in ueberseeischen Laendem. *Bonner Zoologische Beitrage* 10: 310–341. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, FRINGILLA, PASSER, STURNUS
- GERHART, J.D. 1976. Indian Myna *Acridotheres tristis*. In New Distributional Data: 7. *Ostrich* 47: 222. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- GILL, E.L. 1952. Comments on the September News Sheet. *Cape Bird Club News Sheet* 11: 2, 3. A-BIRD, FRINGILLA, TURDUS
- GILL, E.L. 1952. The European Starling in the Cape. *Ostrich* 23: 129, 130. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- GODFREY, R. 1930. The Indian Mynah. *Blythwood Review* 7: 117, 118. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- GODFREY, R. 1930. The English Sparrow in Natal. *Blythwood Review* 7: 118. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- GODFREY, R. 1931. Sparrows. *Blythwood Review* 8: 99. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- GODFREY, R. 1931. My first visit to Natal. *Blythwood Review* 8: 117, 118. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- GODFREY, R. 1932. Nature study. *Blythwood Review* 9: 45, 46. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- GODFREY, R. 1932. Birds of the eastern Cape Province. *Blythwood Review* 9: 88. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- GODFREY, R. 1932. By the Umgeni River. *Blythwood Review* 9: 105, 106. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- GODFREY, R. 1933. Beyond Blythwood bounds. *Blythwood Review* 10: 105, 106. A-BIRD, FRINGILLA, STURNUS
- GODFREY, R. 1933. Current bird notes from East London. *Blythwood Review* 10: 117, 118. T-BIRD/ A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, POICEPHALUS
- GOODWIN, D. 1957. Cape Rock Pigeon *Columba guinea*. *Ostrich* 28: 239. A-BIRD, COLUMBA
- GOTTSCHALK, H. 1972. Chaffinches and other birds. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 102: 3. A-BIRD, FRINGILLA
- GRAY, D.A. 1982. A bald female. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 118: 2. A-BIRD, MORPHOLOGY, ACRIDOTHERES
- GRAY, D.A. 1983. Our first Bald Indian Myna (R. 734). *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 121: 6. A-BIRD, MORPHOLOGY, ACRIDOTHERES
- GRAY, D.A. 1983. Garden birds. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 122: 6. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, COLUMBA, PASSER
- GREGORY, A. 1975. European Mallard. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 119: 4, 5. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ANAS
- GREMUES, R.J. & DA FONSECA, A.H. 1953. House Sparrows. *Bokmakierie* 5: 8. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- HAAGNER, C. & LAST, J. 1960. Distribution of House Sparrows. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 35: 6. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- HALL, D.G. 1983. Birds of Matabaffin, eastern Transvaal. *Southern Birds* 10: 1–53. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- HARWIN, R.M. 1960. House Sparrow in the eastern Cape. *Ostrich* 31: 27. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- HARWIN, R.M., BROMLEY, F.C., FREER, J., LAST, J., GRABANDT, C. & REED, R.A. 1952. House Sparrow *Passer domesticus*. *Ostrich* 23: 136. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- HARWIN, R.M. & IRWIN, M.P.S. 1966. The spread of the House Sparrow, *Passer domesticus*, in south-central Africa. *Arnoldia (Rhodesia)* 2,24: 1–17. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- HATTINGH, R. 1985. Observations from a Pinelands garden. *Promerops* 167: 7. A-BIRD, URBAN, STURNUS, INVASION
- HAWKINS, P. 1985. The Indian Myna. *Albatross* 283: 9. A-BIRD, ACRIDOTHERES, INVASION
- HOBIAH, H. 1972. New arrivals in Witkoppen. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 80: 4. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- HOGG, B. 1982. Chaffinch in Tokai Forest. *Promerops* 153: 5. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, FRINGILLA
- HOOGSTEDEN, C. 1962. Lesser Masked Weavers and other birds near Pietermaritzburg. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 93: 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- HOPCROFT, C. 1977. Field Cards. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 97: 2, 3. T-BIRD, PLOCEUS
- HORLEY, R. 1979. In short field notes. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 105: 13. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PAROARIA
- HUGHES, D.A. 1966. Avifauna of the Barberton District, eastern Transvaal. *South African Avifauna Series* 40: 1–14. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- HUNTER, C. 1961. Indian Mynah south of Johannesburg. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 38: 6. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- HUNTER, C. 1965. Indian Mynah (R. 734). *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 51: 7. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- HUNTER, C. 1972. Indian Mynah, *Acridotheres tristis* (R. 734). *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 80: 12. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES



- JACOT GUILLARMOD, C. 1960. European Starling *Sturnus vulgaris* in Grahamstown. *Ostrich* 31: 173. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- JONES, E.M. 1954. House Sparrow recorded from Port Alfred. *Ostrich* 25: 41. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- KENT, C.C. 1927. The Indian Myna. *South African Journal of Natural History* 6: 127–129. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- KIRK, S.W. 1984. European Starlings in Matatiele. *Albatross* 279: 7. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, STURNUS
- KNOCK, I., PRINGLE, S. & MARTIN, R. 1976. Chaffinch. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 125: 3. A-BIRD, FRINGILLA, INVASION
- KOCH, H.J. 1943. Record of the birds found on and near Paardevlei, Somerset-West, Cape. *Ostrich* 14: 152–157. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- KOKOT, D.F. 1951. Kromme River's mystery Swans. *Bokmakierie* 3: 80. A-BIRD, CYGNUS, INVASION
- LANGLEY, C.H. 1975. *24th annual report on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the year 1975*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- LANGLEY, C.H. 1976. *25th annual report on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the year 1976*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- LANGLEY, C.H. 1977. *26th annual report on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the year 1977*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- LANGLEY, C.H. 1978. *An introduction to the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary with check lists of birds and other animals recorded since 1952*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- LANGLEY, C.H. 1979. *28th annual report on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the year 1979*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- LANGLEY, C.H. 1980. *The warden's 29th annual report on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the year 1980*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- LANGLEY, C.H. 1981. *The warden's 30th annual report on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- LANGLEY, C.H. 1982. *The warden's 31st annual report on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the year 1982*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- LANGLEY, C.H. 1983. *The warden's 32nd annual report on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the year 1983*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- LANGLEY, C.H. 1984. *The warden's 33rd annual report on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the year 1984*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- LAWRENCE, A.H. 1959. House Sparrows at Fraserburg. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 51: 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- LAWSON, W.J. 1961. On the distributions of some Parrots in southern Africa. *Ostrich* 32: 90, 91. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, AGAPORNIS, POICEPHALUS
- LAWSON, W.J. 1967. Some notes on a visit to 'Twinstreams' *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 145: 1, 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- LEDGER, J. 1974. European Mallard at Austin Roberts Bird Sanctuary. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 86: 7. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ANAS
- LIPPA, F. 1974. European Mallard at Austin Roberts Bird Sanctuary, Pretoria. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 86: 7. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ANAS
- LIVERSIDGE, R. 1953. European Starlings near George. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 16: 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- LIVERSIDGE, R. 1962. The spread of the European Starling in the eastern Cape. *Ostrich* 33,3: 13–16. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- LOCKHART, P. & CLARKE, S. 1983. Mallard at Rietvlei. *Promerops* 160: 13. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ANAS
- LONGRIGG, T.D. 1981. Indian Mynah in Milnerton. *Promerops* 151: 6. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- LOOCK, J.C. 1985. Birds in Bloemfontein. *Mirafra* 2,2: 5. A-BIRD, URBAN, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 1983. How the Pied Barbet *Lybius leucomelas* invaded the Fynbos of the south west Cape. *Promerops* 160: 10–12. A-WOODY PLANT, FYNBOS, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIRD, NESTING
- MACLEAN, G.L. 1955. House Sparrows spreading into Basutoland. *Ostrich* 26: 46. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MACLEAN, G.L. 1962. House Sparrow *Passer domesticus* at Van Rhynsdorp. *Ostrich* 33,2: 76. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MALHERBE, A. 1963. Indian Mynah in Pretoria. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 43: 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- MALHERBE, A.D. 1966. Records of the House Sparrow and Black Harrier. *Bokmakierie* 18: 24. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MANDELZWEIG, G. 1984. A visit to the operational area. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 127: 14. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MANDELZWEIG, G. 1985. Pilanesberg Nature Reserve. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 130: 16. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MARKUS, M. 1960. Some records of the House Sparrow *Passer domesticus* in the Orange Free State and the Cape Province. *Ostrich* 31: 106. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MCCAUSELAND, D.E. 1952. Exotic species at the Cape. *Cape Bird Club News Sheet* 9: 2. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, FRINGILLA, TURDUS
- MCCULLOCH, D. 1966. The Indian Myna moves south. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 140: 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- MCCULLOCH, D. 1967. Indian Myna at Port St Johns. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 146: 4. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES



- MCCULLOCH, D. 1968. Indian Myna: extension of range. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 162: 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- MCCULLOCH, D. & OATLEY, T.B. 1969. Indian Mynah *Acridotheres tristis*. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 173: 4. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- MCCULLOCH, D. & OATLEY, T.B. 1970. Status of the Indian Myna in Zululand. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 185: 1. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- MCCULLOCH, D., SKEAD, C.J. & WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1970. The birds of Port St Johns. *South African Avifauna Series* 71: 1–34. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- MCLACHLAN, G.R. 1955. European Starling seen in Port Elizabeth. *Ostrich* 26: 157. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- MCLACHLAN, G.R. 1961. Seventh ringing report. *Ostrich* 32: 36–47. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- MCLACHLAN, G.R. 1962. Eighth ringing report. *Ostrich* 33,3: 29–37. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- MCLACHLAN, G.R. 1963. Ninth ringing report. *Ostrich* 34: 102–109. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- MCLACHLAN, G.R. 1964. Tenth ringing report. *Ostrich* 35: 101–109. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- MCLACHLAN, G.R. 1965. Eleventh ringing report. *Ostrich* 36: 214–223. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- MCLACHLAN, G.R. 1967. Twelfth ringing report. *Ostrich* 38: 17–26. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- MCLACHLAN, G.R. 1969. Thirteenth ringing report. *Ostrich* 40: 37–50. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- MCLACHLAN, G.R. 1980. House Crow at Milnerton. *Promerops* 146: 4. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, CORVUS
- MENDELSON, H.P. & MENDELSON, J.M. 1969. List of the birds of Warmbaths, Transvaal. *South African Avifauna Series* 66: 1–42. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- MENDELSON, J. 1981. Those city Pigeons. *Albatross* 264: 9. A-BIRD, URBAN, INVASION, SPREAD, COLUMBA
- MEYER, E. 1970. Indian Myna at Harding. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 179: 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- MIDDLEMISS, E. 1960. *Ninth annual report by the Director of Nature Reserves for the year 1960*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- MIDDLEMISS, E. 1961. *Annual report on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary and the Cape of Good Hope Nature Reserve for the year 1961*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- MIDDLEMISS, E. 1962. *Annual report on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary and the Cape of Good Hope Nature Reserve for the year 1962*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- MIDDLEMISS, E. 1964. *Annual reports on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the years 1963 and 1964*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- MIDDLEMISS, E. 1965. *Annual report on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the year 1965*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- MIDDLEMISS, E. 1967. *Annual reports on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the years 1966 and 1967*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- MIDDLEMISS, E. 1969. *The 17th and 18th annual reports on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the years 1968 and 1969*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- MIDDLEMISS, E. 1970. *The 19th annual report on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the year 1970*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- MIDDLEMISS, E. 1972. *The 20th and 21st annual reports on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the years 1971 & 1972*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- MIDDLEMISS, E. 1974. *Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- MIDDLEMISS, E. 1974. *The 23rd annual report on the Rondevlei Bird Sanctuary for the year 1974*. Divisional Council of the Cape, Cape Town. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- MORGAN, H.K. 1958. House Sparrow *Passer domesticus*. *Ostrich* 29: 87. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MORPHEW, J. 1971. House Sparrow *Passer domesticus*. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 192: 4. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- MOWAT, C. 1980. Large numbers of House Crows. *Albatross* 260: 4. A-BIRD, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CORVUS
- MULLARD, F. 1957. Indian Mynahs in Dundee. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 52: 1. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- MURRAY, J. & MURRAY, N. 1984. Ringnecked Parakeet in Cape Town. *Promerops* 164: 17. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PSITTACULA
- NEVILL, H. 1973. Indian Mynah *Acridotheres tristis*. In *New Distributional Data*: 4. *Ostrich* 44: 132. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- NEVILL, H. & OATLEY, T.B. 1971. European Starling *Sturnus vulgaris* in the Transkei. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 201: 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, STURNUS
- NEVILL, H. & SKEAD, C.J. 1957. Indian Mynah at Umzimkulu. *Border and Transkei* 14: 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- NEVILL, H. & SKEAD, C.J. 1957. House Sparrow in Kokstad. *Border and Transkei* 15: 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- NEWMAN, K. 1968. House Sparrows at Glenn Ridge Flats, Johannesburg. *Witwatersrand Bird Club*

- News Sheet* 64: 8. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- NEWMAN, K. 1973. Birds in Witkoppen. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 81: 13. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- NEWMAN, K. 1976. Indian Myna, *Acridotheres tristis* (R. 734). *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 94: 4. A-BIRD, ACRIDOTHERES
- NEWMAN, K. 1982. Redbilled Firefinch (R. 837) in Sandton. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 119: 5. T-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, LAGONOSTICTA
- NICOLE, J. & AARTS, E. 1982. Interesting records from Injasuti, Drakensberg. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 117: 8. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- NIETHAMMER, G. 1971. Some problems connected with the House Sparrow's colonisation of the world. *Ostrich Supplement* 8: 445–448. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- OATLEY, T.B. 1971. Indian Myna at East London. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 201: 2, 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- OATLEY, T.B. 1973. Indian House Crow—first S.A. sightings. *Bokmakierie* 25: 41, 42. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, CORVUS, PSITTACULA
- OATLEY, T.B. 1973. The Indian House Crow *Corvus splendens* in Durban. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 213: 1, 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, CORVUS
- PALMER, E. 1966. *The plains of Camdeboo*. Collins, London. A-BIRD, CYGNUS, PASSER
- PARKER, R. 1974. Indian House Crows. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 230: 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, CORVUS
- PARKER, R. 1980. Pelagic Indian Mynas. *Albatross* 259: 2. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- PATTEN, G.H. 1953. More about the House Sparrow. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 5: 1. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- PATTEN, G.H. 1982. Project on Ringnecked Parakeets. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 117: 20. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PSITTACULA
- PATTEN, G.H. 1982. Blackcheeked Lovebirds (R. 331). *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 119: 16. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, AGAPORNIS
- PATTEN, G.H. 1983. Bird lists. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 123: 13, 14. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- PENZHORN, B.L., MORRIS, A.K., TAYLOR, I. & HARRISON, G. 1968. House Sparrow *Passer domesticus*. In New Distributional Data. *Ostrich* 39: 272. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- PIKE, E.O. 1953. Some records for the Transkei. *Ostrich* 24: 130. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- PITMAN, C.R.S. 1967. Birds observed during a 1,500 miles motor journey in the Cape Province. *Ostrich* 38: 166–172. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- POCOCK, T.N. 1965. House Sparrow *Passer domesticus* at Ladismith, C.P. and at Ndumu, Natal. *Ostrich* 36: 143. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- POOLEY, A.G. 1967. Some miscellaneous ornithological observations from the Ndurnu Game Reserve. *Ostrich* 38: 31, 32. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- POWER, J.H. 1958. House Sparrows in the northern Cape. *Ostrich* 29: 87. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- QUICKELBERGE, C.D. 1972. Status of the European Starling at its present approximate eastern limits of spread. *Ostrich* 43: 179, 180. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- QUINTON, W.F. 1958. Red-billed Fire Finch *Lagonosticta senegala* and House Sparrow *Passer domesticus* recorded at Beaufort West. *Ostrich* 29: 130. A-BIRD, T-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, LAGONOSTICTA
- REED, R.A. 1956. Indian Mynahs at Springs. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 21: 8. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- REED, R.A. 1956. House Sparrows in most parts of the Transvaal. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 21: 8, 9. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- REED, R.A. 1957. Recovery of House Sparrow. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 26: 7, 8. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- REED, R.A. 1967. The birds of 'Tonqani', Chapel Avenue, Bryanston Border. *South African Avifauna Series* 50: 1–18. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- REED, R.A. & WELLS, S.J.C. 1955. Latest bird news. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 16: 1–4. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER
- REED, R.A. & WELLS, S.J.C. 1957. House Sparrow recovery. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 26: 7, 8. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- REES, J.P. 1949. Notes on the changes in bird life in a Johannesburg garden. *Bokmakierie* 1: 65, 66, 79. A-BIRD, URBAN, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- REES, J.P. 1959. The Indian Myna. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 31: 5, 6. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- ROBERTS, N. 1945. Indian Mynah and Red-chested Cuckoo in Johannesburg. *Ostrich* 16: 236, 237. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- ROBINSON, C. 1953. Chaffinches. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 13: 2. A-BIRD, FRINGILLA
- ROBINSON, C. 1953. April records of the Chaffinch. *Cape Bird Club News Sheet* 14: 3. A-BIRD, FRINGILLA
- ROBINSON, J. 1957. Breeding birds of my garden. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 46: 1. A-BIRD, FRINGILLA
- ROBINSON, J., ROBINSON, C. & WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1957. Notes on the birds of the Cape 1'Aquila region. *Ostrich* 28: 147–163. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- ROBSON, N. 1976. Ring-necked Parakeet at Mkuze. *Albatross* 240: 2, 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PSITTACULA
- ROBSON, N. & CYRUS, D. 1978. Natal bird atlas. *Albatross* 248: 4, 5. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- ROOS, Z.N., ROOS, M.M. & BEEMSTERBOER, E. 1985. 'n Kontrolelys van die voëls van Bloemfontein-distrik. *Mirafra* 2,3: 7–16. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER

- ROWAN, M.K. 1952. Exotics increase their range. *Bokmakierie* 4: 63. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, FRINGILLA, PASSER, PHASIANUS, STURNUS, TURDUS
- ROWAN, M.K. 1952. Chaffinches. *Cape Bird Club News Sheet* 9: 2. A-BIRD, FRINGILLA
- ROWAN, M.K. 1954. Chaffinches and Paradise Flycatchers at Hout Bay. *Cape Bird Club News Sheet* 24: 3, 4. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, FRINGILLA
- ROWAN, M.K. 1964. Analysis of the records of a South African ringing station. *Ostrich* 35: 160–187. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- ROWAN, M.K. 1964. House Sparrow (*Passer domesticus*) reaches the south-western Cape. *Ostrich* 35: 240. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- SCHMIDT, R.K., LONGRIGG, T.D. & PRINGLE, S. 1976. The elusive Chaffinch. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 124: 4. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, INVASION, FRINGILLA
- SCHOUTE-VANNECK, C. 1967. Pope Cardinal on the Bluff. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 143: 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PAROARIA
- SHEPHARD, J.B. 1967. Indian Myna. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 148: 3. A-BIRD, ACRIDOTHERES
- SIEGFRIED, W.R. 1971. Chukar Partridge on Robben Island. *Ostrich* 42: 156. A-BIRD, ISLAND-COASTAL, INVASION, SPREAD, ALECTORIS
- SIMPSON, G.B.A. 1968. Some rare Peninsula records. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 87: 4, 5. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, INVASION, SPREAD, FRINGILLA
- SINCLAIR, I. 1973. European Starling in Durban. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 221: 1. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- SINCLAIR, J.C. 1974. European Starling *Sturnus vulgaris*. In New Distributional Data: 5. *Ostrich* 45: 137. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- SINCLAIR, J.C. 1983. S.A.O.S. Rarities Committee report. *Bokmakierie* 35: 35–40. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, AYTHYA
- SKEAD, C.J. 1962. The European Starling *Sturnus vulgaris* at King William's Town. *Ostrich* 33,2: 75. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- SKEAD, C.J. 1966. The European Starling *Sturnus vulgaris* in the King William's Town and East London Districts. *Ostrich* 37: 229. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- SKEAD, C.J. 1973. House Sparrow *Passer domesticus*. In New Distributional Data: 4. *Ostrich* 44: 132. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- SKEAD, C.J. & SINCLAIR, J.C. 1974. European Starling *Sturnus vulgaris*. In New Distributional Data: 5. *Ostrich* 45: 137. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- STANDER 1956. Indian Mynah. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 21: 8. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- STEYN, P. 1963. An eldorado for bird-watchers. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 70: 3. A-BIRD, PASSER
- SUMMERS-SMITH, J.D. 1963. *The House Sparrow*. London, Collins. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, PASSER, STURNUS
- TARBOTON, W.R. 1965. House Sparrow (distribution). *Bokmakierie* 17: 40. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- THOMAS, A. & THOMAS, M. 1978. Tufted Duck in the Transvaal. *Laniarius* 9: 4, 5. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, AYTHYA
- TONGUE, P. 1968. South African accent of our Chaffinches. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 88: 2, 3. A-BIRD, ADAPTATION, FRINGILLA
- TREE, A.J. 1975. House Sparrow *Passer domesticus*. In New Distributional Data 6. *Ostrich* 46: 179. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- TUCK, G.S. 1958. Some notes from the oceans. *Sea Swallow* 11: 16–18. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, FRINGILLA, PARUS
- UNDERHILL, G.D. 1966. European Sparrow at Pearly Beach, Bredasdorp District. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 81: 4. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- UYS, C.J. 1964. House Sparrows at Bredasdorp. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 75: 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- UYS, C.J. 1980. New listings for the De Hoop Vlei region, Bredasdorp. *Bokmakierie* 32: 21–24. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- VAN BRUGGEN, A.C. 1960. Notes and observations on birds in the Transvaal, Southern Rhodesia and Portuguese East Africa. *Ostrich* 31: 30, 31. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- VAN DER PLAAT, A. 1950. In points from letters. *Ostrich* 21: 41. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- VAN DER PLAAT, A. 1952. House Sparrow *Passer domesticus*. *Ostrich* 23: 64. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- VAN DER PLAAT, A. 1961. Lys van wilde voëls vir die Oranje-Vrystaat. *South African Avifauna Series* 2: 1–69. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- VAN EYSEN, M.L. 1957. House Sparrow. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 23: 6. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- VAN EYSEN, M.L. & CURRIE, D. 1956. House Sparrow. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 22: 7. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- VAN NIEROP, F. 1958. The Indian Mynah. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News Sheet* 27: 12. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- VAN REENEN, J. 1972. Observations on the Indian Myna *Acridotheres tristis*. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 203: 1, 2. A-BIRD, ACRIDOTHERES
- VERNON, C.J. 1967. Short notes from a trip through Natal. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 147: 2, 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES
- VERNON, C.J. 1967. House Sparrows. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 152: 9. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- VERNON, C.J. 1973. Vocal imitation by southern African birds. *Ostrich* 44: 23–30. A-BIRD, BEHAVIOUR, STURNUS
- VERNON, C.J. 1975. Seventeenth ringing report. *Ostrich* 46: 127. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- VERNON, C.J. 1976. Eighteenth ringing report. *Ostrich* 47: 89–94. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- VICKERY, C. & VICKERY, MRS. 1985. Farm Lincoln, Harrismith. *Mirafra* 2,1: 3. A-BIRD, PASSER

- VIERKE, J. 1970. Die Besiedlung Suedafrikas durch den Haussperling (*Passer domesticus*). *Journal fuer Ornithologie* 111: 94–103. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- VON ETZDORF, T.J.R. 1964. European Starling. *Outeniqua Bird Club Newsletter* 13: 7. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WALKER, H. 1967. Indian Myna. *Natal Bird Club News Sheet* 150: 4, 5. A-BIRD, ACRIDOTHERES
- WETMORE, A. 1957. An extension in range of the House Sparrow. *Ostrich* 28: 239, 240. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1953. House Sparrow in eastern Cape. *Ostrich* 24: 130, 131. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1955. Analysis of field cards. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 25: 2, 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1955. Distribution of European Starling. *Ostrich* 26: 46. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1955. European Starling at Storms River. *Ostrich* 26: 136. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1957. European Starling *Sturnus vulgaris* L. at Calitzdorp and Oudtshoorn. *Ostrich* 28: 124. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1957. European Starling at Matjiesfontein. *Ostrich* 28: 124, 125. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1957. Field card analyses. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 41: 2, 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1957. Further records of the European Starling *Sturnus vulgaris*, in the south west Cape. *Ostrich* 28: 237, 238. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1957. House Sparrows in Griqualand West. *Ostrich* 28: 240. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1958. Additions to the checklist. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 47: 2, 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1958. European Starling at Fraserburg Road. *Ostrich* 29: 48. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1959. European Starling at Sutherland. *Ostrich* 30: 88. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1961. *Expansion of the range of the house sparrow*. Cape Department of Nature Conservation Annual Report 16: 22–24. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1962. House Sparrow *Passer domesticus* at Touws River. *Ostrich* 33,2: 75. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1963. Analysis of the Cape Bird Club's field cards. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 71: 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1963. House Sparrow at Piquetberg. *Ostrich* 34: 166. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1963. Notes from Namaqualand and Bushmanland. *Ostrich* 34: 156–159. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1964. European House Sparrows at Darling. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 75: 1. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1964. Notes from de Rust, Oudtshoorn District. *Ostrich* 35: 237. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1964. Notes on a journey to and from Etosha Pan August–September–1963. *Ostrich* 35: 237–239. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1965. Bring your check list up to date. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 77: 2, 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1965. House Sparrow at Kalkrand. *Ostrich* 36: 91. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1965. Notes from Bushmanland. *Ostrich* 36: 133, 134. A-BIRD, KAROO, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1965. Notes on Karoo birds. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 78: 2, 3. A-BIRD, KAROO, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1966. House Sparrow. *Bokmakierie* 18: 22. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1966. Notes on a journey from Windhoek to Cape Town, October–November–1965. *Ostrich* 37: 137. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1967. Report on the Percy FitzPatrick Institute of African Ornithology expedition to Namaqualand, April, 1966. *Ostrich* 38: 116–122. A-BIRD, KAROO, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1968. Additions to the Cape and Orange Free State lists in the South African Avifauna Series. *South African Avifauna Series* 60: 1–9. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1968. House Sparrow invades city. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 86: 2. A-BIRD, URBAN, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1968. Spread of European Sparrow. *Cape Bird Club Newsletter* 87: 3. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1970. Notes from Richmond District, Cape. *Ostrich* 41: 211, 212. A-BIRD, KAROO, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1971. Results of the garden bird counts organised by the Percy FitzPatrick Institute of African Ornithology: Part 1. *Ostrich Supplement* 8: 449–469. A-BIRD, URBAN, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1972. Report on the House Sparrow enquiry. *Bokmakierie* 24: 37, 38. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1975. European Starling *Sturnus vulgaris*. In *New Distributional Data*: 6. *Ostrich* 46: 178. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M., DU TOIT, C.P. & CARY, R.M. 1961. House Sparrow distribution. *Witwatersrand*

- Bird Club News Sheet* 36: 2. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. & MACLEOD, J.G.R. 1960. Interesting records from the north-west Cape. *Ostrich* 31: 29, 30. A-BIRD, KAROO, INVASION, SPREAD, PASSER
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. & VINCENT, J. 1951. European Starlings at Heidelberg. *Ostrich* 22: 202. A-BIRD, KAROO, INVASION, SPREAD, STURNUS
- WOODALL, P.F. & WOODALL, L. 1985. Common Shelduck at Marievale. *Witwatersrand Bird Club News* 131: 5. A-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, TADORNA
- WOODS, D.L. 1980. House Crow at Zeekoevlei, Retreat. *Promerops* 143: 5. A-BIRD, FYNBOS, INVASION, SPREAD, CORVUS
- WOODS, D.L. 1980. Mallard at Zeekoevlei, Retreat. *Promerops* 146: 3. A-BIRD, PAN, INVASION, SPREAD, ANAS
- ANONYMOUS 1903. Improving our ostriches. *Agricultural Journal of the Cape of Good Hope* 22: 652. T-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, STRUTHIO
- AVERY, G. 1979. Results of beach patrols conducted in 1978. *Cormorant* 6: 4–12. A-BIRD, COLUMBA, MANAGEMENT
- AVERY, G. 1980. Results of beach patrols conducted in southern Africa in 1979. *Cormorant* 8: 65–72. A-BIRD, COLUMBA, NYMPHICUS, STURNUS, MANAGEMENT
- AVERY, G. 1981. Results of beach patrols conducted in southern Africa in 1980. *Cormorant* 9: 113–122. A-BIRD, COLUMBA, MANAGEMENT
- AVERY, G. 1982. Results of beach patrols conducted in southern Africa in 1981. *Cormorant* 10: 87–96. A-BIRD, COLUMBA, MELOPSITTACUS, MANAGEMENT
- AVERY, G. 1984. Results of patrols for beached seabirds conducted in southern Africa in 1982. *Cormorant* 12: 29–43. A-BIRD, COLUMBA, NYMPHICUS, STURNUS, MANAGEMENT
- AVERY, G. 1985. Results of patrols for beached seabirds conducted in southern Africa in 1983. *Cormorant* 13: 3–15. A-BIRD, COLUMBA, STURNUS, MANAGEMENT
- CHOWN, S.L. 1989. The conservation of birds in an urban environment—The promotion of invasives? *Bokmakierie* 41: 60. A-BIRD, URBAN, MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION
- COOPER, J. 1978. Results of beach patrols conducted in 1977. *Cormorant* 4: 4–9. A-BIRD, COLUMBA, MELOPSITTACUS, MANAGEMENT
- DE MOSENTHAL, J. & HARTING, J.E. 1877. *Ostriches and ostrich farming*. T-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, STRUTHIO
- LIVERSIDGE, R. 1978. Ostriches. *Bokmakierie* 30: 104. T-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, STRUTHIO
- MILSTEIN, P. LE S. 1976. Problems of waterfowl conservation in the Transvaal. In M. Smart (ed.), *Proceedings of the International Conference on the Conservation of Wetlands and Waterfowl, Heiligenhafen, 1974*, pp. 444–448. Slimbridge, International Waterfowl Research Bureau. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, HYBRIDIZATION, CONSERVATION, ANAS
- SIEGFRIED, W.R. 1970. Wildfowl distribution, conservation and research in southern Africa. *Wildfowl* 21: 82–98. A-BIRD, WETLAND, INVASION, SPREAD, RESEARCH, CONSERVATION, CYGNUS
- SMIT, J.D. VAN Z. 1963. Ostrich farming in the Little Karoo. *Department of Agricultural Technical Services Bulletin* 358: 1–103. T-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, STRUTHIO
- SMIT, J.D. VAN Z. 1984. Russel Thornton's Ostrich expedition to the Sahara 1911–1912. *Karoo Agric* 3,3: 19–27. T-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, STRUTHIO
- THORNTON, R.W., DUERDEN, J.E. & SMITH, F.C. 1916. Report on the North African Ostriches imported into South Africa. *Union Department of Agriculture* 2. T-BIRD, INTRODUCTION, UTILISATION, STRUTHIO
- ZALOUMIS, E.A. & MILSTEIN, P. LE S. 1975. The conservation of wetland habitats for waterfowl in southern Africa. *African Wildlife* 29,1 Supplement, 12 pp. A-BIRD, INVASION, SPREAD, CONSERVATION, ANAS, CYGNUS

## 8.11 Alien Amphibians–Reptiles–Mammals (46)

- ALPERS, D.A., JANSEN VAN VUUREN, B., ARCTANDER, P. & ROBINSON, T.J. 2004. Population genetics of the roan antelope (*Hippotragus equinus*) with suggestions for conservation. *Molecular Ecology* 13: 1771–1784. T-MAMMAL, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, GENETICS, CONSERVATION, HIPPOTRAGUS
- CHAPMAN, N.G. & CHAPMAN, D. 1980. The distribution of fallow deer: a world-wide review. *Mammal Review* 10: 61–138. A-MAMMAL, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, CERVUS
- CHOWN, S.L. 1994. Game of cats and mice on Marion Island. *Expedition Summer* 1994: 11. A-MAMMAL, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, FELIS, MUS
- EVANS, B.J., MORALES, J.C., PICKER, M.D., KELLEY, D.B. & MELNICK, D.J. 1997. Comparative molecular phylogeny of two *Xenopus* species, *X. gilli* and *X. laevis*, in the south-western Cape Province, South Africa. *Molecular Ecology* 4,6: 333–343. T-FROG, FYNBOS, T-FROG, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FROG, HYBRIDIZATION, XENOPUS
- EVANS, B.J., MORALES, J.C., PICKER, M.D., MELNICK, D.J. & KELLEY, D.B. 1998. Absence of extensive introgression between *Xenopus gilli* and *Xenopus laevis laevis* in the southwestern Cape Province, South Africa. *Copeia* 2: 504–509. T-FROG, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FROG, HYBRIDIZATION, XENOPUS
- GERBER, D. & JANSEN VAN VUUREN, B. 2004. Genetics of roan antelope populations in different geographical regions. *Game and Hunt*, May 2004, pp. 29–31. T-MAMMAL, IMPACT, ECOLOGY, GENETICS, HIPPOTRAGUS



- GROBLER, J.P., PRETORIUS, D.M., BOTHA, K., KOTZE, A., HALLERMAN, E.M. & JANSEN VAN VUUREN, B. 2005. An exploratory analysis of geographic genetic variation in southern African nyala (*Tragelaphus angasi*). *Mammalian Biology*. T-MAMMAL, GENETICS, TRAGELAPHUS, ECOLOGY
- LLOYD, P.H. 1975. *A study of the Himalayan tahr (Hemitragus jemlahicus) and its potential effects on the ecology of the Table Mountain range*. Unpublished report. Cape Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation. A-MAMMAL, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, INVASION, HISTORY, HEMITRAGUS
- LLOYD, P.H. 1985. The Himalayan tahr on Table Mountain. Poster presentation. *National Synthesis Symposium on the Ecology of Biological Invasions, Stellenbosch 1985*. Unpublished. A-MAMMAL, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, INVASION, HISTORY, HEMITRAGUS
- MILLAR, J.C.B. 1980. *Aspects of the ecology of the American grey squirrel Sciurus carolinensis Gmelin in South Africa*. M.Sc. thesis, University of Stellenbosch, Stellenbosch. A-MAMMAL, FYNBOS, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, SCIURUS
- NEWBERY, R. 1984. The American red-eared terrapin in South Africa. *African Wildlife* 38: 186–189. A-REPTILE, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, CHRYSOMYS
- PICKER, M.D. 1985. Hybridization and habitat selection in *Xenopus gilli* and *Xenopus laevis* in the south-western Cape Province. *Copeia* 3: 574–580. T-FROG, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FROG, HYBRIDIZATION, XENOPUS
- PICKER, M.D., HARRISON, J.A. & WALLACE, D. 1996. Natural hybridization between *Xenopus laevis laevis* and *X. gilli* in the south-western Cape Province, South Africa. In R.C. Tinsley & H.R. Kobel (eds), *The biology of Xenopus*, pp. 61–71. The Zoological Society of London & Clarendon Press, London. T-FROG, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FROG, HYBRIDIZATION, XENOPUS
- PICKER, M.D., MCKENZIE, C.J. & FIELDING, P. 1993. Embryonic tolerance of *Xenopus* (Anura) to acidic blackwater. *Copeia* 4: 1072–1081. T-FROG, FYNBOS, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, XENOPUS
- POOLEY, A.G. 1973. Notes on the ecology of the Lake St Lucia crocodile population. *International Union for the Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources, New Series, Supplementary Paper* 41: 81–90. T-REPTILE, ECOLOGY, CROCODYLUS.
- POOLEY, A.G. 1980. Crocodile research in Maputaland. In M.N. Bruton & K.H. Cooper (eds), *Studies on the ecology of Maputaland*, pp. 293–299. Rhodes University, Grahamstown, and the Natal Branch of the Wildlife Society of Southern Africa, Durban. T-REPTILE, RESEARCH, CROCODYLUS, ECOLOGY
- SKEAD, C.J. 1980. *Historical mammal incidence in the Cape Province. Vol. 1. The western and northern Cape*, 903 pp. Cape Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation, Cape Town. T-MAMMAL, HIPPOPOTAMUS, ECOLOGY
- SMITH, V.R., AVENANT, N.L. & CHOWN, S.L. 2002. The diet of house mice on a subantarctic island. *Polar Biology* 25: 703–715. A-MAMMAL, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-BIOTA, MUS
- THOMAS, A.D. & KOLBE, F.F. 1942. The wild pigs of South Africa: their distribution and habits, and their significance as agricultural pests and carriers of disease. *Journal of the South African Veterinary Medical Association* 13: 1–11. A-MAMMAL, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, BEHAVIOUR, IMPACT, AGRICULTURE, DISEASE-VECTOR, PORCUS
- 8.11.2 A-Amphibians–Reptiles–Mammals—Identification (3)
- BRANCH, B. 1998. *Field guide to snakes and other reptiles of southern Africa*, edn 3. Struik, Cape Town. A-REPTILE, IDENTIFICATION, INVASION, SPREAD, FIELD-GUIDE
- HEWITT, J. & POWER, J.H. 1913. A list of South African Lacertilia, Ophidia, and Batrachia in the McGregor Museum, Kimberley; with field notes on various species. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa* 3: 147–176. T-REPTILE, IDENTIFICATION, CORDYLUS, HOMOROSELAPS
- RAUTENBACH, I.L., NEL, J.A.J. & ROOT, G.A. 1981. Mammals of Itala Nature Reserve, Natal. *Lammergeyer* 31: 21–37. A-MAMMAL, INVASION, IDENTIFICATION, SPREAD
- 8.11.3 A-Amphibians–Reptiles–Mammals—Impact (5)
- ATKINSON, I.A.E. 1985. The spread of commensal species *Rattus* to oceanic islands and their effects on island avifaunas. *International Council for Bird Preservation Technical Publication* 3: 35–81. A-MAMMAL, ISLAND, RATTUS, IMPACT
- CHOWN, S.L. & COOPER, J. 1995. *The impact of feral house mice at Marion Island and the desirability of eradication: report on a workshop held at the University of Pretoria, 16–17 February 1995*. Directorate: Antarctica and Islands, Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, Pretoria. A-MAMMAL, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, MUS
- CHOWN, S.L. & SMITH, V.R. 1993. Climate change and the short-term impact of feral house mice at the sub-Antarctic Prince Edward Islands. *Oecologia* 96: 508–516. A-MAMMAL, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, IMPACT, N-BIOTA, GLOBAL-CHANGE, MUS
- STUART, C.T. 1981. Notes on the mammalian carnivores of the Cape Province, South Africa. *Bontebok* 1: 1–58. A-MAMMAL, IMPACT, N-MAMMAL, HYBRIDIZATION, FELIS
- YELD, J. 2004. Alien rats gobble up a third of famine-ravaged Africa's grain. *Cape Argus* 26 January 2004. (SANBI Harry Molteno Library PAM2004-0078) A-MAMMAL, IMPACT, ECONOMIC, AGRICULTURAL, RATTUS
- 8.11.4 A-Amphibians–Reptiles–Mammals—Introduction (6)
- CAWOOD, C.C.E. 1983. Introducing the sable antelope to the eastern Cape. *Redwing* 1983: 31–33. T-MAMMAL, INTRODUCTION, HIPPOPOTRAGUS
- CAWOOD, M. 1983. Sable in the east Cape. *Pelea* 2: 106, 107. T-MAMMAL, INTRODUCTION, HIPPOPOTRAGUS



DE GRAAFF, G. & PENZHORN, B.L. 1976. The re-introduction of springbok *Antidorcas marsupialis* into South African national parks—a documentation. *Koedoe* 19: 75–82. T-MAMMAL, INTRODUCTION, ANTIDORCAS

PENZHORN, B.L. 1971. A summary of the re-introduction of ungulates into South African national parks (to 31 December 1970). *Koedoe* 14: 145–159. T-MAMMAL, INTRODUCTION, CONSERVATION, IMPACT, N-UNGULATE

PLUG, I., DIPPENAAR, N.J. & HANISCH, E.O.M. 1979. Evidence of *Rattus rattus* (house rat) from Pont Drift, an Iron Age site in the northern Transvaal. *South African Journal of Science* 75: 82. A-MAMMAL, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, RATTUS

VISSER, J. 1979. New and reconfirmed records for the Cape Province with notes on some 'rare' species (*Sauria*, *Serpentes* and *Anura*). *Journal of the Herpetological Association of Africa* 21: 40–50. A-REPTILE, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD, RAMPHOTYPHLOPS

EVERY, D.M. 1985. The dispersal of brown rats *Rattus norvegicus* and new specimens from 19th century Cape Town. *Mammalia* 49: 573–576. A-MAMMAL, INVASION, SPREAD, RATTUS

BAARD, E.H.W. 2004. *An assessment of herpetological invasions in South Africa—perspectives, principles and precedents*. Unpublished report, Cape Nature Conservation, 8 pp. A-REPTILE, T-REPTILE, A-ANIMAL, A-AMPHIBIAN, T-FROG, INVASION

BIGALKE, R. 1977. The Himalayan tahr on Table Mountain. *Zoologica Africana* 12: 504. A-MAMMAL, FYNBOS, INVASION, HISTORY, HEMITRAGUS

BIGALKE, R.C. & BATEMAN, J.A. 1962. On the status and distribution of ungulate mammals in the Cape Province, South Africa. *Annals of the Cape Provincial Museums* 2: 85–109. A-MAMMAL, T-MAMMAL, INTRODUCTION, INVASION, SPREAD

DAVIS, D.H.S. 1950. Notes on the status of the American grey squirrel, *Sciurus carolinensis* Gmelin, in the southwestern Cape (South Africa). *Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London* 120: 265–268. A-MAMMAL, FYNBOS, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, EVALUATION, SCIURUS

MCLACHLAN, G.R. 1978. A population of *Typhlops braminus* (Daudin) on the Cape Peninsula (Reptilia: Typhlopidae). *Zoologica Africana* 13: 353, 354. A-REPTILE, INVASION, SPREAD, RAMPHOTYPHLOPS

ANONYMOUS 1948. *Jonkershoek Inland Fish Hatchery, Stellenbosch*. Inland Fisheries Department, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 5: 36–39. A-ANIMAL, A-AMPHIBIAN, UTILISATION, CRYPTOBRANCHUS

ANONYMOUS 1949. *Jonkershoek Inland Fish Hatchery, Stellenbosch*. Inland Fisheries Department, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 6: 13–15. A-ANIMAL, A-AMPHIBIAN, UTILISATION, CRYPTOBRANCHUS

COMRIE-GREIG, J. 1984. The law and the red-eared terrapin. *African Wildlife* 38,5: 189. A-REPTILE, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, CHRYSSEMY

COTT, H.B. & POOLEY, A.C. 1972. Crocodiles: the status of crocodiles in Africa. *International Union for the Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources, New Series, Supplementary Paper* 33: 1–98. T-REPTILE, CROCODYLUS, MANAGEMENT

HEY, D. 1945. *A preliminary report on the artificial cultivation of Xenopus laevis at the Jonkershoek Inland Fish Hatchery*. Inland Fisheries Department, Cape Provincial Administration, Report 2: 7, 8. T-FROG, INTRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT, UTILISATION, AQUACULTURE, XENOPUS

PRINSLOO, J.F., SCHOONBEE, H.J. & NXIWENI, J.C. 1981. Some observations on biological and other control measures of the African clawed frog *Xenopus laevis* (Daudin) (Pipidae, Amphibia) in fish ponds in Transkei. *Water SA* 7,2: 88–96. A-FISH, FISH-POND, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FROG, MANAGEMENT, HYPOPHthalmichthys, MICROPTERUS

YELD, J. 2000. Alien tahr removed from Table Mountain. *African Wildlife* 54,5: 18, 19. A-MAMMAL, FYNBOS, MANAGEMENT, HEMITRAGUS

## 8.12 Alien Animals—Nonspecific Life Form (21)

BIGALKE, R. 1937. The naturalisation of animals, with special reference to South Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 33: 46–63. A-BIRD, A-ANIMAL, A-MAMMAL, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, ACRIDOTHERES, FRINGILLA, PASSER, PHASIANUS, STURNUS, TURDUS

BRADSHAW, J., O'KEEFFE, J., DEAN, N., DE MOOR, I., PURCHASE, H., ANEILEWITZ, D., RIORDAN, D. & BRUTON, M.N. 1989. Three ecological applications in P.R.O. In S. Vaderas (ed.), *Practical Expert Systems*, pp. 133–148. Sigma Press. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, ECOLOGY, MANAGEMENT, MODELLING

BROOKE, R.K., LLOYD, P.H. & DE VILLIERS, A.L. 1986. Alien and translocated terrestrial vertebrates in South Africa. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 63–74. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. A-VERTEBRATE, T-VERTEBRATE, TERRESTRIAL, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, N-VERTEBRATE, HYBRIDIZATION

GASTON, K.J., CHOWN, S.L. & MERCER, R.D. 2001. The animal species-body size distribution of Marion Island. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the U.S.A.* 98: 14493–14496. A-ANIMAL, ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, INVASIVENESS, CONCEPT

PETTIJEAN, M.O.G. & DAVIES, B.R. 1988. Ecological impact of inter-basin water transfers: some case studies, research requirements and assessment procedures in southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science* 84: 819–828. T-ANIMAL, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, IMPACT, INTER-BASIN TRANSFER, RESEARCH, RISK-ASSESSMENT

ANAS, CHRYSOLOPHUS, COLUMBA, CYGNUS,  
FRINGILLA, PHASIANUS, STURNUS, TURDUS,  
HEMITRAGUS, SCIURUS

# NSLF—Invasion (1)

- BRUTON, M.N. & MERRON, S.V. 1985. *Alien and translocated aquatic animals in southern Africa: a general introduction, checklist and bibliography*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 113: 1–71. CSIR, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, BIBLIOGRAPHY, IDENTIFICATION
- DE MOOR, I.J. & BRUTON, M.N. 1988. *Atlas of alien and translocated indigenous aquatic animals in southern Africa*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 144: 1–310. Foundation for Research Development, CSIR, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, FRESHWATER, MARINE, IDENTIFICATION, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION
- DE MOOR, I.J. & BRUTON, M.N. 1988. South Africa's underwater invaders. *African Wildlife* 42,4: 212–217. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, FRESHWATER, MARINE, IDENTIFICATION, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION
- DE MOOR, I.J. & BRUTON, M.N. 1996. Alien and translocated aquatic animals in southern Africa (excluding Zimbabwe and Mozambique): revised checklist and analysis of distribution on a catchment basis. *Annals of the Cape Provincial Museums* 19,6: 305–344. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, FRESHWATER, MARINE, IDENTIFICATION, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD
- SAMWAYS, M.J. 1999. Translocating fauna to foreign lands: here comes the Homogenocene. *Journal of Insect Conservation* 3: 65, 66. A-ANIMAL, INTRODUCTION, IMPACT, N-BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION
- DE MOOR, I.J. & BRUTON, M.N. 1989. Troubled Waters. *Conserva* 4,3: 10, 11, 22. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, FRESHWATER, MARINE, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION
- RICHARDSON, D.M., CAMBRAY, J.A., CHAPMAN, R.A., DEAN, W.R.J., GRIFFITHS, C.L., LE MAITRE, D.C., NEWTON, D.J. & WINSTANLEY, T. 2003. Vectors and pathways of biological invasions in South Africa—Past, future and present. In G. Ruiz & J. Carlton (eds), *Invasive species: vectors and management strategies*, pp. 292–349. Island Press, Washington, D.C. A-BIRD, A-FISH, T-FISH, A-MAMMAL, A-INVERTEBRATE, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, N-FISH, UTILISATION, ANGLING, AQUACULTURE, LAND-USE, HISTORY, RISK-ASSESSMENT, ONCORHYNCHUS, SALMO, CLARIAS, MICROPTERUS
- SIEGFRIED, W.R. 1962. *Introduced vertebrates in the Cape Province*. Cape Department of Nature Conservation Annual Report 19: 80–87. A-BIRD, A-FISH, T-FISH, A-MAMMAL, INTRODUCTION, HISTORY, INVASION, SPREAD, ABUNDANCE, ECOLOGY, IMPACT, MANAGEMENT, CARASSIUS, CYPRINUS, ESOX, GAMBUSIA, IDUS, LEPOMIS, LEUCISCUS, MICROPTERUS, OREOCHROMIS, PERCA, POECILIA (= LEBISTES), RUTILUS, SALMO, SALVELINUS, SCARDINIUS, TILAPIA, TINCA, PHRYNOMERUS, ACRIDOTHERES,
- DE MOOR, I.J. 1997. Alien aquatic animals in southern Africa (excluding Zimbabwe and Mozambique): distribution analysis and management implications. In Van der Mheen & B.A. Haight (eds), *Report of the technical consultation on species for small reservoir fisheries and aquaculture in southern Africa held in Livingstone, Zambia on 7–11 November 1994*. ALCOM Report 19: 30 (abstract only). FAO. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, FRESHWATER, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT
- DE MOOR, I.J. 1989. Important features of foreign legislation on aquatic invasive animals. In I.J. de Moor & M.N. Bruton (eds), *The Management of Invasive Aquatic Animals in Southern Africa. Proceedings of a Symposium and Workshop organised by the Foundation for Research Development in collaboration with the JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown 12–13 September 1988*. CSIR Ecosystems Programmes Occasional Report 44: 68–82. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, INTRODUCTION, LEGISLATION, MANAGEMENT
- DE MOOR, I.J. 1993. *Methods for assessing the susceptibility of freshwater ecosystems in southern Africa to invasion by alien aquatic animals*. M.Sc. thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown, 164 pp. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, FRESHWATER, ECOLOGY, INVADABILITY, MANAGEMENT
- DE MOOR, I.J. 2002. *Protocols for moving germplasm among countries in Africa*. Paper presented at the Expert Consultation on Biosafety and Environmental Impact of Genetic Enhancement of introduced and Improved Tilapia Strains/Alien Species, Nairobi, 20–23 February, 2002. ICLARM, Penang, Malaysia. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, FRESHWATER, INTRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION
- DE MOOR, I.J. 2004. Protocols for moving germplasm among countries in Africa. In M.V. Gupta (ed.), *Use of genetically improved and alien species for aquaculture and conservation of aquatic biodiversity in Africa*. World Fish Centre Contribution 1707: 77–92. Penang, Malaysia. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, FRESHWATER, INTRODUCTION, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, CONSERVATION
- DE MOOR, I.J. & BRUTON, M.N. (eds) 1989. *The management of invasive aquatic animals in southern Africa*. CSIR Ecosystems Programmes Occasional Report 44: 1–118. Foundation for Research Development, Pretoria. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, FRESHWATER, MARINE, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASION, SPREAD, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION
- DE MOOR, I.J. & BRUTON, M.N. 1993. *Decision-Support Protocol used to assess the Advisability of allowing the importation of alien aquatic animals into southern Africa*. JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Investigational Report 42: 1–45. A-AQUATIC ANIMAL, FRESHWATER, MARINE, INTRODUCTION, ECOLOGY, INVASIVENESS, MANAGEMENT, RISK-ASSESSMENT, TECHNIQUE
- KETTLITZ, W.K. 1961. Keeping of animals in captivity. *Fauna and Flora* 12: 57–63. A-BIRD, MANAGEMENT, LEGISLATION, PASSER

## 9. References cited

- AWAD, A. 2003. Introduced marine species across southern Africa. In I.A.W. Macdonald, J.K. Reaser, C. Bright, L.E. Neville, G.W. Howard, S.J. Murphy & G. Preston (eds), *Invasive alien species in southern Africa: national reports and directory of resources*, pp. 86–90. Global Invasive Species Programme, Cape Town, South Africa.
- BROOKE, R.K. 1986. *Bibliography of alien birds in southern and south-central Africa*. Ecosystem Programmes Occasional Report 14. CSIR, Pretoria.
- BRUTON, M.N. & MERRON, S.V. 1985. *Alien and translocated aquatic animals in southern Africa: a general introduction, checklist and bibliography*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 113: 1–71. CSIR, Pretoria.
- DI TOMASO, J.M., HOBBS, R.J., PELLANT, M. & PYKE, D. 2004. Effects of invasive alien plants on fire regimes. *BioScience* 54: 677–688.
- HOLMES, P.M. 2001. A comparison of the impacts of winter versus summer burning of slash fuel in alien-invaded fynbos areas in the Western Cape. *Southern African Forestry Journal* 192: 41–50.
- KRUGER, F.J. 1977. Invasive woody plants in the Cape fynbos with special reference to the biology and control of *Pinus pinaster*. *Proceedings of the Second National Weeds Conference of South Africa, Stellenbosch, 1977*, pp. 57–74.
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 2004a. Recent research on alien plant invasions and their management in South Africa: a review of the inaugural research symposium of the Working for Water programme. *South African Journal of Science* 100: 21–26.
- MACDONALD, I.A.W. 2004b. *Report on a consultancy to the Southern Africa Biodiversity Support Programme to assess User Needs for Databases, Standards and Guidelines on Invasive Alien Species within the Republic of South Africa. April 2004*. Final report to the National Botanical Institute, Kirstenbosch, 36 pp. + 7 Annexes.
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., KRUGER, F.J. & FERRAR, A.A. (eds) 1986. *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, 324 pp. Oxford University Press, Cape Town.
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., REASER, J.K., BRIGHT, C., NEVILLE, L.E., HOWARD, G.W., MURPHY, S.T. & PRESTON, G. (eds) 2003. *Invasive alien species in southern Africa: National Reports and Directory of Resources*, 125 pp. The Global Invasive Species Programme, Kirstenbosch, South Africa.
- MACDONALD, I.A.W., VAN WILGEN, B.W. & MGIDI, T.N. 2004. *Towards a national strategy for dealing with invasive alien species. March 2004*. Final report to the Working for Water Programme. CSIR Report No. ENV-S-C 2004-030, 70 pp. Environmentek, CSIR, Stellenbosch.
- MCGIBBON, J. 1858. *Catalogue of plants in the Botanic Gardens, Cape Town*. Solomon, Cape Town.
- MCNEELY, J. A., MOONEY, H.A., NEVILLE, L.E., SCHEI, P. & WAAGE, J.K. (eds) 2001. *A global strategy on invasive alien species*. IUCN, Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, UK. in collaboration with the Global Invasive Species Programme.
- MOONEY, H.A. & HOBBS, R.J. (eds) 2000. *Invasive species in a changing world*. A project of SCOPE: the Scientific Committee on Problems of the Environment. Island Press, Washington DC, USA.
- MORAN, V.C. & MORAN, P.M. 1982. *Alien invasive vascular plants in South African natural and semi-natural environments: bibliography from 1830*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 65: 1–42.
- NEL, J.L., RICHARDSON, D.M., ROUGET, M., MGIDI, T.N., MDEKEKE, N., LE MAITRE, D.C., VAN WILGEN, B.W., SCHONEGEVEL, L., HENDERSON, L. & NESER, S. 2004. A proposed classification of invasive alien plant species in South Africa: towards prioritizing species and areas for management action. *South African Journal of Science* 100: 53–64.
- OLCKERS, T. & HILL, M.P. (eds) 1999. Biological control of weeds in South Africa (1990–1998). *African Entomology Memoir* No. 1.
- PERRINGS, C., WILLIAMSON, M. & DALMAZZONE, S. (eds) 2000. *The economics of biological invasions*. Edward Elgar Publishing, Cheltenham, UK.
- PIETERSE, P.J. & CAIRNS, A.L.P. 1988. The population dynamics of the weed *Acacia longifolia* (Fabaceae) in the absence and presence of fire. *South African Journal of Forestry* 145: 25–27.
- PIMENTEL, D. (ed.) 2002. *Biological invasions: economic and environmental costs of alien plant, animal and microbe species*. CRC Press, Washington DC, USA.
- PRESTON, G., BROWN, G. & VAN WYK, E. (eds) 2000. *Best management practices for preventing and controlling invasive alien species*. The Working for Water Programme, Cape Town.
- RICHARDSON, D.M. 1988. Age structure and regeneration after fire in a self-sown *Pinus halepensis* forest on the Cape Peninsula, South Africa. *South African Journal of Botany* 54: 140–144.
- TAYLOR, H.C. 1977. Aspects of the ecology of the Cape of Good Hope Nature Reserve in relation to fire and conservation. In *Proceedings of the Symposium on the Environmental Consequences of Fire and Fuel Management in Mediterranean Ecosystems, August 1–5 1977, Palo Alto, California*. USDA Forest Services General Technical Report W0-3, pp. 483–487.
- VERSVELD, D.B. & VAN WILGEN, B.W. 1986. Impact of woody aliens on ecosystem properties. In I.A.W. Macdonald, F.J. Kruger & A.A. Ferrar (eds), *The ecology and management of biological invasions in southern Africa*, pp. 239–246. Oxford University Press, Cape Town.
- WINTERBOTTOM, J.M. 1972. Report on the House Sparrow enquiry. *Bokmakierie* 24: 37, 38.
- WITTENBERG, R. & COCK, M.J.W. (eds) 2001. *Invasive alien species: a toolkit of best prevention and management practices*. Global Invasive Species Programme (GISP). Wallingford, CABI.
- ZIMMERMANN, H.G. 2003. South Africa. In I.A.W. Macdonald, J.K. Reaser, C. Bright, L.E. Neville, G.W. Howard, S.J. Murphy & G. Preston (eds), *Invasive alien species in southern Africa: national reports and directory of resources*, pp. 45–69, 109–125. Global Invasive Species Programme, Cape Town, South Africa.

# Appendices

**Appendix 1.**—An example of questionnaire developed to solicit IAS expert personal details and opinions.

Entry format for SABSP Inventory of Expertise on Invasive Alien Species in the Republic of South Africa

Please enter ALL your entries in column F  
(below)

<b>Surname</b> (e.g. Venter)	
<b>First name</b> (e.g. Stephanus)	
<b>Second name</b> (e.g. Jacobus)	
<b>Third &amp; Fourth names, etc.</b>	
<b>Title</b> (e.g. Prof., Dr, Mr, Mrs, Ms, Miss)	
<b>Preferred name of address</b> (e.g. Fanie)	
<b>Highest Academic Qualification</b> (e.g. Ph.D.)	
<b>Institution of highest qualification</b> (e.g. UCT)	
<b>Year qualification obtained</b> (e.g. 1976)	
<b>Affiliation</b> (e.g. Weeds Unit, PPRI, ARC)	
<b>Post title</b> (e.g. Senior Researcher)	
<b>Postal Address (fill in below opp. headings):</b>	
<b>Department</b> (e.g. Botany Dept., or E Cape Region)	
<b>Institution's name</b> (e.g. DWAF or Univ. of Natal)	
<b>PO Box or Private Bag or Street Name</b> (e.g. PO Box)	
<b>Number</b> (e.g. 234)	
<b>Town or City</b> (e.g. Pietermaritzburg)	
<b>Postal Code</b> (e.g. 3220)	
<b>Contact details (fill in below opp headings):</b>	
<b>Work telephone No.</b> (e.g. 056 488 1570)	
<b>Work Fax No.</b> (e.g. 056 488 1577)	
<b>Cellphone No.</b> (e.g. 083 123 4567)	
(do not give cellphone if you do not want this in)	
<b>E-mail address</b> (e.g. johnH@iasman.co.za)	

**Expertise details (fill in below opp headings):**

**Geographical area of IAS expertise**

(e.g. RSA, or E. Cape)

**Biome(s) of expertise**

(e.g. Fynbos, Savanna, Marine, Freshwater)

**Field(s) of expertise (as many as you wish)**

(e.g. strategic planning of control ops, taxonomy)

**IAS Taxa on which you are expert**

(e.g. Woody plants, Hymenoptera, Fishes)

**IAS Genera on which you concentrate**

(e.g. *Acacia*, *Pinus*, *Sturnus*, *Salmo*)

**Availability for consulting (fill in below):**

**Institutional Consulting** (e.g. Yes or No)

**Private Consulting** (e.g. Yes or No)

**Your preferences for the expertise listing (rate as below):**

(Rate each as: 0 = not useful, 1 = useful, 2 = very useful)

**Include anybody who wishes to be included** (0, 1 or 2)

**Include currently active researchers** (0, 1 or 2)

**Include also retired researchers** (0, 1 or 2)

**Include also deceased researchers** (0, 1 or 2)

**Include only researchers with > 3 published papers** (0, 1 or 2)

**Include only researchers with > 10 published papers** (0, 1 or 2)

**Include currently active managers** (0, 1 or 2)

**Include also retired managers** (0, 1 or 2)

**Include also deceased managers** (0, 1 or 2)

**Include only managers with > 3 yrs experience** (0, 1 or 2)

**Include only managers with > 10 yrs experience** (0, 1 or 2)

**Include only people others nominate as being an expert** (0, 1 or 2)

**Your views on putting the bibliography and list of expertise on a website:**

**I favour the final products of this project being put on a website** (e.g. Yes or No)

**Thank you for helping us with this project**

(please save your completed spreadsheet as Your surname\_your firstname.xls and return as an e-mail attachment to macdonald@sanbi.org)

**Appendix 2.**—Keywords to life forms, administrative and research topics applied in the bibliography with the number of articles relating to each presented in parenthesis.

**Category of invasive organism**

*All categories*

A-BIOTA (100)

*Animals*

A-ANIMAL (36), A-AQUATIC ANIMAL (17), A-AQUATIC INVERTEBRATE (12), A-ARTHROPOD (11), A-ASCIDIAN (1), A-BIRD (696), T-BIRD (21), A-COPEPOD (1), A-CRUSTACEAN (17), A-FISH (509), T-FISH (110), A-FISH-PARASITE (16), A-FISH-PATHOGEN (4), T-FROG (13), A-INVERTEBRATE (138), A-JELLYFISH (2), A-MAMMAL (35 [25]), A-MAMMAL-PARASITE (1), T-MAMMAL (10 [9]), A-MOLLUSC (38), A-REPTILE (7), T-REPTILE (5)

*Micro-organisms*

A-MICROBE (18), A-PLANT-PATHOGEN (36)

*Plants*

A-PLANT (307), T-PLANT (1), A-AQUATIC PLANT (170), A-SUCCULENT PLANT (208), A-GRASS (34), A-HERBACEOUS PLANT (57), A-PHYTOPLANKTON (4), A-WOODY PLANT (766)

**Ecosystems, biomes and habitats**

*Aquatic*

CANAL (5), ESTUARY (20), FISH-POND (44), FRESHWATER (44), INTERTIDAL-AREA (5), IMPOUNDMENT (94), MARINE (44), PAN (25), RIVER (144), WETLAND (3)

*Terrestrial*

AGRICULTURAL-AREA (3), FYNBOS (285), FOREST (57), GRASSLAND (30), KAROO (42), NAMA-KAROO (4), PASTURE (1), RANGELAND (1), RIPARIAN (16), ROAD RESERVE (1), SAVANNA (89), SUCCULENT-KAROO (1), SYLVICULTURAL-AREA (8), TERRESTRIAL (3), URBAN (40)

*Insular*

ISLAND (2), ISLAND-COASTAL (11), ISLAND-SUBANTARCTIC (34)

**General topics**

ABUNDANCE (74), ADAPTATION (4), AIR-POLLUTION (1), ANATOMY (1), AVIAN-FRUGIVORY (3), AVIFAUNA (4), BEHAVIOUR (29), BIBLIOGRAPHY (5), BIOGEOGRAPHY (18), BIOMASS (10), CLIMATE (5), COMPETITION (16), COMPUTERISED-DATABASE (3), CONCEPT (44), CONSERVATION (153), DATA (12), DIASPORE TYPE (1), DISPERSAL (2), DISTURBANCE (9), DORMANCY (7), ECOLOGY (1375), ECONOMICS (50), ECOPHYSIOLOGY (42), EDUCATION (1), FIELD-GUIDE (15), FIRE (41), FIRE-INTENSITY (3), FRUIT-PRODUCTION (1), GENETIC-MODIFICATION (1), GENETICS (8), GERMINATION (25), GIS (13), GLOBAL-CHANGE (27), GROWTH (49), HARD-SEEDEDNESS (1), HISTORY (294), IDENTIFICATION (334), INTER-BASIN TRANSFER (13), INTRODUCTION (515), INTRODUCTION-RATE (6), INVADABILITY (23), INVASION (1355), INVASIVENESS (39), LAND-USE (7), LETHAL-TEMPERATURE (1), LIFE-HISTORY-STYLE (1), LONGEVITY (1), MAPPING-PROJECT (10), MODELLING (38), MONITORING (6), MORPHOLOGY (14), MORTALITY (1), MYCORRHIZA (4), NITROGEN (2), NITROGEN-FIXATION (4), NUTRIENT (22), ORIGIN (10), PHENOLOGY (6), PHOTOSYNTHESIS (4), PHYSIOLOGY (71), POPULATION SIZE (1), RECRUITMENT (5), REGENERATION (33), REPRODUCTION (6), RESEARCH (25), ROADSIDE-SURVEY (10), SEDIMENTATION (1), SEED-BANK (41), SEED-BURIAL (2), SEED-DECAY (4), SEED-DISPERSAL (17), SEED-MORTALITY (1), SEED-PRODUCTION (4), SEED-SET (1), SEED-SIZE (2), SEEDLING-RECRUITMENT (9), SOCIAL (10), SOIL (9), SOIL-TEMPERATURE (4), SPECIES-MODELLING (8), SPREAD (1080), SURVEY (13), SURVEY-METHOD (1), TAXONOMY (36), TECHNIQUE (21), TEMPORAL CHANGE (1), UTILISATION (329), WATER-QUALITY (8)

**Topics relating to the impacts of the invasion and category of organism impacted**

IMPACT (662), [A-MAMMAL (4)], N-AQUATIC PLANT (4), N-BIODIVERSITY (54), N-BIRD (64), N-FROG (5), N-FISH (76), N-INVERTEBRATE (75), N-PLANT (89), N-PLANT-PATHOGEN (2), N-MAMMAL (6), N-MOLLUSC (1), N-RODENT (3), N-UNGULATE (1), AGRICULTURE (6), ALLELOPATHY (5), APICULTURE (3), DISEASE (4), DISEASE-VECTOR (3), GLEANING (5), GRAZING (4), HABITAT-DEGRADATION (10), HYBRIDIZATION (13), HYDROLOGY (32), LITTER (5), MUTUALISM (7), MYRMECOCHORY (11), PARASITISM (22), POLLINATION (7), PREDATION (11), NESTING (31), ROOSTING (3), [SEED-DISPERSAL], SOIL-DAMAGE (2), SOIL-EROSION (7), TOXICITY (2)



**Categories of utilisation for which the invading organisms were introduced or are now being used**

AGROFORESTRY (2), ANGLING (108), AQUACULTURE (114), AQUARIUM-TRADE (4), HORTICULTURE (19), FUELWOOD (9), [GRAZING (1)], MEDICINAL (2), SOIL-EROSION-CONTROL (3), SYLVICULTURE (28)

**Categories of management actions or aspects of management**

MANAGEMENT (1142), BIOCONTROL (516), AGENT-INTERFERENCE (17), AGENT-SELECTION (17), BALLAST-WATER (7), CHEMICAL (60), CLASSIFICATION (1), CLIMATE-MATCHING (2), CO-OPERATION (20), CO-ORDINATION (2) , CONFLICT-OF-INTERESTS (39), EARLY-WARNING (4), EVALUATION (53), EXPERTISE (6), INTEGRATED-CONTROL (48), LEGISLATION (36), N-ALTERNATIVE (2), PLANT-PATHOGEN (8), PREVENTION (22), PRIORITY (25), QUARANTINE (4), RE-INTRODUCTION (3), RESTORATION (47), RISK-ASSESSMENT (31), SEED-FEEDER (8), STRATEGIC (47), VOLUNTEERS (7)

**Appendix 3.**—Keywords to taxonomic groups applied in the bibliography with numbers of related articles relating to each presented in parenthesis (A = alien species; T = translocated species).

**A-Fungi—mostly plant pathogens**

AMYLOSTEREUM (1), ARMILLARIA (2), PHYTOPHTHORA (5), SPHAEROPSIS (1)

**A/T-Fungi—biocontrol agents or pathogens on alien plants**

CERATOCYSTIS (1), CERCOSPORA (1), COLLETOTRICHUM (4), CRYPHONECTRIA (2), MYCOVELLOSIELLA (1), PHAEORAMULARIA (1), PUCCINIA (1), PYTHIUM (1), UROMYCLADIUM (4)

**A/T-Phytoplankton**

CLADOPHORA (2), GYMNODINIUM (1)

**A-Grass**

AGROSTIS (3), CORTADERIA (1), PENNISETUM (1), STIPA (30)

**A-Herbaceous Plant**

AGERATINA (5), AMARANTHUS (3), ARGEMONE (1), BRYOPHYLLUM (2), CAMPULOCLINUM (2), CANNA (1), CARDUUS (1), CIRSIUM (9), CONVULVULUS (1), DATURA (2), HEDYCHIUM (1), MEDICAGO (1), PARTHENIUM (3), XANTHIUM (8)

**A-Woody Plant**

ACACIA (232), ARAUJIA (1), ATRIPLEX (3), BANKSIA (3), CAESALPINIA (4), CARDIOSPERMUM (1), CASSIA (1), CESTRUM (1), CHROMOLAENA (69), EUCALYPTUS (33), GMELINA (1), HAKEA (114), HYPERICUM (21), JACARANDA (2), LANTANA (76), LEPTOSPERMUM (30), MACFADYENA (4), MELIA (3), METROSIDEROS (2), MYOPORUM (1), NERIUM (7), NICOTIANA (5), PARASERIANTHES (37), PASSIFLORA (2), PINUS (89), PITTOSPORUM (4), POPULUS (6), PROSOPIS (35), PSIDIUM (2), PYRACANTHA (1), RICINUS (1), ROBINIA (1), RUBUS (29), SALIX (5), SESBANIA (50), SOLANUM (88), TETRACLINIS (1)

**A-Succulent Plant**

CEREUS (3), HARRISIA (6), OPUNTIA (228), PERESKIA (7)

**A-Aquatic Macrophyte**

ARUNDO (1), AZOLLA (30), EICHHORNIA (90), MYRIOPHYLLUM (28), PISTIA (16), SALVINIA (25)

**A-Ostracod**

CANDONOCYPRIS (1), CYPRIS (1), HEMICYPRIS (1), STENOCYPRIS (1)

**A-Anenome**

METRIDIUM (1)

**A-Jellyfish**

CRASPEDACUSTA (2)

**A-Fish Parasite**

ACHTHERES (3), APIOSOMA (1), ARGULUS (6), BOTHRIOCEPHALUS (5), CHILODONELIA (1), CLINOSTOMUM (3), DACTYLOGYRUS (1), EUCLINOSTOMUM (2), ICHTHYOBODO (1), ICHTHYOPHTHIRIUS (3), LERNAEA (4), MYXOSOMA (4), PSEUDACOLPENTERON (1), TRICHODINA (4), TRICHODINELLA (1)

**A-Crustacean**

ARTEMIA (2), CARCINUS (2), CHERAX (8), DAPHNIA (11), MACROBRACHIUM (5), PACIFASTACUS (2), PORCELLIO (1), PROCAMBARUS (5)

**A-Molluscs**

BEDEVA (1), BIOMPHALARIA (2), HELISOMA (6), LYMNAEA (20), MYTILUS (9), PHYSA (9), PILA (2), THAIS (2), UROSALPINX (1)

**A-Insect**

ANOPLOLEPIS (1), CAMPONOTUS (1), CARDIOCONDYLA (2), LEPISIOTA (1), LIMNOPHYES (1), LINEPITHEMA (25), MONOMORIUM (1), PARATRECHINA (2), PIERIS (1), PLAGIOLEPIS (1), PLUTELLA (3), SIREX (1), SOLENOPSIS (1), TECHNOMYRMEX (2), VESPUA (1)

**A-Biocontrol agents mites, insects, etc.**

ACALLEPITRIX (1), ACERIA (1), ALCIDION (1), ALCIDODES (2), ALGAROBIOUS (5), ANTHONOMUS (2), APHIS (1), ARVELIUS (1), BELLURA (2), BRUCHOPHAGUS (1), CACTOBLASTIS (16), CACTOPHAGUS (1), CALCOMYZA (2), CARPOSINA (4), CHARIDOTIS (3), CONCHYLOCTENIA (1), CORNOPS (2), CYDMAEA (1), DACTYLOPIUS (25), DICOMADA (1), ECCRITOTARSUS (8), ERYTENNA (4), EXOCHOMUS (3), FALCONIA (2), GARGAPHIA (6), GRATIANA (4), HYPOGEOCOCCUS (1), LEPTINOTARSA (5), LIXUS (1), LONGITARSUS (1), MELANTERIUS (9), METRIONA (1), MIMORISTA (4), NANAIA (1), NEOCHETINA (2), NELTUMIUS (3), NEODIPLOGRAMMUS (1), NEOHYDRONOMUS (2), NIPHOGRAPTA (1), OPHIOMYIA (3), ORTHOGALUMNA (1), PACHYCENTRINUS (1), PAULINIA (1), PAREUCHAETES (3), PHENRICA (1), PISSODES (1), PLATYPHORA (2), PSEUDOLAMPSIS (1), RHYSSOMATUS (5), STENOPELMUS (3), TELEONEMIA (1), TRICHAPION (8), TRICHILOGASTER (16), TUCUMANIA (8)

**A-Amphibian**

CRYPTOBRANCHUS (2)

**T-Amphibian**

PHRYNOMERUS (1), XENOPUS (12)

**A-Fish**

ARISTICHTHYS (14), CARASSIUS (26), CTENOPHARYNGODON (27), CYPRINUS (156), ESOX (4), EUTROPIUS (2), GAMBUSIA (26), HYPOPHthalmichthys (26), ICTALURUS (3), IDUS (3), LEPOMIS (88), LEUCISCUS (2), MICROPTERUS (157), MORONE (5), MYLOPHARYNGODON (8), ONCORHYNCHUS (4), PERCA (40), POECILIA (4), RUTILUS (3), SALMO (249), SALVELINUS (27), SAROTHERODON (2), SCARDINIUS (3), SCOPHTHALMUS (3), SOLEA (2), TINCA (43), XIPHOPHORUS (4)

**T-Fish**

ALESTES (1), ANGUILLA (1), ASTATOTILAPIA (2), AUSTROGLANIS (3), BARBUS (48), CLARIAS (25), HYDROCYNUS (3), KNERIA (3), LABEO (20), MUGIL (11), MYXUS (5), NOTHOBRANCHIUS (1), OREOCHROMIS (75), PSEUDOCRENILABRUS (1), SANDELIA (2), SERRANOCHROMIS (14), TILAPIA (61)

**A-Reptile**

CHRYSEMYS (2), RAMPHOTYPHLOPS (2)

**T-Reptile**

CORDYLUS (1), CROCODYLUS (3), HOMOROSELAPS (1)

**A-Terrestrial Bird**

ACRIDOTHERES (175), AGAPORNIS (10), ALECTORIS (11), AMANDAVA (1), ARATINGA (1), CACATUA (1), CARDUELIS (9), COLINUS (3), COLUMBA (33), CORVUS (27), CHRYSOLOPHUS (1), DROMAIUS (1), FALCO (1), FORPUS (2), FRINGILLA (67), GALLUS (2), GEOPELIA (1), LOPHORTYX (1), LOPHURA (1), LUSCINIA (5), MELOPSITTACUS (12), NANDAYUS (1), NYMPHICUS (4), PADDA (2), PAROARIA (12), PARUS (2), PASSER (335), PAVO (1), PHASIANUS (5), PSITTACULA (25), STURNUS (209), TURDUS (20)

**A-Aquatic Bird**

AIX (5), ANAS (29), ANSER (1), AYTHYA (8), CAIRINA (2), CYGNUS (40), FULICA (3), GALLINULA (7), TADORNA (9)

**T-Bird**

EUPLECTES (2), FRANCOLINUS (2), LAGONOSTICTA (2), NETTAPUS (2), NUMIDA (10), PLOCEUS (2), POICEPHALUS (9), STREPTOPELIA (10), STRUTHIO (7)

**A-Mammal**

CERVUS (1), FELIS (6), HEMITRAGUS (5), MUS (12), MYOCASTOR (1), PORCUS (1), RATTUS (7), SCIURUS (3)

**T-Mammal**

ANTIDORCAS (1), HIPPOPOTAMUS (1), HIPPOTRAGUS (4), TRAGELAPHUS (1)

DATE DUE

[illegible]

Demco, Inc. 38-293

3 2044 118 667 484



